



RICOH UNIVERSITY

Learning ♦ Knowledge ♦ Performance



B245/B276/B277 SERVICE MANUAL

002706MIU

Gestetner **LANIER** RICOH **SAVIN**



B245/B276/B277 SERVICE MANUAL

Gestetner
LANIER
RICOH
SAVIN



RICOH UNIVERSITY
Learning ♦ Knowledge ♦ Performance

B245/B276/B277

SERVICE MANUAL

002706MIU

Gestetner **LANIER RICOH SAVIN**

It is the reader's responsibility when discussing the information contained within this document to maintain a level of confidentiality that is in the best interest of Ricoh Corporation and its member companies.

***NO PART OF THIS DOCUMENT MAY BE REPRODUCED IN ANY
FASHION AND DISTRIBUTED WITHOUT THE PRIOR
PERMISSION OF RICOH CORPORATION.***

All product names, domain names or product illustrations, including desktop images, used in this document are trademarks, registered trademarks or the property of their respective companies.

They are used throughout this book in an informational or editorial fashion only and for the benefit of such companies. No such use, or the use of any trade name, or web site is intended to convey endorsement or other affiliation with Ricoh products.

WARNING

The Service Manual contains information regarding service techniques, procedures, processes and spare parts of office equipment distributed by Ricoh Corporation. Users of this manual should be either service trained or certified by successfully completing a Ricoh Technical Training Program.

Untrained and uncertified users utilizing information contained in this service manual to repair or modify Ricoh equipment risk personal injury, damage to property or loss of warranty protection.

Ricoh Corporation

LEGEND

PRODUCT CODE	COMPANY			
	GESTETNER	LANIER	RICOH	SAVIN
*B245	DSm715	LD315	MP 1500	N/A
B276	DSm716	LD316	Aficio MP 1600	9016
B277	DSm721d	LD320d	Aficio MP 2000	9021d

*Latin America Only

DOCUMENTATION HISTORY

REV. NO.	DATE	COMMENTS
*	06/2006	Original Printing
1	01/2007	B276/B277 Launch

B245/B276/B277

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INSTALLATION

1. INSTALLATION	1-1
1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS	1-1
1.1.1 ENVIRONMENT	1-1
1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL	1-2
1.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS	1-2
1.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS	1-2
1.2 COPIER INSTALLATION	1-4
1.2.1 POWER SOCKETS FOR PERIPHERALS	1-4
1.2.2 ACCESSORY CHECK	1-4
1.2.3 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-5
1.3 PLATEN COVER INSTALLATION	1-9
1.3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK	1-9
1.3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-9
1.4 ARDF INSTALLATION	1-10
1.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK	1-10
1.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-11
1.5 ADF INSTALLATION	1-14
1.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK	1-14
1.5.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-15
1.6 TWO-TRAY PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION	1-18
1.6.1 ACCESSORY CHECK	1-18
1.6.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-18
1.7 ONE-TRAY PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION	1-23
1.7.1 ACCESSORY CHECK	1-23
1.7.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-23
1.8 ONE-BIN TRAY INSTALLATION	1-27
1.8.1 ACCESSORY CHECK	1-27
1.8.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	1-27
1.9 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER INSTALLATION	1-30
1.10 TRAY HEATERS	1-31
1.10.1 UPPER TRAY HEATER	1-31
1.10.2 LOWER TRAY HEATER (TWO-TRAY MODEL ONLY)	1-33
1.10.3 TRAY HEATERS FOR THE OPTIONAL PAPER FEED UNITS	1-34
1.11 KEY COUNTER INSTALLATION	1-38

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE	2-1
2.1 PM TABLES	2-1

2.2 HOW TO RESET THE PM COUNTER.....	2-4

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	3-1
3.1 GENERAL CAUTIONS	3-1
3.1.1 PCU (PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT)	3-1
3.1.2 TRANSFER ROLLER.....	3-1
3.1.3 SCANNER UNIT.....	3-1
3.1.4 LASER UNIT	3-2
3.1.5 FUSING UNIT	3-2
3.1.6 PAPER FEED.....	3-2
3.2 SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS	3-3
3.3 EXTERIOR COVERS & OPERATION PANEL	3-4
3.3.1 REAR COVER.....	3-4
3.3.2 REAR LOWER COVER (TWO-TRAY MODELS ONLY)	3-4
3.3.3 COPY TRAY.....	3-5
3.3.4 UPPER COVERS	3-5
3.3.5 LEFT COVER.....	3-6
3.3.6 FRONT COVER	3-6
3.3.7 FRONT RIGHT COVER	3-7
3.3.8 RIGHT REAR COVER.....	3-7
3.3.9 RIGHT DOOR (DUPLEX UNIT (B269/B277))	3-8
3.3.10 BY-PASS TRAY	3-8
3.3.11 LEFT LOWER COVER (TWO-TRAY MODELS ONLY).....	3-9
3.3.12 RIGHT LOWER COVER (TWO-TRAY MODELS ONLY)	3-9
3.3.13 PLATEN COVER SENSOR.....	3-10
3.4 SCANNER UNIT.....	3-11
3.4.1 EXPOSURE GLASS/DF EXPOSURE GLASS	3-11
3.4.2 LENS BLOCK.....	3-11
3.4.3 LAMP STABILIZER BOARD AND EXPOSURE LAMP	3-12
3.4.4 ORIGINAL WIDTH/LENGTH SENSOR	3-13
3.4.5 SCANNER MOTOR.....	3-15
3.4.6 SCANNER HOME POSITION SENSOR	3-16
3.4.7 ADJUSTING SCANNER POSITIONS	3-17
3.5 LASER UNIT	3-21
3.5.1 LOCATION OF CAUTION DECAL	3-21
3.5.2 TONER SHIELD GLASS	3-21
3.5.3 LASER UNIT	3-22
3.5.4 LD UNIT	3-23
3.5.5 POLYGONAL MIRROR MOTOR.....	3-23
3.5.6 LASER UNIT ALIGNMENT ADJUSTMENT	3-24
3.6 PCU SECTION	3-26
3.6.1 PCU.....	3-26
3.6.2 PICK-OFF PAWLS AND TONER DENSITY SENSOR.....	3-27
3.6.3 OPC DRUM.....	3-28
3.6.4 CHARGE ROLLER AND CLEANING BRUSH	3-29
3.6.5 CLEANING BLADE	3-29

3.6.6 DEVELOPER	3-30
3.6.7 AFTER REPLACEMENT OR ADJUSTMENT	3-31
3.7 TONER SUPPLY MOTOR.....	3-32
3.8 PAPER FEED SECTION	3-33
3.8.1 PAPER FEED ROLLER	3-33
3.8.2 FRICTION PAD	3-33
3.8.3 PAPER END SENSOR.....	3-34
3.8.4 EXIT SENSOR	3-34
3.8.5 BY-PASS FEED ROLLER AND PAPER END SENSOR.....	3-35
3.8.6 REGISTRATION ROLLER	3-36
3.8.7 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE SWITCH.....	3-37
3.8.8 REGISTRATION CLUTCH	3-38
3.8.9 REGISTRATION SENSOR	3-38
3.8.10 UPPER PAPER FEED CLUTCH AND BY-PASS FEED CLUTCH..	3-39
.....	
3.8.11 RELAY CLUTCH	3-39
3.8.12 RELAY SENSOR.....	3-40
3.8.13 LOWER PAPER FEED CLUTCH (TWO-TRAY MODELS ONLY)	3-40
.....	
3.8.14 VERTICAL TRANSPORT SENSOR (TWO-TRAY MODELS ONLY)	3-41
.....	
3.8.15 PAPER SIZE SWITCH	3-41
3.9 IMAGE TRANSFER.....	3-42
3.9.1 IMAGE TRANSFER ROLLER	3-42
3.9.2 IMAGE DENSITY SENSOR	3-42
3.10 FUSING	3-44
3.10.1 FUSING UNIT	3-44
3.10.2 THERMISTOR.....	3-44
3.10.3 FUSING LAMPS.....	3-45
3.10.4 HOT ROLLER STRIPPER PAWLS	3-46
3.10.5 HOT ROLLER	3-46
3.10.6 THERMOSTAT	3-47
3.10.7 PRESSURE ROLLER AND BUSHINGS	3-47
3.10.8 NIP BAND WIDTH ADJUSTMENT	3-48
3.10.9 CLEANING ROLLER.....	3-49
3.11 DUPLEX UNIT (DUPLEX MODELS B269/B277 ONLY).....	3-50
3.11.1 DUPLEX EXIT SENSOR	3-50
3.11.2 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR	3-50
3.11.3 DUPLEX INVERTER SENSOR.....	3-51
3.11.4 DUPLEX TRANSPORT MOTOR.....	3-51
3.11.5 DUPLEX INVERTER MOTOR.....	3-52
3.11.6 DUPLEX CONTROL BOARD	3-52
3.12 OTHER REPLACEMENTS.....	3-53
3.12.1 QUENCHING LAMP	3-53
3.12.2 HIGH-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY BOARD	3-53
3.12.3 BICU (BASE-ENGINE IMAGE CONTROL UNIT).....	3-54
3.12.4 MAIN MOTOR	3-54
3.12.5 REAR EXHAUST FAN (B269/B277 ONLY).....	3-55
3.12.6 LEFT EXHAUST FAN.....	3-55

3.12.7 PSU (POWER SUPPLY UNIT).....	3-56
3.12.8 GEARBOX.....	3-57
3.13 COPY ADJUSTMENTS PRINTING/SCANNING	3-60
3.13.1 PRINTING	3-60
3.13.2 SCANNING	3-62
3.13.3 ADF IMAGE ADJUSTMENT.....	3-64

TROUBLESHOOTING

4. TROUBLESHOOTING	4-1
4.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS	4-1
4.1.1 SUMMARY	4-1
4.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS	4-2
4.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS.....	4-18
4.2.1 SENSORS.....	4-18
4.2.2 SWITCHES	4-20
4.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS	4-22
4.4 LED DISPLAY	4-23
4.4.1 BICU.....	4-23

SERVICE TABLES

5. SERVICE TABLES	5-1
5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE.....	5-1
5.1.1 HOW TO ENTER THE SP MODE	5-1
5.2 SP MODE TABLES	5-3
5.2.1 SP1-XXX (FEED)	5-3
5.2.2 SP2-XXX (DRUM)	5-6
5.2.3 SP4-XXX (SCANNER)	5-12
5.2.4 SP5-XXX (MODE)	5-18
5.2.5 SP6-XXX (PERIPHERALS).....	5-21
5.2.6 SP7-XXX (DATA LOG).....	5-23
5.2.7 SP8-XXX (HISTORY)	5-27
5.2.8 SP9-XXX (ETC.).....	5-32
5.3 USING SP MODES	5-33
5.3.1 ADJUSTING REGISTRATION AND MAGNIFICATION	5-33
5.3.2 ID SENSOR ERROR ANALYSIS (SP 2221)	5-35
5.3.3 DISPLAY APS DATA (SP 4301 1).....	5-35
5.3.4 MEMORY CLEAR	5-37
5.3.5 INPUT CHECK (SP 5803)	5-39
5.3.6 OUTPUT CHECK (SP 5804).....	5-42
5.3.7 SERIAL NUMBER INPUT (SP 5811)	5-44
5.3.8 NVRAM DATA UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD (SP 5824/5825)	5-44
5.3.9 FIRMWARE UPDATE PROCEDURE.....	5-46
5.3.10 TEST PATTERN PRINT (SP 5902 1).....	5-49
5.3.11 PAPER JAM COUNTERS (SP 7504).....	5-51
5.3.12 SMC PRINT (SP 5990).....	5-52

5.3.13 ORIGINAL JAM HISTORY DISPLAY (SP 7508)	5-53
5.3.14 ADF APS SENSOR OUTPUT DISPLAY (SP 6901)	5-53

DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS

6. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS.....	6-1
6.1 OVERVIEW	6-1
6.1.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT	6-1
6.1.2 PAPER PATH.....	6-2
6.1.3 DRIVE LAYOUT	6-3
6.2 BOARD STRUCTURE.....	6-4
6.2.1 BLOCK DIAGRAM.....	6-4
6.2.2 BICU (BASE ENGINE AND IMAGE CONTROL UNIT)	6-5
6.2.3 SBU (SENSOR BOARD UNIT)	6-5
6.3 COPY PROCESS OVERVIEW.....	6-6
6.4 SCANNING.....	6-8
6.4.1 OVERVIEW	6-8
6.4.2 SCANNER DRIVE	6-9
6.4.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION IN PLATEN MODE.....	6-10
6.5 IMAGE PROCESSING	6-13
6.5.1 OVERVIEW	6-13
6.5.2 SBU (SENSOR BOARD UNIT)	6-14
6.5.3 IPU (IMAGE PROCESSING UNIT)	6-15
6.5.4 VIDEO CONTROL UNIT (VCU).....	6-25
6.6 LASER EXPOSURE	6-27
6.6.1 OVERVIEW	6-27
6.6.2 AUTO POWER CONTROL (APC).....	6-28
6.6.3 LD SAFETY SWITCH.....	6-29
6.7 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)	6-30
6.7.1 OVERVIEW	6-30
6.7.2 DRIVE	6-31
6.8 DRUM CHARGE	6-32
6.8.1 OVERVIEW	6-32
6.8.2 CHARGE ROLLER VOLTAGE CORRECTION	6-33
6.8.3 ID SENSOR PATTERN PRODUCTION TIMING.....	6-34
6.8.4 DRUM CHARGE ROLLER CLEANING	6-34
6.9 DEVELOPMENT	6-35
6.9.1 OVERVIEW	6-35
6.9.2 DRIVE	6-36
6.9.3 DEVELOPER MIXING	6-36
6.9.4 DEVELOPMENT BIAS	6-37
6.9.5 TONER SUPPLY	6-38
6.9.6 TONER SUPPLY MECHANISM	6-39
6.9.7 TONER DENSITY CONTROL	6-39
6.9.8 TONER SUPPLY IN ABNORMAL SENSOR CONDITIONS.....	6-43
6.9.9 TONER NEAR END/END DETECTION AND RECOVERY.....	6-44
6.10 DRUM CLEANING AND TONER RECYCLING.....	6-45
6.10.1 DRUM CLEANING	6-45

6.10.2	TONER RECYCLING	6-46
6.11	PAPER FEED	6-47
6.11.1	OVERVIEW	6-47
6.11.2	PAPER FEED DRIVE MECHANISM	6-48
6.11.3	PAPER FEED AND SEPARATION MECHANISM	6-48
6.11.4	PAPER LIFT MECHANISM	6-49
6.11.5	PAPER END DETECTION	6-49
6.11.6	PAPER SIZE DETECTION	6-50
6.11.7	SIDE FENCES	6-52
6.11.8	PAPER REGISTRATION	6-52
6.12	IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION	6-54
6.12.1	OVERVIEW	6-54
6.12.2	IMAGE TRANSFER CURRENT TIMING	6-55
6.12.3	TRANSFER ROLLER CLEANING	6-56
6.12.4	PAPER SEPARATION MECHANISM	6-56
6.13	IMAGE FUSING AND PAPER EXIT	6-58
6.13.1	OVERVIEW	6-58
6.13.2	FUSING UNIT DRIVE AND RELEASE MECHANISM	6-59
6.13.3	FUSING ENTRANCE GUIDE SHIFT	6-60
6.13.4	PRESSURE ROLLER	6-61
6.13.5	FUSING TEMPERATURE CONTROL	6-61
6.13.6	OVERHEAT PROTECTION	6-63
6.14	DUPLEX UNIT	6-65
6.14.1	OVERALL	6-65
6.14.2	DRIVE MECHANISM	6-66
6.14.3	BASIC OPERATION	6-66
6.14.4	FEED IN AND EXIT MECHANISM	6-69
6.15	ENERGY SAVER MODES OF BASIC MACHINES	6-70
6.15.1	OVERVIEW	6-70
6.15.2	AOF	6-71
6.15.3	TIMERS	6-71
6.15.4	RECOVERY	6-71
6.16	ENERGY SAVER MODES OF DDST MACHINES	6-72
6.16.1	OVERVIEW	6-72
6.16.2	AOF	6-73
6.16.3	TIMERS	6-73
6.16.4	RECOVERY	6-73

SPECIFICATIONS

7.	SPECIFICATIONS	7-1
7.1	GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS	7-1
7.2	SUPPORTED PAPER SIZES	7-5
7.2.1	ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION	7-5
7.2.2	PAPER FEED AND EXIT	7-7
7.3	MACHINE CONFIGURATION	7-10
7.4	OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT	7-12
7.4.1	ARDF	7-12

7.4.2 ADF	7-12
7.4.3 ONE-TRAY PAPER TRAY UNIT	7-13
7.4.4 TWO-TRAY PAPER TRAY UNIT	7-13
7.4.5 ONE-BIN TRAY	7-14

DOCUMENT FEEDER (B813)

SEE SECTION B813 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARDF (B814)

SEE SECTION B814 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

DDST UNIT (B865/B866)

SEE SECTION B865/B866 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

MFP EXPANSION CONTROLLER BOX/PRINTER SCANNER/FAX (B843/B867/B868)

SEE SECTION B843/B867/B868 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

PRINTER/SCANNER UNIT (B867)

SEE SECTION B867 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

FAX OPTION (B868)

SEE SECTION B868 FOR DETAILED TABLE OF CONTENTS

Read This First

Safety Notices and Symbols & Abbreviations

Important Safety Notices

Prevention of Physical Injury

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the copier and peripherals, make sure that the power cord is unplugged.
2. The wall outlet should be near the copier and easily accessible.
3. Note that some components of the copier and the paper tray unit are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main power switch is turned off.
4. If a job has started before the copier completes the warm-up or initializing period, keep hands away from the mechanical and electrical components because the starts making copies as soon as the warm-up period is completed.
5. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the copier is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

Health Safety Conditions

Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Try to remove with eye drops or flush with water as first aid. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.

Observance of Electrical Safety Standards

The copier and its peripherals must be installed and maintained by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.

Safety and Ecological Notes for Disposal

1. Do not incinerate toner bottles or used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to an open flame.
2. Dispose of used toner, developer, and organic photoconductors in accordance with local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.

Laser Safety

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based optical units in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer Engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

WARNING

- 1. **Use of controls, or adjustment, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.**

 WARNING FOR LASER UNIT	
WARNING: Turn off the main switch before attempting any of the procedures in the Laser Unit section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.	
CAUTION MARKING:	
CAUTION VORSICHT  >PS<	INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN. AVOID EXPOSURE TO BEAM. UNSICHTBARE LASERSTRAHLUNG WENN ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET. NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.

Symbols and Abbreviations

This manual uses several symbols and abbreviations. The meaning of those symbols and abbreviations are as follows:

	See or Refer to
	Clip ring
	Screw
	Connector
SEF	Short Edge Feed
LEF	Long Edge Feed

INSTALLATION	
	DOCUMENT FEEDER B813 ARDF B814
	FAX OPTION B868
PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE	
REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	
TROUBLESHOOTING	
	DDST UNIT B865/B866 PRINTER/SCANNER UNIT B867 MFP EXPANSION B843/B867/B868
SERVICE TABLES	
DETAILED DESCRIPTIONS	
SPECIFICATIONS	

TAB
POSITION 1

TAB
POSITION 2

TAB
POSITION 3

TAB
POSITION 4

TAB
POSITION 5

TAB
POSITION 6

TAB
POSITION 7

TAB
POSITION 8

INSTALLATION

1. INSTALLATION

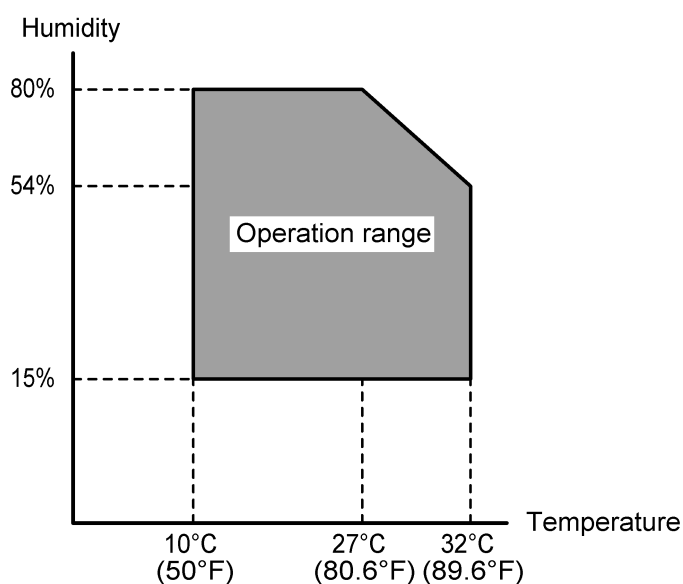
1.1 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

CAUTION

- 21. Before installing options, please do the following:
- 6850556. If there is a printer option in the machine, print out all data in the printer buffer.
- 6850555. Turn off the main switch and disconnect the power cord, the telephone line, and the network cable.

1.1.1 ENVIRONMENT

–Temperature and Humidity Chart–



1. Temperature Range:	10C to 32C (50F to 89.6F)
1. Humidity Range:	15% to 80% RH
1. Ambient Illumination:	Less than 1,500 lux (do not expose to direct sunlight)
1. Ventilation:	3 times/hr/person or more
1. Ambient Dust:	Less than 0.075 mg/m ³ (2.0 x 10 ⁻⁶ oz/yd ³)
1. Avoid areas exposed to sudden temperature changes:	1) Areas directly exposed to cool air from an air conditioner. 2) Areas directly exposed to heat from a heater.
1. Do not place the machine in areas where it can get exposed to corrosive gases.	

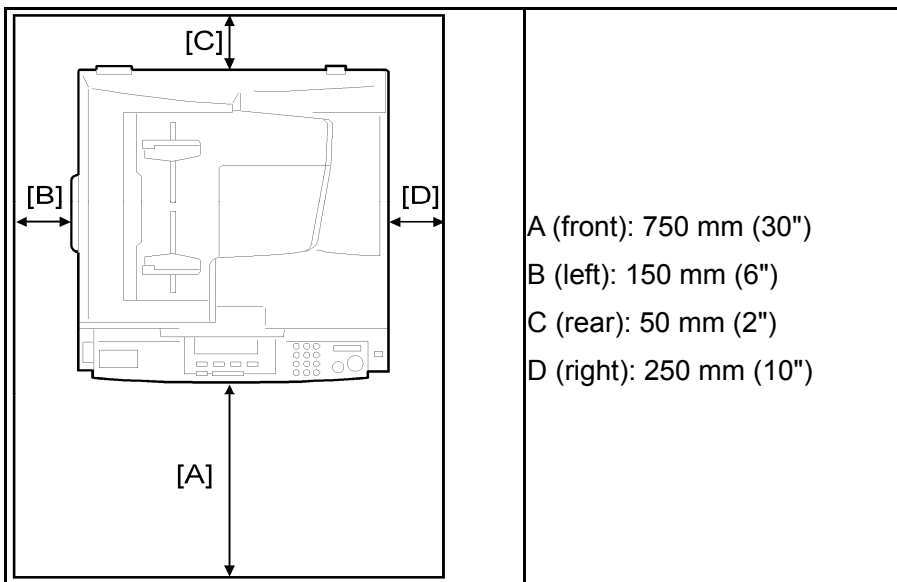
1. Do not install the machine at any location over 2,000 m (6,500 ft.) above sea level.
1. Place the machine on a strong and level base. (Inclination on any side should be no more than 5 mm.)
1. Do not place the machine where it is subjected to strong vibrations.

1.1.2 MACHINE LEVEL

Front to back:	Within 5 mm (0.2") of level
Right to left:	Within 5 mm (0.2") of level

1.1.3 MINIMUM SPACE REQUIREMENTS

Place the copier near the power source, providing clearance as shown:



The recommended 750 mm front space is sufficient to allow the paper tray to be pulled out. Additional front space is required to allow operators to stand at the front of the machine.

1.1.4 POWER REQUIREMENTS

CAUTION

- 6850556. Make sure that the wall outlet is near the machine and easily accessible.
After completing installation, make sure the plug fits firmly into the outlet.
- 6850555. Avoid multi-wiring.
- 6850554. Be sure to ground the machine

Input voltage:

North and South America, Taiwan:	110 – 120 V, 60 Hz, 12 A

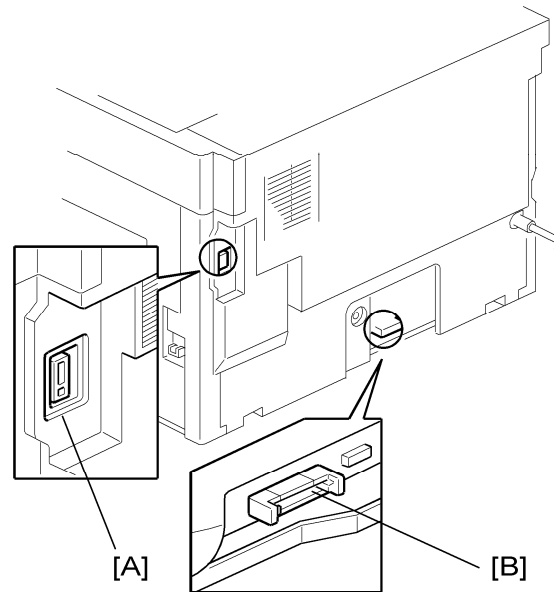
Europe, Asia:	220 – 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 7 A

1.2 COPIER INSTALLATION

1.2.1 POWER SOCKETS FOR PERIPHERALS

 CAUTION

-21. Make sure to plug the cables into the correct sockets.



[A]: Socket for ADF/ARDF (Rated voltage output max. DC24 V)

[B]: Socket for paper tray unit (Rated voltage output max. DC24 V)

1.2.2 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check that you have the accessories in this list.

Basic Machines

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	NECR-English /Multi-language (-17, -27,-19, -29)	1
2	EU Safety Sheet (-27, -22,-24, -26)	1
3	Laser Decal (-27, -22,-24, -26, -19, -28, -29)	1
4	Model Name Plate (-22,-29)	1

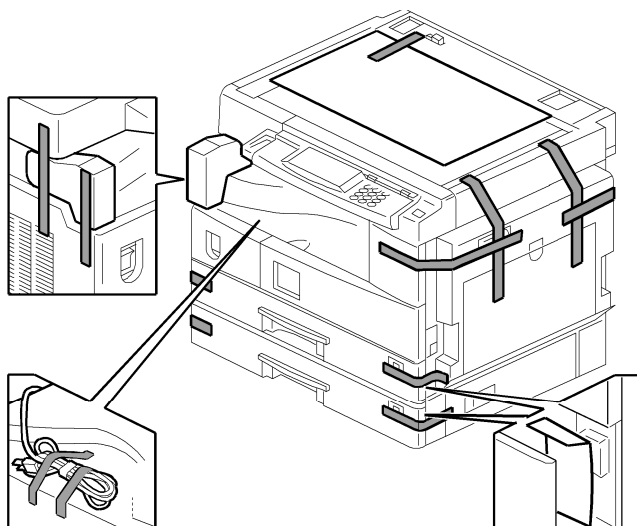
DDST Machines

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	NECR-English /Multi-language (-19, -29)	1
2	Laser Decal (-19, -29)	1
3	Model Name Plate (-19, -29)	1
4	Operating Instructions (-19, -29)	1
5	General Setting Guide (-19, -29)	1
6	Copy Reference (-19, -29)	1
7	Printer/Scanner Reference (-19, -29)	1
8	Network Reference (-19, -29)	1
9	Quick Guide Copy Edition (-19, -29)	1
10	Quick Guide Printer/Scanner Edition (-19, -29)	1
11	Manual for this machine (-19, -29)	1
12	Safety Information (-19, -29)	1

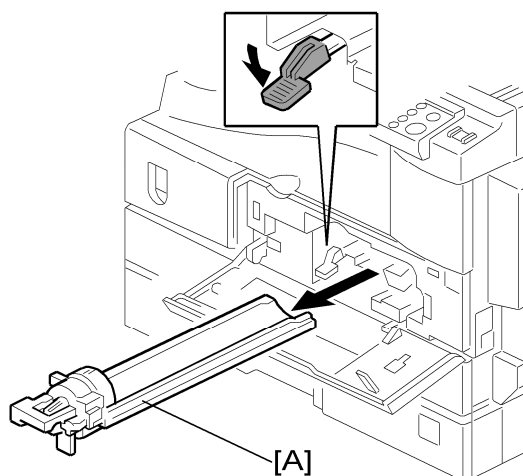
1.2.3 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

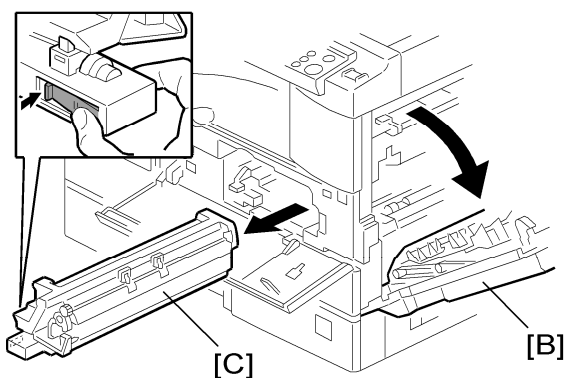
-21. Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.



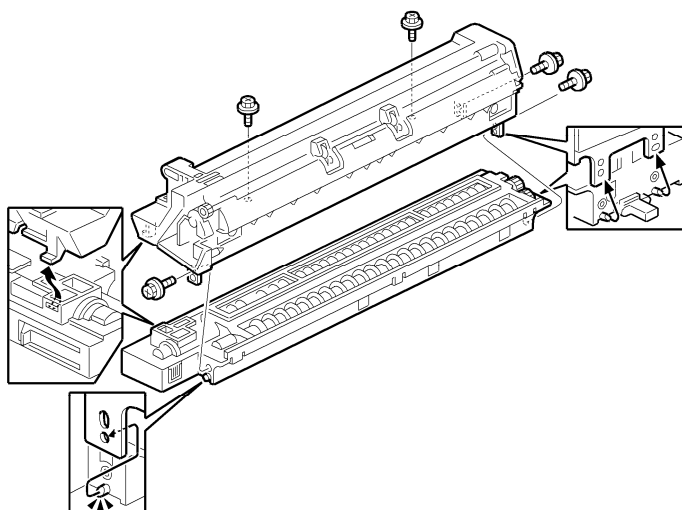
1. Remove filament tape and other padding.



2. Open the front door and remove the toner bottle holder [A]



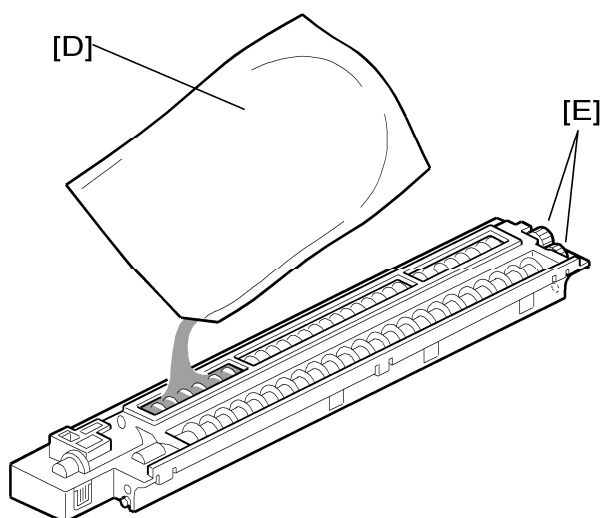
3. Open the right door [B], and remove the PCU (photoconductor unit) [C].



4. Separate the PCU into the upper part and the lower part (⚙ x 5).
5. Put a sheet of paper on a level surface and place the upper part on it.

↓ Note

-6850556. This prevents foreign material from getting on the sleeve rollers

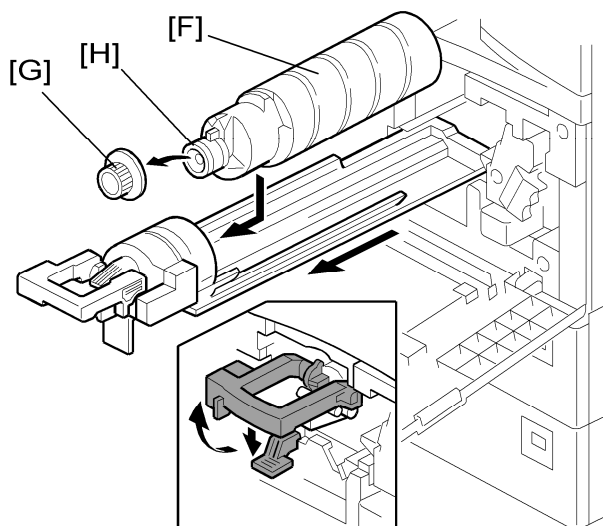


6. Distribute a pack of developer [D] to all openings equally.



-6850556. Do not spill the developer on the gears [E]. If you have spilled it, remove the developer by using a magnet or magnetized screwdriver.

-6850555. Do not turn the gear [E] too much. The developer may spill.

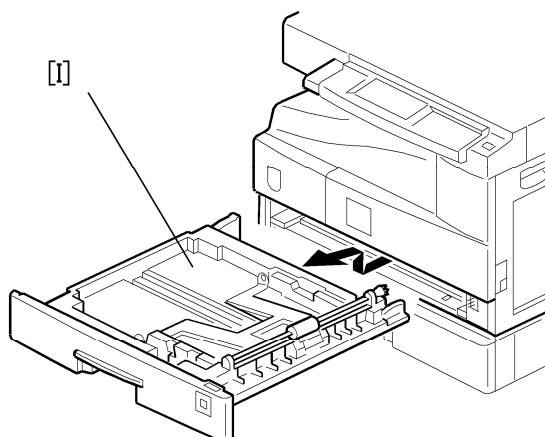


7. Reassemble the PCU and reinstall it.

8. Shake the toner bottle [F] several times. (Do not remove the bottle cap [G] before you shake the bottle.)

9. Remove the bottle cap [G] and install the bottle on the holder. (Do not touch the inner cap [H].)

10. Set the holder (with the toner bottle) in the machine.



11. Pull out the paper tray [I] and turn the paper size dial to the appropriate size.
Adjust the positions of the end and side guides.



-6850556. To move the side guides, release the green lock on the rear side guide.

12. Install the optional ARDF, ADF, or platen cover.
13. Plug in the main power cord and turn on the main switch.
14. Activate the SP mode and execute "Devlpr Initialize" (SP 2214 1).
15. Wait until the message "Completed" shows (about 45 seconds).
16. Activate the User Tools and select the menu "Language."
17. Specify a language. This language is used for the operation panel.
18. Load the paper in the paper tray and make a full size copy, and make sure the side-to-side and leading edge registrations are correct.

1.3 PLATEN COVER INSTALLATION

1.3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check that you have the accessories indicated below.

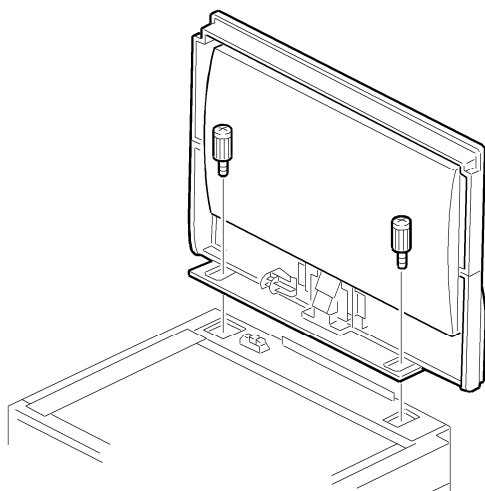
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Stepped Screw	2

1.3.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

-21. Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

Install the platen cover (🔩 x 2).

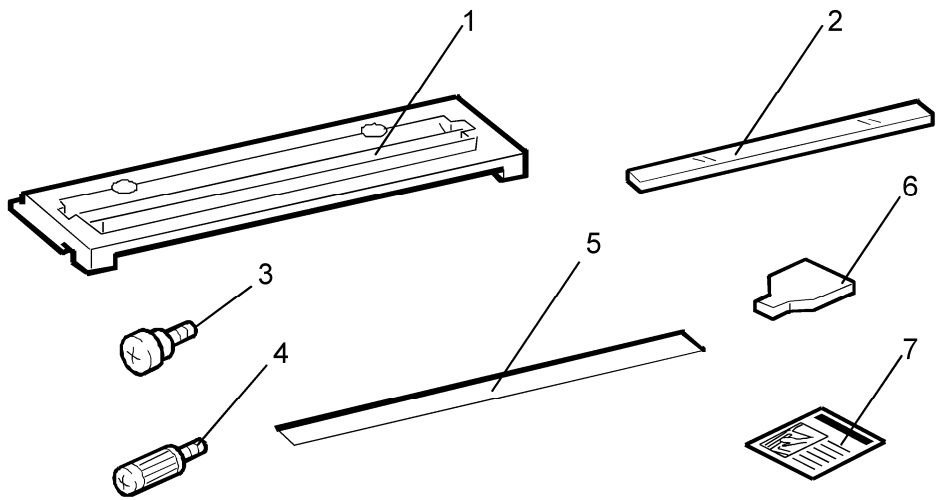


1.4 ARDF INSTALLATION

1.4.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

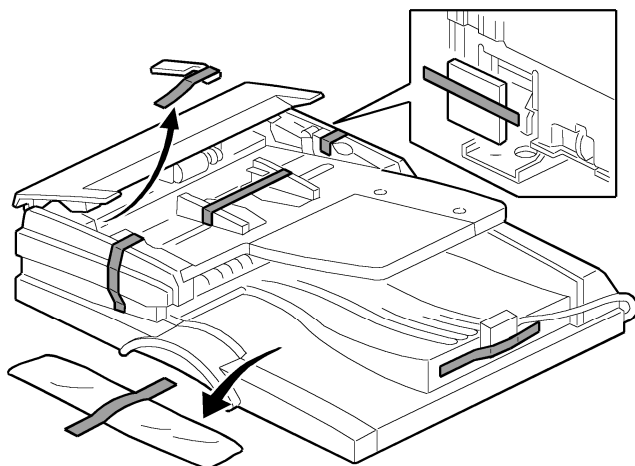
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Scale Guide	1
2	DF Exposure Glass	1
3	Stud Screw	2
4	Knob Screw	2
5	Original Size Decal	2
6	Screwdriver Tool	1
7	Attention Decal—Top Cover	1
8	Stamp Cartridge	1
9	Installation Procedure	1



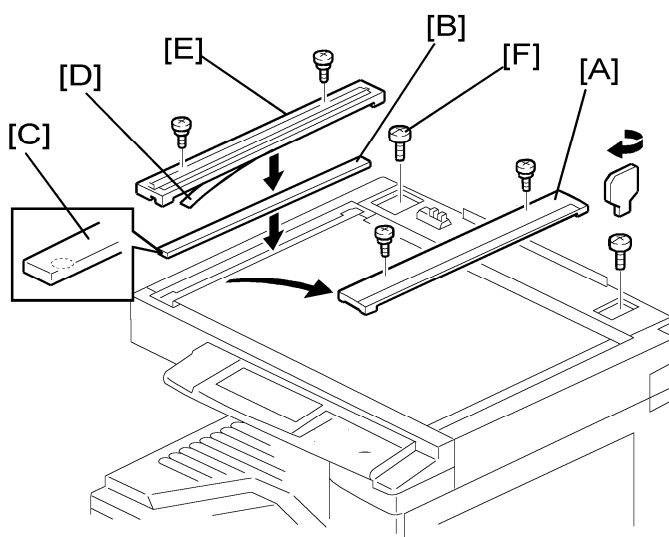
1.4.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

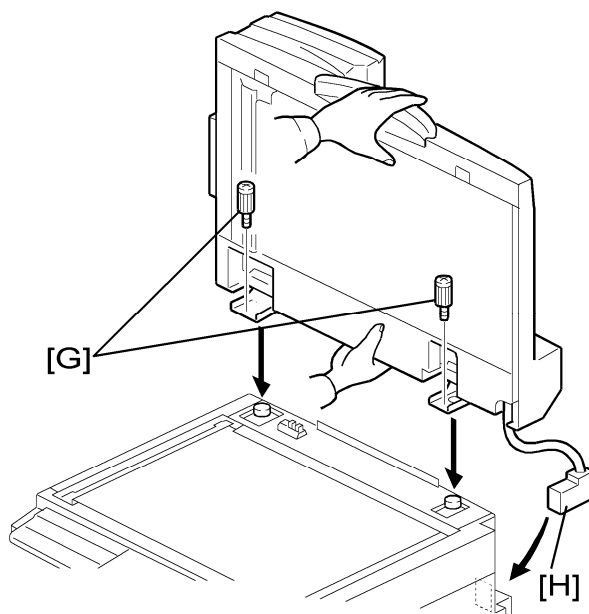
-21. Unplug the copier power cord before starting the following procedure.



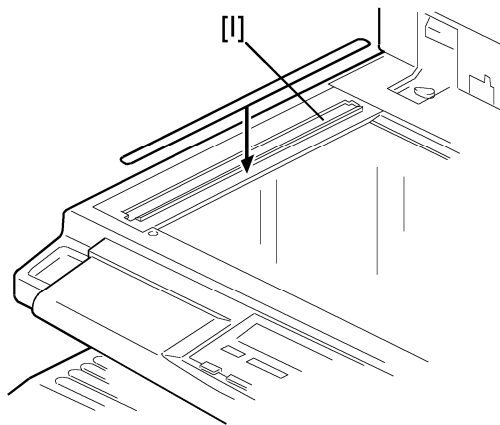
1. Remove the strips of tape.



2. Remove the left scale [A] (2).
3. Place the DF exposure glass [B] on the glass holder. Make sure that the white mark [C] is on the bottom at the front end.
4. Peel off the backing [D] of the double-sided tape attached to the rear side of the scale guide [E], then install the scale guide (2 [removed in step 2]).
5. Install the two stud screws [F].
6. Mount the ARDF on the copier, and then slide it to the front.



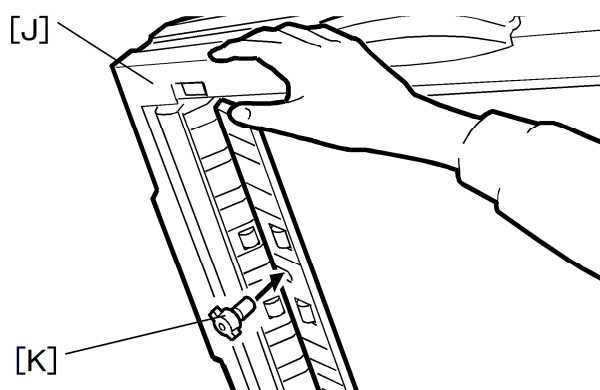
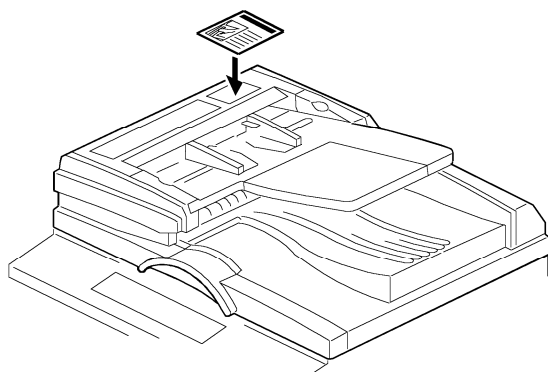
7. Secure the ARDF unit with the knob screws [G].
8. Connect the cable [H] to the copier.



9. Attach the appropriate original size decal [I] as shown.
10. Attach an attention decal to the top cover.

Note

-21. The attention decals in the package are written in different languages.



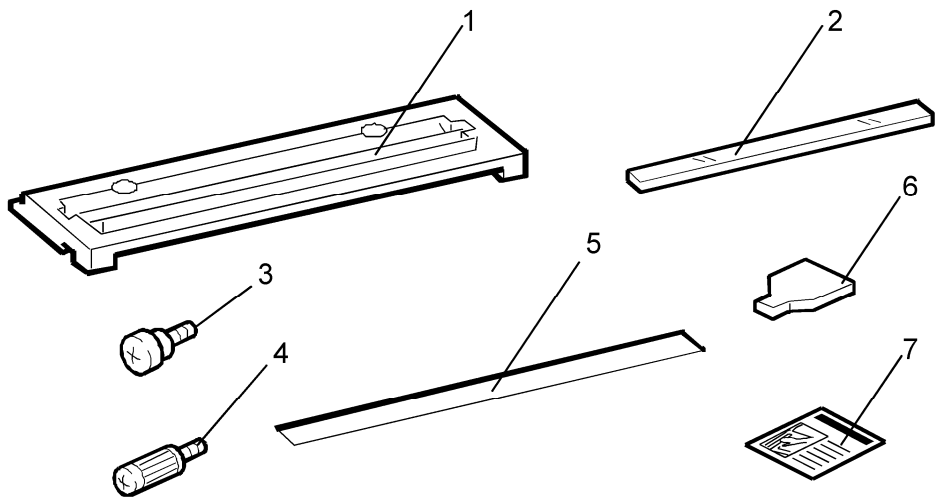
11. Open the ARDF [J].
12. Install the stamp cartridge [K] to the ARDF.
13. Make a full size copy, and check that the side-to-side and leading edge registrations are correct. If they are not, adjust the side-to-side and leading edge registrations. (p.3-64)

1.5 ADF INSTALLATION

1.5.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

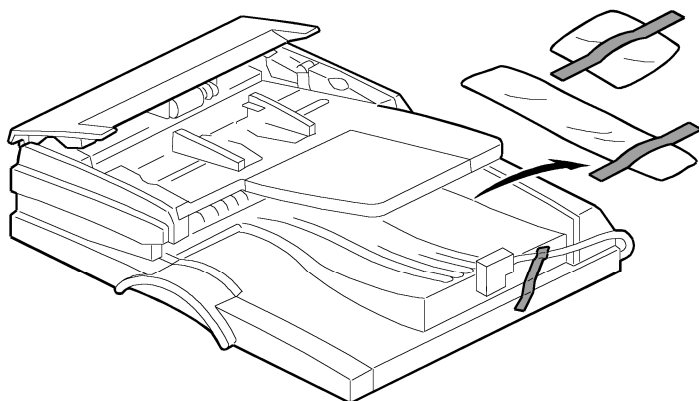
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Scale Guide	1
2	DF Exposure Glass	1
3	Stud Screw	2
4	Fixing Screw	2
5	Original Size Decal	2
6	Screwdriver Tool	1
7	Attention Decal—Top Cover	1
8	Stamp Cartridge	1
9	Installation Procedure	1



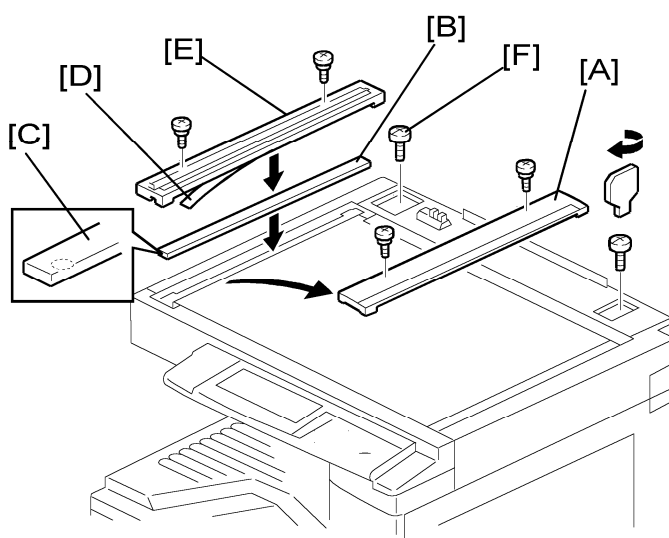
1.5.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠ CAUTION

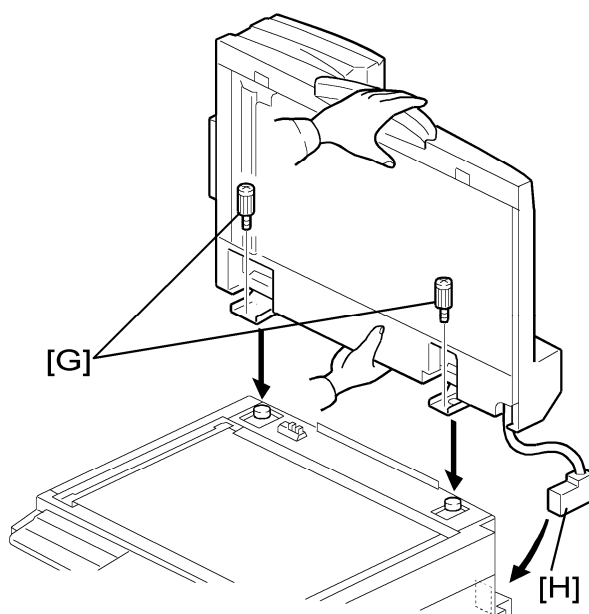
-21. Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.



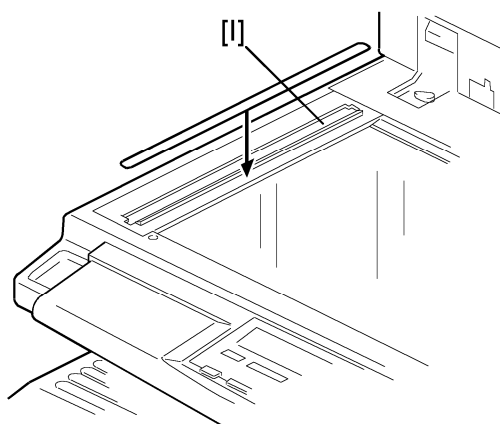
1. Remove the strips of tape.



2. Remove the left scale [A] (⚙ x 2).
3. Place the DF exposure glass [B] on the glass holder. Make sure that the white mark [C] is on the bottom at the front end.
4. Peel off the backing [D] of the double-sided tape attached to the rear side of the scale guide [E], then install the scale guide (⚙ x 2 [removed in step 2]).
5. Install the two stud screws [F].
6. Mount the ADF on the copier, and then slide it to the front.



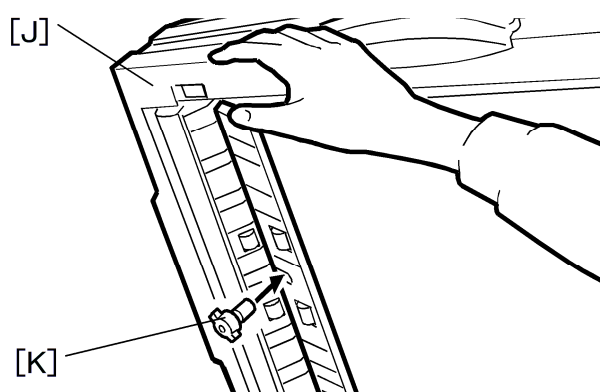
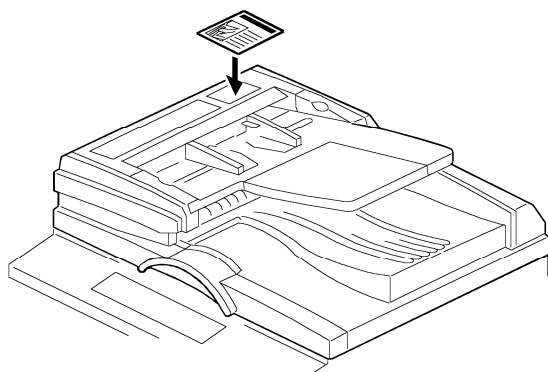
7. Secure the ADF unit with the fixing screws [G].
8. Connect the cable [H] to the copier.
9. Attach the appropriate scale decal [I] as shown.



10. Attach an attention decal to the top cover.



-21. The attention decals in the package are written in different languages.



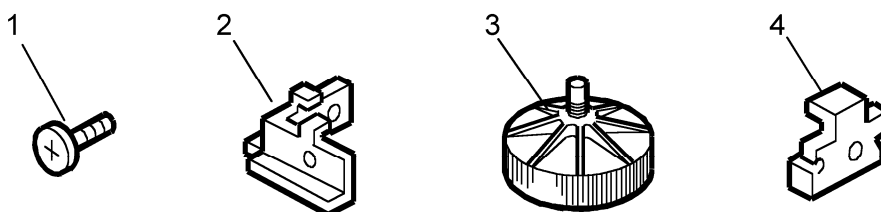
11. Open the ADF [J].
12. Install the stamp cartridge [K] to the ADF
13. Turn the main power switch on. Then check if the document feeder works properly.
14. Make a full size copy, and check that the side-to-side and leading edge registrations are correct. If they are not, adjust the side-to-side and leading edge registrations. (p.3-64).

1.6 TWO-TRAY PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION

1.6.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

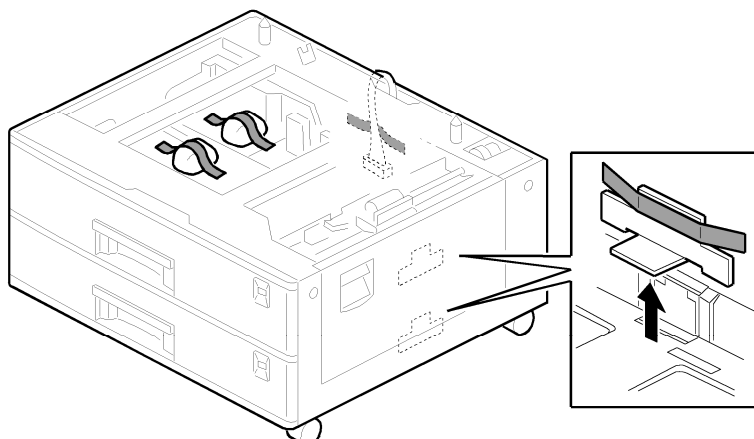
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Screw – M4x10	10
2	Unit Holder	2 x 2 pieces
3	Adjuster	1
4	Unit Holder	2



1.6.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

⚠ CAUTION

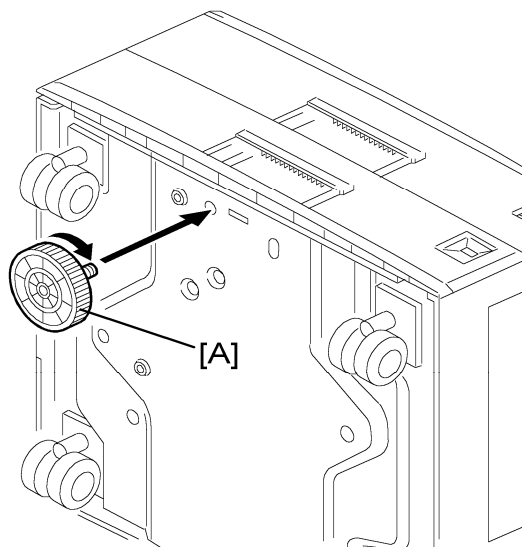
- 21. If the optional printer unit is installed:
- 6850556. Print out all data in the printer buffer.
- 6850555. Disconnect the network cable.
- 6850554. Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.



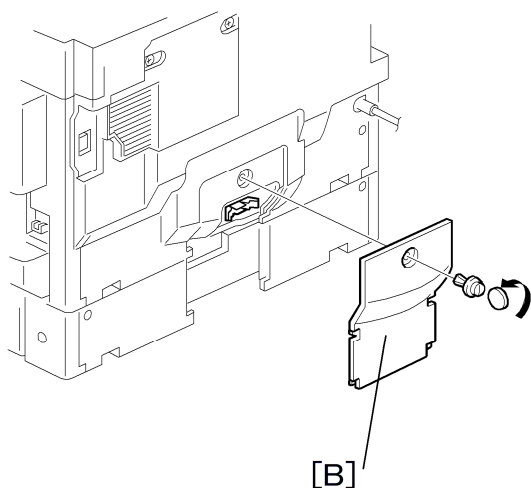
1. Remove the strips of tape. Make sure that you have removed all the strips of tape and all the pieces of cardboard.

Note

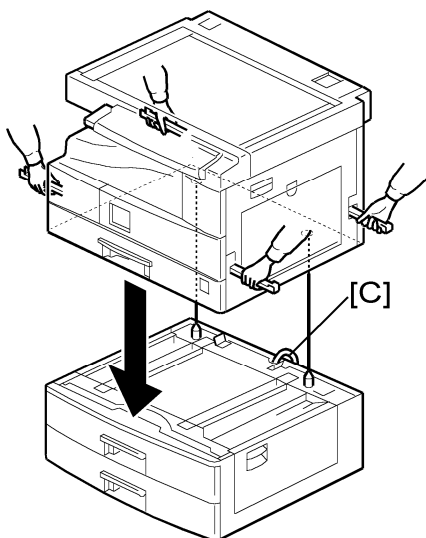
-6850556. After removing the tape that secures the peripheral components and cardboard to the paper tray, make sure that there is no tape and/or tape residue remaining on the tray.

**2. Attach the adjuster [A] to the base plate as shown.****Note**

-21. This step is not necessary if a cabinet is installed.

**3. Remove the cover [B] (1 rivet).**

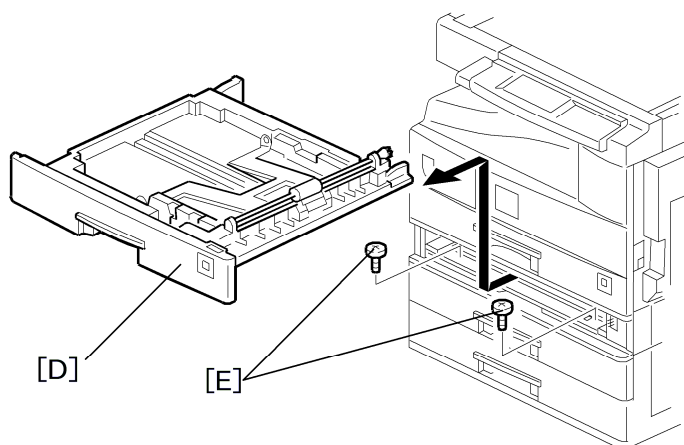
Two-tray Paper Tray Unit Installation



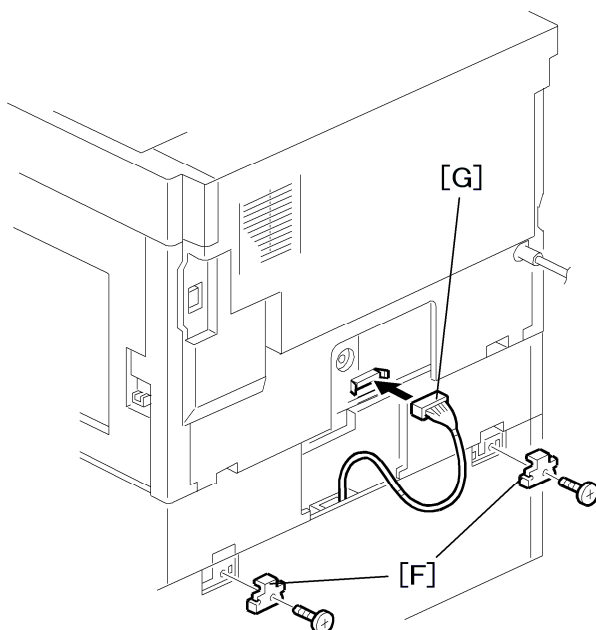
4. Set the copier on the paper tray unit.

CAUTION

-6850556. Before placing the copier on the paper tray unit, make sure that the harness [C] is securely routed. The paper tray unit does not function properly if the harness is damaged.



5. One-tray copier model (B268/B276): Remove the 1st tray cassette [D].
Two-tray copier models (B269/B277): Remove the 2nd tray cassette [D].
6. Install the two screws [E].
7. Reinstall the tray cassette.

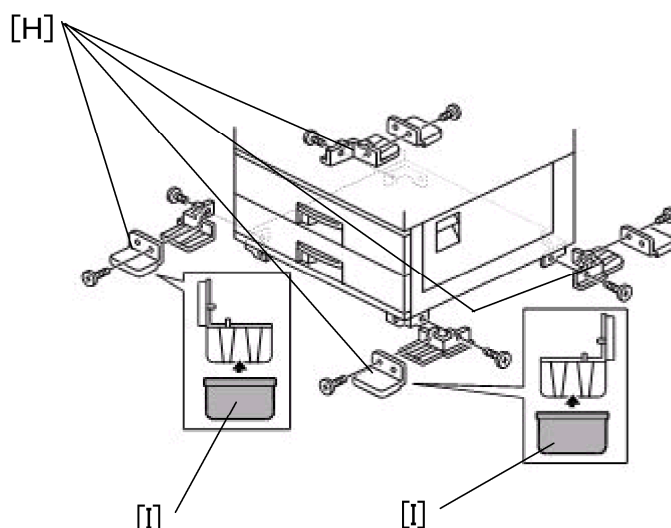


8. Install the two brackets [F] (x 1 (each))
9. Connect the connecting harness [G] to the copier.

↓ Note

-6850556. There are cutouts for the plugs on both sides. The left side has one cutout, and the right side has two.

10. Reinstall the cover removed in step 3 (1 rivet).

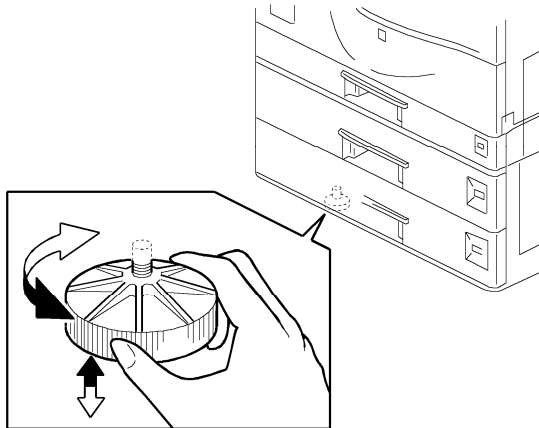


11. Install the four brackets with long supports [H] and covers [I](2 screws each).

↓ Note

-6850556. These long supports prevent the unit from tipping over.

Two-tray Paper Tray Unit Installation



- 12. Rotate the adjuster (installed at step 2) to fix the machine in place.**



-6850556. If a cabinet is installed, this step is unnecessary.

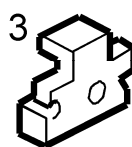
- 13. Load the paper in the paper trays and make full size copies from each tray.**
Check if the side-to-side and leading edge registrations are correct. If they are not, adjust the registrations (Copy Adjustments Printing/Scanning).

1.7 ONE-TRAY PAPER TRAY UNIT INSTALLATION

1.7.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Check the quantity and condition of the accessories against the following list.

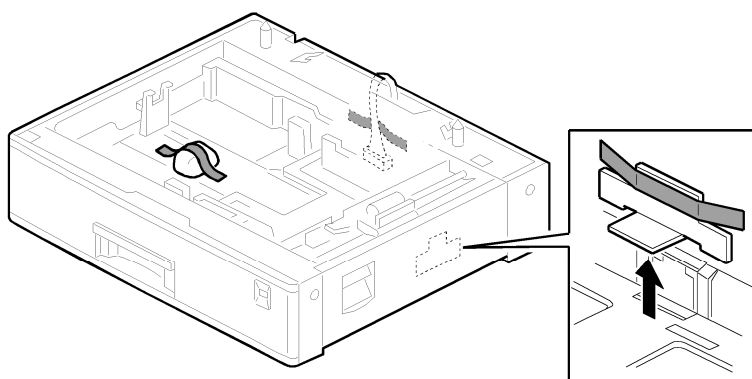
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Screw – M4 x 10	2
2	Stepped Screw – M4 x 10	2
3	Unit Holder	2



1.7.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

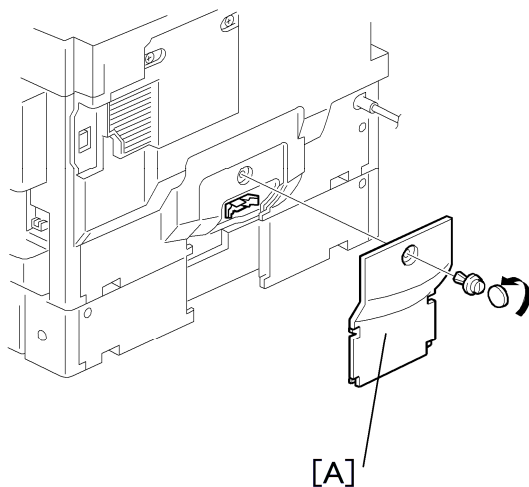
CAUTION

- 21. If the optional printer unit is installed:
- 6850556. Print out all data in the printer buffer.
- 6850555. Disconnect the network cable.
- 6850554. Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.



1. Remove the strips of tape. Make sure that you have removed all the strips of tape and all the pieces of cardboard.

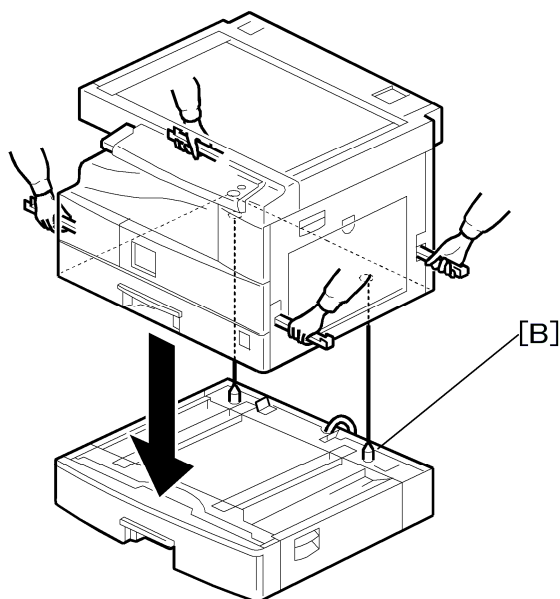
One-tray Paper Tray Unit Installation



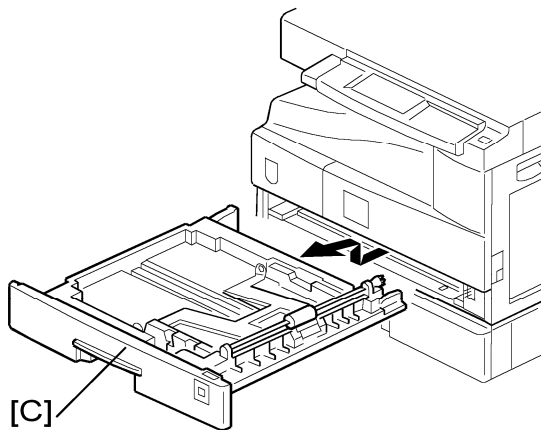
2. Remove the cover [A] (1 rivet).



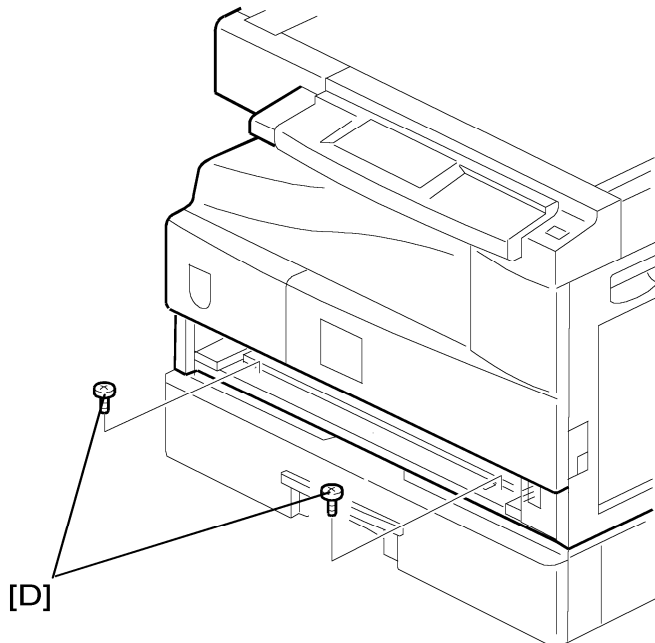
-6850556. Before placing the copier on the paper tray unit, make sure that the harness [B] is safe. The paper tray unit does not function properly if the harness is damaged.



3. Set the copier on the paper tray unit.

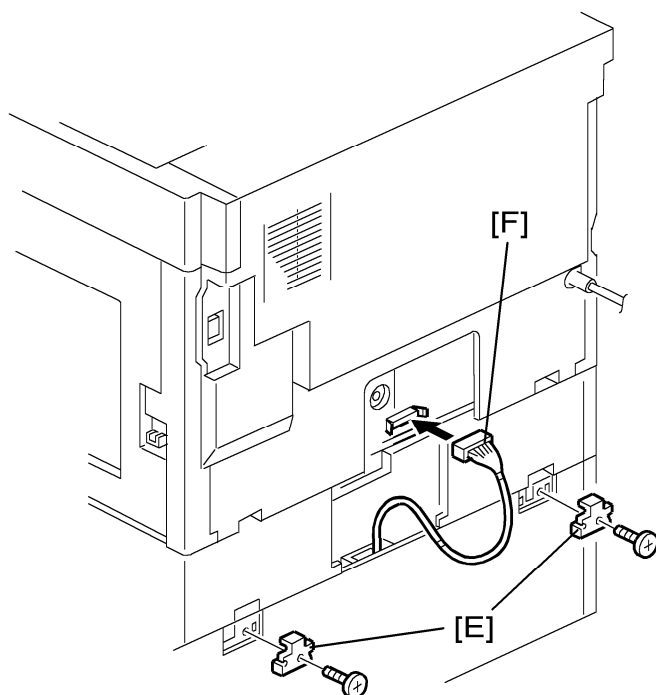


4. **One-tray copier model (B268/B276):** Remove the 1st tray cassette [C].
Two-tray copier models (B269/B277): Remove the 2nd tray cassette [C].



5. **Install the two screws [D].**
6. **Reinstall the tray cassette.**

One-tray Paper Tray Unit Installation



7. Install the two brackets [E]. (1 stepped screw each).

8. Connect the connecting harness [F] to the copier.

Note

-6850556. There are cutouts for the plugs on both sides. The left side has one cutout, and the right side has two.

9. Reinstall the cover removed in step 2.

10. Load the paper in the paper tray and make full size copies from tray. Check if the side-to-side and leading edge registrations are correct. If they are not, adjust the registrations (p.3-60).

1.8 ONE-BIN TRAY INSTALLATION

1.8.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

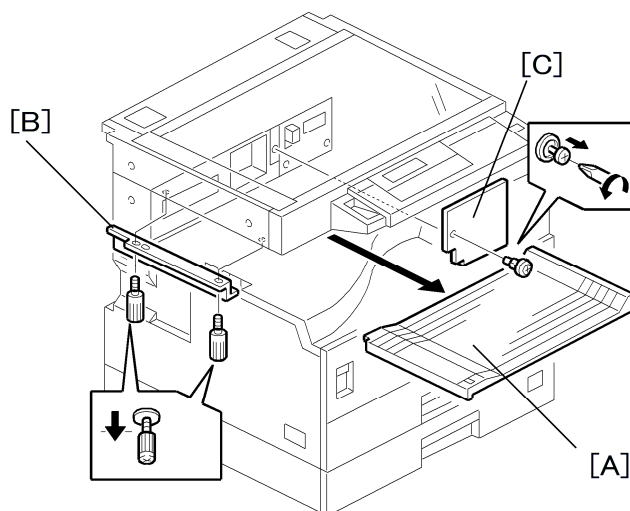
Check the quantity and condition of the accessories.

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Installation procedure	1
2	One-bin sorter	1
3	Exit tray	1
4	Tapping screw M3 x 6	1

1.8.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

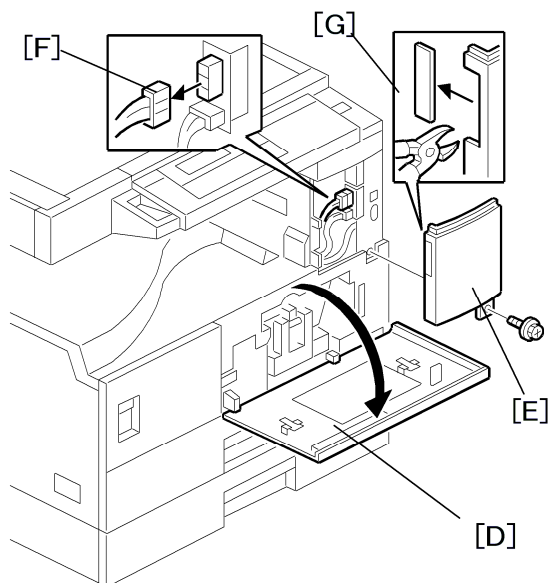
⚠ CAUTION

-21. Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

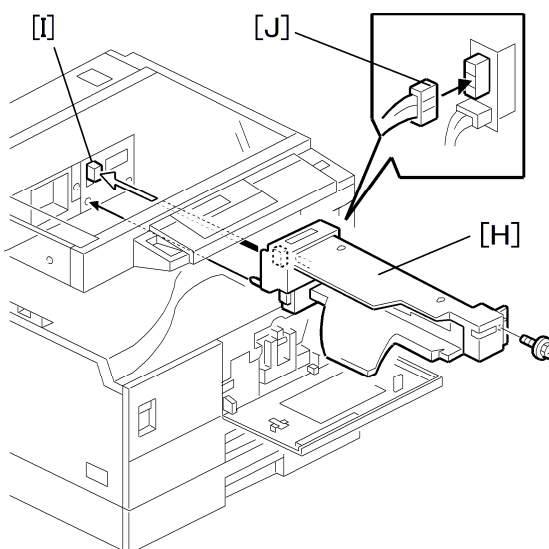


1. Remove the inverter tray [A].
2. Remove the rail [B] (2 knob screws).
3. Remove the cover [C] (1 rivet).

One-Bin Tray Installation



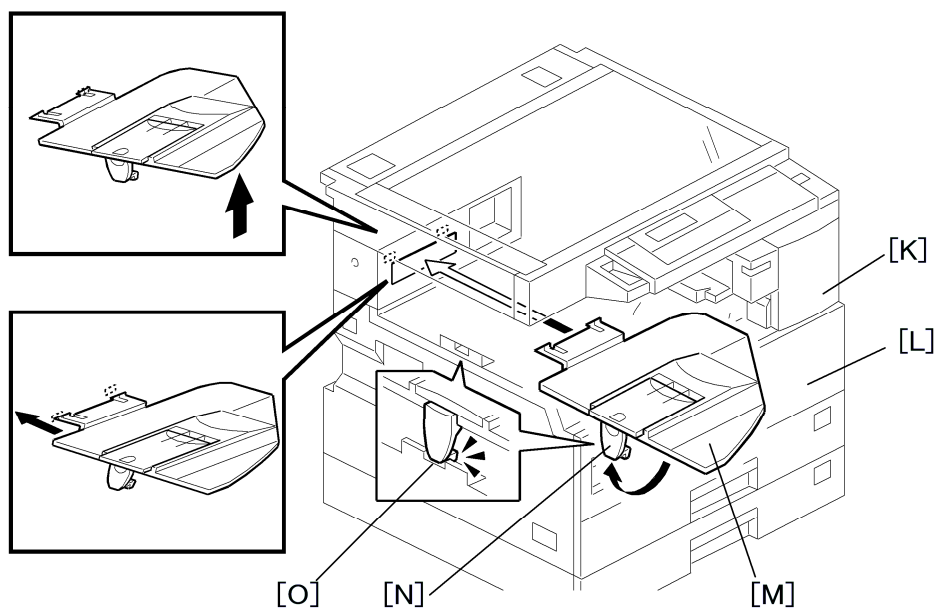
4. Open the front cover [D].
5. Remove the front right cover [E] (x 1).
6. Disconnect the connector [F].
7. Cut the front cover as shown, to make an opening [G] for the 1-bin tray.



8. Install the 1-bin tray [H].
9. Make sure the connectors [I] are connected firmly.
10. Fasten the screw.
11. Connect the connector [J] that you removed in step 6.

↓ Note

-6850556. Make sure that the connector is connected.



12. Reattach the front right cover [K].

13. Close the front cover [L].

14. Install the exit tray [M] as follows:

- 21. Keep the front end higher than the rear end.
- 20. Push the left hook into the opening in the copier.
- 19. Push the right hook into the opening in the copier.

15. Pull the support [N] out of the left end of the exit tray.

16. Insert the support into the left end of the paper exit tray [O] (of the copier).

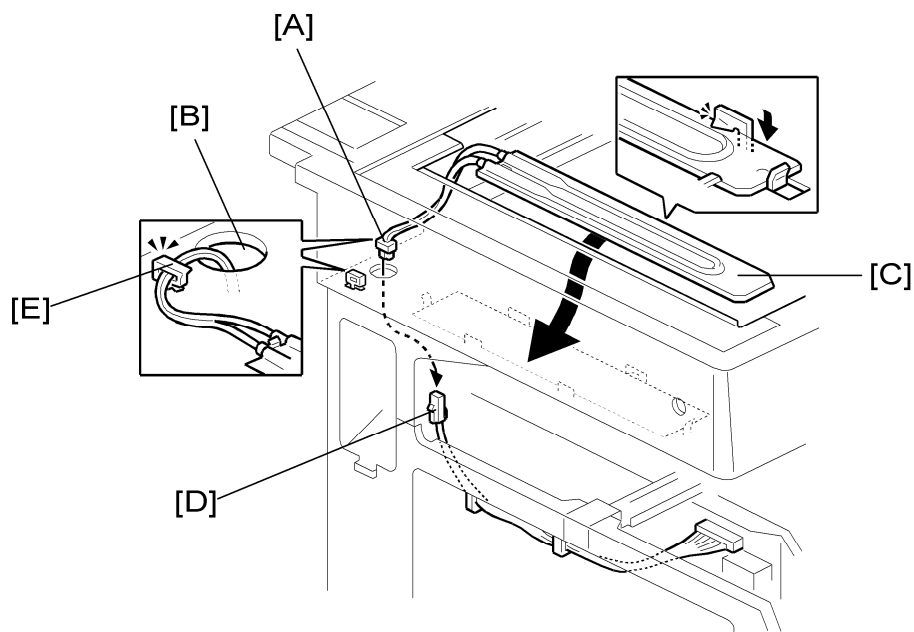
17. Turn the main switch on.

18. Check the operation.

1.9 ANTI-CONDENSATION HEATER INSTALLATION

⚠ CAUTION

-21. Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.



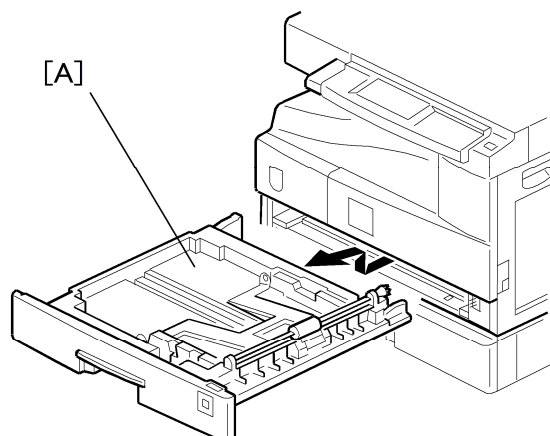
1. Remove the exposure glass.
2. Remove the left cover.
3. Pass the connector [A] through the opening [B].
4. Install the anti-condensation heater [C], as shown.
5. Join the connectors [A, D].
6. Clamp the harness with the clamp [E].
7. Reinstall the left cover and exposure glass.

1.10 TRAY HEATERS

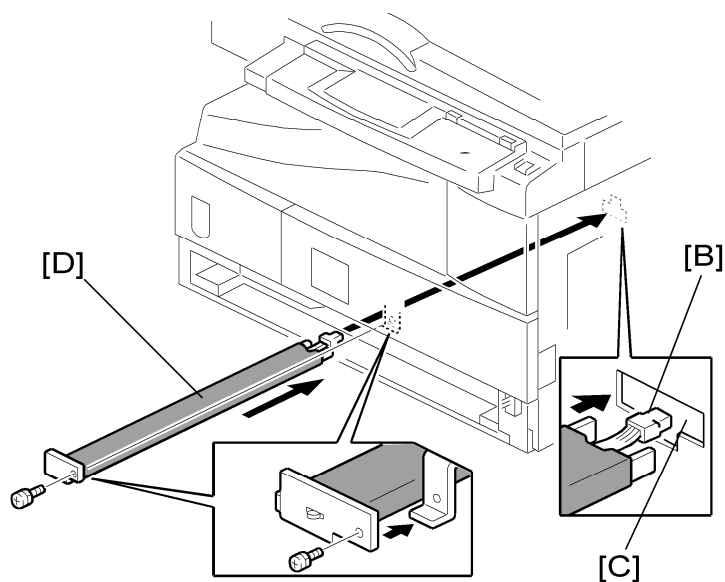
⚠ CAUTION

-21. Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

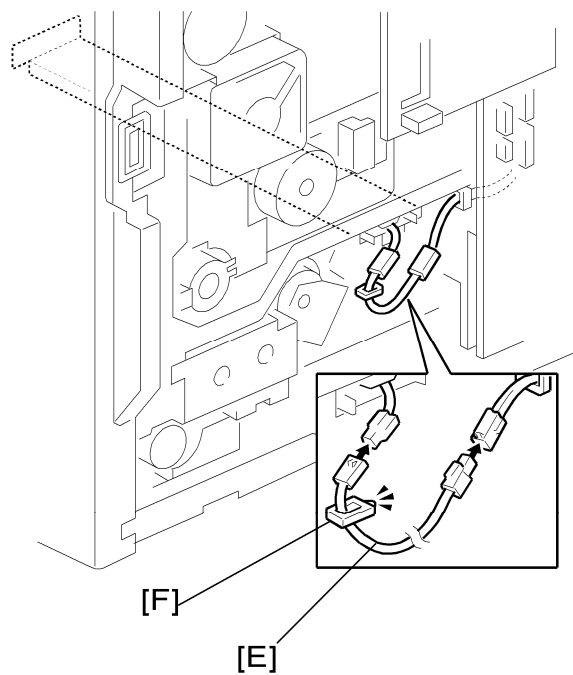
1.10.1 UPPER TRAY HEATER



1. Remove the 1st tray cassette [A].
2. Remove the rear cover.

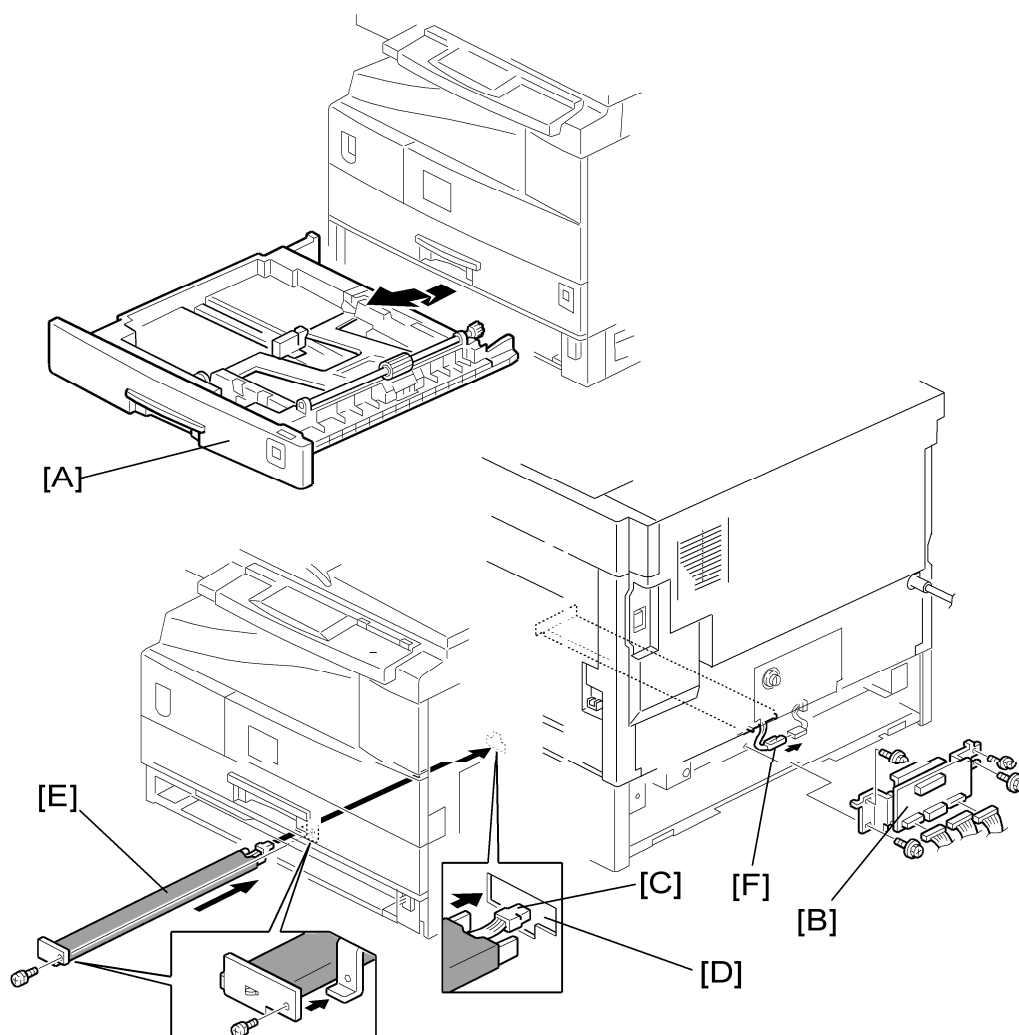


3. Pass the connector [B] through the opening [C] and install the tray heater [D] (x 1).



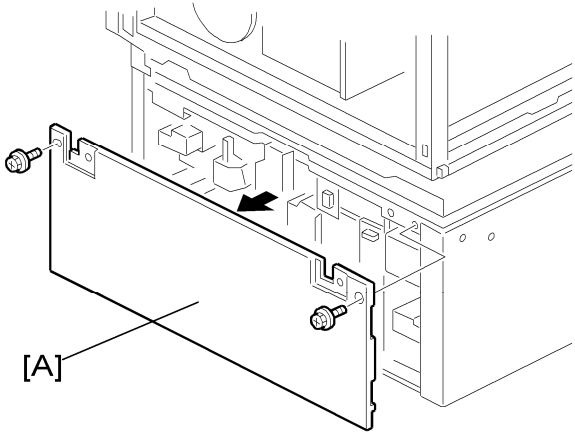
4. Install the relay harness [E].
5. Fix the harness with the clamp [F].
6. Reinstall the 1st tray cassette and the rear cover.

1.10.2 LOWER TRAY HEATER (TWO-TRAY MODEL ONLY)



1. Remove the 2nd tray cassette [A].
2. Remove the rear lower cover.
3. B277/B269 only: Remove the DCB [B] with bracket (🔧 x 4, 📦 x 3).
4. Pass the connector [C] through the opening [D] and install the tray heater [E] (🔧 x 1).
5. Join the connectors [F].
6. Reinstall the 2nd tray cassette, DCB, and rear lower cover.

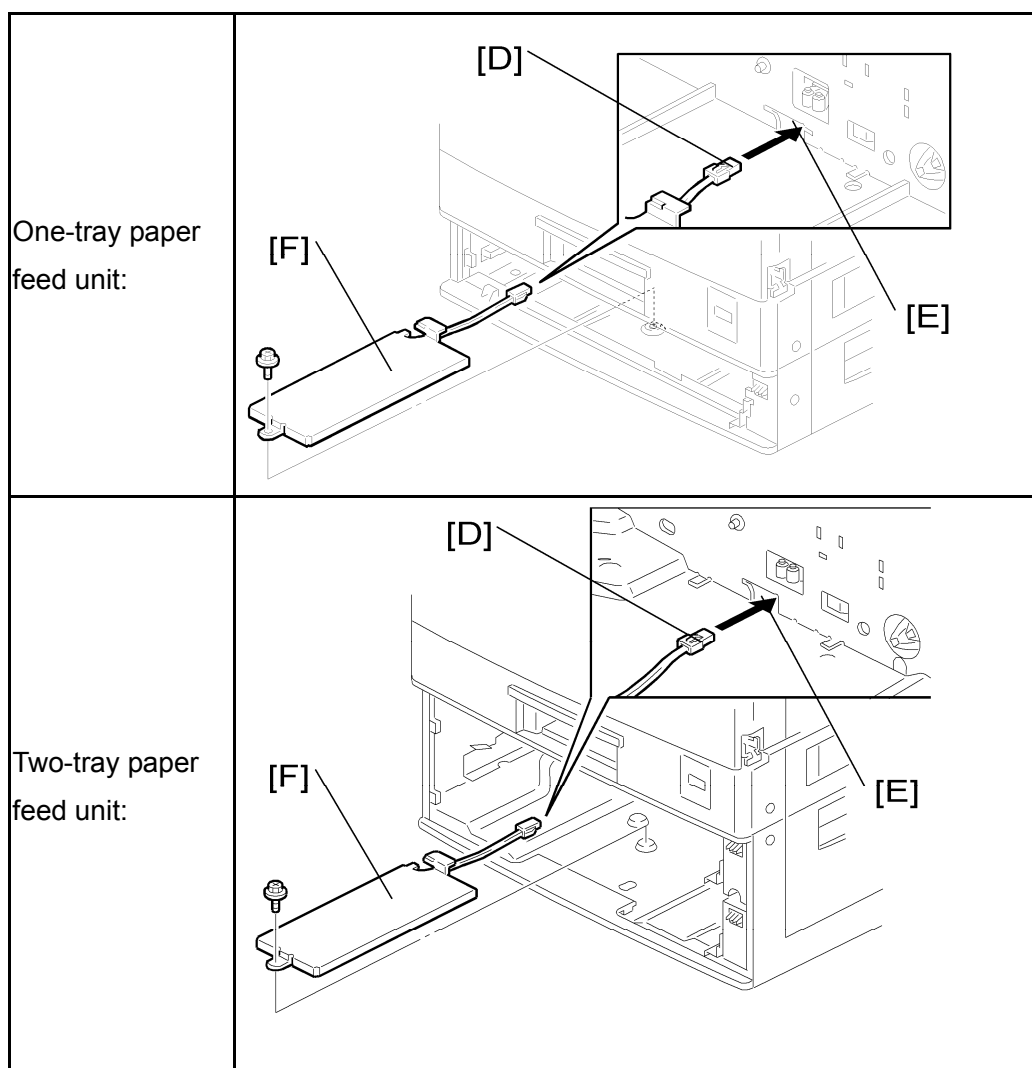
1.10.3 TRAY HEATERS FOR THE OPTIONAL PAPER FEED UNITS

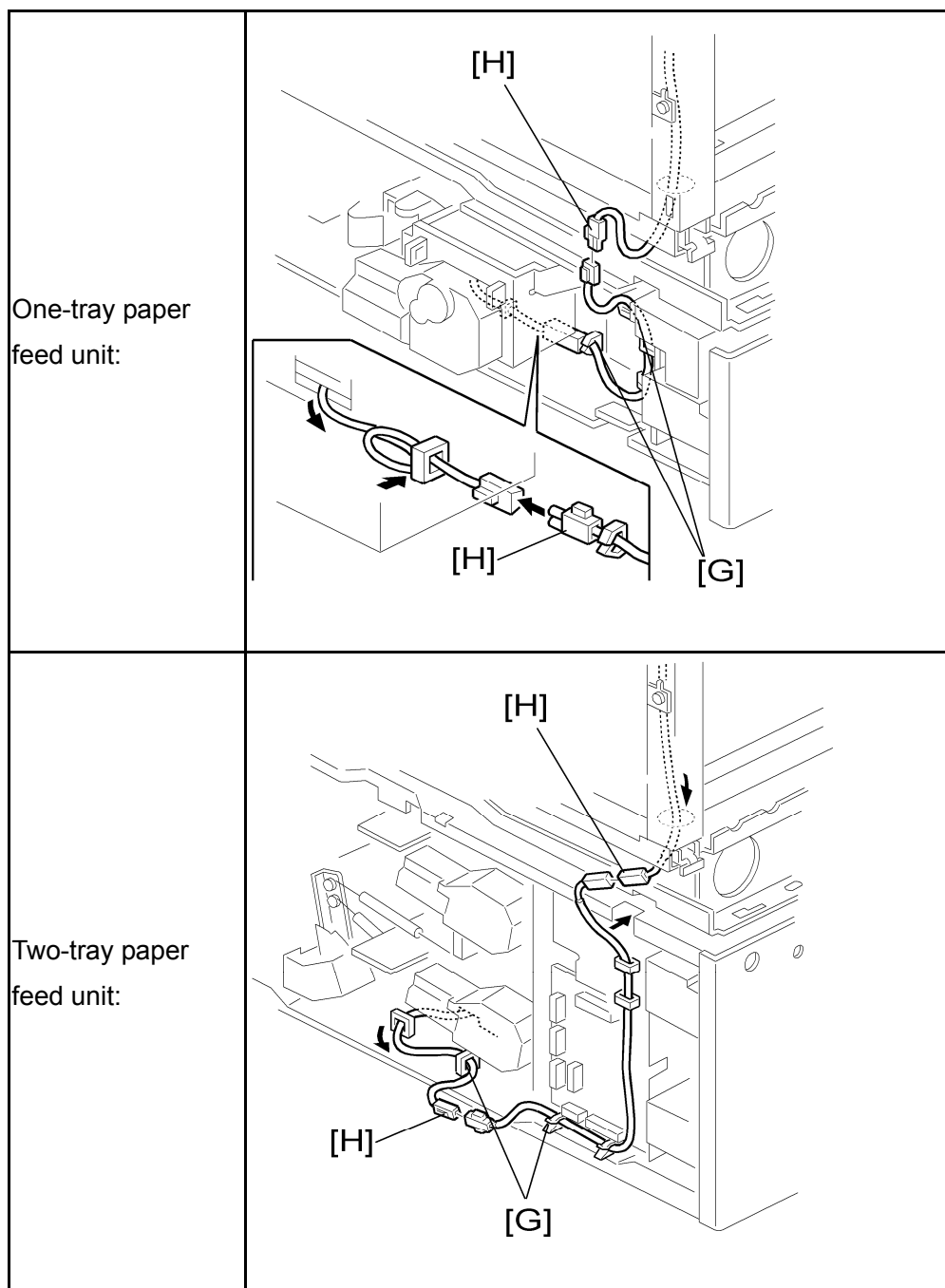


1. Remove the rear cover [A] for the paper tray unit.

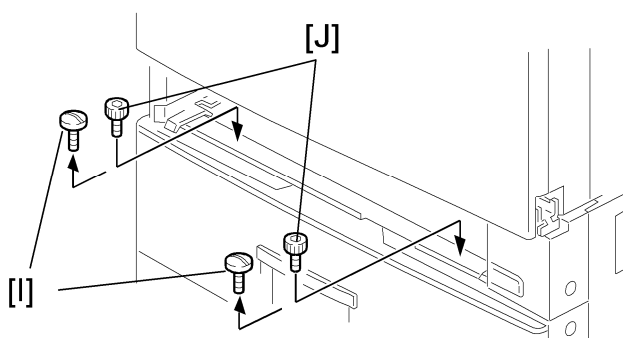
One-tray paper feed unit:	A line drawing of a one-tray paper feed unit. A cable guide, labeled [C], is shown being removed from the unit. An arrow points to the cable guide. Another arrow points to the top edge of the unit.
Two-tray paper feed unit:	A line drawing of a two-tray paper feed unit. A cable guide, labeled [B], is shown being removed from the unit. An arrow points to the cable guide. Another arrow points to the top edge of the unit. A third arrow points to a cable guide, labeled [C], which is also being removed.

2. Two-tray unit only: Remove the cable guide [B].

3. Install the clamps [C].**4. Pass the connector [D] through the opening [E].****5. Install the tray heater [F] (🔩 x 1).**



6. Clamp the cables [G], as shown.
7. Join the connectors [H].
8. Two-tray unit only: Reinstall the cable guide.
9. One-tray copier model (B268/B276): Remove the 1st tray cassette.
Two-tray copier models (B269/B277): Remove the 2nd tray cassette.

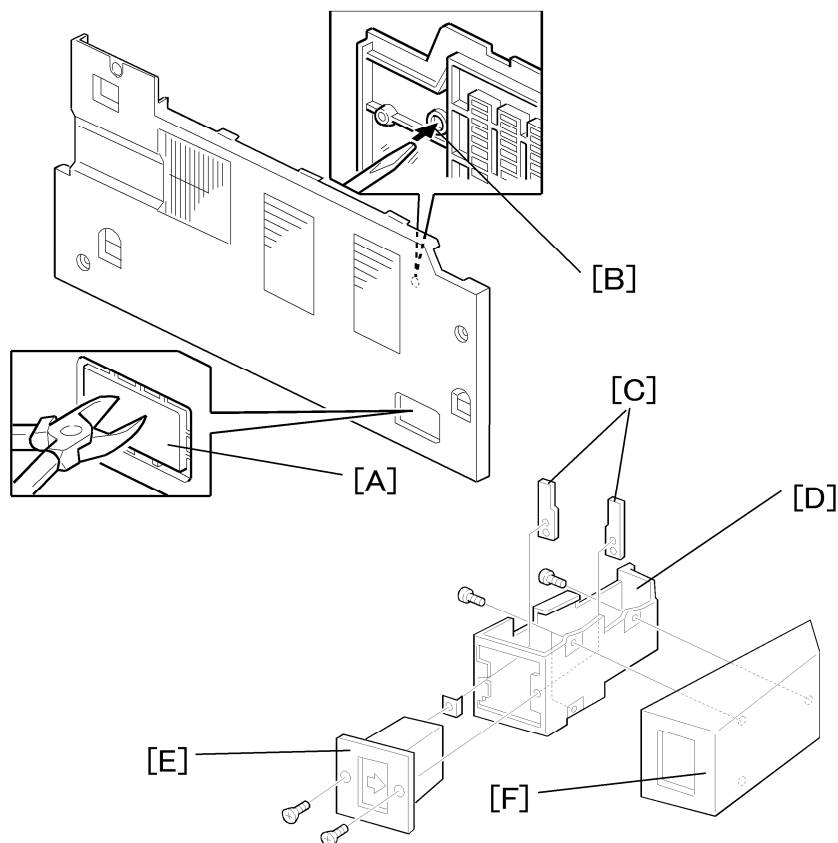


10. Remove the two screws [I] and install the two hexagonal socket screws [J].
11. Reinstall the 1st tray/2nd tray(s) and rear cover.

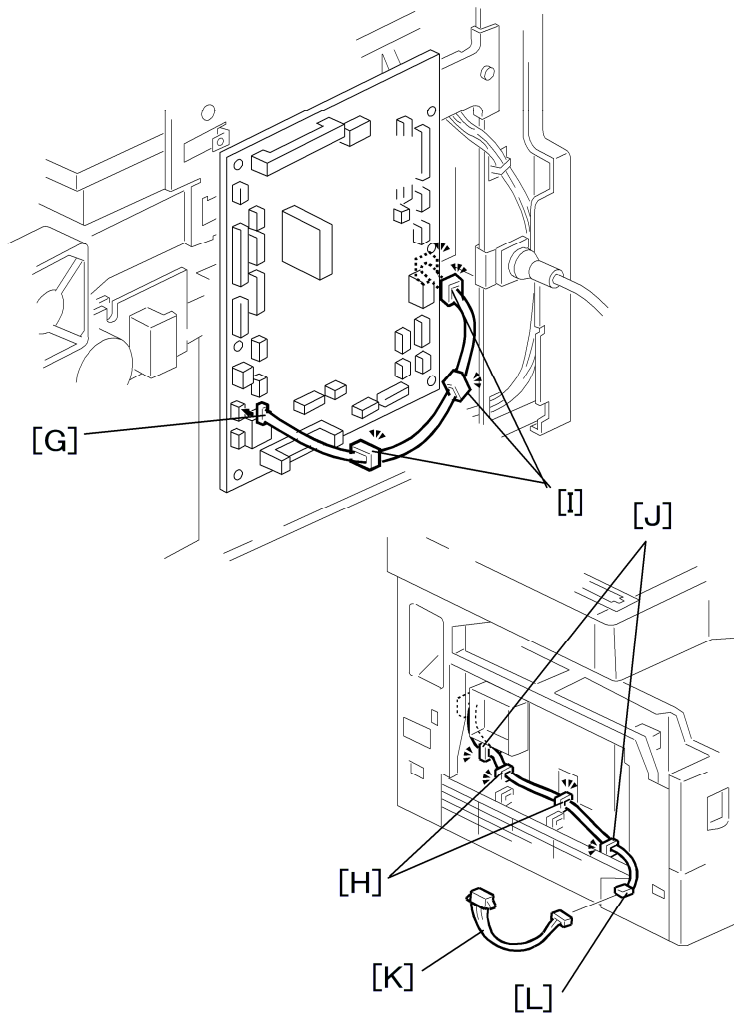
1.11 KEY COUNTER INSTALLATION

⚠ CAUTION

-21. Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.



1. Remove the left cover.
2. Remove the rear cover.
3. Cut the cap [A] with nippers.
4. Punch out the small hole [B] using a screwdriver.
5. Hold the key counter plate nuts [C] on the inside of the key counter bracket [D] and insert the key counter holder [E].
6. Secure the key counter holder to the bracket (🔩 x 2).
7. Install the key counter cover [F] (🔩 x 2).



8. Connect the connector [G] to CN126 on the BICU.

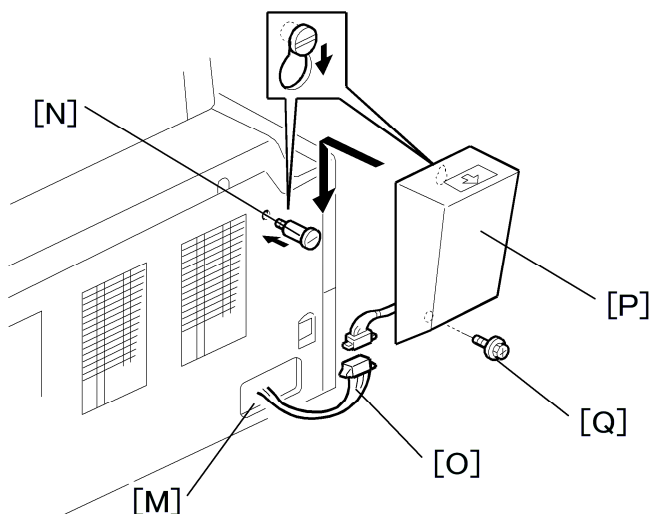
9. Hold the harness with the clamps [H][I][J].

↓ Note

-6850556. The relay harness is not included in the key counter bracket accessories.

10. Join the relay harness [K] with the connector [L].

11. Reinstall the rear cover.



12. Pass the relay harness through the opening [M] and reinstall the left cover.
13. Install the stepped screw [N].
14. Join the connectors [O].
15. Pass the joined connectors through the opening of the key counter holder assembly [P], and put the connectors inside the assembly.
16. Hook the key counter holder assembly onto the stepped screw [N]. Check that the harness is not caught between the left cover and the key counter holder assembly.
17. Secure the key counter holder assembly with the screw [Q].

1.12 DDST EXPANSION

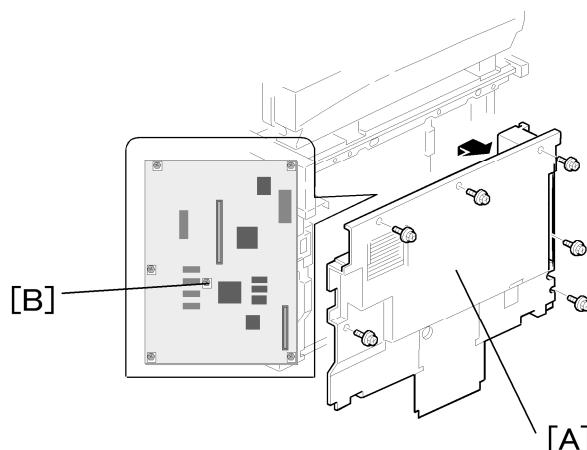
1.12.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Cover-CPS NA	1
2	Cover-CPS EU	1
3	Ferrite Core (B866 only)	1
4	Tapping Screw-M3X6	6
5	Sheet-EULA	1
6	Seal-Caution	1
7	Installation Procedure	1

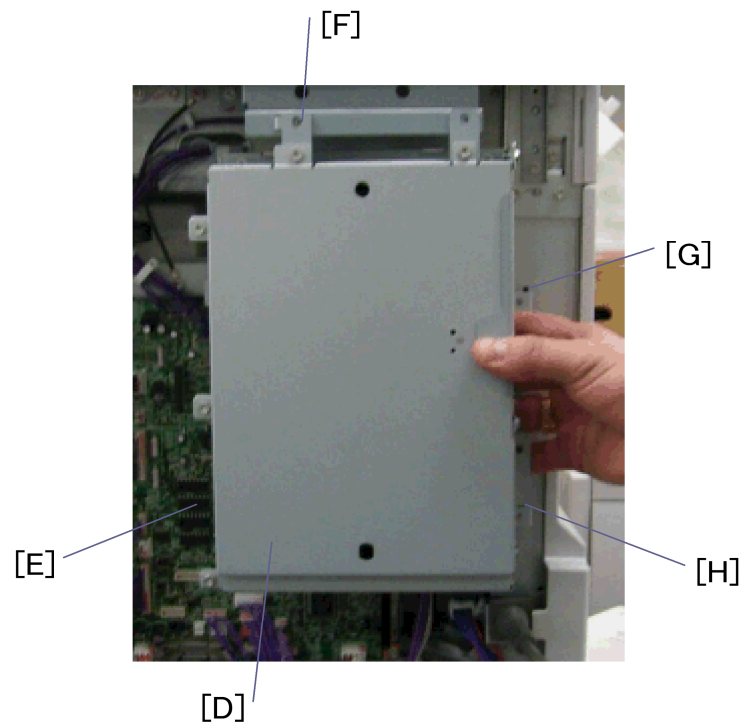
1.12.2 INSTALLING EXPANSION COMPONENT

CAUTION

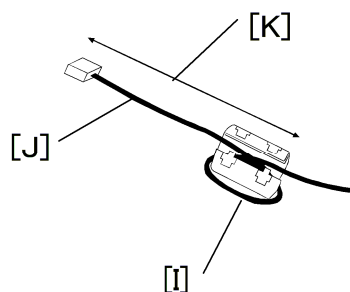
-21. Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.



1. Remove the rear cover [A] (⚙ x 6).
2. Remove one screw [B] from the BICU.



3. Connect the controller box [D] to the BICU. Make sure that the BICU [E] is not damaged and that the three openings [F][G][H] hold the controller box.
4. Fasten the screws (🔩 x 7).



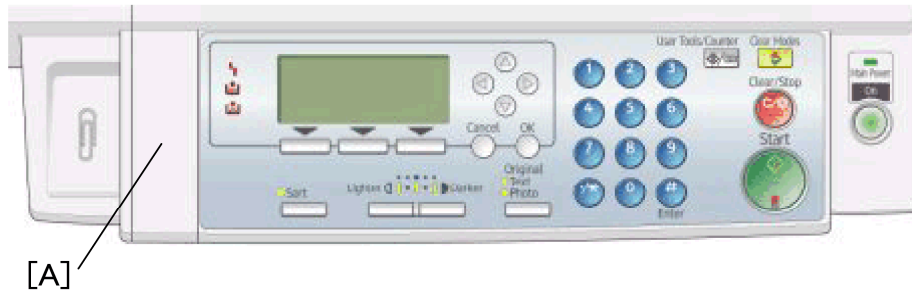
5. Attach the ferrite core [I] to the network cable [J]. The end of the ferrite core must be about 10 cm (4") from the end of the cable [K].

↓ Note

-6850556. This procedure is only for machines with the B866 option.

6. Re-attach the rear cover [A] (🔩 x 6).

1.13 INSTALLING PANELS AND KEYS



1. Remove the dummy cover [A] from the operation panel.



2. Install the printer/scanner panel [B] on the operation panel.

PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

2. PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

2.1 PM TABLES



-21. After preventive maintenance work, reset the PM counter (SP 7804 1).

-20. PM intervals (60k, 80k, and 120K) indicate the number of prints.

Key: AN: As necessary C: Clean R: Replace L: Lubricate I: Inspect

Optics

	EM	60k	120k	AN	NOTE
Reflector	C				Optics cloth
1st mirror	C			C	Optics cloth
2nd mirror	C			C	Optics cloth
3rd mirror	C			C	Optics cloth
Scanner guide rails	C				Do not use alcohol.
Platen cover	I			C	Replace the platen sheet if necessary. Blower brush or alcohol
Exposure glass	C			C	Blower brush or alcohol
Toner shield glass	C				Blower brush
APS sensors	C				Blower brush

Drum Area

	EM	60k	120k	AN	NOTE
PCU		I			
Drum		R			
Developer		R			
Charge roller		R			
Cleaning brush (charge roller)		R			
Cleaning blade (OPC drum)		R			
Pick-off pawls (OPC drum)		R			
Transfer roller			R		
ID sensor	C			C	Blower brush

Paper Feed

	EM	60k	120k	AN	NOTE
Paper feed roller (each tray)		C	R	C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Friction pad (each tray)		C	R	C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Bottom-plate pad (each tray)		C		C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Paper feed roller (bypass tray)		C		C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Friction pad (bypass tray)		C		C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Bottom-plate pad (by-pass tray)		C		C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Registration rollers		C		C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Relay rollers		C		C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Paper feed guides		C		C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Paper-dust Mylar		C		C	Clean with water or alcohol.

Fusing Unit

	EM	60k	120k	AN	NOTE
Hot roller			R		
Pressure roller			R		
Pressure roller cleaning roller			R		
Hot roller bushings			I		
Pressure-roller bushing			R		
Hot roller stripper pawls			R	C	Dry cloth
Thermistor		C		C	Dry cloth
Cleaning roller bushing			C	C	Dry cloth

ADF/ARDF

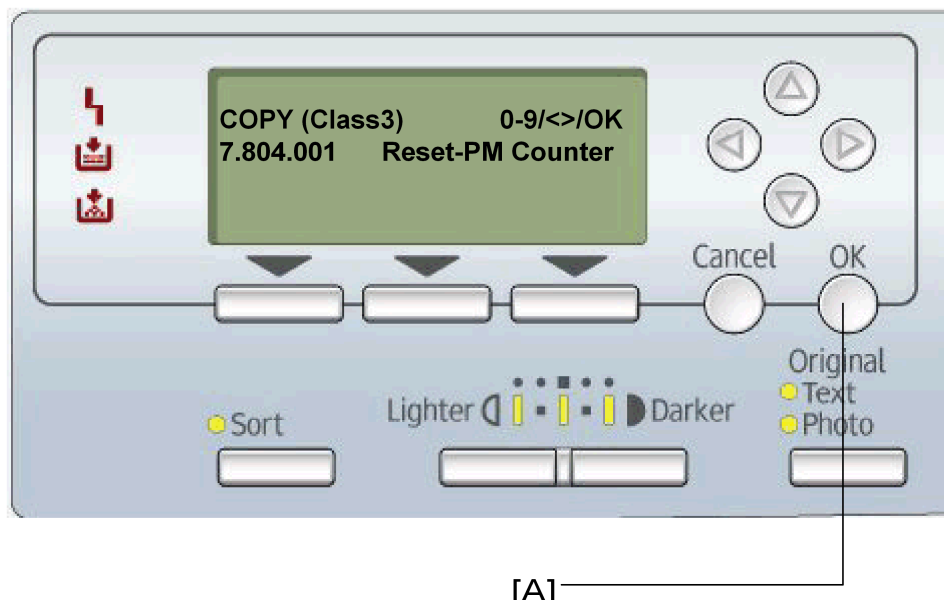
	80k	AN	NOTE
Feed belt	R	C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Separation roller	R	C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Pick-up roller	R	C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Stamp		R	Replace when necessary.
White plate		C	Clean with water or alcohol.
DF exposure glass		C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Platen cover		C	Clean with water or alcohol.

Paper Tray Unit

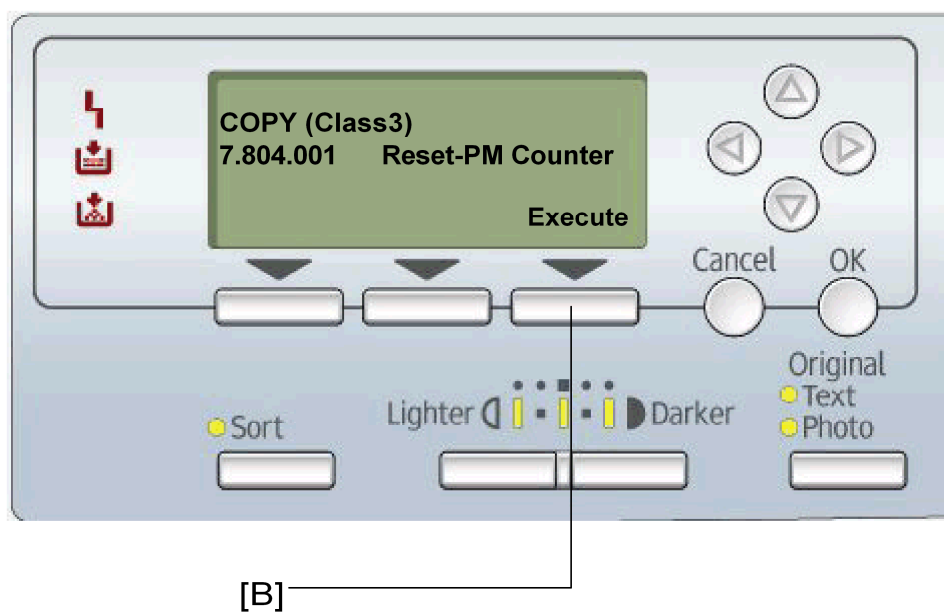
	60k	120k	AN	NOTE
Paper feed rollers		R	C	Dry or damp cloth
Bottom-plate pads	C		C	Dry cloth
Paper-feed guides	C		C	Clean with water or alcohol.
Friction pads		R	C	Dry or damp cloth
Relay clutch (B384 only)		I		
Feed clutches (B384 only)		I		
Relay roller (B384 only)		C	C	Dry cloth

2.2 HOW TO RESET THE PM COUNTER

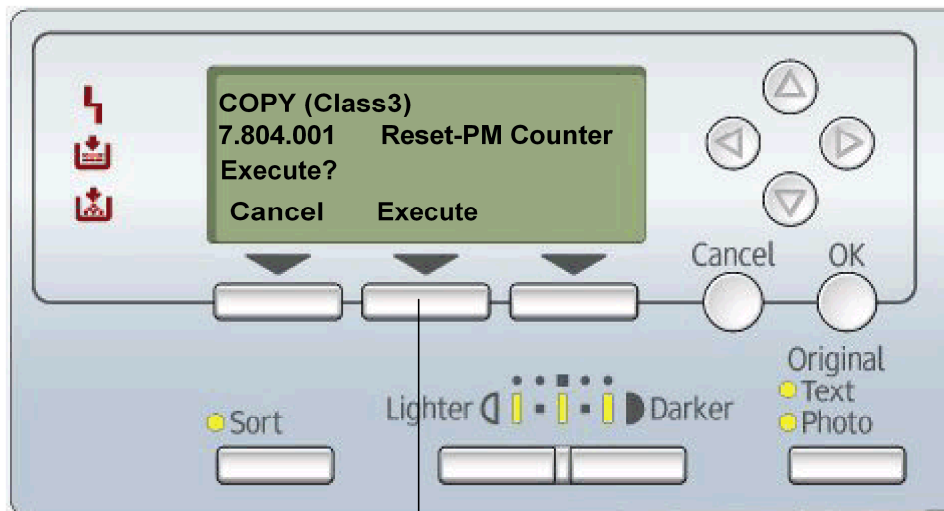
After preventive maintenance work, reset the PM counter (SP 7804 1) as follows:



1. Activate the SP mode (p.5-1).
Select SP 7804 1 (Reset-PM Counter).
Press the OK key [A]. The message "Execute" shows.

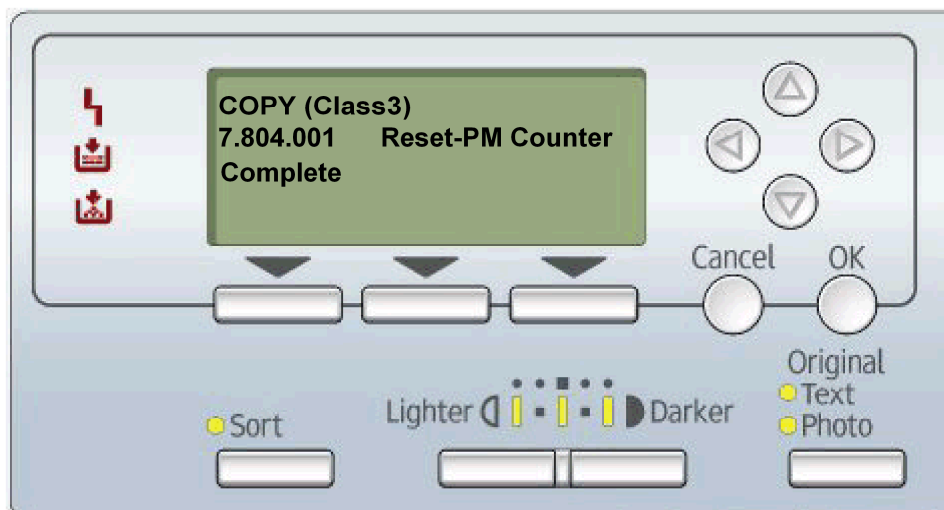


- Press the button [B] below the message "Execute."
The messages "Execute?" followed by "Cancel" and "Execute" show.



[C]

To reset the PM counter, press the button [C] below the message "Execute."



Wait until the message "Completed" shows.

Quit the SP mode.

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3.1 GENERAL CAUTIONS

Do not turn off the main switch while any of the electrical components are active. Doing so may result in damage to units (such as the PCU) as they are pulled out or replaced.

3.1.1 PCU (PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT)

The PCU consists of the OPC drum, charge roller, development unit, and cleaning components. Observe the following precautions when handling the PCU.

1. Never touch the drum surface with bare hands. If the drum surface is dirty or if you have accidentally touched it, wipe it with a dry cloth, or clean it with wet cotton and then wipe it dry with a cloth.
2. Never use alcohol to clean the drum. Alcohol will dissolve the drum surface.
3. Store the PCU in a cool dry place.
4. Do not expose the drum to corrosive gases (ammonia, etc.).
5. Do not shake a used PCU, as this may cause toner and developer to spill out.
6. Dispose of used PCU components in accordance with local regulations.

3.1.2 TRANSFER ROLLER

1. Never touch the surface of the transfer roller with bare hands.
2. Be careful not to scratch the transfer roller, as the surface is easily damaged.

3.1.3 SCANNER UNIT

1. Use alcohol or glass cleaner to clean the exposure and scanning glass. This will reduce the static charge on the glass.
2. Use a blower brush or a water-moistened cotton pad to clean the mirrors and lenses.
3. Make sure to not bend or crease the exposure lamp's ribbon cable.
4. Do not disassemble the lens unit. This will cause the lens and copy image to get out of focus.
5. Do not turn any of the CCD positioning screws. This will put the CCD out of position. The CCD position cannot be re-adjusted in the field.

3.1.4 LASER UNIT

1. Do not loosen or adjust the screws securing the LD drive board on the LD unit. This will put the LD unit out of adjustment. The LD Unit position cannot be re-adjusted properly in the field.
2. Do not adjust the variable resistors on the LD unit. These are adjusted at the factory.
3. The polygonal mirror and F-theta lens are very sensitive to dust.
4. Do not touch the toner shield glass or the surface of the polygonal mirror with bare hands.

3.1.5 FUSING UNIT

1. After installing the fusing thermistor, make sure that it is in contact with the hot roller and that the roller can rotate freely.
2. Be careful to avoid damage to the hot roller stripper pawls and their tension springs.
3. Do not touch the fusing lamp and rollers with bare hands.
4. Make sure that the fusing lamp is positioned correctly and that it does not touch the inner surface of the hot roller.

3.1.6 PAPER FEED

1. Do not touch the surface of the paper feed rollers.
2. To avoid misfeeds, the side and end fences in each paper tray must be positioned correctly so as to align with the actual paper size.

Important

- You must run SP 2214 to initialize the TD sensor after you install a new PCU. After starting initialization, be sure to wait for it to reach completion (wait for the motor to stop) before you re-open the front cover or turn off the main switch.
- If the optional tray heater or optics anti-condensation heater is installed, keep the machine's power cord plugged in even while the main switch is off, to keep the heater(s) energized.

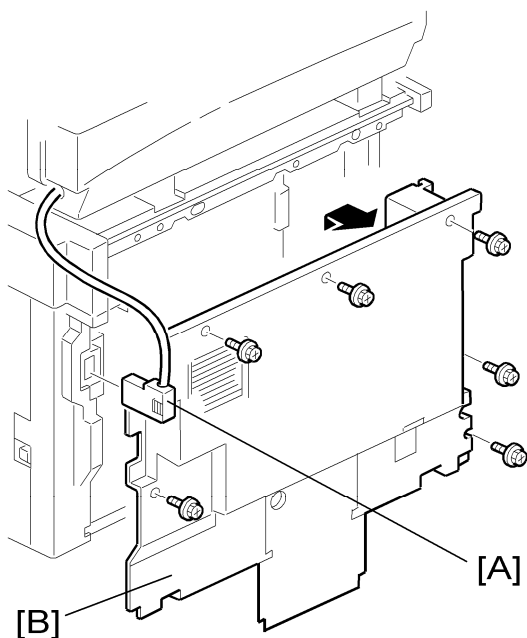
3.2 SPECIAL TOOLS AND LUBRICANTS

Part Number	Description	Q'ty
A0069104	Scanner Positioning Pins (4 pins/set)	1 set
A2929500	Test Chart S5S (10 pcs/set)	1 set
VSSM9000	FLUKE 87 Digital Multimeter	1
N8036701	4MB Flash Memory Card	1
A2579300	Grease Barrierta S552R	1
52039502	Grease G-501	1

Replacement
Adjustment

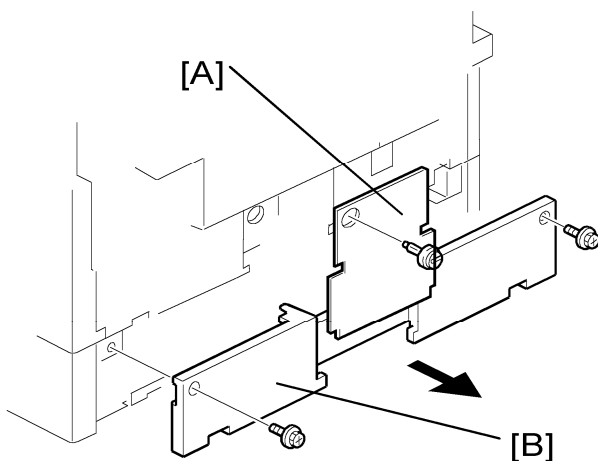
3.3 EXTERIOR COVERS & OPERATION PANEL

3.3.1 REAR COVER



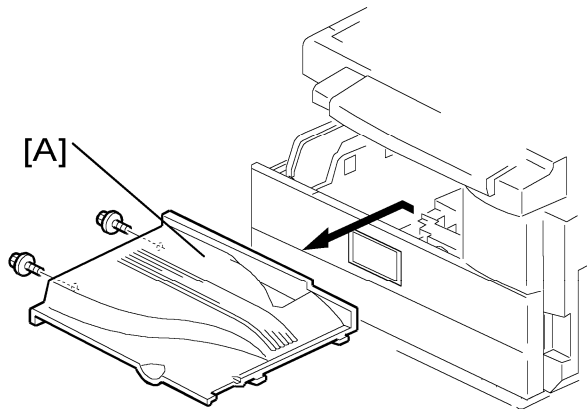
1. Unplug the DF cable [A] (if installed).
2. Rear cover [B] (⌀ x 6).

3.3.2 REAR LOWER COVER (TWO-TRAY MODELS ONLY)



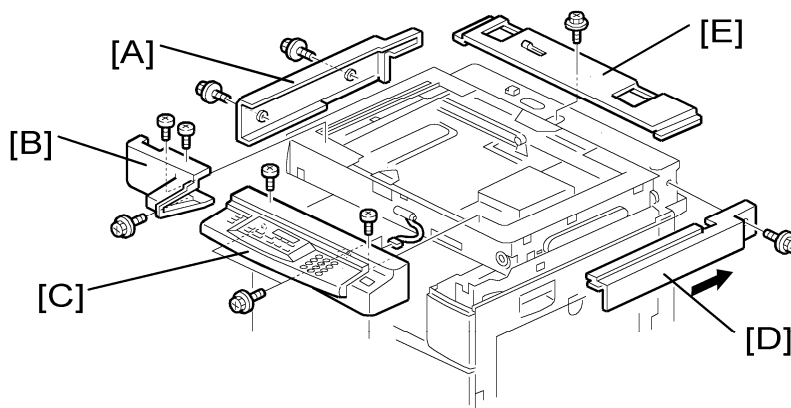
1. Rear cover (see above) or tray harness cover [A] (1 rivet).
2. Rear lower cover [B] (⌀ x 2).

3.3.3 COPY TRAY



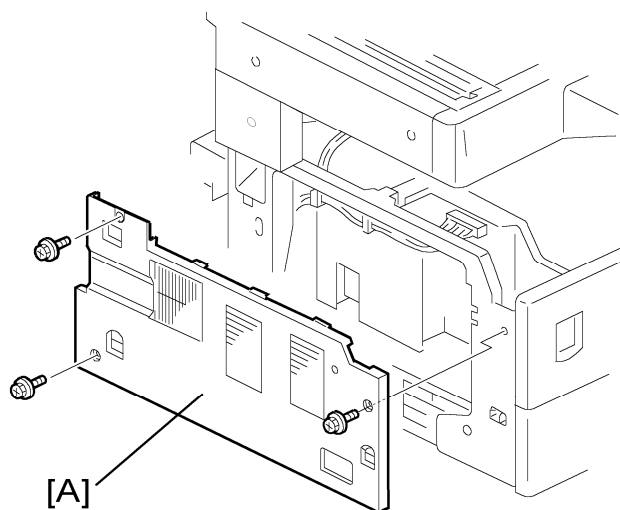
1. Copy tray [A] (🔩 x 2).

3.3.4 UPPER COVERS



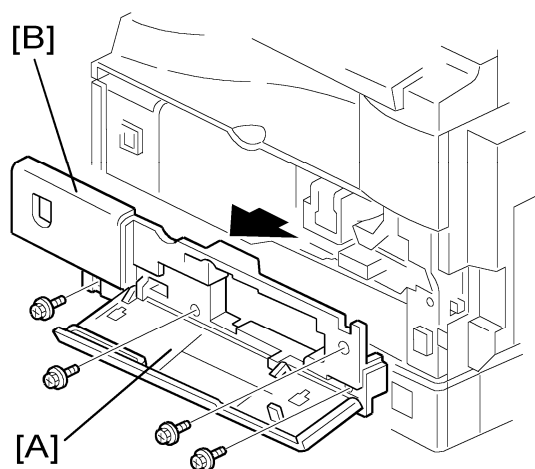
1. Platen Cover, ARDF, or ADF (if installed).
2. Rear cover.
3. Left upper cover [A] (🔩 x 2).
4. Front upper left cover [B] (🔩 x 3).
5. Operation panel [C] (🔩 x 4, 🖱️ x 1).
6. Right upper cover [D] (🔩 x 1, 3 hooks).
7. Push the cover to the rear side to release the hooks.
8. Top rear cover [E] (🔩 x 1).

3.3.5 LEFT COVER



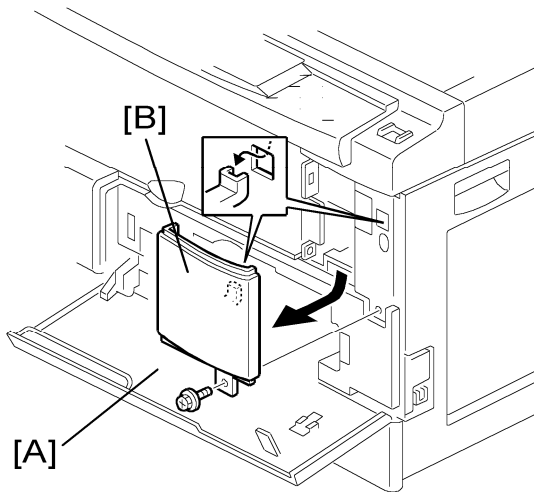
1. Left cover [A] (⚙️ x 3).

3.3.6 FRONT COVER



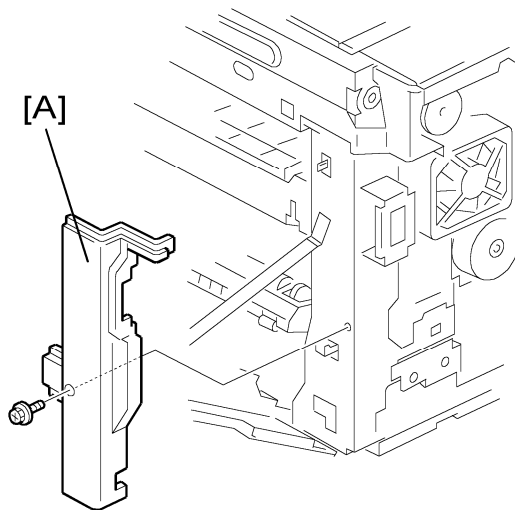
1. Pull out the (top) paper tray.
2. Open the front door [A].
3. Front cover [B] (⚙️ x 4).

3.3.7 FRONT RIGHT COVER



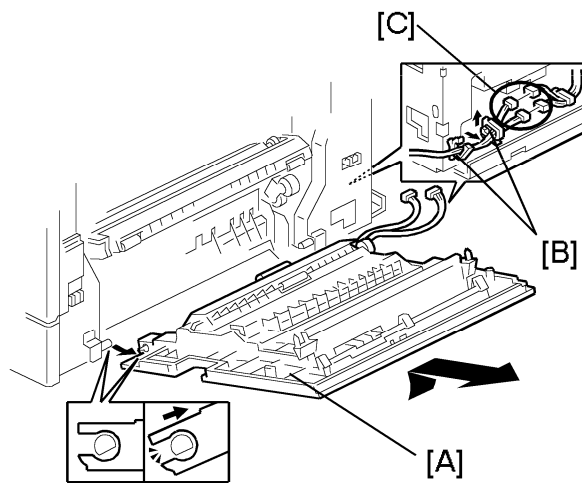
1. Open the front door [A].
2. Front right cover [B] (x 1).

3.3.8 RIGHT REAR COVER



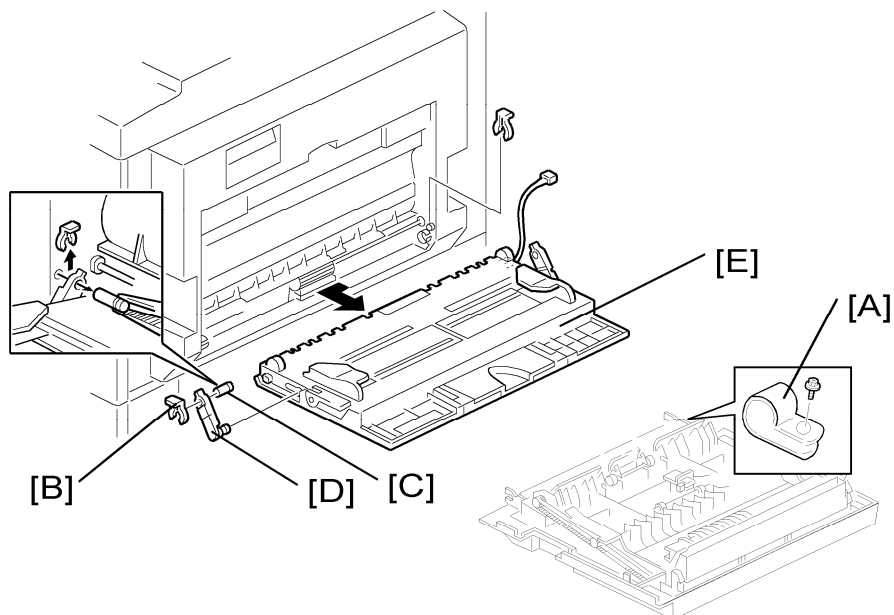
1. Right upper cover (p.3-5).
2. Open the duplex unit (B269/B277 only).
3. Right rear cover [A] (x 1).

3.3.9 RIGHT DOOR (DUPLEX UNIT (B269/B277))



1. Right rear cover (see above).
2. Open the right door [A].
3. Open the clamps [B] and disconnect the two connectors [C] or three connectors (B269/B277).
4. Right door

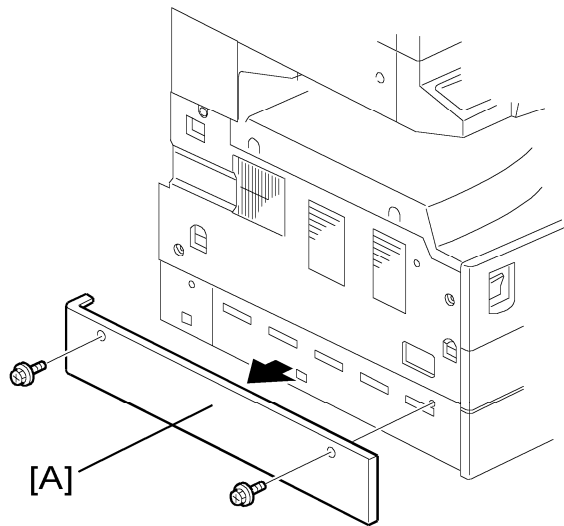
3.3.10 BY-PASS TRAY



1. Right rear cover (above).
2. Open the right door.

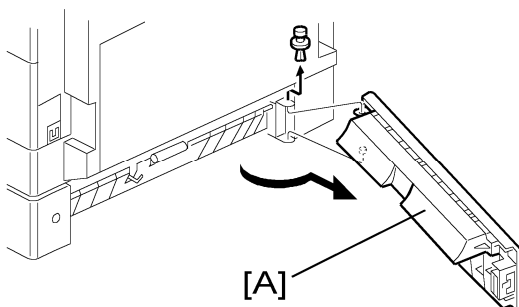
3. Release the by-pass cable from the clamps (see [B] on the preceding procedure) and disconnect the connector (5-pin connector with colored wires).
4. Cable holder [A] (B269/B277 only).
5. Front-side clip ring [B].
6. Front-side pin [C] (You can push the pin from behind the right door.).
7. Front-side tray holder arm [D].
8. Remove the rear-side clip ring, pin, and tray holder arm in the same manner.
9. By-pass tray [E].

3.3.11 LEFT LOWER COVER (TWO-TRAY MODELS ONLY)



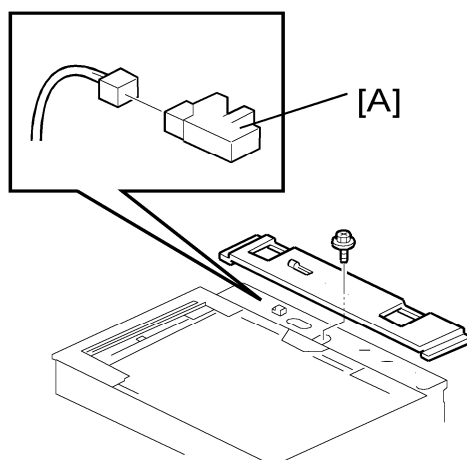
1. Left lower cover [A] (⚙ x 2).

3.3.12 RIGHT LOWER COVER (TWO-TRAY MODELS ONLY)



1. Right lower cover [A] (1 pin).

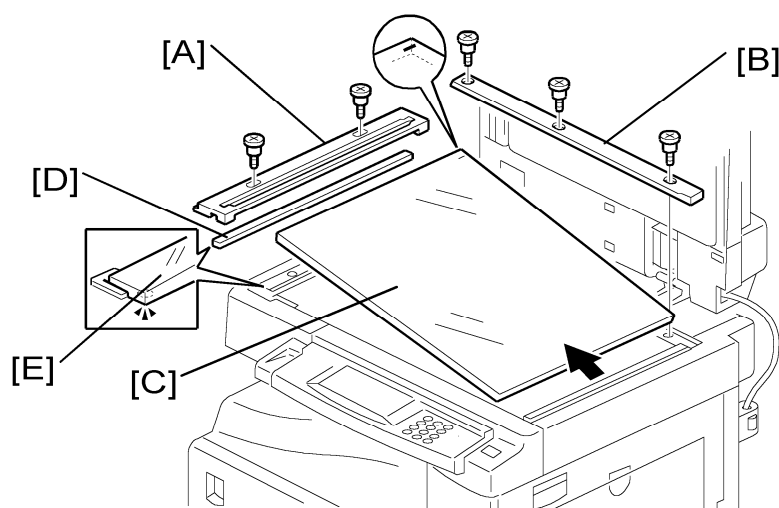
3.3.13 PLATEN COVER SENSOR



1. Top rear cover.
2. Platen cover sensor [A] (🔌 x 1).

3.4 SCANNER UNIT

3.4.1 EXPOSURE GLASS/DF EXPOSURE GLASS



- Exposure Glass -

1. Front upper left cover (Upper Covers).
2. Left scale [A] (x 2).
3. Rear scale [B] (x 3).
4. Exposure glass [C]

↓ Note

-6850556. Make sure that the mark is at the rear left corner, and that the left edge is aligned to the support on the frame when you reinstall the exposure glass.

- DF Exposure Glass -

1. Front upper left cover (Upper Covers).
2. Left scale [A].
3. DF exposure glass [D].

↓ Note

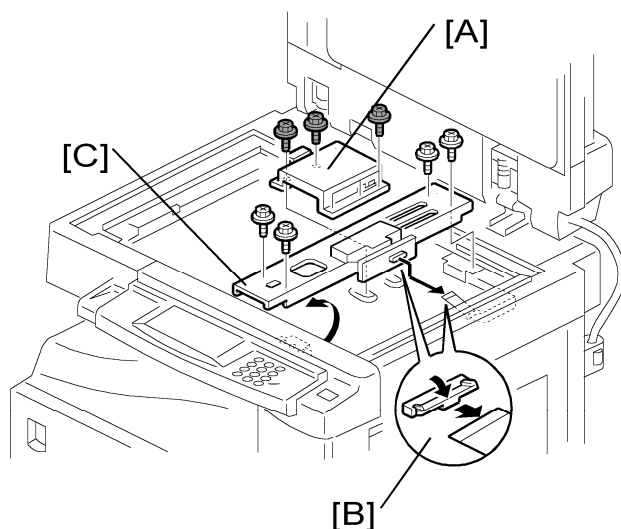
-6850556. Make sure that the mark [E] is on the bottom at the front end when reinstall the exposure glass.

3.4.2 LENS BLOCK

⚠ CAUTION

- 21. Do not touch the paint-locked screws on the lens block. The position of the lens assembly (black part) is adjusted before shipment.
- 20. Do not grasp the PCB or the lens assembly when you handle the lens block. The

lens assembly may slide out of position.

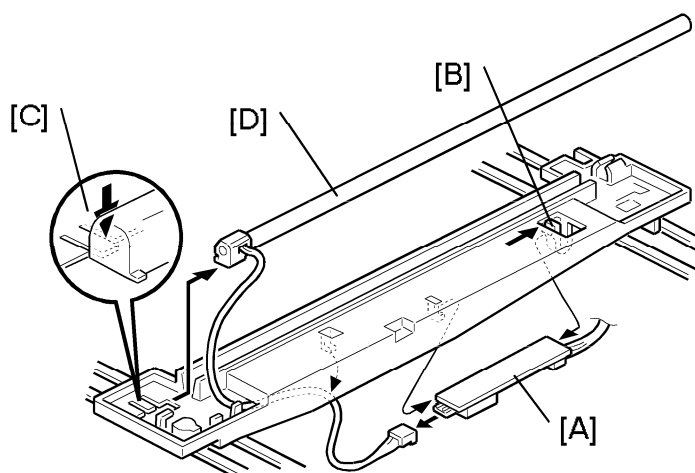


1. Exposure glass (Scanner Unit).
2. Lens cover [A] (x 5).
3. Disconnect the flat cable [B].
4. Lens block [C] (x 4).

↓ Note

-6850556. Adjust the image quality (Copy Adjustments Printing/Scanning) after you install a new lens block.

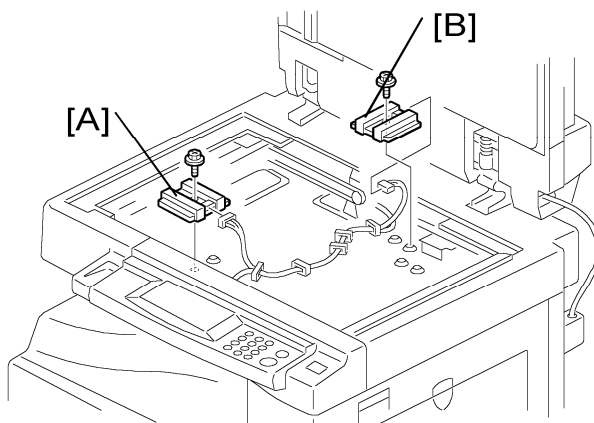
3.4.3 LAMP STABILIZER BOARD AND EXPOSURE LAMP



1. Operation panel (Upper Covers).
2. Exposure glass (Exposure Glass/DF Exposure Glass).
3. Slide the first scanner to a position where the front end of the lamp is visible.
4. Place one hand under the lamp stabilizer board [A] and release the hook [B].

5. Lamp stabilizer board (🔌 x 2).
6. Press the plastic latch [C] and push the front end of the lamp toward the rear.
7. Lamp [D] (with the cable).

3.4.4 ORIGINAL WIDTH/LENGTH SENSOR

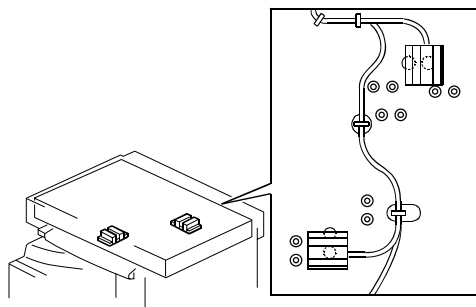


1. Exposure glass (🔍 Scanner Unit).
2. Original width sensor [A] (🔌 x 1, 📏 x 1).
3. Lens block (🔍 Scanner Unit).
4. Original length sensor [B] (🔌 x 1, 📏 x 1).

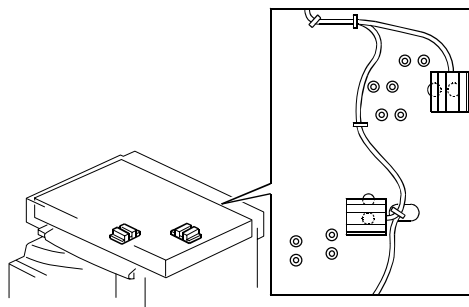
- Sensor Positions -

Sensor positions vary according to regions as shown below.

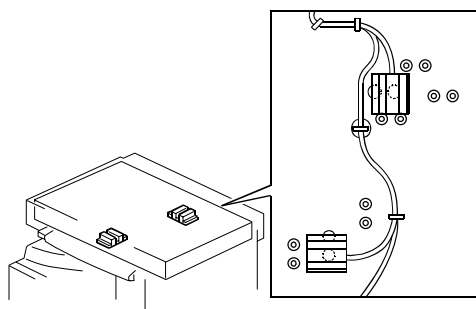
**Asia (including Taiwan; excluding China),
Europe**



America



China (Sensor positions for China model (8K/16K))



- Sensor Positions for China Model (8K/16K) -

This procedure is for China models only. You must rearrange the positions of the original width and length sensors for the copier to detect the following original sizes:

1. 8K SEF (270 x 390 mm)
2. 16K SEF (195 x 270 mm)
3. 16K LEF (270 x 195 mm)

After you have rearranged the positions, the sensors work as listed in the table. Rearrange the sensor positions as follows:

Original Size	Length Sensors		Width Sensors	
8K-SEF	L1	L2	W1	W2
16K-SEF	X	X	X	O
16K-LEF	X	O	O	O
16K-SEF	O	O	X	O

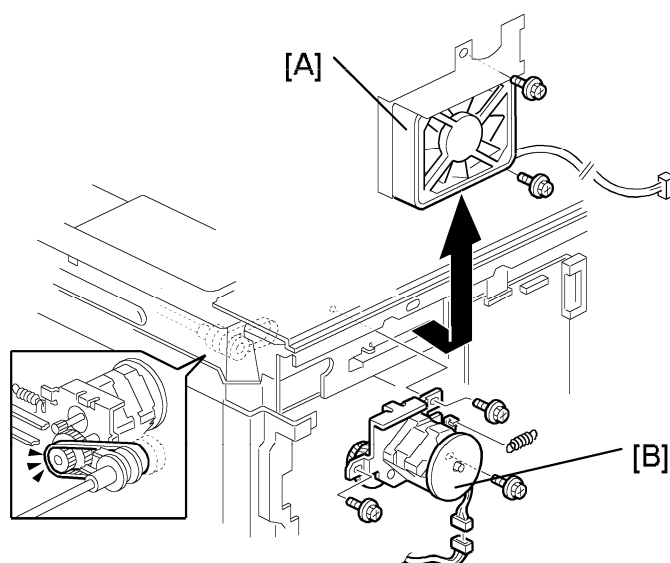
1. Specify SP mode settings:

Select SP 4305 1, and specify 2 (=Yes). The machine will detect 8K/16K rather than

A3/A4/B4/B5 (A3-SEF/B4-SEF ⇒ 8K-SEF; B5-SEF/A4-SEF ⇒ 16K-SEF;
B5-LEF/A4-LEF ⇒ 16K-LEF).

2. Turn off the main switch.
3. Exposure glass (🔒 Scanner Unit).
4. Original width/length sensors [A] [B]
5. Rearrange the sensor positions [C] [D].
6. Turn on the main switch and check the operations.

3.4.5 SCANNER MOTOR

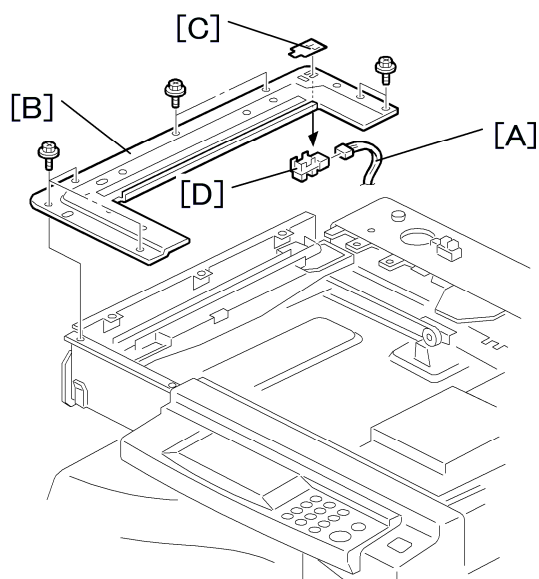


1. Left upper cover, front upper left cover, operation panel, top rear cover (🔒 Exposure Glass/DF Exposure Glass).
2. Exposure glass (🔒 Exposure Glass/DF Exposure Glass).
3. Rear exhaust fan [A] (B269/B277 only).
4. Scanner motor [B] (🔩 x 3, 📦 x 1, 1 spring, 1 belt).

⬇ Note

- 21. Install the belt first, and then set the spring when you reassemble. Fasten the leftmost screw (viewed from the rear), and fasten the other two screws.
- 20. Adjust the image quality after you install the motor.

3.4.6 SCANNER HOME POSITION SENSOR



1. Left upper cover, top rear cover (Original Width/Length Sensor).
2. Exposure glass, DF exposure glass (if installed) (Exposure Glass/DF Exposure Glass).
3. Disconnect the connector [A].
4. Scanner left lid [B] (x 7).
5. Sensor tape [C].
6. Scanner home position sensor [D].

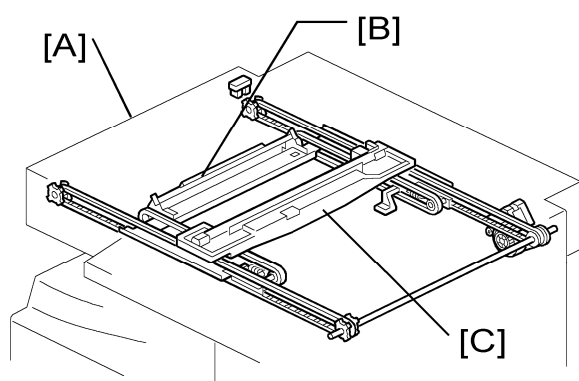
3.4.7 ADJUSTING SCANNER POSITIONS

⚠ CAUTION

- 21. Grasp the front and rear ends (not the middle) of the first scanner when you manually move it. The first scanner may be damaged if you press, push, or pull its middle part.

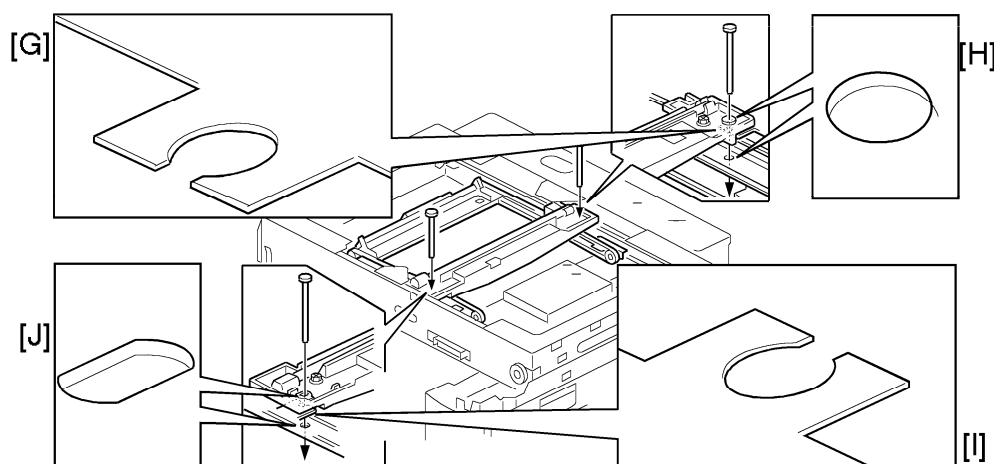
- Overview -

Adjust the scanner positions when the first scanner [C] and second scanner [B] are not parallel with the side frames [A], or, when you have replaced one or more of the scanner belts.



To adjust the scanner positions, do either of the following:

1. Adjust the belt contact points on the first scanner. (See "Adjusting the First Scanner Contact Points" below.).
2. Adjust the belt contact points on the scanner bracket. (See "Adjusting the Second Scanner Contact Points" below.).



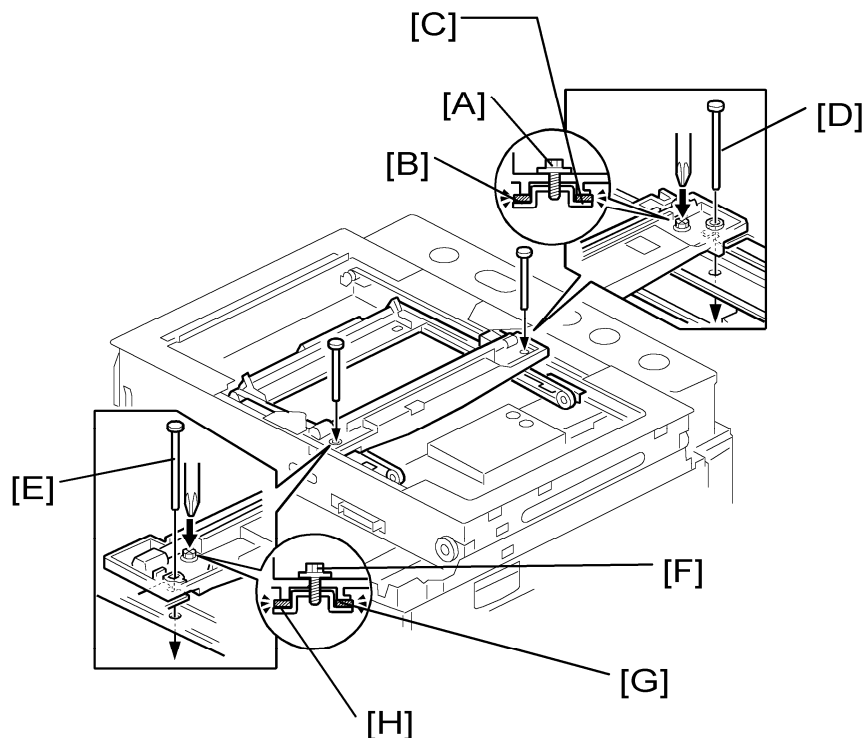
The two actions above have the same objectives--to align the following holes and marks:

1. The adjustment holes [H] [J] in the first scanner
2. The adjustment holes [H] [J] in the second scanner

3. The alignment marks [G] [I] on the frames

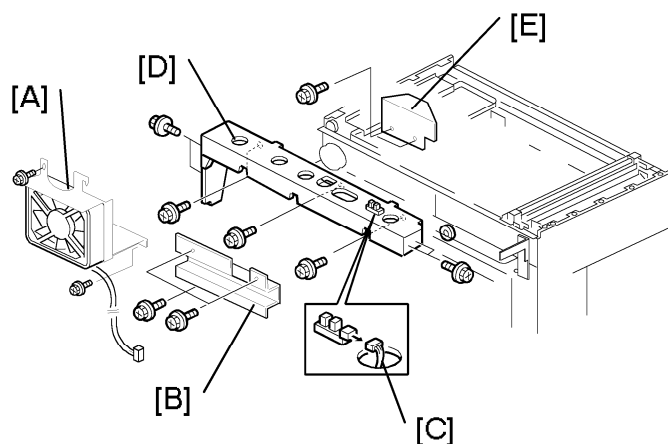
The scanner positions are correct when these holes and marks are aligned.

- Adjusting the First Scanner Contact Points -

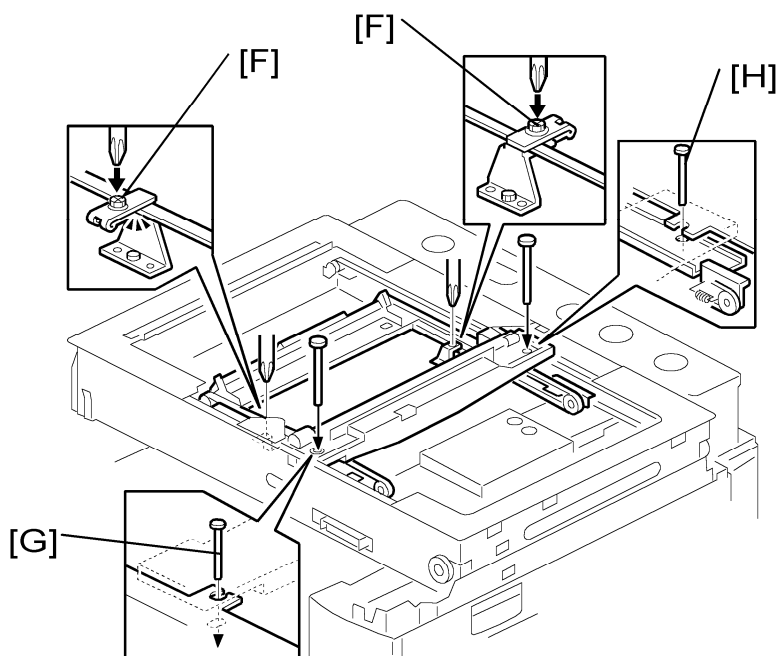


1. A(R)DF or platen cover.
2. Operation panel, top rear cover (Upper Covers).
3. Exposure glass (Exposure Glass/DF Exposure Glass).
4. Loosen the 2 screws [A] [F].
5. Slide the 1st and 2nd scanners, or one of them, to align the following holes and marks.
6. The adjustment holes in the first scanner.
7. The adjustment holes in the second scanner.
8. The alignment marks on the frames.
9. Insert the positioning tools [D] [E] through the holes and marks.
10. Check that the scanner belts [B] [C] [G] [H] are properly set between the bracket and the 1st scanner.
11. Tighten the screws [A] [F].
12. Remove the positioning tools.
13. Reassemble the machine and check the operation.

- Adjusting the Second Scanner Contact Points -



1. A(R)DF or platen cover.
2. Operation panel, top rear cover (Upper Cover).
3. Exposure glass (Exposure Glass/DF Exposure Glass).
4. Rear exhaust fan [A] (x 2).
5. Controller bracket [B] (x 3).
6. Disconnect the platen-cover-sensor connector [C].
7. Rear frame [D] (x 7).
8. Scale bracket [E] (x 2).



9. Loosen the 2 screws [F].
10. Slide the 2nd scanner to align the following holes and marks.

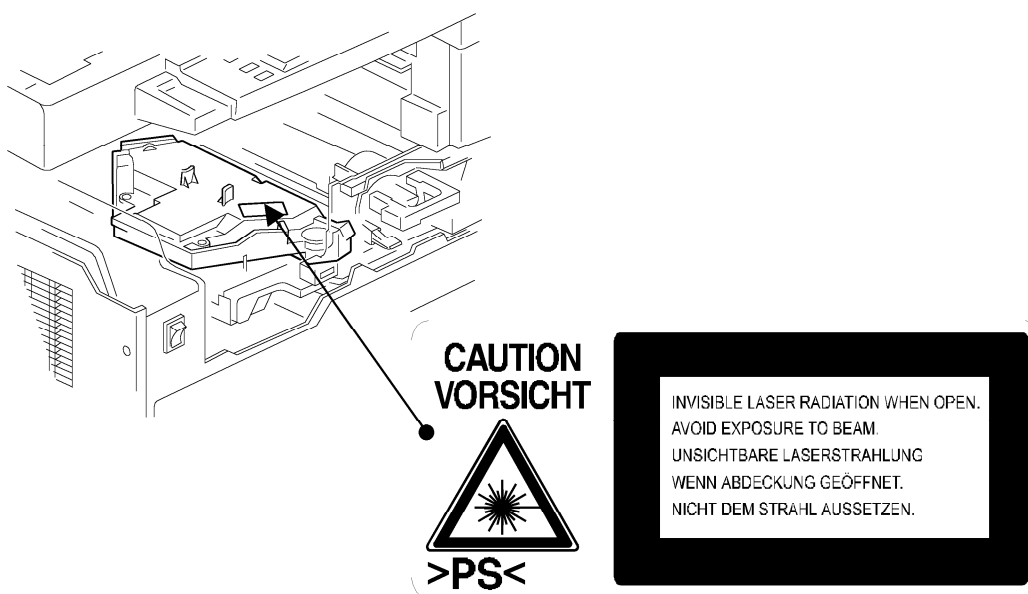
- 11. The adjustment holes in the first scanner.**
- 12. The adjustment holes in the second scanner.**
- 13. The alignment marks on the frames.**
- 14. Insert the positioning tools [G] [H] through the holes and marks.**
- 15. Check that the scanner belts are properly set in the brackets.**
- 16. Remove the positioning tools.**
- 17. Reassemble the machine and check the operation.**

3.5 LASER UNIT

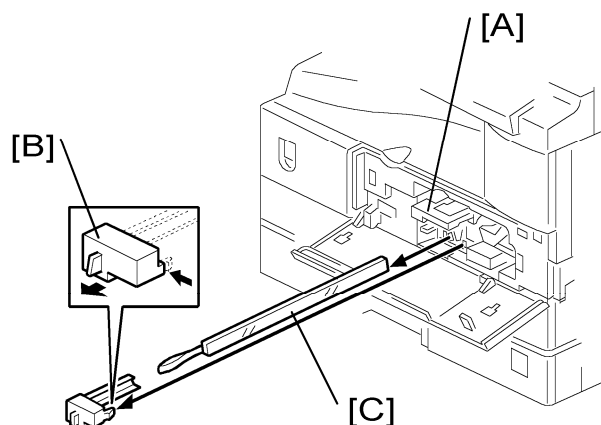
WARNING

- 21. The laser beam can seriously damage your eyes. Be absolutely sure that the main power switch is off and that the machine is unplugged before you access the laser unit.

3.5.1 LOCATION OF CAUTION DECAL



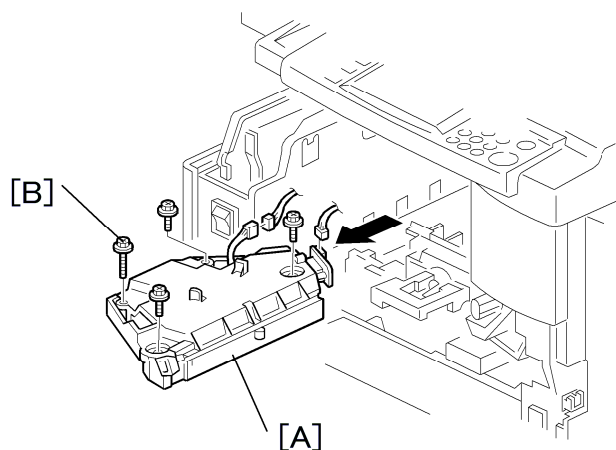
3.5.2 TONER SHIELD GLASS



1. Open the front door.
2. Lift the toner cartridge latch [A].
3. Press the toner shield glass cover [B] to the left and pull it out.

4. Pull out the toner shield glass [C].

3.5.3 LASER UNIT



1. Toner shield glass.
2. Copy tray.
3. Pull out the (upper) paper tray.
4. Front cover .
5. Laser unit [A] (🔧 x 2, 🔧 x 4).

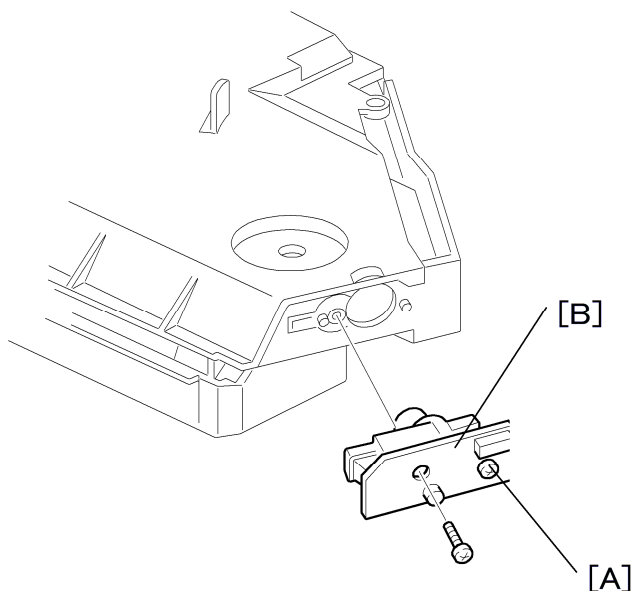
↓ Note

- 21. The screw at the left front position [B] is longer than the other three.

3.5.4 LD UNIT

⚠ CAUTION

- 21. Do not touch the paint-locked screw [A]. The LD position is adjusted before shipment.

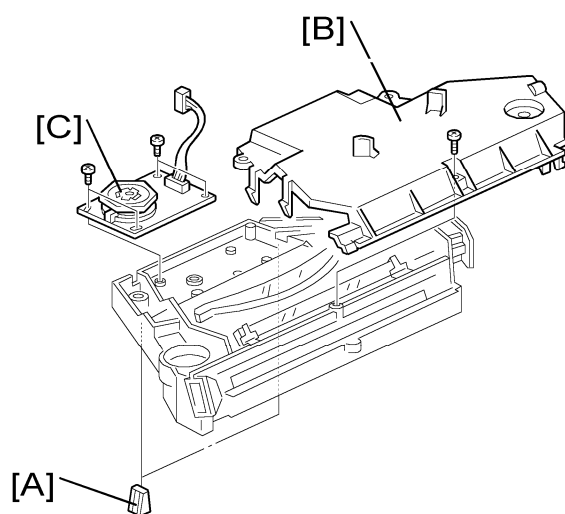


1. Laser unit.
2. LD unit [B] (1 x 1).

Note

- 21. Do not screw the LD unit in too tightly when you install it.

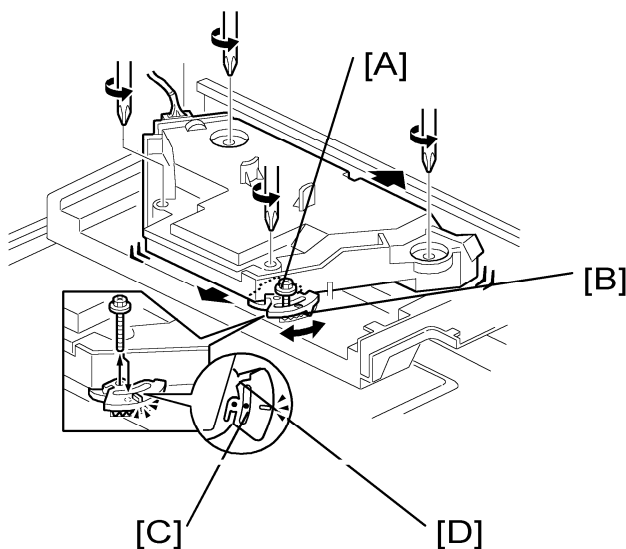
3.5.5 POLYGONAL MIRROR MOTOR



1. Laser unit.
2. Two rubber bushings [A].
3. Laser unit cover [B] (⚙ x 1).
4. Polygonal mirror motor [C] (⚙ x 4).
5. After reassembling, adjust the image quality. (🖨 Copy Adjustments Printing/Scanning).
6. Laser Unit Alignment Adjustment.

⚠ WARNING

- 21. Reinstall the copy exit tray before you turn the main switch on. The laser beam may go out of the copier when the copy exit tray is not installed. The laser beam can seriously damage your eyes.



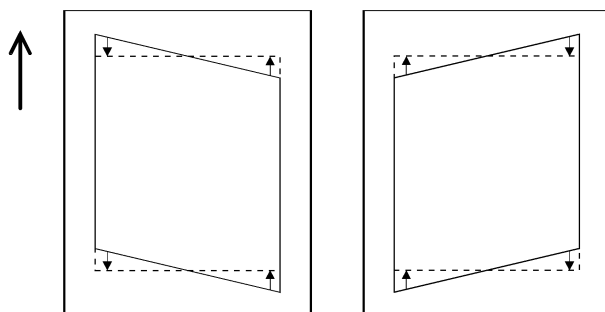
3.5.6 LASER UNIT ALIGNMENT ADJUSTMENT

1. Start the SP mode.
2. Select SP 5902-1 and output the 'Trimming Area' pattern (pattern 10).
3. Make sure that the four corners of the pattern make right angles:
 - 21. If they make right angles, you do not need to adjust the laser unit alignment.
 - 20. If they do not make right angles, go on to the next step.
4. Check the screw position on the lever [B].
 - 21. If the screw is in the hole [C], go on to the next step.
 - 20. If the screw is in the slot [D], loosen the screw on the lever, loosen the four screws on the laser unit, and go on to step 9.



- 6850556. The initial position of the screw is in hole [C].

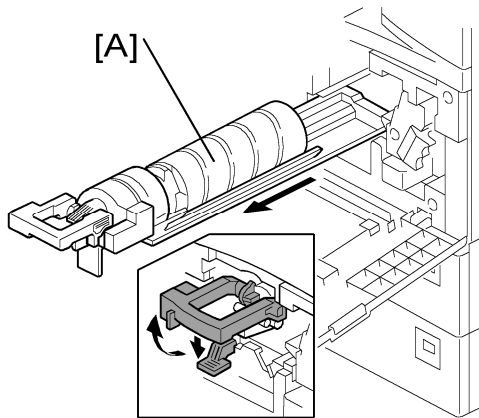
5. Four screws in the laser unit (Laser Unit).
6. Remove the lever (x 1), confirm the position of the hole beneath the slot [D], and reinstall the lever.
7. Install the screw (through the slot [D]) loosely into the hole beneath the slot (do not tighten the screw).
8. Install the four screws for the laser unit loosely (do not tighten the screws).
9. When you rotate the lever clockwise or counterclockwise by one notch of the lever, the corners of the pattern shift by 0.4 mm (from the leading and trailing edges). See the trim pattern made in step 2, and find how much the corners should be shifted.



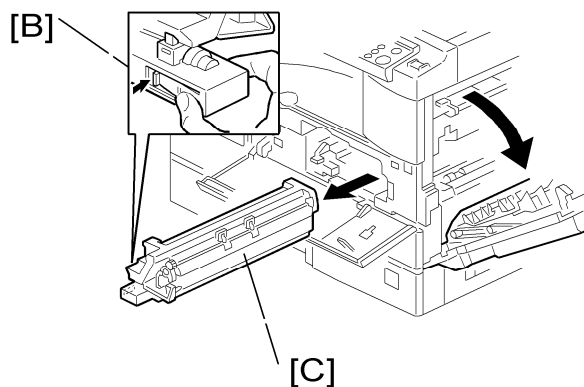
10. Tighten the screw [A].
11. Tighten the screws on the laser unit.
12. Reinstall the copy tray.
13. Print the trim pattern and check the result. Do the procedure again if further adjustment is required.

3.6 PCU SECTION

3.6.1 PCU



1. Toner bottle with the holder [A].
2. Open the right door.



3. Press the latch [B] and pull out the PCU [C].



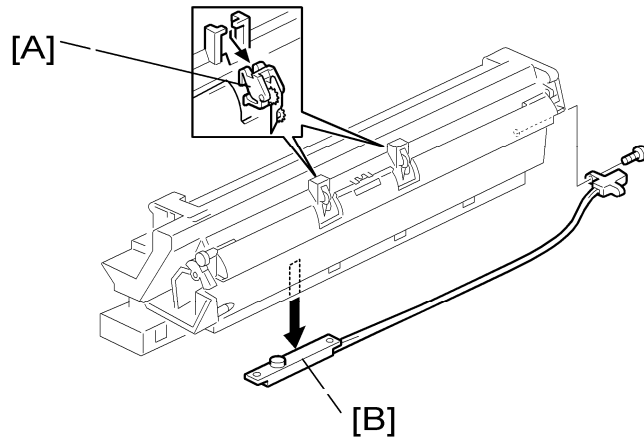
-6850556. Do not touch the OPC drum surface with bare hands.

4. Load new developer (p.3-30).
5. Do SP 2214 to reinitialize the TD sensor when you reassemble.

3.6.2 PICK-OFF PAWLS AND TONER DENSITY SENSOR

⚠ CAUTION

-21. Do not turn the PCU upside down. This causes toner and developer to spill out.



1. PCU (🔧 Previous procedure).

2. Pawl [A].

↓ Note

-6850556. Pull down the pawl and release the bottom end.

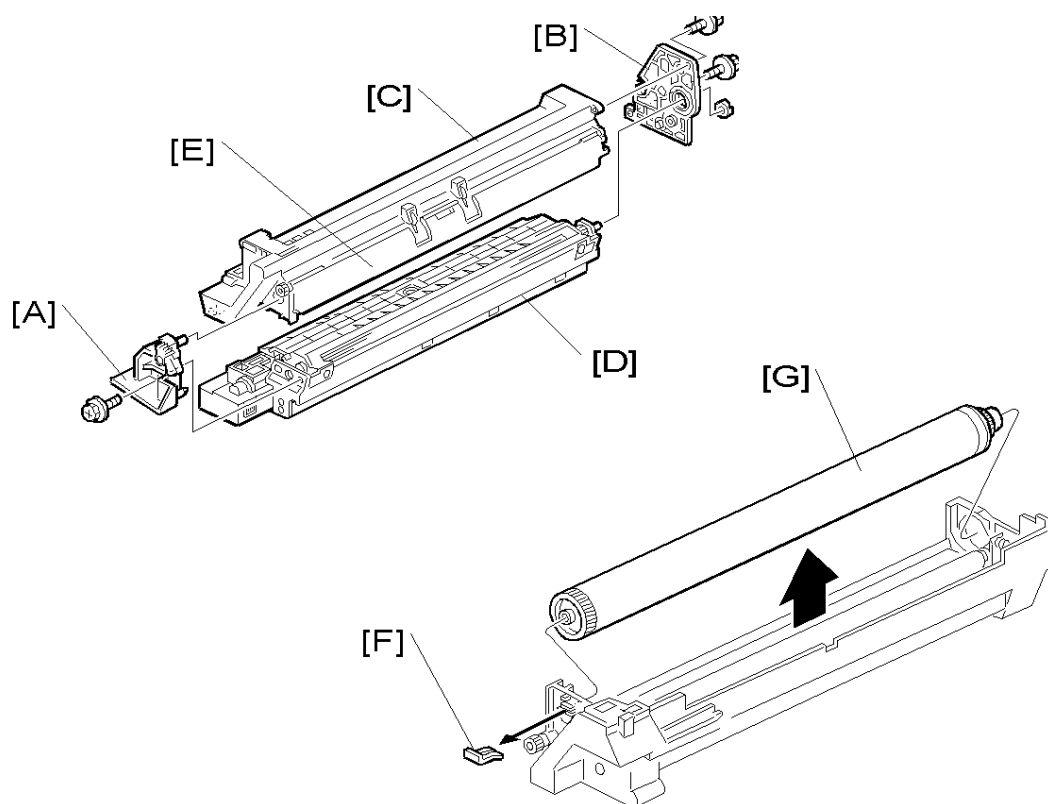
3. Toner density sensor [B] (🔧 x 1).

↓ Note

-6850556. The toner density sensor is taped to the bottom of the PCU. Pry it off with a regular screwdriver

4. After reinstalling the pick-off pawls or toner density sensor, adjust the image quality (🔧 After Replacement and Adjustment).

3.6.3 OPC DRUM



1. PCU (PCU).
2. Front side piece [A] (x 1).
3. Rear side piece [B] (x 2, 1 coupling).
4. Separate the drum section [C] from the developer section [D].

↓ Note

-6850556. To ensure that the left-side gears line up, keep the drum cover [E] closed when reinserting the front side piece.

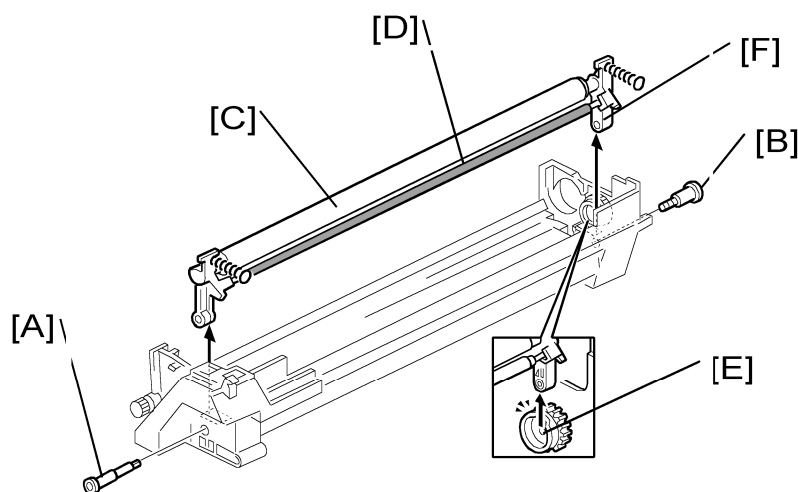
- 5. Pry out the drum retaining clip [F].**

↓ Note

-6850556. Install the clip in the same orientation (with the lip facing away from the drum shaft) when you reassemble.

6. OPC drum [G]
7. When reassembling, adjust the image quality (After Replacement and Adjustment).

3.6.4 CHARGE ROLLER AND CLEANING BRUSH



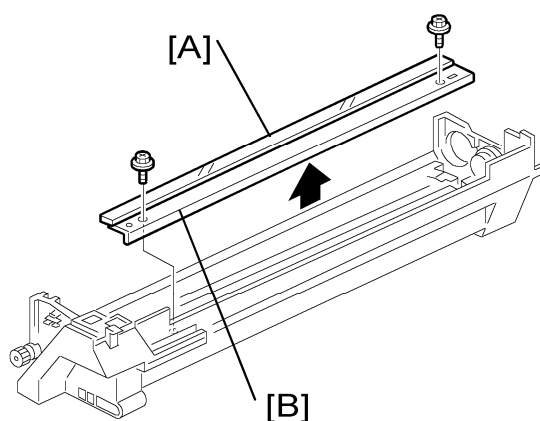
1. OPC Drum (Previous procedure).
2. Holding pin [A].
3. Stepped screw [B].
4. Charge roller [C] and cleaning brush [D] (with the holders and springs).



-6850556. Turn the gear [E] (as necessary) so that the rear holder [F] comes out.

5. When reassembling, adjust the image quality (After Replacement and Adjustment).

3.6.5 CLEANING BLADE



1. Drum charge roller (Previous procedure).
2. Cleaning blade [B] (x 2).
3. When reassembling, adjust the image quality (After Replacement and Adjustment).



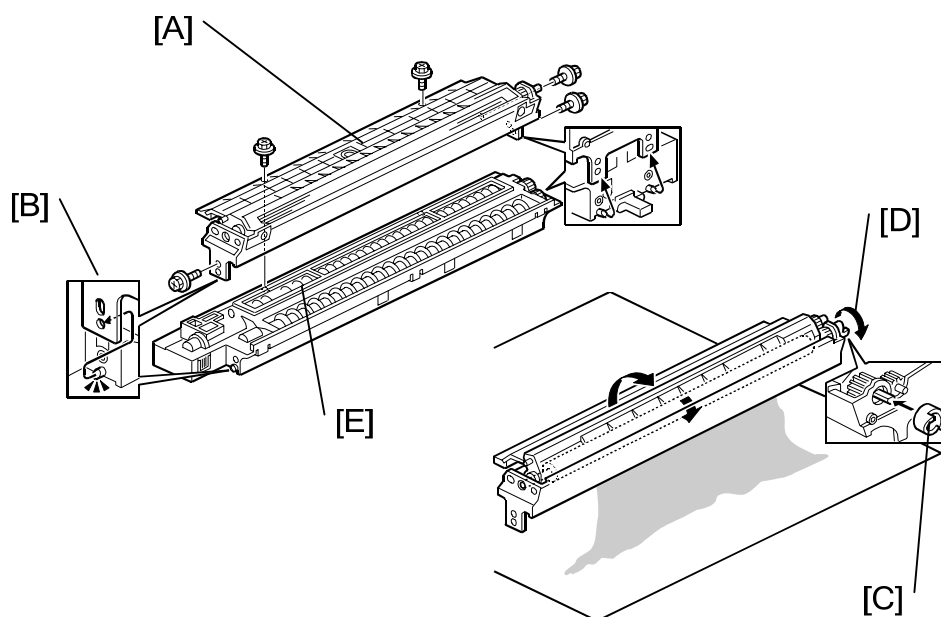
Reassembling

Apply toner to the edge of the new cleaning blade when you replace the cleaning blade.

This prevents possible damage to the OPC drum and blade.

1. After installing the cleaning blade, remove some of the toner from the old blade with your finger.
2. Apply the toner to the edge [A] of the new cleaning blade. Make sure to apply the toner evenly along full length of the new cleaning blade.

3.6.6 DEVELOPER



1. PCU ( PCU).
2. To let the toner fall to the development section, gently tap about eight different spots on the top of the PCU with a screwdriver. Each spot must be approximately at an equal distance from the next spot.
3. Reinstall the PCU in the copier.
4. Turn the main switch on.
5. Open and close the front door and wait for the machine to rotate the development roller for about 10 seconds.
6. Repeat the previous step two more times.
7. PCU ( PCU).
8. Separate the developer section from the OPC drum section ( OPC Drum).
9. Top part [A] of the development unit ( x 5).

↓ Note

- Release the hook [B].

10. Set the coupling [C] back to the shaft.

11. Turn the coupling in the direction of the arrow [D] to remove developer from the roller.

12. Turn the bottom part [E] over and rotate the gears to remove the developer.

13. Load new developer (p.1-5).

14. When reassembling, execute SP 2214 to reinitialize the TD sensor.

↓ Note

- Make sure no toner or developer stays on the gear. Clean the gears as necessary with a blower brush, etc.
- Be sure to replace the Mylar at the rear side in the correct position. (The Mylar protects the gears at the rear side from falling toner).

3.6.7 AFTER REPLACEMENT OR ADJUSTMENT

★ Important

- Do the following procedure after replace or adjust any of the PCU components. This procedure is not necessary when you replaced the whole PCU with a new one.

1. Take 5 sample copies.

2. If black dots (dropped toner) show on any of the copies, continue as follows. (If all copies are clean, you don't need to do the following steps.)

3. Remove the PCU from the mainframe.

4. Tap the top of the PCU with a screwdriver at eight evenly spaced locations (two or three taps at each spot), to knock the recycled toner down into the development section.

5. Put the PCU back into the mainframe.

6. Turn the main power on. Then open and close the door and wait for the machine to rotate the development roller for 10 seconds. Then open and close the door two more times, so that total rotation time is 30 seconds.

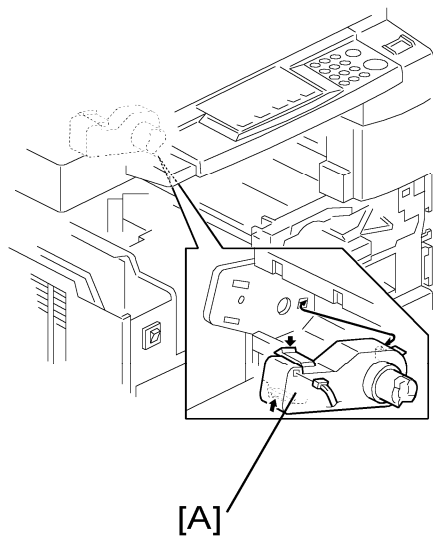
7. Make some sky-shot copies (or solid black prints).

- If using A4 or 8¹/₂" x 11" paper, make 4 copies/prints.
- If using A3 or 11" x 17" paper, make 2 copies/prints.
- To make solid black prints, use SP 5902 pattern 8.

↓ Note

- Step 7 is required only after parts replacement or adjustment. You do not need to make sky-shot (or solid black) copies after you replace the developer.

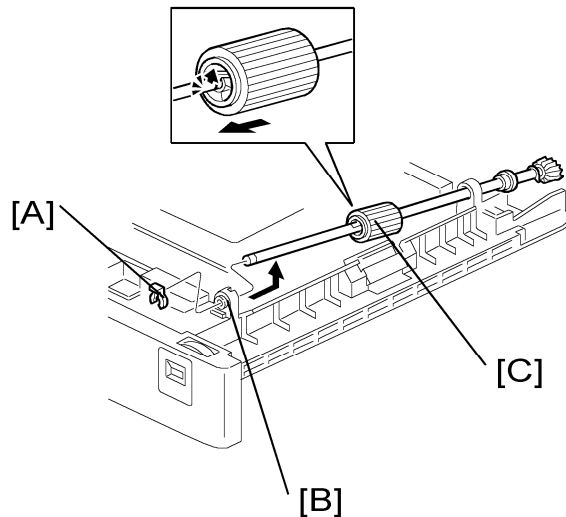
3.7 TONER SUPPLY MOTOR



1. Copy tray (Upper Covers).
2. Open the front door.
3. Toner bottle holder (PCU).
4. Toner supply motor [A] (x 1).

3.8 PAPER FEED SECTION

3.8.1 PAPER FEED ROLLER



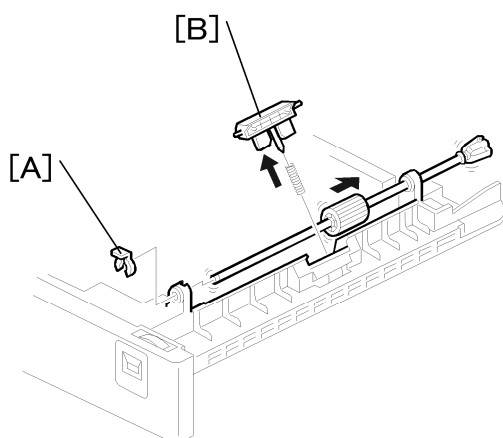
1. Paper cassette.
2. Clip [A].
3. Push the shaft back through the opening, and tilt it up.

↓ Note

-6850556. If the black plastic bushing [B] comes off, make sure you remount it when reinstall the shaft.

4. Paper feed roller [C]

3.8.2 FRICTION PAD

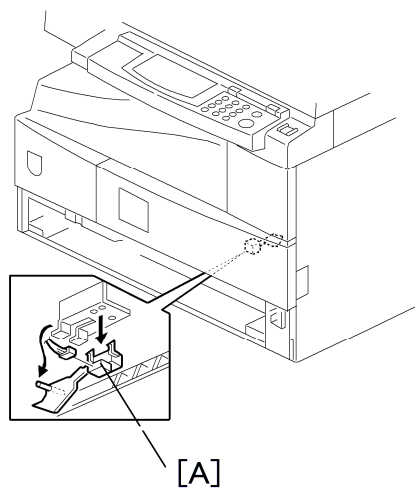


1. Paper cassette.
2. Clip [A].

3. Push the shaft back through the opening, so that the roller moves clear of the friction pad.

4. Friction pad [B]

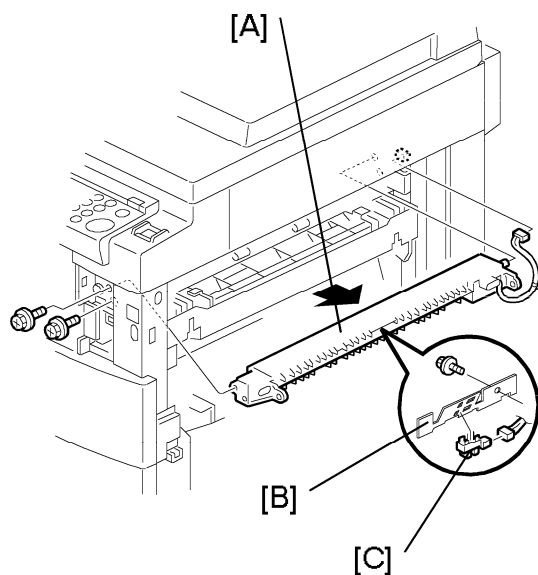
3.8.3 PAPER END SENSOR



1. Paper cassette.
2. Paper end sensor [A] (🔧 x 1).

3.8.4 EXIT SENSOR

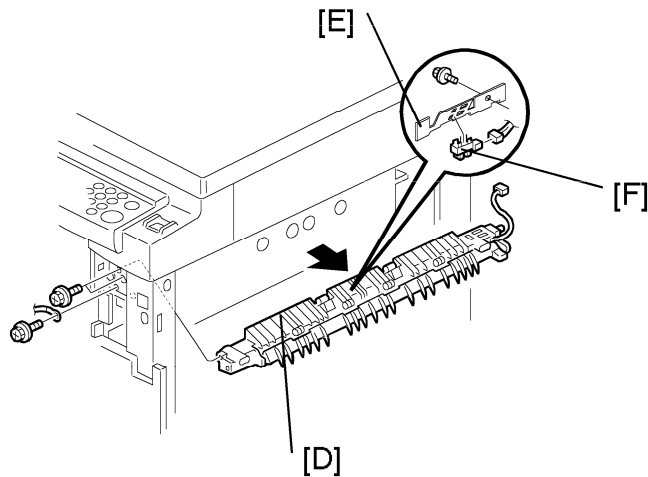
- Non-Duplex Models -



1. Open the right door.
2. Front right cover).
3. Guide [A] (🔧 x 2).

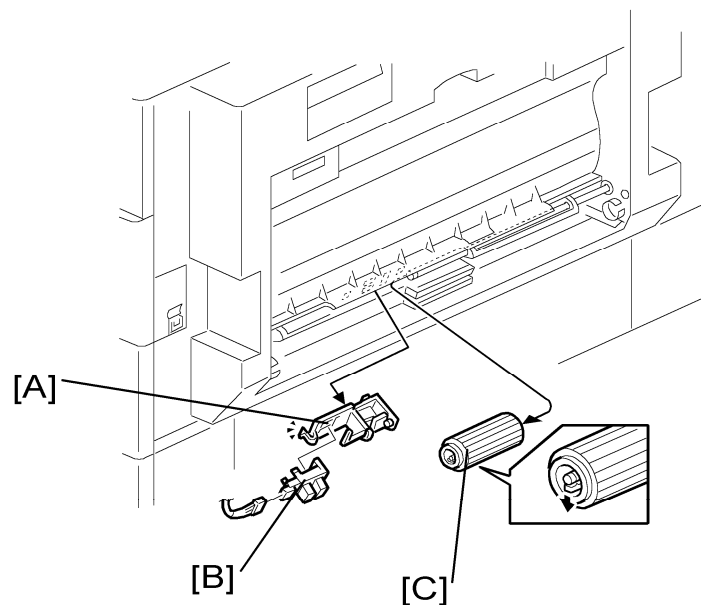
4. Exit sensor bracket [B] ( x 1).
5. Exit sensor [C] ( x 1).

- Duplex Models -



1. Open the right door.
2. Front right cover.
3. Upper guide [D] ( x 2).
4. Exit sensor bracket [E] ( x 1).
5. Exit sensor [F] ( x 1).

3.8.5 BY-PASS FEED ROLLER AND PAPER END SENSOR



1. **By-pass tray.**



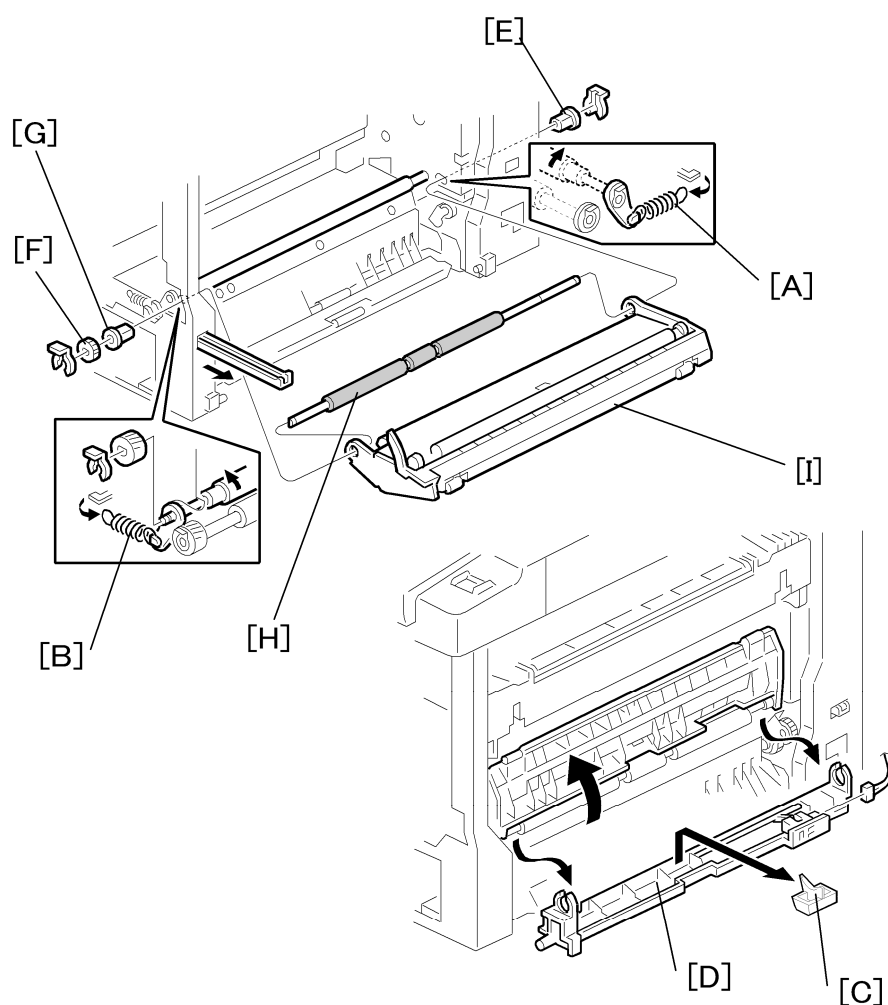
-6850556. If you have a support to keep the by-pass tray within the reach of the connector cable, you do not need to disconnect the connector. When you do so, use caution not to place too much load on the cable.

2. **Sensor holder [A].**

3. **By-pass paper end sensor [B] (x 1).**

4. **By-pass feed roller [C].**

3.8.6 REGISTRATION ROLLER



1. **PCU.**

2. **Front cover.**

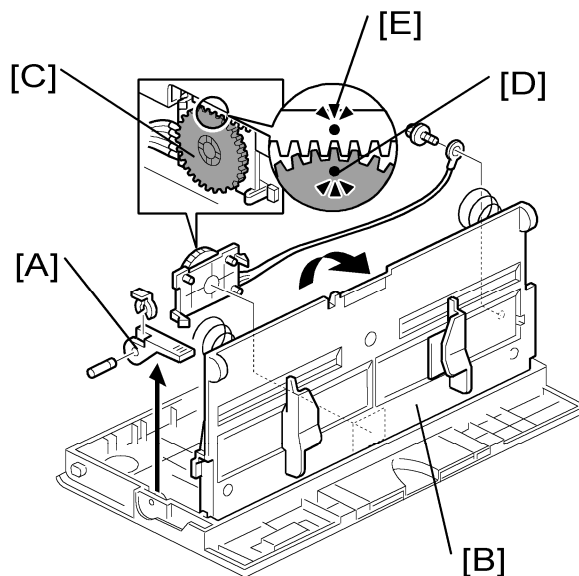
3. **Right door .)**

4. **Rear cover.**

5. **High-voltage power supply .**

6. Registration clutch.
7. Unhook the springs [A] and [B] at the rear and front sides.
8. Guide support [C] and guide [D] (🔩 x 1, 📏 x 1).
9. Bushing [E] (🔩 x 1).
10. Gear [F] and bushing [G] (🔩 x 1).
11. Registration roller [H] with the image transfer unit [I].

3.8.7 BY-PASS PAPER SIZE SWITCH

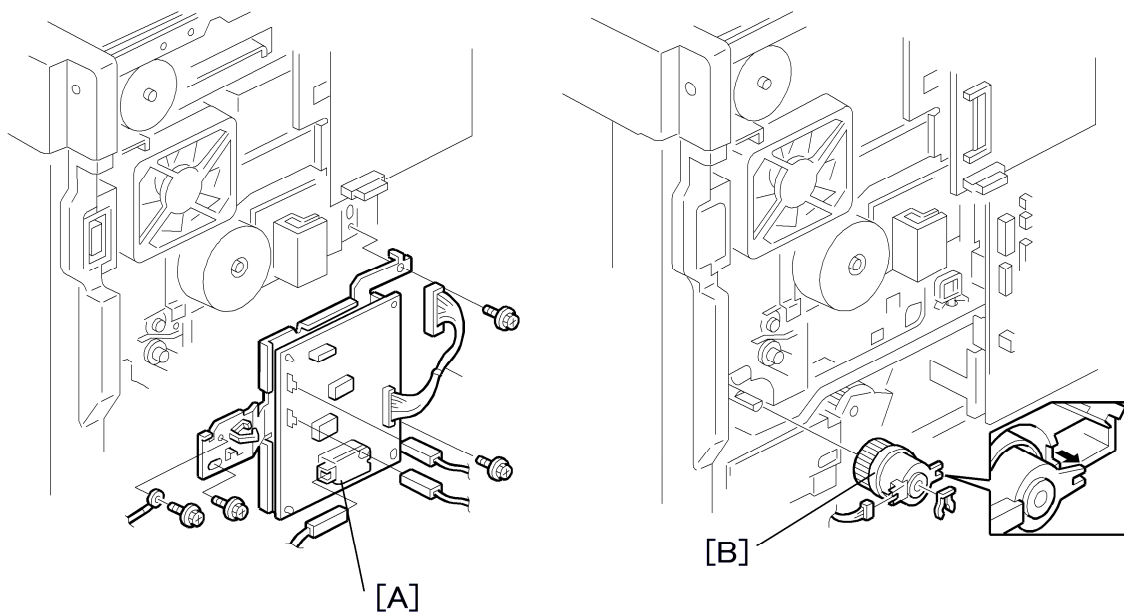


1. By-pass tray.
2. Tray lever [A] (🔩 x 1, 1 pin).
3. Lift the upper tray [B].
4. By-pass paper size switch [C] (🔩 x 1).



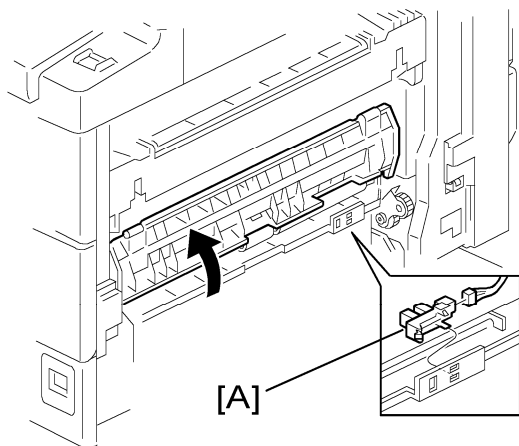
-6850556. When reinstalling the switch: Move the paper guides to their middle position (about halfway between fully open and fully closed), and install the round gear so that the hole in the gear [D] aligns with the peg [E] on the sliding gear.

3.8.8 REGISTRATION CLUTCH



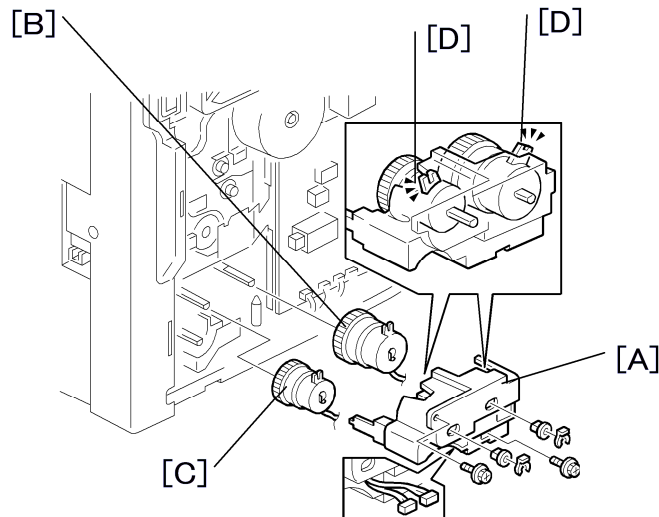
1. Rear cover.
2. High-voltage power supply board (with the bracket) [A] (⚙️ x 4, all connectors).
3. Registration clutch [B] (⚙️ x 1, ⚙️ x 1).

3.8.9 REGISTRATION SENSOR



1. Open the right door.
2. Registration sensor [A] (⚙️ x 1).

3.8.10 UPPER PAPER FEED CLUTCH AND BY-PASS FEED CLUTCH

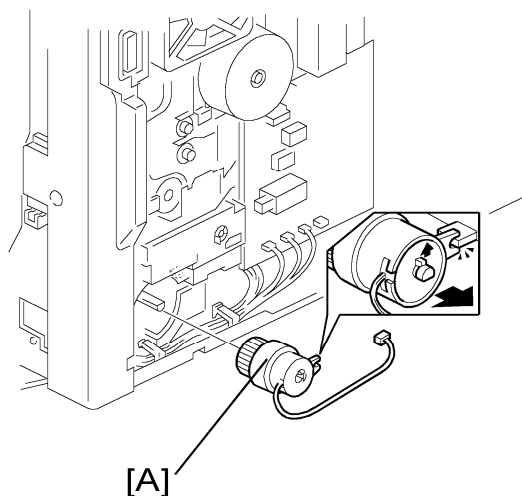


1. Rear cover.
2. High-voltage power supply board.
3. Clutch cover [A] (Ⓜ x 2, 2 bushings, Ⓜ x 2).
4. Paper feed clutch [B] (Ⓜ x 1).
5. By-pass feed clutch [C] (Ⓜ x 1).

↓ Note

-6850556. Make sure that the rotation-prevention tabs [D] on the clutches fit correctly into the corresponding openings on the clutch cover when you reinstall.

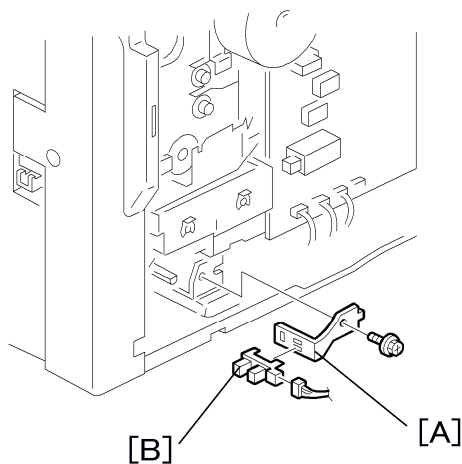
3.8.11 RELAY CLUTCH



1. Rear cover.

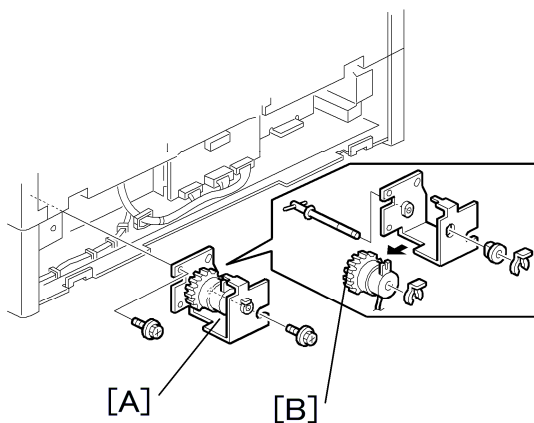
2. Relay clutch [A] (🔩 x 1).

3.8.12 RELAY SENSOR



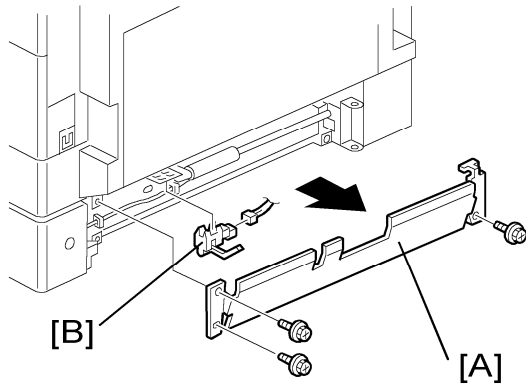
1. Relay clutch (Previous procedure).
2. Sensor bracket [A] (🔩 x 1).
3. Relay sensor [B] (🔩 x 1).

3.8.13 LOWER PAPER FEED CLUTCH (TWO-TRAY MODELS ONLY)



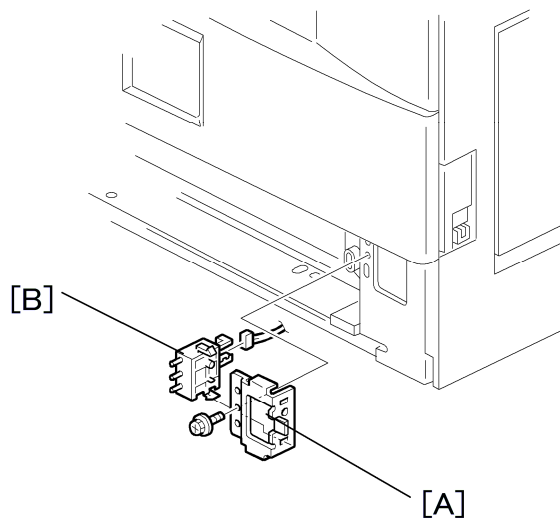
1. Rear lower cover (🔩 Rear Lower Cover (Two-tray Models Only)).
2. Clutch bracket [A] (🔩 x 2).
3. Lower paper feed clutch [B] (🔩 x 2, 1 bushing, 🔩 x 1).

3.8.14 VERTICAL TRANSPORT SENSOR (TWO-TRAY MODELS ONLY)



1. Right lower cover (Rear Lower Cover (Two-tray Models Only)).
2. Metal plate [A] (x 3).
3. Vertical transport sensor [B] (x 1).

3.8.15 PAPER SIZE SWITCH



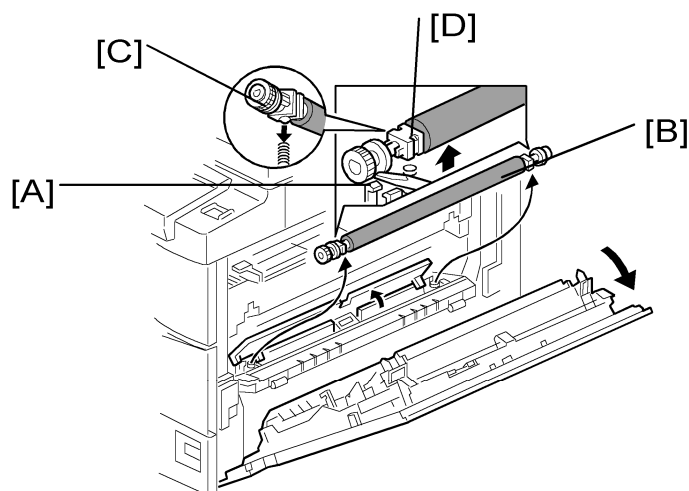
1. Paper cassette.
2. Switch cover [A] (x 1).
3. Paper size switch [B] (x 1).

3.9 IMAGE TRANSFER

3.9.1 IMAGE TRANSFER ROLLER

CAUTION

-21. Do not touch the transfer roller surface with bare hands.

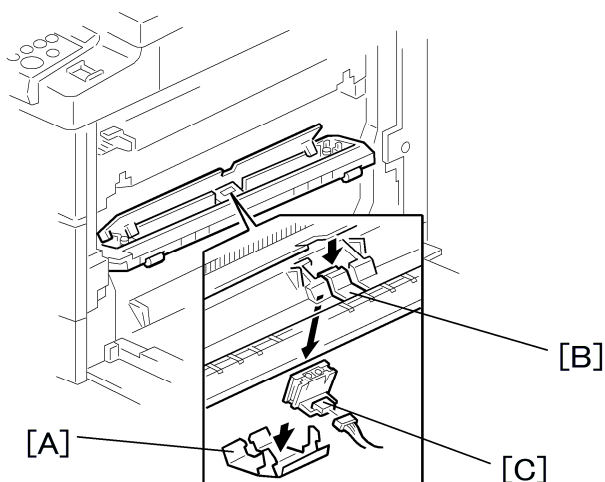


1. Open the right door.
2. Lift the plastic holders [A] with the image transfer roller [B].

 Note

-6850556. Leave the springs under the holders. Make sure that the pegs [C] on the holders [D] engage with the springs when you reassemble.

3.9.2 IMAGE DENSITY SENSOR



1. Open the right door.
2. Plastic cover [A].

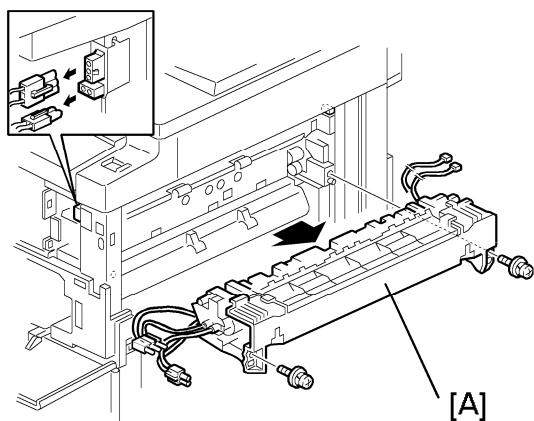
3. Image transfer roller (Previous procedure).
4. Push down on the notch [B] to free the sensor.
5. Image density sensor [C] ( x 1).

3.10 FUSING

3.10.1 FUSING UNIT

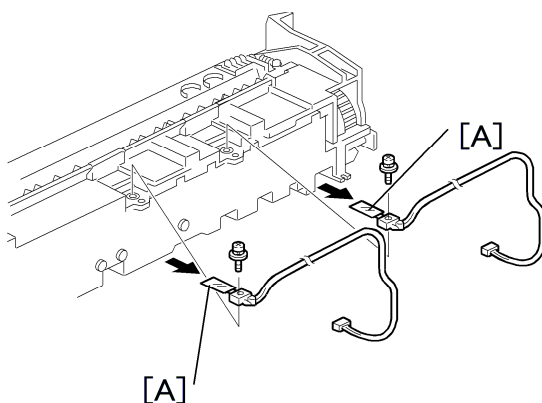
CAUTION

- 21. The fusing unit can become very hot. Make sure that it has cooled down sufficiently before you handle it.



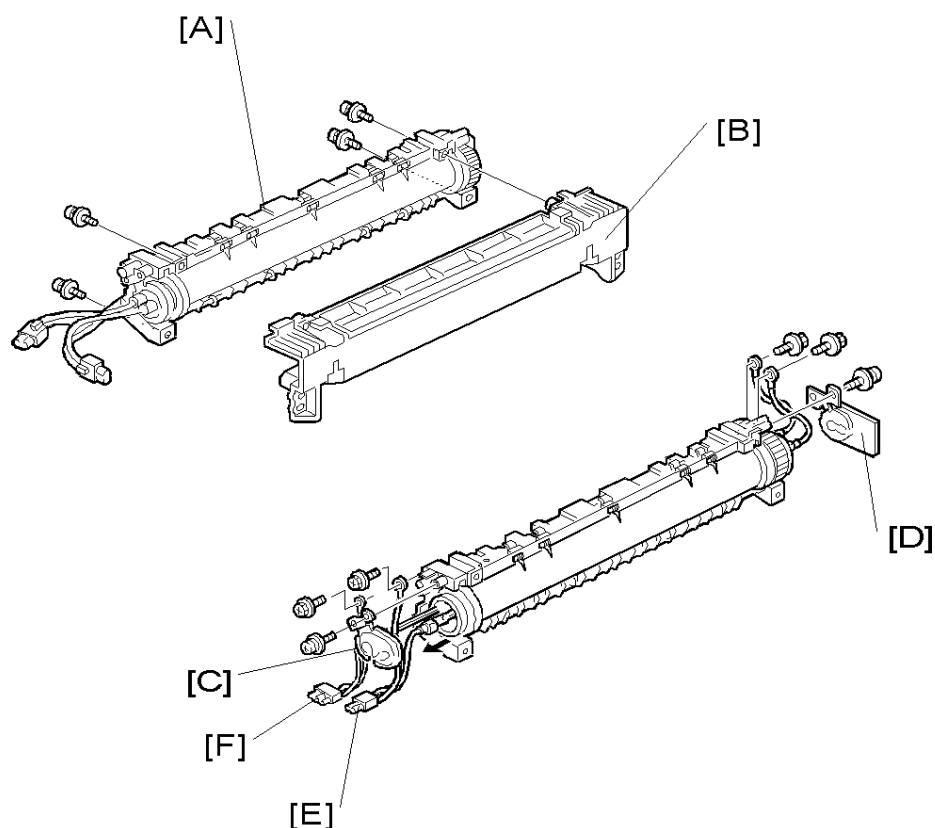
1. Turn off the main switch, and unplug the machine.
2. Front right cover.
3. Open the right door.
4. Fusing unit [A] ( x 2,  x 4).

3.10.2 THERMISTOR



1. Fusing unit (see above).
2. Thermistors [A] ( x 1,  x 1).

3.10.3 FUSING LAMPS

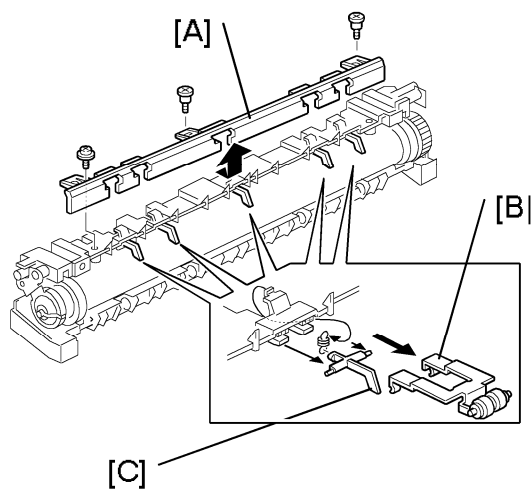


1. Fusing unit.
2. Separate the hot roller section [A] from the pressure roller section [B] (⚙ x 4).
3. Front holding plate [C] (⚙ x 1).
4. Rear holding plate [D] (⚙ x 1).
5. Fusing lamp with the connector (600W) [E] (⚙ x 2).
6. Fusing lamp with the connector (550W) [F] (⚙ x 2).

↓ **Note**

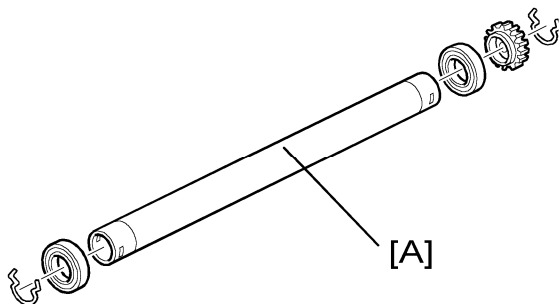
-6850556. Check that the front ends of the two lamps fit in the front holding plate when you reassemble. If the lamps are seated incorrectly, they do not fit in the holding plate.

3.10.4 HOT ROLLER STRIPPER PAWLS



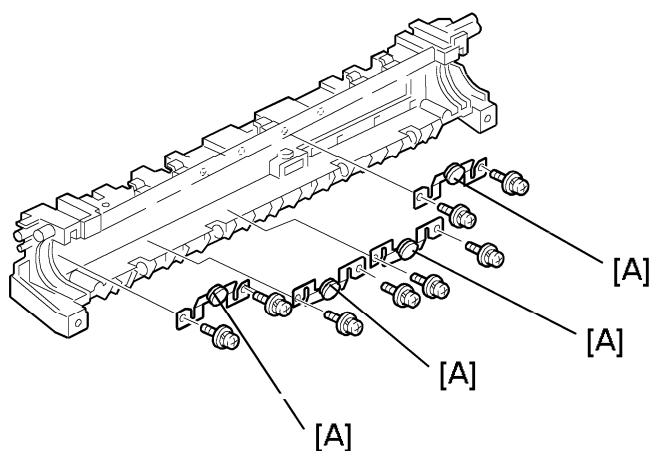
1. Hot roller section (See above).
2. Roller guard [A] (x 3).
3. Metal holders [B] (1 holder for each).
4. Hot roller stripper paws [C] (1 spring for each).

3.10.5 HOT ROLLER



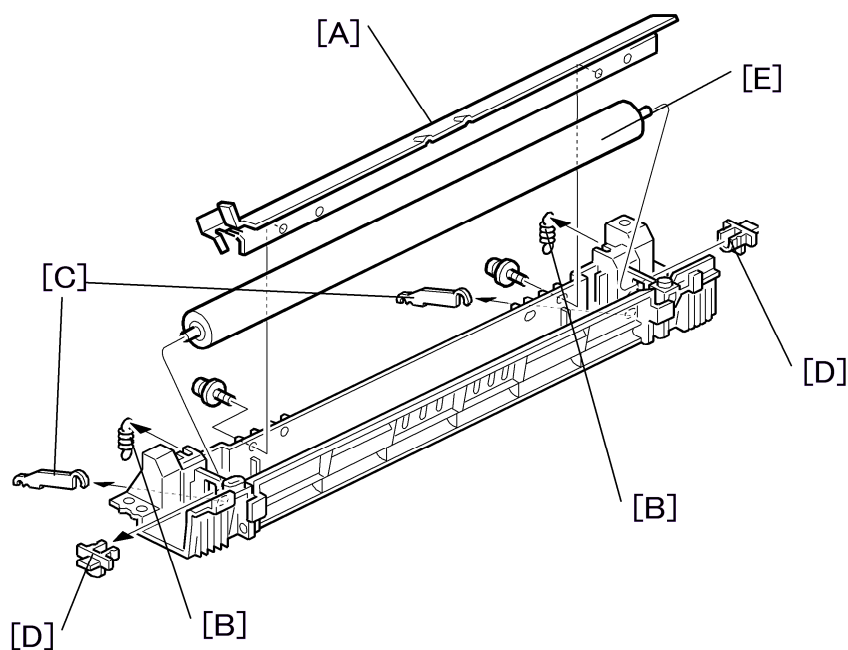
1. Hot roller stripper paws (See above).
2. Hot roller [A] (2 C-rings, 1 gear, 2 bearings).

3.10.6 THERMOSTAT



1. Hot roller (See above).
2. Thermostat [A] (🔩 x 2 for each).

3.10.7 PRESSURE ROLLER AND BUSHINGS

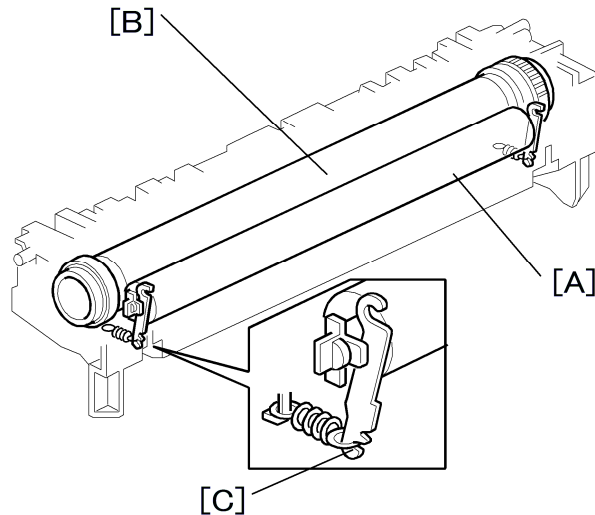


1. Separate the hot roller section from the pressure roller section (🔧 Fusing Lamps).
2. Fusing entrance guide [A] (🔩 x 2).
3. 2 springs [B].
4. 2 pressure arms [C].
5. 2 Bushings [D].

6. Pressure roller [E]

3.10.8 NIP BAND WIDTH ADJUSTMENT

Do this adjustment when the fusing unit is at its operating temperature. The size of the OHP sheet must be A4/LT LEF. Any other sizes may cause a paper jam.



- A. Pressure roller
- B. Hot roller

1. Place an OHP sheet on the by-pass feed table.
2. Enter SP mode, and run SP 1109.
3. Press '1' (Yes).
4. Press  twice. The machine feeds the OHP sheet into the fusing section, stops it there for 20 seconds, then ejects it to the copy tray.
5. Press the  key.
6. Quit the SP mode.
7. Check that the nip band (the opaque stripe) across the ejected OHP sheet is symmetrical, with both ends slightly thicker than the center.

Note

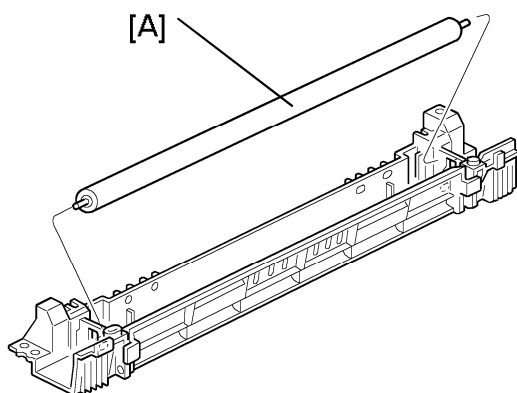
-6850556. There is no standard value for the nip band on this machine. Make the adjustment based on the band's appearance.

8. If the band is not as described above, change the position of the spring hooks [C] (one on each side), and then check the band again.

Note

-6850556. The higher hook position produces greater tension.

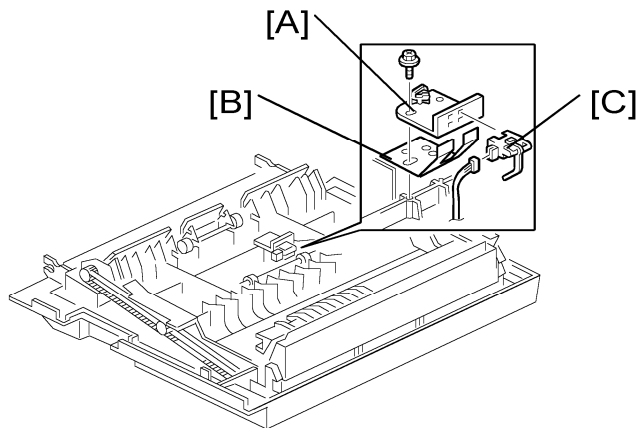
3.10.9 CLEANING ROLLER



1. Pressure roller and bushings (p.3-47)
2. Cleaning roller [A]

3.11 DUPLEX UNIT (DUPLEX MODELS B269/B277 ONLY)

3.11.1 DUPLEX EXIT SENSOR



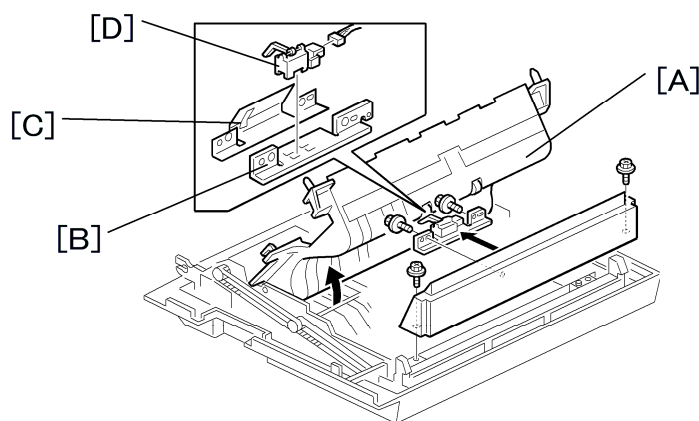
1. Open the right door.
2. Sensor bracket [A] (🔩 x 1).

↓ Note

-6850556. Another bracket [B] comes off with the sensor bracket.

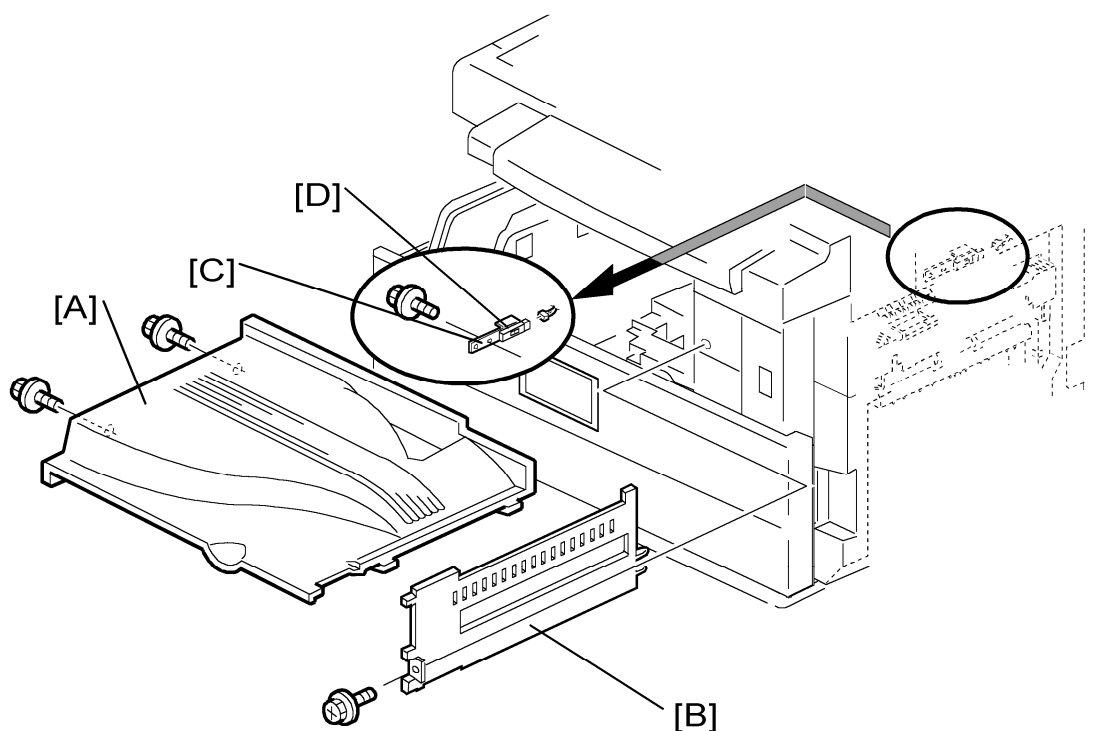
3. Duplex exit sensor [C] (🔌 x 1).

3.11.2 DUPLEX ENTRANCE SENSOR



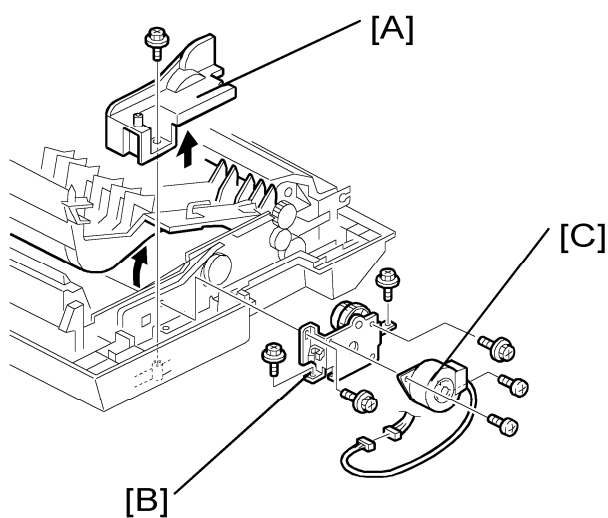
1. Open the right door.
2. Lift the duplex guide [A].
3. Entrance sensor bracket [B] and bracket cover [C] (🔩 x 2).
4. Duplex entrance sensor [D].

3.11.3 DUPLEX INVERTER SENSOR



1. Copy tray [A] (🔩 x 2).
2. Exit cover [B] (🔩 x 1).
3. Sensor bracket [C] (🔩 x 1, 📏 x 1).
4. Duplex inverter sensor [D] (🔩 x 1).

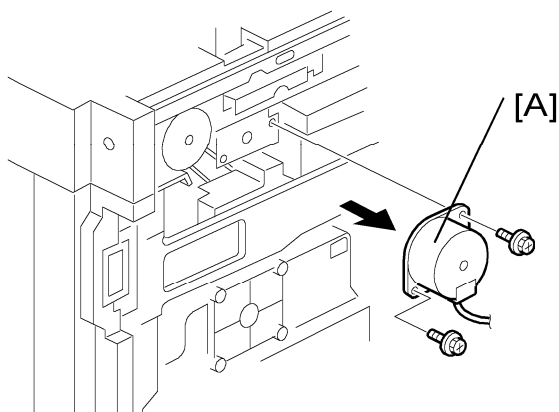
3.11.4 DUPLEX TRANSPORT MOTOR



1. Open the right door.

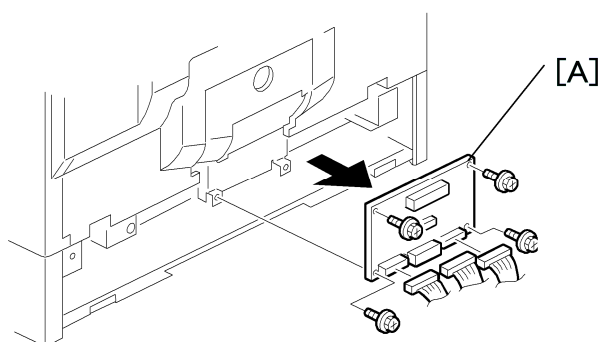
2. Detach the chain and spring from the frame, and lower the right door.
3. Cover [A] (🔩 x 1).
4. Motor bracket [B] (🔩 x 4, 📏 x 1).
5. Duplex transport motor [C] (🔩 x 2).

3.11.5 DUPLEX INVERTER MOTOR



1. Rear cover
2. Exhaust fan (📏 Rear Exhaust Fan {B269/B277 Only}).
3. Duplex inverter motor [A] (🔩 x 2, 📏 x 1).

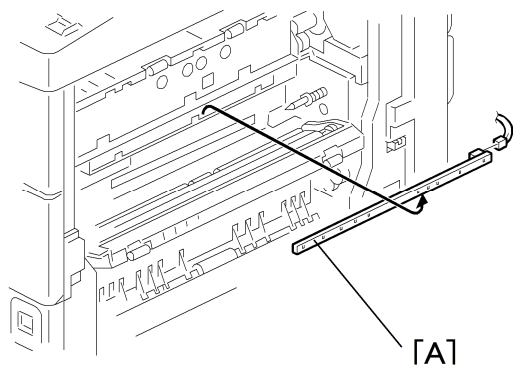
3.11.6 DUPLEX CONTROL BOARD



1. Rear lower cover (📏 Rear Lower Cover Two-tray Models Only).
2. Duplex control board [A] (🔩 x 4 , all connectors).

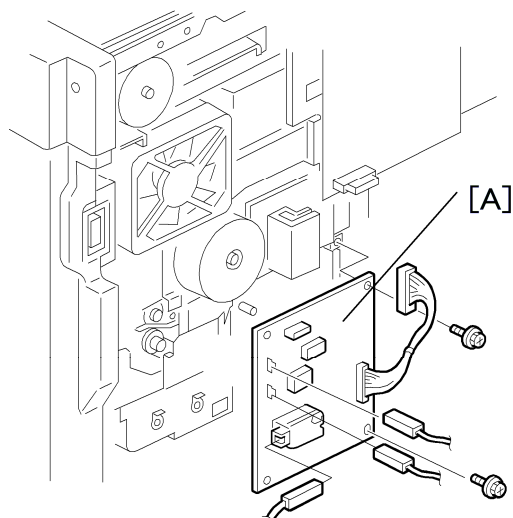
3.12 OTHER REPLACEMENTS

3.12.1 QUENCHING LAMP



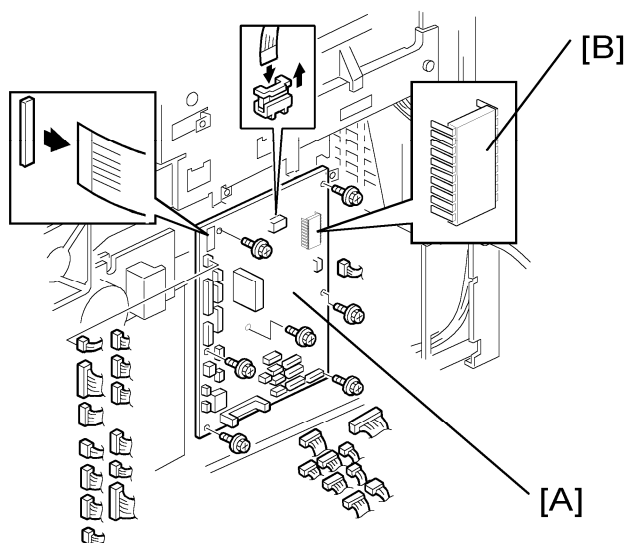
1. PCU (p.3-26).
2. Quenching lamp [A] (x 1).

3.12.2 HIGH-VOLTAGE POWER SUPPLY BOARD



1. Rear cover .
2. High-voltage power supply board [A] (x 2, 3 standoffs, all connectors).

3.12.3 BICU (BASE-ENGINE IMAGE CONTROL UNIT)

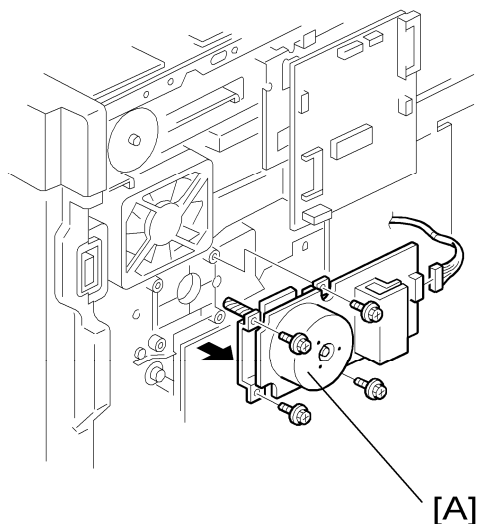


1. Rear cover.
2. BICU [A] (⚙ x 7, all connectors, 2 flat cables).



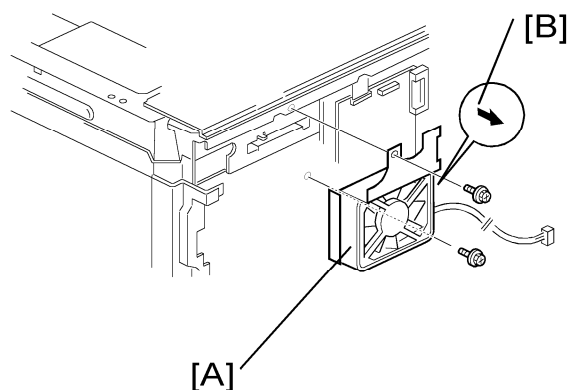
-6850556. Remove the NVRAM [B] from the old BICU and install it on the new BICU when you replace the BICU. The NVRAM keeps machine-specific data.

3.12.4 MAIN MOTOR



1. Rear cover.
2. Main motor [A] (⚙ x 4, x 1).

3.12.5 REAR EXHAUST FAN (B269/B277 ONLY)



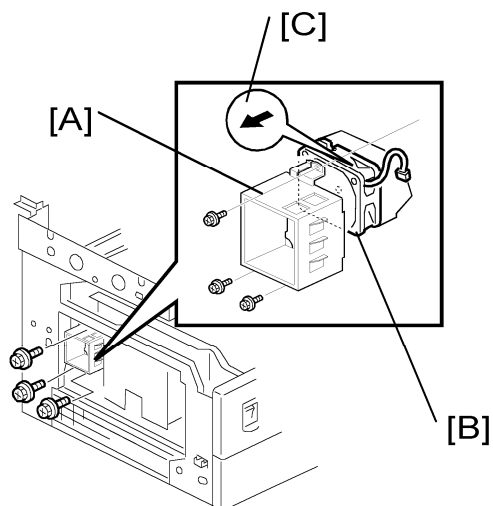
1. Rear cover.
2. Rear exhaust fan [A] (⚙️ x 2, 🛠️ x 1).

★ Important

-21. Reassembling -

- 20. Make sure that the arrow on the fan [B] points the outside of the copier when you reassemble. The arrow indicates the direction of the air current.

3.12.6 LEFT EXHAUST FAN



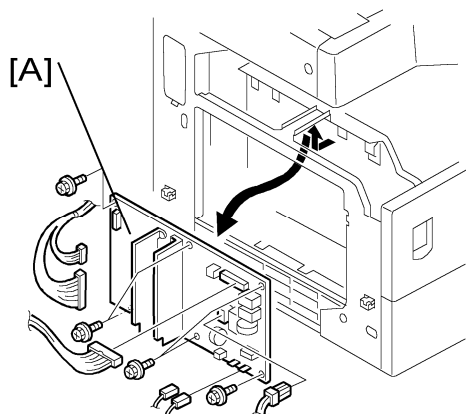
1. Rear cover.
2. Left cover.
3. Fan cover [A] (⚙️ x 3).
4. Fan [B] (⚙️ x 3, 🛠️ x 1).



-21. Reassembling -

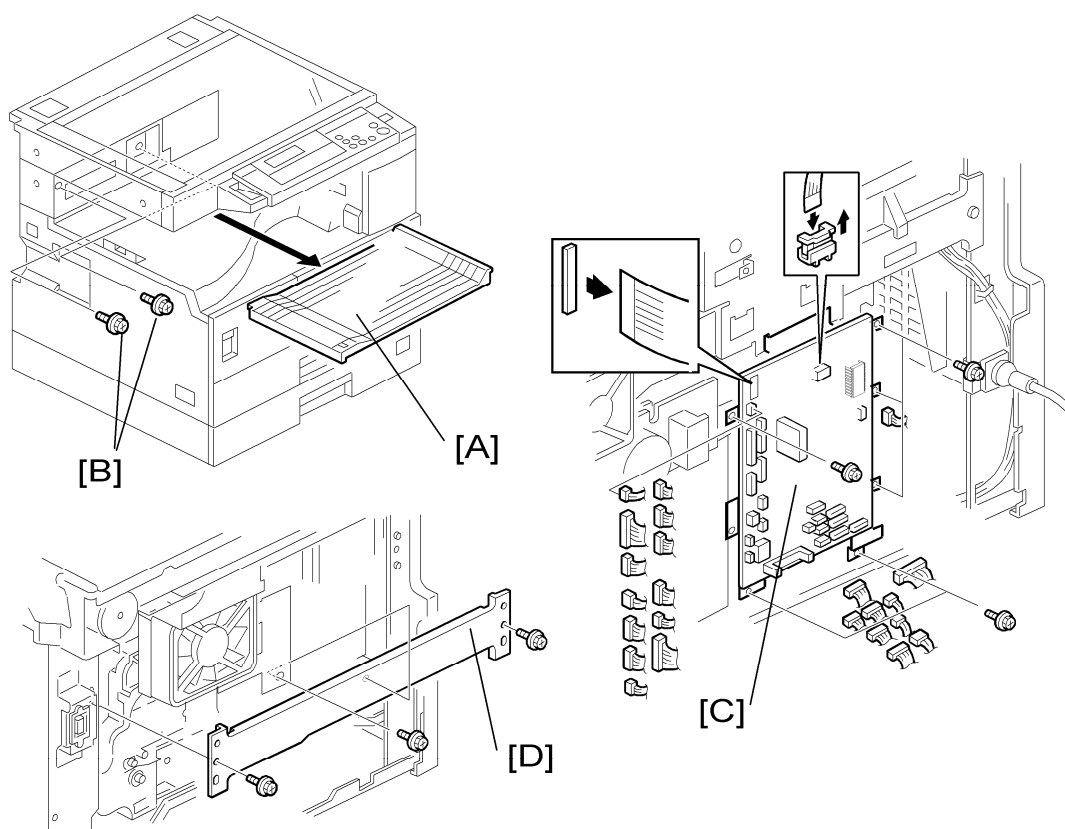
- 20. Make sure that the arrow on the fan [C] points the outside of the copier when you reassemble. (The arrow indicates the direction of the air current).

3.12.7 PSU (POWER SUPPLY UNIT)



1. Left cover.
2. PSU [A] (All connectors,  x 6).

3.12.8 GEARBOX



Replacement
Adjustment

- Replacement Procedure -

1. Inverter tray [A].

2. Two screws [B] from the middle rear cover.



- This step releases the topmost part of the BICU bracket.

3. High-voltage power supply board (with the bracket) (Registration Clutch).

4. BICU (with the bracket) [C] (x 6).

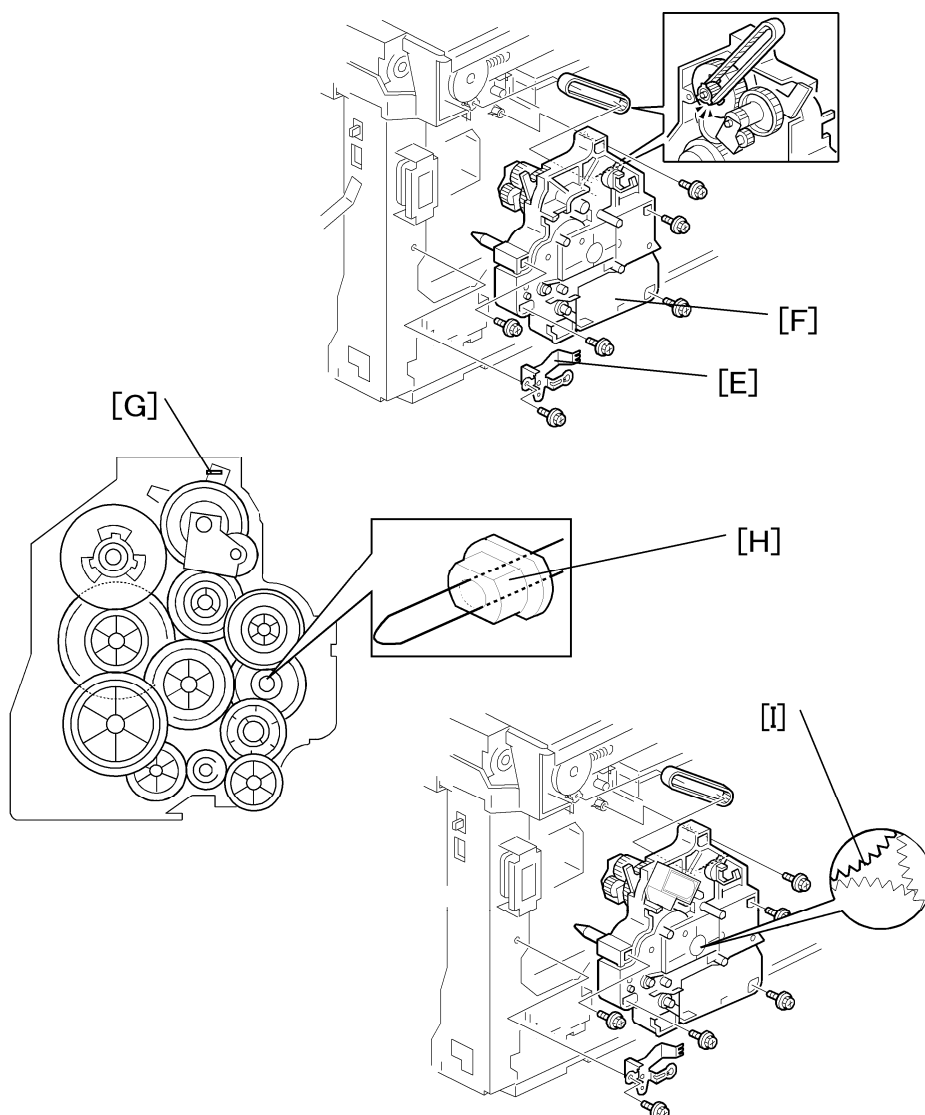


- If you have difficulty to remove the bracket, remove the screw at the middle of the crosspiece (see step 6).

5. Main motor (p.3-54).

6. Crosspiece [D] (x 3).

7. Registration clutch.



8. PCU.

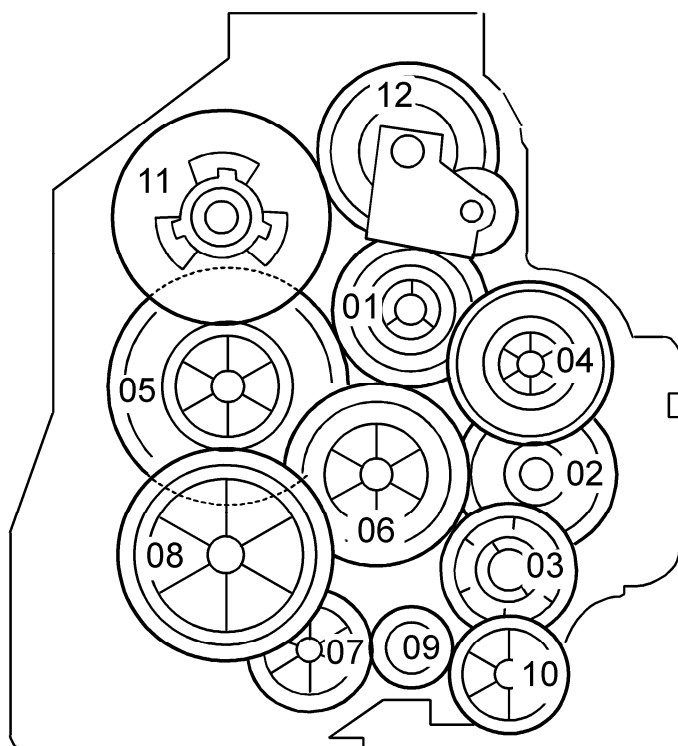


- This step releases the gear (on the gearbox) that drives the PCU.

9. Ground plate [E] (⚙ x 2).

10. Gearbox [F] (⚙ x 5, 1 belt).

Do not change the position of the spring [G] and make sure that the bushing [H] on the PCU drive shaft is in the correct position you when you reassemble. You can adjust its position by rotating the gear [I] seen from the opening of the gearbox.

- Gear Arrangement in the Gearbox -

The gears are numbered 1 to 12, in the order in which they are to be installed in the gearbox. These numbers show both on the gearbox and on the front (exposed) surface of each gear. If the gears fall out, start by finding gear number 1 and installing it onto location number 1 (setting it into place so that the side with the printed number stays visible). Then install the remaining gears (2 to 12) in the same way.

3.13 COPY ADJUSTMENTS PRINTING/SCANNING



- You need to perform the adjustment after you do a Memory All Clear, and after you replace or adjust any of the following parts.
 - First or second scanner
 - Lens Block
 - Scanner Motor
 - Polygonal Mirror Motor
 - Paper Tray
 - Paper Side Fence
- For detailed explanations about how to access and use the SP modes, see Section 5.

3.13.1 PRINTING



- Make sure the paper is installed correctly in each paper tray before you start these adjustments.
- Use the Trimming Area Pattern (SP 5902, No.10) to print the test pattern for the printing adjustments below.
- Set SP 5902 to 0 again after you complete these printing adjustments.

- Registration - Leading Edge/Side-to-Side -

1. Check the leading edge registration for each paper feed station, and adjust each of these registrations using SP 1001.
2. Check the side-to-side registration for each paper feed station, and adjust these registrations using SP 1002. (Adjust the trays in order: the 1st tray first, then the 2nd tray, etc.)

Tray	SP mode	Specification
Any paper tray	SP 1001 1	2 1.5 mm
By-pass feed	SP 1001 2	
Duplex	SP 1001 3	
1st tray	SP 1002 1	
2nd tray	SP 1002 2	
3rd tray (Optional PFU tray 1)	SP 1002 3	

Tray	SP mode	Specification
By-pass feed	SP 1002 4	
Duplex	SP 1002 5	



A: Leading Edge Registration

B: Side-to-side Registration

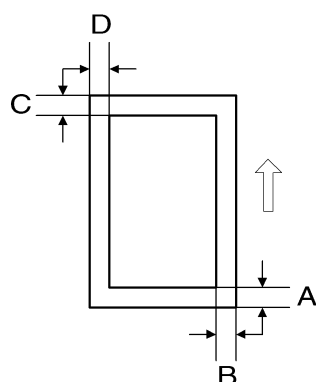
- Blank Margin -



- If the leading edge or side-to-side registration cannot be adjusted to within the specification, then adjust the leading-edge blank margin or the left-side blank margin.

- Check the trailing edge and right side edge blank margins, and adjust them using the following SP modes.

	SP mode	Specification
Trailing edge	SP 2101 2	2 +2.5/-1.5 mm
Right edge	SP 2101 4	
Leading edge	SP 2101 1	2 1.5 mm
Left edge	SP 2101 3	



A: Trailing Edge Blank Margin

B: Right Edge Blank Margin

C: Leading Edge Blank Margin

D: Left Edge Blank Margin

- Main Scan Magnification -

- Print the single-dot grid pattern (SP 5902 1).
- Check the magnification (the grid size should be 2.7 x 2.7 mm), and if necessary use SP 2998 to adjust it. The specification is 100 ± 1%.

3.13.2 SCANNING

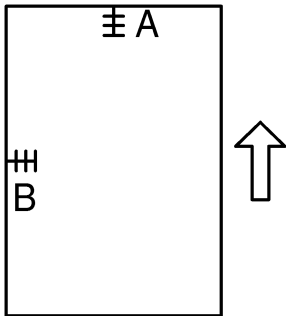
Note

- Before doing the following scanner adjustments, check and adjust the printing leading-edge and side-to-side registrations and the printing blank margins (as described above).
- Use an A3 test chart to perform the following adjustments.

- Registration: Platen Mode -

1. Place the test chart on the exposure glass and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the leading edge and side-to-side registration, and adjust as necessary with the following SP modes.

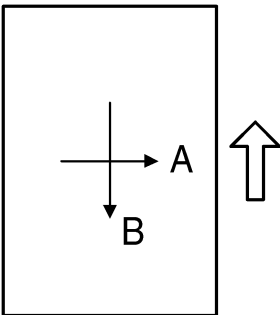
	SP mode	Specification
Leading edge	SP 4010	2 1.5 mm
Side-to-side	SP 4011	



A: Leading edge registration

B: Side-to-side registration

- Magnification -



A: Main scan magnification

B: Sub-scan magnification

- Main Scan Magnification -

1. Place the A3 test chart on the exposure glass and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the magnification ratio. If necessary, adjust the magnification using the following SP mode.

	SP mode	Specification
Main Scan Magnification	SP 4009	1.0%

- Sub-Scan Magnification -

1. Place the OS-A3 test chart on the exposure glass and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the magnification ratio. If necessary, adjust the magnification with the following SP mode.

	SP mode	Specification
Sub-scan magnification	SP 4008	1.0%

- Standard White Density Adjustment -

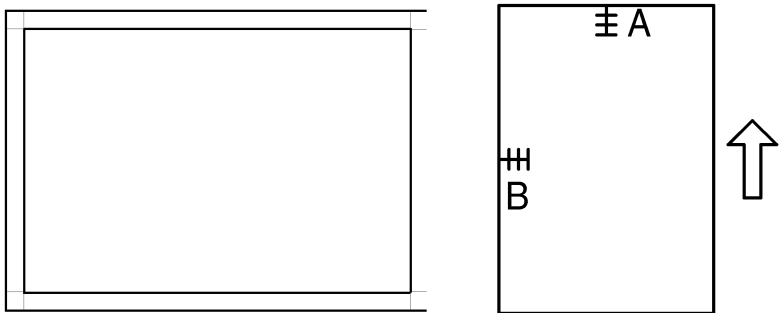
This procedure adjusts the standard white density level. Do this adjustment after you do any of the following:

1. After you replace the standard white plate.
2. After you replace the NVRAM on the BICU. (But note that you do not need to carry out this adjustment if you have replaced the BICU itself but retained the previous NVRAM board [by moving it over onto the new BICU]).
3. After you perform a memory all clear (SP 5801 2).

Procedure:

1. Place 10 sheets of new A4/LTR paper (sideways, LEF) or new A3/DLT paper on the exposure glass, and close the platen cover or the ADF.
2. Enter SP 4428 1 and select "1: YES". The machine automatically adjusts the standard white density.

3.13.3 ADF IMAGE ADJUSTMENT



A: Leading edge registration

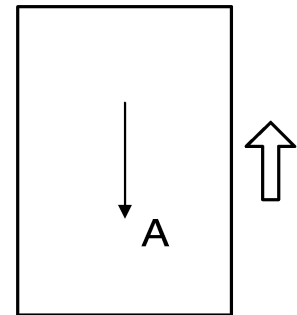
B: Side-to-side registration



- 21. Make a temporary test chart as shown above, using A3/11" x 17" paper.
1. **Place the temporary test chart on the ADF and make a copy from one of the feed stations.**
 2. **Check the registrations, and adjust as necessary with the appropriate SP modes, as follows.**

	SP mode
Side-to-side registration	SP 6006 1
Leading edge registration	SP 6006 2
Blank margin for the trailing edge	SP 6006 3
Side-to-side registration (Duplex: back side)	SP 6006 4

- Sub-scan Magnification -



A: Sub-scan magnification



- 21. Make a temporary test chart as shown above, with A3/11" x 17" paper.

1. Place the temporary test chart on the ADF and make a copy from one of the feed stations.
2. Check the registration, and if necessary adjust it with SP 6006 5. The specification is $\pm 1.0\%$.

TROUBLESHOOTING

4. TROUBLESHOOTING

4.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

4.1.1 SUMMARY

There are four levels of service call conditions.

Level	Definition	Reset Procedure
A	To prevent damage to the machine, the main machine cannot be operated until the SC has been reset by a service representative (see the note below).	Enter SP mode, and then turn the main power switch off and on.
B	If the SC was caused by incorrect sensor detection, the SC can be reset by turning the main power switch off and on.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
C	The main machine can be operated as usual, excluding the unit related to the service call.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
D	The SC history is updated. The machine can be operated as usual.	The SC will not be displayed. Only the SC history is updated.

↓ Note

- If the malfunction is potentially related to electrical circuit boards, first disconnect then reconnect the connectors before replacing the PCBs.
- If the problem concerns a motor lock, first check the mechanical load before replacing motors or sensors.

4.1.2 SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
101	B	Exposure Lamp Error	
		The standard white level was not detected properly when scanning the white plate.	1. Exposure lamp defective 2. Exposure lamp stabilizer defective 3. Exposure lamp connector defective 4. Dirty scanner mirror or scanner mirror out of position 5. SBU board defective 6. SBU connector defective 7. Lens block out of position 8. Incorrect position or width of white plate scanning (p.5-12)
120	B	Scanner home position error 1	
		The scanner home position sensor does not detect the off condition during initialization or copying.	1. Scanner home position sensor defective 2. Scanner drive motor defective 3. Scanner home position sensor connector defective 4. Scanner drive motor connector defective 5. BICU board defective
121	B	Scanner home position error 2	
		The scanner home position sensor does not detect the on condition during initialization or copying.	1. Scanner home position sensor defective 2. Scanner drive motor defective 3. Scanner home position sensor connector defective 4. Scanner drive motor connector defective 5. BICU board defective

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
143	D	SBU white/black level correction error	
		The automatic SBU adjustment has failed to correct the black level. The automatic SBU adjustment has failed to correct the white level twenty times consecutively.	1. Exposure lamp defective 2. Dirty white plate 3. Incorrect position or width of white plate scanning (p.5-12) 4. BICU board defective 5. SBU board defective
144	B	Communication Error between BICU and SBU	
		The BICU board cannot detect the SBU connect signal.	1. The flat cable between the BICU board and the SBU has a poor connection 2. The flat cable between the BICU board and the SBU is damaged 3. BICU board defective 4. SBU defective
145	D	Automatic SBU adjustment error	
		During the automatic SBU adjustment, the machine detects that the white level read from the white plate or paper is out of range. (p.5-12)	1. Exposure lamp defective 2. Dirty white plate 3. Incorrect position or width of white plate scanning (p.5-12) 4. BICU board defective 5. SBU board defective
193	B	Image transfer error	
		Scanned images are not transferred to the controller memory within 1 minute.	1. BICU board defective 2. Controller board defective
198	B	Memory address error	
		The BICU board does not receive memory	1. The firmware programs of the engine and the controller do not

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
		addresses from the controller board.	match. 2. BICU board defective 3. Controller board defective
302	B	Charge roller current leak	
		A current leak signal for the charge roller is detected.	1. Charge roller damaged 2. High voltage supply board defective 3. Poor connection of the PCU
320	B	Polygonal mirror motor error	
		The polygon mirror motor does not reach operating speed within 10 seconds after the motor ON signal is sent, or does not turn on within one of the 200 ms check intervals during operation.	1. Polygon mirror motor defective 2. Poor connection between the polygonal mirror motor driver and the BICU board 3. Damaged cable between BICU and polygonal mirror motor driver 4. BICU board defective
321	C	No laser writing signal (F-GATE) error	
		The laser-writing signal (F-GATE) fails to turn Low after the laser crosses 5 mm on the drum surface from the laser writing start position.	1. BICU board defective 2. The fax controller or printer controller has a poor connection 3. Fax controller or printer controller defective
322	B	Laser synchronization error	
		The main scan synchronization detector board cannot detect the laser synchronization signal for more than 5 consecutive 100 ms intervals.	1. Poor connection between the LD unit and the BICU board 2. Damaged cable between BICU and LD unit 3. LD unit out of position 4. LD unit defective 5. BICU board defective
390	B	TD sensor error	

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
		The TD sensor outputs less than 0.2 V or more than 4.0 V 10 times consecutively during copying.	1. TD sensor abnormal 2. Poor connection of the PCU
391	B	Development bias leak	
		A development bias leak signal is detected.	1. Poor connection of the PCU 2. High voltage supply board defective
392	B	TD sensor initial setting error	
		TD sensor initial setting is not performed correctly.	1. ID sensor defective 2. No developer 3. Drum does not turn 4. Development roller does not turn 5. Poor connection of the PCU 6. The voltage is not applied to charge roller
401	B	Transfer roller leak error 1	
		A current leak signal for the transfer roller is detected. A current feedback signal for the transfer roller is not detected.	1. High voltage supply board defective 2. Poor connection of the PCU 3. Transfer/separation unit set incorrectly 4. Transfer roller damaged
402	B	Transfer roller leak error 2	
		A current leak signal for the transfer roller is detected. A current feedback signal for the transfer roller is not detected.	1. High voltage supply board defective 2. Poor connection of the PCU 3. Transfer/separation unit set incorrectly 4. Transfer roller damaged
500	B	Main motor lock	
		A main motor lock signal	1. Too much load on the drive

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
		is not detected for more than 7 consecutive checks (700 ms) after the main motor starts to rotate, or the lock signal is not detected for more than 7 consecutive checks during rotation after the last signal.	mechanism 2. Main motor defective
502	C	Tray 2 lift motor malfunction (Optional paper tray units)	
		The paper lift sensor fails to activate twice continuously after the tray lift motor has been on for 18 seconds.	1. Paper lift sensor defective 2. Tray lift motor defective 3. Too much load on the drive mechanism 4. Poor tray lift motor connection
503	C	Tray 3 lift motor malfunction (optional paper tray units)	
		The paper lift sensor fails to activate twice continuously after the tray lift motor has been on for 18 seconds.	1. Paper lift sensor defective 2. Tray lift motor defective 3. Too much load on the drive mechanism 4. Poor tray lift motor connection
504	C	Tray 4 lift motor malfunction (optional two-tray paper tray unit)	
		The paper lift sensor fails to activate twice continuously after the tray lift motor has been on for 18 seconds.	1. Paper lift sensor defective 2. Tray lift motor defective 3. Too much load on the drive mechanism 4. Poor tray lift motor connection
506	C	Paper feed motor lock (optional paper tray units)	
		A motor lock signal is not detected for more than 1.5 s or the lock signal is not detected for more than 1.0 s during rotation.	1. Paper feed motor defective 2. Too much load on the drive mechanism

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
541	A	Fusing thermistor open (center)	
		The fusing temperature detected by the thermistor is below 71C and is not corrected after the main power switch is turned on.	1. Fusing thermistor defective or out of position 2. Power supply board defective 3. Loose connectors
542	A	Fusing temperature warm-up error (center)	
		The fusing temperature rises less than 7 degrees in 2 seconds, and this continues 5 times consecutively. The fusing temperature is not detected in 25 or 35 seconds.	9. Fusing thermistor defective or out of position 10. Fusing lamp open 11. Power supply board defective
543	A	Fusing overheat error (center)	
		The fusing temperature is over 230C for 1 second (detected by the thermistor).	1. Fusing thermistor defective 2. Power supply board defective
544	A	Fusing overheat error (center) 2	
		The fusing temperature is over 250C for 1 second (detected by the fusing temperature monitor circuit).	1. Fusing thermistor defective 2. Power supply board defective
545	A	Fusing lamp overheat error (center)	
		After the fusing temperature reaches the target temperature, the fusing lamp does not turn off for 12 consecutive seconds.	1. Fusing thermistor defective or out of position 2. Power supply board defective

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
546	A	Unstable fusing temperature (center)	
		The fusing temperature varies 50C or more within 1 second, and this occurs 2 consecutive times.	1. Thermistor defective or out of position 2. Power supply unit defective
547	B	Zero cross signal malfunction	
		Zero cross signals are not detected within 5 seconds after the main power switch is turned on, or are not detected within 1 second after operation begins.	1. Power supply board defective 2. BICU defective
551	A	Fusing thermistor open (rear)	
		The fusing temperature detected by the thermistor is below 71C and is not corrected after the main power switch is turned on.	1. Fusing thermistor defective or out of position 2. Power supply board defective 3. Loose connectors
552	A	Fusing temperature warm-up error (rear)	
		The fusing temperature rises less than 7 degrees in 2 seconds, and this continues 5 times consecutively. The fusing temperature is not detected in 25 or 35 seconds.	1. Fusing thermistor defective or out of position 2. Fusing lamp open 3. Power supply board defective
553	A	Fusing overheat error (rear)	
		The fusing temperature is over 230C for 1 second (detected by the thermistor).	1. Fusing thermistor defective 2. Power supply board defective

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
555	A	Fusing lamp overheat error (rear)	
		After the fusing temperature reaches the target temperature, the fusing lamp does not turn off for 20 consecutive seconds.	1. Fusing thermistor defective or out of position 2. Power supply board defective
556	A	Unstable fusing temperature (rear)	
		The fusing temperature varies 50C or more within 1 second, and this occurs 2 consecutive times.	1. Thermistor defective or out of position 2. Power supply unit defective
559		Jam error detected 3 times in succession	
		1. The exit sensor and the duplex sensor detect a paper jam 3 times in succession 2. This condition can occur when SP 1159 1 is set to 'on'. The default is 'off'.	Paper jams can occur for the following reasons. 3. Dampness 4. Paper curl 5. Incorrect paper setting in the paper tray Stripper pawls coming apart
590	B	Left exhaust fan motor error	
		The CPU detects an exhaust fan lock signal for more than 5 seconds.	1. Loose connection of the exhaust fan motor 2. Too much load on the motor drive
591	B	Rear exhaust fan motor error	
		The CPU detects an exhaust fan lock signal for more than 5 seconds.	1. Loose connection of the exhaust fan motor 2. Too much load on the motor drive
620	B	Communication error between BICU and ADF	
		The BICU does not	1. Poor connection between the

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
		receive a response from the ADF main board for 4 seconds or more. The BICU receives a break signal from the ADF main board.	BICU and ADF main board (DF connector) 2. ADF main board defective 3. BICU defective
621	B	ADF connection error	
		An incorrect ADF (an ADF for some other copier) is detected. (for Basic and DDST machines) An ADF (including the correct ADF) is installed while the copier is in the energy saver mode. (for DDST machine only)	1. ADF incorrect (The ADF for B039/B040/B043 or B121/B122/B123 is installed on a B245/B268/B269/B276/B277.) 2. The connector of the ADF is removed while the machine is in the energy saver mode.
632	C	Accounting error 1	
		An error is detected during the communication with the MF accounting device.	1. Accounting device defective 2. Loose connection
633	C	Accounting error 2	
		After communication is established with the MF accounting device, a brake signal is issued.	1. Accounting device defective 2. Loose connection
634	C	Accounting RAM error	
		An error is detected in the RAM that saves the information on the MF accounting.	1. Accounting device defective
635	B	Accounting battery error	
		An error is detected in the	1. Accounting device defective

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
		battery that is in the MF accounting device.	
670	C	Engine start error	
		The engine-ready signal is not issued within 70 seconds after the switch is turned on.	1. Engine board defective 2. Controller defective 3. Loose connection
692	B	Controller board communication abnormal	
		Communication error between the printer part of the controller board and BICU.	1. The connector is abnormal between the controller board and the BICU board.
694		Controller board communication abnormal	
		Communication error between the scanner part of the controller board and BICU.	The connector is abnormal between the controller board and the BICU board.
760	B	ADF gate abnormal 1	
		The ADF Gate signal line between the ADF main board and the BICU is disconnected.	1. ADF main board defective 2. Input/output board defective 3. Poor connection (ADF Gate line) between the ADF main board and the BICU.
761	B	ADF gate abnormal 2	
		The FGATE signal is not issued from the ADF within 30 seconds after the ADF starts feeding.	1. ADF connector defective 2. SBU board defective
762	B	ADF gate abnormal 3	
		The FGATE signal is not terminated by the ADF within 60 seconds after the ADF starts feeding.	1. ADF connector defective 2. SBU board defective

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
800	B	Startup without video output end error	
		Video transfer to the engine is started, but the engine did not issue a video transmission end command within the specified time.	1. Controller board defective
804	B	Startup without video input end	
		A video transmission was requested from the scanner, but the scanner did not issue a video transmission end command within the specified time.	1. Controller board defective
818	B	Watchdog error	
		The CPU does not access the watchdog register within a certain time.	1. Controller board defective 2. Software malfunction – download controller firmware again
819	B	Kernel mismatch error	
		Software bug	1. Download controller firmware again
820	B	Self-Diagnostic Error: CPU	
		The central processing unit returned an error during the self-diagnostic test.	1. Controller board defective 2. Download controller firmware again
821	B	Self-Diagnostic Error: ASIC	
		The ASIC returned an error during the self-diagnostic test because the ASIC and CPU timer interrupts were	1. Controller board defective

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
		compared and determined to be out of range.	
823	C	Self-diagnostic Error: Network Interface	
		The network interface board returned an error during the self-diagnostic test.	1. Network interface board defective 2. Controller board defective
824	B	Self-diagnostic Error: NVRAM	
		The resident non-volatile RAM returned an error during the self-diagnostic test.	1. Replace the NVRAM on the controller board 2. Replace the controller board
826	B	Self-diagnostic Error: NVRAM/Optional NVRAM	
		The NVRAM or optional NVRAM returned an error during the self-diagnostic test.	1. Replace the NVRAM on the controller board
827	B	Self-diagnostic Error: RAM	
		The resident RAM returned a verify error during the self-diagnostic test.	1. Download controller firmware again
828	B	Self-diagnostic Error: ROM	
		The resident read-only memory returned an error during the self-diagnostic test.	1. Controller board defective 2. Download controller firmware again
829	C	Self-diagnostic Error: Optional RAM	
		The optional RAM returned an error during the self-diagnostic test.	1. Replace the optional memory board 2. Controller board defective
838	B	Self-diagnostic Error: Clock Generator	
		A verify error occurred	1. Replace the controller board

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
		when setting data was read from the clock generator via the I2C bus.	
850	C	Network I/F Abnormal	
		NIB interface error.	1. NIB defective 2. Controller board defective
857	C	USB I/F Error	
		USB interface error detected.	1. Defective controller
900	B	Electrical total counter error	
		The electrical total counter does not work properly.	1. NVRAM on the DDST controller board defective
901	B	Mechanical total counter	
		The mechanical total counter does not work properly.	1. Mechanical total counter defective 2. BICU defective 3. Disconnected mechanical total counter
903	B	Engine total counter error	
		The checksum of the total counter is not correct.	1. NVRAM on the BICU defective
920	C	Printer error	
		A fatal error is detected in the printer application program	1. Printer application program defective 2. Hardware configuration incorrect (including memory shortage)
921	C	Printer font error	
		Necessary font files are not found.	1. Font file not installed
928	B	Memory error	
		The machine detects a discrepancy in the	1. Memory defective 2. BICU defective

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
		write/read data during its write/read test (done at power off/on and at recovery from low power or night/off mode).	3. Poor connection between BICU and memory
954	B	Printer application program error	
		The printer status does not become ready when the printer application program is necessary for image processing.	1. Application program defective
955	B	Image transfer error	
		The controller is not able to transfer images when the engine needs them.	1. Application program defective
964	B	Status error (laser optics housing unit)	
		The optics-housing unit does not become ready within 17 seconds after the request.	1. Software defective
981	B	NVRAM error	
		The machine detects a discrepancy in the NVRAM write/read data when attempting to save actual data to the NVRAM (i.e. during actual use).	1. NVRAM defective 2. Poor connection between BICU and NVRAM 3. NVRAM is not connected 4. BICU defective
982	B	Localization error	
		The localization settings in the nonvolatile ROM and RAM are different (p.5-188).	1. First machine start after the NVRAM is replaced 2. Incorrect localization setting 3. NVRAM defective
984	B	Print image transfer error	

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
		Print images are not transferred.	1. Controller defective 2. BICU board defective 3. Poor connection between controller and BICU
990	B	Software performance error	
		The software attempted to perform an unexpected operation.	1. Software defective 2. Internal parameter incorrect 3. Insufficient working memory 4. When this SC occurs, the file name, address, and data will be stored in NVRAM. This information can be checked by using SP 7403. Note the above data and the situation in which this SC occurs. Then report the data and conditions to your technical control center.
991	D	Software continuity error	
		The software attempted to perform an unexpected operation. However, unlike SC990, the object of the error is continuity of the software.	1. No operation required. This SC code does not appear on the panel, and is only logged.
992	B	Unexpected Software Error	
		Software encountered an unexpected operation not defined under any SC code.	1. Software defective 2. An error undetectable by any other SC code occurred
997	B	Application function selection error	
		The application selected by a key press on operation panel does not	1. Download the firmware for the application that failed 2. An option required by the

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause
		start or ends abnormally.	application (RAM board) is not installed
998	B	Application start error. After power on, the application does not start within 60 s. (All applications neither start nor end normally.)	1. Download controller firmware 2. Replace the controller board 3. An option required by the application (RAM board) is not installed
999	B	Program download error	
		The download (program, print data, language data) from the IC card does not execute normally.	1. Board installed incorrectly 2. BICU board defective 3. Controller board defective 4. IC card defective 5. NVRAM defective 6. Loss of power during downloading 7. Important Notes About SC999 8. Primarily intended for operating in the download mode, logging is not performed with SC999. 9. If the machine loses power while downloading, or if for some other reason the download does not end normally, this could damage the controller board or the PCB targeted for the download and prevent subsequent downloading. If this problem occurs, the damaged PCB must be replaced.

4.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT DEFECTS

4.2.1 SENSORS

Component	CN	Condition	Symptom
Registration	111-2 (BICU)	Open	The Paper Jam message will appear whenever a copy is made (paper has not reached the sensor).
		Shorted	The Paper Jam message appears even if there is no paper at the sensor.
Relay	111-5 (BICU)	Open	The Paper Jam message will appear whenever a copy is made except for 1st and by-pass tray feeding.
		Shorted	The Paper Jam message appears even if there is no paper at the sensor.
Upper Paper End	114-2 (BICU)	Open	The Paper End indicator lights when the 1st paper tray is selected, even if there is paper in the tray.
		Shorted	The Paper End indicator does not light when the 1st paper tray is selected, even if there is no paper in the tray. The Paper Jam message will appear whenever a copy is made from the 1st paper tray.
Vertical Transport	110-2 (BICU)	Open	The Paper Jam message will appear whenever a copy is made from an optional paper tray unit.
		Shorted	The Paper Jam message appears even if there is no paper at the sensor.
Lower Paper End	113-6 (BICU)	Open	The Paper End indicator lights when the 2nd paper tray is selected, even if there is paper in the tray (B276/B277/B268/B269 models only).

Component	CN	Condition	Symptom
		Shorted	The Paper End indicator does not light when the 2nd paper tray is selected, even if there is no paper in the tray. The Paper Jam message will appear whenever a copy is made from the 2nd paper tray. (B276/B277/B268/B269 models only).
		Shorted	
By-pass Paper End	136-7 (BICU)	Open	The Paper End indicator lights when the bypass tray is selected, even if there is paper in the tray.
		Shorted	The Paper End indicator does not light when the bypass tray is selected, even if there is no paper in the tray. The Paper Jam message will appear whenever a copy is made from the bypass tray.
Exit	124-2 (BICU)	Open	The Paper Jam message will appear whenever a copy is made (paper has not reached the sensor).
		Shorted	The Paper Jam message appears even if there is no paper at the sensor.
Toner Density	125-3 (BICU)	Open	SC390 is displayed.
		Shorted	
Image Density	123-2 (BICU)	Open	The toner density control process is changed (see the note below the table).
		Shorted	
Scanner H.P.	102-2 (BICU)	Open	SC120 shows.
		Shorted	
Platen Cover	102-5 (BICU)	Open	APS and Auto Reduce/Enlarge do not function correctly.
		Shorted	If the Start button is pressed with the platen cover or A(R) DF closed, "Cannot detect original size" is displayed.
Original Width	103-3,4 (BICU)	Open	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and Auto Reduce/Enlarge do
		Shorted	

Component	CN	Condition	Symptom
			not function correctly.
Original Length	103-8,9 (BICU)	Open	The CPU cannot detect the original size properly. APS and Auto Reduce/Enlarge do not function correctly.
		Shorted	
Duplex Entrance	222-2 (DCB)	Open	The Paper Jam message will appear whenever a duplex copy is made (paper has not reached the sensor).
		Shorted	The Paper Jam message appears even if there is no paper at the sensor.
Duplex Exit	222-5 (DCB)	Open	The Paper Jam message will appear whenever a duplex copy is made (paper has not reached the sensor).
		Shorted	The Paper Jam message appears even if there is no paper at the sensor.
Duplex Inverter	220-6 (DCB)	Open	The Paper Jam message will appear whenever a duplex copy is made (paper has not reached the sensor).
		Shorted	The Paper Jam message appears even if there is no paper at the sensor.

 Note

- 21. SC392 is activated when the CPU detects an ID sensor error during developer initialization (SP 2214). However, SC392 is not displayed on the LCD but simply logged in the SC log (SMC printout), unless the technician exits SP Mode as soon as an error message is displayed.

4.2.2 SWITCHES

Component	CN	Condition	Symptom
Upper Paper Size	115-1,2,4 (BICU)	Open	The CPU cannot detect the proper paper size, and misfeeds may occur when a copy is made from the 1st paper tray.
		Shorted	
Vertical Transport Door	110-5 (BICU)	Open	The Cover Open indicator is lit even if the vertical transport door is closed.
		Shorted	The Cover Open indicator is not lit even if the vertical transport door is opened.
Lower Paper Size	113-	Open	The CPU cannot detect the proper paper

Component	CN	Condition	Symptom
	1,2,4 (BICU)	Shorted	size, and misfeeds may occur when a copy is made from the 2nd paper tray.
By-pass Paper Size	136- 1,2,4,5 (BICU)	Open	The CPU misdetects or is not able to detect the size of the paper set in the bypass tray, causing possible misfeeds when feeding from this tray.
Right Door	124-5 (BICU)	Open	The Cover Open indicator is lit even if the right door is closed.
		Shorted	The Cover Open indicator is not lit even if the right door is open.
Front/Right Cover	130-1 (BICU)	Open	The Cover Open indicator is lit even if doors are closed.
		Shorted	The Cover Open indicator is not lit even if doors are open.
Main	281-3,4 (PSU)	Open	The machine does not turn on.
		Shorted	The machine does not turn off.

4.3 BLOWN FUSE CONDITIONS

All the fuses in the following table are on the power supply board.

Fuse	Rating	
	120 V	220 – 240 V
FU1	15A/125V	8A/250V
FU2	5A/125V	2.5A/250V
FU3	1A/250V	1A/250V
FU4	4A/250V	4A/250V
FU5	4A/250V	4A/250V
FU6	4A/250V	4A/250V
FU7	4A/250V	4A/250V

4.4 LED DISPLAY

4.4.1 BICU

Number	Function
LED 1	Monitors the +5 V line for the CPU and the surrounding circuit. Usually, this LED is blinking.

SERVICE TABLES

5. SERVICE TABLES

5.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

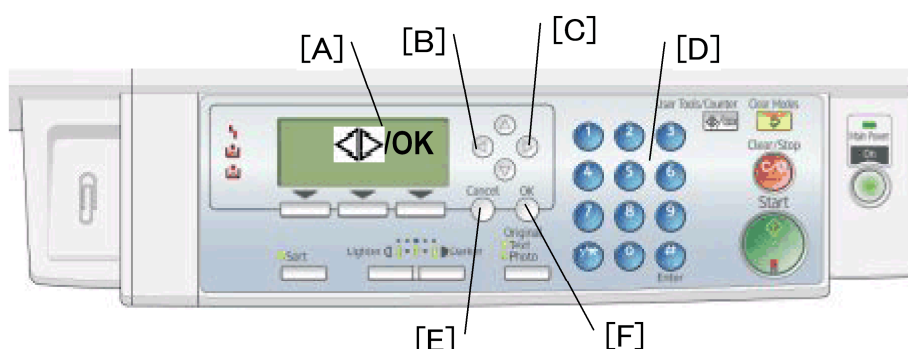


- 21. Do not allow the user to access the SP mode. Only service representatives are allowed to access the SP mode. The machine quality and its operation is NOT guaranteed if persons other than service representatives accesses the SP mode.

5.1.1 HOW TO ENTER THE SP MODE

The following two modes are available:

1. SP Mode (Service Program Mode): The SP Mode includes the programs that are necessary for standard maintenance work.
2. SSP Mode (Special SP Mode): The SSP Mode includes SP-Mode programs and some special programs. You need some extra knowledge to manipulate these special programs. For details, consult your supervisor.



Starting SP Mode

1. Type the keys as follows: [Clear Modes] > [1] > [0] > [7]
2. Press the [Clear/Stop] key and hold it down until the SP-mode menu is displayed (about 3 seconds).

Starting SSP Mode

For the basic machine (the machine without the optional controller box), perform as listed in steps 1 through 4. For the DDST machine (the machine with the optional controller box), perform as listed in steps 1 through 5.

1. Type the keys as follows: [Clear Modes] > [1] > [0] > [7]
2. Press the  key and hold it down until the SP-mode menu shows (about 3 seconds).

3. Press the [Enter] key and hold it down.
4. While holding down the [Enter] key, press the [1] key (on the numeric keypad).
5. While holding down the [Enter] key, press the "OK" key.

Selecting Programs

1. When a blinking underscore (or several blinking underscores) shows, you can type a number from the numeric keypad [D].
2. When the sign "◀▶/OK" [A] shows in the upper right corner, you can scroll through the menu by pressing the left-arrow key [B] or the right-arrow key [C]. To select a program, press the "OK" key [F].

Specifying Values

1. After locating a program, press the "OK" key. A blinking underscore (or several blinking underscores) indicates which value you can change. The value in parentheses is the default value of the menu.
2. Type a necessary value from the numeric keypad. To switch between positive (plus) and negative (minus) values, press the [./*] (period/asterisk) key.
3. To validate the value, press the "OK" key. To cancel the value, press the cancel key [E].

Activating Copy Mode

You can activate the copy mode while the SP mode is running. When you do so, the copier outputs images or patterns that help you adjust the SP-mode program.

1. Press the  key. The copy mode is activated.
2. Specify copy settings and press the "OK" key.
3. To return to the SP mode, press the  key.



- You cannot end the SP mode while the copy mode is activated.

Quitting Programs/Ending (S)SP Mode

Press the  key or the "Cancel" key to quit the program. You can end the SP mode by pressing one of these keys several times.

5.2 SP MODE TABLES

The following codes are used:

1. Asterisk (*): The settings are saved in the NVRAM. Most of them return to the default values when you execute SP 5801 2
2. The DFU menu is for design or factory use only. You must not change the settings.
3. Brackets ([]): The brackets enclose the setting range, default value, and minimum step (with unit) as follows: [Minimum Maximum / Default / Step].
4. SSP: The program is in the SSP Mode only. Consult your supervisor before you use this program.

5.2.1 SP1-XXX (FEED)

1001*	Leading Edge Registration	
	Adjusts the printing leading-edge registration from paper trays.	
1001 1	All Trays	[−9.0 ~ 9.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step] (p.3-60)
1001 2	By-pass	
1001 3	Duplex	

1002*	Side-to-Side Registration	
	Adjusts the printing side-to-side registration from each paper feed station, using the Trimming Area Pattern (SP 5902, No.10). Adjustments are supported for all 4 possible feed trays (including optional trays).	
	The SP 1002 1 setting is applied to all trays, not just the 1st tray. Settings for trays 2 to 4 are offsets relative to the SP 1002 1 setting.	
	For duplex copies, the value for the front side is determined by SP 1002 1 to 4, and the value for the rear side is determined by SP 1002 6.	
1002 1	1st tray	[-9.0 ~ 9.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step] ( p.3-60)
1002 2	2nd tray	
1002 3	3rd tray	
1002 4	4th tray	
1002 5	By-pass	
1002 6	Duplex	

1003*	Paper Feed Timing

	Adjusts the amount of buckle the paper feed clutch applies to the paper after the registration sensor is activated. A higher setting applies greater buckling.	
1003 1	1st tray	[0 ~ 10 / 5 / 1 mm/step]
1003 2	2nd tray (B276/B277 only)	[0 ~ 10 / 5 / 1 mm/step]
1003 3	Optional tray	[0 ~ 10 / 5 / 1 mm/step]
1003 4	By-pass feed	[0 ~ 10 / 6 / 1 mm/step]
1003 5	Duplex	[0 ~ 20 / 6 / 1 mm/step]

1007	Display By-pass	
1007 1	Display By-pass	Displays the by-pass paper width switch output.

1103*	Fusing Idling	
	This program decides the action of the Fusing Drive Release Mechanism. When you select "1," the contact/release control is disabled and the drive power is always transmitted to the fusing unit. As a result, the machine takes a longer time to warm up the fusing unit. Use SP 1103 1 if fusing quality is low even when the room temperature is not very low.	
1103 1	Fusing Idling	[0 = No / 1 = Yes]

1105*	Fusing Temperature Adjustment	
	Adjusts the target fusing temperature. "Center" indicates the center of the roller; "End" indicates the front and rear ends.	
1105 1	Warm Up-Center	[140 ~ 180 / 160 / 1°C/step]
1105 2	Warm Up-End	
1105 3	Standby-Center	[140 ~ 170 / 155 / 1°C/step]
1105 4	Standby-End	[140 ~ 165 / 150 / 1°C/step]
1105 5	Copying-Center	[140 ~ 185 / 160 / 1°C/step]
1105 6	Copying-End	
1105 7	Low Level 2-Center	[0 ~ 80 / 60 / 1°C/step]
1105 8	Low Level 2-End	
1105 9	Thick-Center	[140 ~ 185 / 175 / 1°C/step]
1105 10	Thick-End	
1105 11	Warm Up Low-Center	[140 ~ 180 / 170 / 1°C/step]
1105 12	Warm Up Low-End	

1106	Display Fusing
1106 1	Displays the fusing temperature (center)
1106 2	Displays the fusing temperature (end)

1107*	Fusing Soft Start	
	Adjusts the number of zero-cross cycles of the fusing lamp AC supply needed to bring the fusing lamp power to 100% while bringing the lamp up to the standby temperature or while copying. Increase this value if the machine is experiencing sudden power dropouts (p.6-61).	
1107 1	Warm Up Soft Start	[0 = 10 cycles / 1 = 20 cycles / 2 = 50 cycles]
1107 2	Other Soft Start	[0 = 5 cycles / 1 = 10 cycles / 2 = 20 cycles]

1108*	Set-Fusing Start	[0 = 1s / 1 = 1.5s / 2 = 2s]
1108 1	Specifies the interval for fusing-temperature control (p.6-61).	

1109	Nip Band Check
1109 1	Checks the fusing nip band (p.3-48).

1110*	Fan Control Timer	
1110 1	[30 ~ 60 / 30 / 1 s/step]	
	Inputs the fan control time. The fan maintains normal speed for the specified time after occurrence of an SC or following entry into Warm-up mode, Low Power mode, or Night/Off mode.	

1159*	Fusing Jam SC Code Setting	0=No 1=Yes
1159 1	This SP mode detects SC559. Set this SP mode to 'Yes' if the machine experiences paper jam problems on a continual basis.	

1902	Display-AC Freq.
1902 1	Displays the fusing lamp power control frequency (as detected by the zero cross signal generator). The displayed value is 1/5 the actual frequency: 10 = 50 Hz, 12 = 60 Hz.

1903*	Feed Clutch Boost	
	Adjusts the amount of extra push that the feed clutch gives to the paper after	

	the skew has been corrected at registration. This feature helps the registration roller feed certain types of paper (such as thick paper). Increase the value if thick paper is jamming after feeding from the registration roller.	
1903 1	By-pass tray	[0 ~ 10 / 6 / 1 mm/step]
1903 2	2nd, 3rd, 4th tray	[0 ~ 10 / 3 / 1 mm/step]

1908*	Optional Tray Adj.	
	Adjusts the reverse time for the upper and lower paper lift motors.	
1908 1	1st optional	[-2 ~ +2 / 0 / 1/step]
1908 2	2nd optional	( p.7-12)

1911*	By-pass Envelope	
1911 1	[0 = Disabled / 1= Enabled The program dedicated to envelope printing runs when you enable this program (SP 1911 1) and you select "Thick Paper" as the paper type of the by-pass tray (System Settings > Tray Paper Settings > Paper Type: Bypass Tray).	

5.2.2 SP2-XXX (DRUM)

2001*	Charge Roller Bias Adjustment	
2001 1	Printing	[-2100 ~ -1500 / -1700 / 1 V/step]
	Adjusts the voltage applied to the charge roller when printing. The actually applied voltage changes automatically as charge roller voltage correction is carried out. The value you set here becomes the base value on which this correction is carried out.	
2001 2	ID sensor pattern	[0 ~ 400 / 300 / 1 V/step]
	Adjusts the voltage applied to the charge roller when generating the Vsdp ID sensor pattern (as part of charge roller voltage correction). The actual charge-roller voltage is obtained by adding this value to the value of SP 2001 1.	

2101*	Erase Margin Adjustment	
2101 1	Leading edge	[0.0 ~ 9.0 / 2.0 / 0.1 mm/step] ( p.3-60)
	Specification: 2 ± 1.5 mm	
	Adjusts the leading edge erase margin.	

2101 2	Trailing	[0.0 ~ 9.0 / 3.0 / 0.1 mm/step] (p.3-60) Specification: 2 +2.5/-1.5 mm
	Adjusts the trailing edge erase margin. The rear trailing edge is this value plus 1.2 mm.	
2101 3	Left side	[0.0 ~ 9.0 / 2.0 / 0.1 mm/step] (p.3-60) Specification: 2 ± 1.5 mm
	Adjusts the left edge erase margin. The rear left edge is this value plus 0.3 mm.	
2101 4	Right side	[0.0 ~ 9.0 / 2.0 / 0.1 mm/step] (p.3-60) Specification: 2 +2.5/-1.5 mm
	Adjusts the right edge erase margin. The rear right edge is this value plus 0.3 mm.	

2201*	Development Bias Adjustment	
2201 1	Printing	[-1500 ~ -200 / -650 / 1 V/step]
	Adjusts the voltage applied to the development roller when printing. This can be adjusted as a temporary measure if faint copies are being produced due to an aging drum.	
2201 2	ID sensor pattern	[-2 = LL (220 V) / -1 = L (260 V) / 0 = N (300 V) / 1 = H (340 V) / 2 = HH (380 V)]
	Adjusts the voltage applied to the development roller when generating the ID sensor pattern. The actual voltage applied is this setting plus the value of SP 2201 1. The setting affects ID sensor pattern density, which in turn affects the toner supply.	

2213*	Outputs after Near End	
2213 1	[0 = 50 pages / 1 = 20 pages]	
	Sets the number of copy/print pages that can be made after toner near-end has been detected. Reduce the number of pages if the user normally makes copies with a high image ratio.	

2214	Developer Initialization	
2214 1	Initializes both the TD sensor toner supply target voltage and the TD sensor gain value. Carry this out after replacing the developer or the TD sensor.	

2220	TD Sensor Output Value Display	

2220 1	Displays: 1. Vt: the current TD sensor output value and 2. Vref: the target TD output value Vts (SP 2926) + correction for ID sensor output. The TD sensor output value changes every copy. If 1 > 2, toner is supplied to the development unit.

2221	ID Sensor Error Analysis	
2221 1	Vsg	Displays the Vsg value.
2221 2	Vsp	Displays the Vsp value.
2221 3	PWM	Displays the PWM value.
2221 4	Vsdp	Displays the Vsdp value.
2221 5	Vt	Displays the Vt value.
2221 6	Vts	Displays the Vts value.

2301*	Transfer Current Adjustment	
2301 1	Normal paper	[-2 = -4 mA / -1 = -2 mA / 0 = 0 mA / 1 = 2 mA / 2 = +4 mA]
	Adjusts the current applied to the transfer roller when feeding from a paper tray. Use a high setting if the user normally feeds relatively thick paper (within spec) from a paper tray (p.6-55).	
2301 2	Thick/Special paper	[-2 = -4 mA / -1 = -2 mA / 0 = 0 mA / 1 = 2 mA / 2 = +4 mA]
	Adjusts the current applied to the transfer roller when feeding from the by-pass tray. Use a high setting (a) if the user normally feeds relatively thick paper from the by-pass tray, or (b) if waste toner is re-attracted from the drum (which can occur when using transparencies). (p.6-55)	
2301 3	Duplex	[-2 = -4 mA / -1 = -2 mA / 0 = 0 mA / 1 = 2 mA / 2 = +4 mA]
	Adjusts the current applied to the transfer roller when carrying out a duplex job. Use this SP if there is poor image transfer on the rear side of duplex copies (p.6-55).	
2301 4	Cleaning	[-10 ~ 0 / -1 / 1 mA/step]
	Adjusts the current applied to the transfer roller for roller cleaning. Increase the current if toner remains on the roller after cleaning. (Remaining toner may	

	cause dirty background on the rear side.) (p.6-55)

2802	Forced Developer Churning
2802 1	Initializes the developer and checks the TD sensor output (Vt). The machine mixes the developer for 2 minutes while reading and displaying the Vt value. The machine does not initialize the TD sensor output. If the machine has not been used for a long period of time, prints may have a dirty background. In this case, use this SP mode to mix the developer. The message "Completed" is displayed when the program ends normally.

2906*	Tailing Correction
2906 1	Shift value [0.0 ~ 1.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step] Shifts the image writing position in intervals specified by SP 2906 2. When making many copies of an original that contains vertical lines (such as in tables), the paper may not separate correctly. This can cause tailing images (ghosts of the vertical lines continuing past the bottom of the table). This SP can be used to prevent this.
2906 2	Interval [1 ~ 10 / 1 / 1 page/step] Changes the interval for the image shift specified by SP 2906 1.

2908	Forced Toner Supply
2908 1	Forces the toner bottle to supply toner to the toner supply unit. Press "1" to start. The machine continues to supply toner until the toner concentration in the development unit reaches the standard level, or for up to 2 minutes (whichever comes first).

2915*	Polygon Mirror Motor Idling Time
2915 1	[0 = None / 1 = 15 s / 2 = 25 s] Selects the polygon mirror motor idling time. To increase the speed of the first copy, the mirror motor begins idling when the user sets an original, touches a key, or opens the platen cover or DF. If this setting is left at the default (15 s), the motor will stop if the user does nothing for 15s. If the setting is "0", the motor will not switch off during standby. (But note that regardless of the setting, the motor will switch off when the machine enters energy saver mode.)

2921*	Toner Supply Mode
2921 1	[0 = Sensor 1 / 1 = Sensor 2 (DFU) / 2 = Fixed 1 (DFU) / 3 = Fixed 2] Selects the toner supply mode. Under normal conditions this should be set to "0". You can temporarily change this to "3" if the TD sensor is defective. Do not set to "1" or "2", as these are for design use only (p.6-39).

2922*	Toner Supply Time
2922 1	[0.1 ~ 5.0 / 0.4 / 0.1 s/step] Adjusts the toner supply motor ON time for Sensor 1 and Sensor 2 toner supply mode. Accordingly, this setting is effective only if SP 2921 is set to "0" or "1" Raising this value increases the toner supply motor ON time. Set to a high value if the user tends to make many copies having high proportions of solid black image areas (p.6-39).

2923*	Toner Recovery Time
2923 1	[3 ~ 60 / 30 / 1 s/step] Adjusts the toner supply motor ON time used during toner recovery from Toner Near End or Toner End. This setting is effective only if SP 2921 is set to "0" Since toner recovery is carried out in 3-second cycles, the input value should be a multiple of 3 (3, 6, 9...). (p.6-39)

2925*	Toner Supply Rate
2925 1	Adjusts the toner supply time for fixed toner supply mode. This setting is effective only if SP 2921 is set to "2" or "3". [0 ~ 7 / 0]t = 200ms, and settings are as follows 0 = t , 1 = 2t, 2 = 4t, 3 = 8t, 4 = 12t, 5 = 16t, 6 = on continuously, 7 = 0 s Raising this value increases the toner supply motor ON time. Set to a high value if the user tends to make many copies having high proportions of solid black image areas (p.6-39).

2926*	Standard Vt
2926 1	[0.00 ~ 5.00 / 2.50 / 0.01 V/step] DFU Adjusts Vts (the Vt value for new developer). The TD sensor output is adjusted to this value during the TD sensor initial setting process]. This SP is effective

	only when SP 2921 is “0”, “1”, or “2”.

2927*	ID Sensor Control
2927 1	[0 = No / 1 = Yes] Selects whether the ID sensor is or is not used for toner density control. This value should normally be left at “1”. If the value is “0”, dirty background may occur after long periods of non-use.

2928	Toner End Clear
2928 1	Clears the toner end condition without adding new toner. The following are cleared: 1. Toner end indicator (goes out) 2. Toner near-end counter 3. Toner near-end level This function should generally not be used. If you clear the toner end condition without adding new toner, there is a risk that the drum may eventually begin to attract carrier after many more copies are made and toner runs out. This attracted carrier may damage the drum.

2929*	Vref Limits	
	Adjust the upper or lower Vref limit.	
2929 1	Upper	[0.50 ~ 3.50 / 3.20 / 0.01V/step] DFU
2929 2	Lower	[0.50 ~ 3.50 / 0.70 / 0.01V/step] DFU

2994*	ID Sensor Detection Temperature	[30 ~ 90 / 30 / 1 C/step]
2994 1	While the machine is recovering from an energy saver mode, or while the machine starts, the controller ignores the ID-sensor signals if the fusing temperature is at the specified value or higher.	

2996*	Transfer Roller Cleaning
2996 1	Selects whether the transfer roller is cleaned before each copy job. Set this to “1” if dirty background is appearing on the reverse side of the first page of copy jobs. Note that this will increase the time required to generate the first copy. If the setting is “0”, the transfer roller is never cleaned (p.6-56).

2997*	Toner Density Sensor Standard Voltage	[0 / 2.5 / 5 / 0.01V/step] DFU

2998*	Main Scan Magnification	[−0.5 ~ +0.5 / 0.0 / 0.1%/step]
2998 1	Adjusts the magnification along the main scan direction, for all print modes (copy, printing). The specification is 100 ± 1.0% (p.3-60).	

5.2.3 SP4-XXX (SCANNER)

4008*	Sub-Scan Magnification (Scanner)	[−0.9 ~ +0.9 / 0.0 / 0.1%/step]
4008 1	Adjusts the actual sub-scan direction scanning magnification. The higher the setting, the lower the scanner motor speed (p.3-60).	

4009*	Main Scan Magnification (Scanner)	[−0.9 ~ +0.9 / 0.0 / 0.1%/step]
4009 1	Adjusts the magnification along the main scan direction, for scanning. The specification is 100 ± 1.0% Main scan magnification is implemented in steps of 0.5. Accordingly, your input value should be a multiple of 0.5 (−1.0, −0.5, 0, +0.5, or +1.0)	

4010*	Leading Edge Registration (Scanner)	[−5.0 ~ +5.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step]
4010 1	Adjusts the leading edge registration for scanning in platen mode (p.3-60). (−): The image moves toward the leading edge. (+): The image moves toward the trailing edge. The specification is 2 ± 1.5 mm.	

4011*	Side-to-side Registration (Scanner)	[−4.2 ~ +4.2 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step]
4011 1	Adjusts the side-to-side registration for scanning in platen mode (p.3-60) Increasing the value shifts the image to the right The specification is 2 ± 1.5 mm.	

4012*	Scan Erase Margin	
	Adjusts the scanning margin individually for each of the four edges. It is generally best to adjust the scanning margin as little as possible, and use the printing margin for image adjustments.	

4012 1	Leading edge	[0 ~ 9.0 / 1.0 / 0.1 mm/step]
4012 2	Trailing edge	
4012 3	Left	
4012 4	Right	

4013	Scanner Free Run	
4013 1	Performs a scanner free run with the exposure lamp on. Press ON or to start. Press OFF to stop.	

4015*	White Plate Scanning	
4015 1	Start position	[-3.0 ~ +6.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step]
	Adjusts the scanning start position on the white plate for auto shading. The base value stored in the machine is 15.2 mm toward the white plate from the scanner HP. This SP setting specifies the offset from this base value.	
4015 2	Scanning length	[-3.0 ~ +6.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step]
	Adjusts the length of the white plate scan, in the main scan direction. The scan begins at the start position set above [in SP 4015 1] and extends for the specified length. The base value stored in the machine is 4.76 mm. This SP setting specifies the offset from this base value.	

4301	Display-APS Data	
4301 1	Displays the status of the APS sensors and platen/DF cover sensor (p.5-53).	

4303*	APS Small Size Original	[0 = No (not detected) / 1 = Yes (A5/HLT LEF)]
4303 1	Selects whether or not the copier will consider the original to be A5/HLT LEF when the APS sensors cannot detect its size. If "Yes" is selected, paper sizes that cannot be detected by the APS sensors are regarded as A5/HLT LEF. If "No" is selected, "Cannot detect original size" will be displayed.	

4305*	APS Priority	[0 = Normal / 1 = A4/LT / 2 = 8K/16K]
4305 1	1. A4/LT 1. North America model: When the ASP detects the LT size, the controller interprets it as the A4 size. 2. Other models: When the ASP detects the A4 size, the controller	

	interprets it as the LT size. 2. 8K/16K (for the China model only) 3. When the ASP detects the A3/B4 SEF, the controller interprets it as the 8K SEF. 4. When the ASP detects the B5/A4 SEF, the controller interprets it as the 16K SEF. 5. When the ASP detects the B5/A4 LEF, the controller interprets it as the 16K LEF. The Europe model interprets undetected original sizes as A5 LEF under the following conditions: 1. SP 4303 1 is "Yes," and 2. SP 4305 1 is "Normal" The Europe model interprets undetected original sizes as LT SEF under the following conditions: 1. SP 4303 1 is "Yes," and 2. SP 4305 1 is "A4/LT"

4428	Scan Auto-Adjustment
4428 1	Performs the automatic scanner adjustment. Use this SP mode after replacing the white plate.

4901	SBU White Level Adjustment		
4901 1	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Black Display-Error</td><td>[0 = Normal / 1 = Error]</td></tr> </table> Displays the return code of the black-level adjustment. When an error is detected, SC143 or SC145 is generated.	Black Display-Error	[0 = Normal / 1 = Error]
Black Display-Error	[0 = Normal / 1 = Error]		
4901 2	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Black Feedback-EVEN</td><td>[0 8191]</td></tr> </table> Displays the feedback value of the even channels given by the SBU. Normally, the value is 1, 2, 3, ..., 8188, 8189, or 8190. However, machine may operate normally even when the value is 0 or 8191.	Black Feedback-EVEN	[0 8191]
Black Feedback-EVEN	[0 8191]		
4901 3	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Black Feedback-ODD</td><td>[0 8191]</td></tr> </table> Displays the feedback value of the odd channels given by the SBU. Normally, the value is 1, 2, 3, ..., 8188, 8189, or 8190. However, machine may operate normally even when the value is 0 or 8191.	Black Feedback-ODD	[0 8191]
Black Feedback-ODD	[0 8191]		
4901 4	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Black Display-Target</td><td>[0 63 / 10 /step]</td></tr> </table> Displays the target value for the black-level adjustment executed during machine initialization. Normally, the value is 10. Other values indicate that the	Black Display-Target	[0 63 / 10 /step]
Black Display-Target	[0 63 / 10 /step]		

	adjustment has ended unsuccessfully.	
4901 5*	White Target	[0 511 / 511 / 1/step]
	Displays the target value for the white-level adjustment.	
4901 6	White Result	[0 511 / 0 / 1/step]
	Displays the result of the white-level adjustment.	
4901 8	White Display-Error	[0 = Normal / 1 = Error]
	Displays the return code of the white-level adjustment. When an error is detected, SC143 is generated.	
4901 9	White Display-Overflow	[0 = Normal / 1 = Error]
	Displays a return code of the white-level adjustment. The code "1" (error) is returned if the adjustment result is not in the range of the values in SP 4901 6.	
4901 10	White Number of Attempt	[0 20 / 0 / 1/step]
	Displays how many times the white-level adjustment is retried. The value does not include the first execution of the white adjustment. For example, if the value is "2", this indicates that the white-level adjustment has been executed three times. The white-level adjustment can be executed 20 times or less. Therefore, if the value is "20," this indicates that the white-level adjustment has ended abnormally (as described, the value "20" does not include the first execution). If the white-level adjustment is unsuccessful, the machine uses the result of the latest, successful white-level adjustment.	
4901 11	Auto Adjustment Setting	[222 281 / 256 / 1/step]
	Displays the parameter of the white-level adjustment. The value is based on the result of SP 4901 12.	
4901 12	Auto Adjustment-Result	[0 600 / 0 / 1/step]
	Displays the result of the white-level adjustment. Normally, the value is between 228 and 281 (including the both values). When the value is normal, it is stored as the value of SP 4901 11.	
4901 14	Auto Adjustment-Error	[0 = Normal / 1 = Error]
	Displays a return code of the white-level adjustment. The code "1" (error) is returned if the adjustment result value is less than 228 or larger than 281 (SP490 12).	
4902*	Exposure Lamp ON	
4902 1	Turns the exposure lamp on or off. To turn off the exposure lamp, select "OFF". (The exposure lamp shuts off automatically after 180 seconds.)	

4903*	ADS Level	[0 255 / 252 / 1/step]
4903 1	Adjusts the ADS level.	

4904*	ADS Lower Limit	[0 255 / 80 / 1/step]
4904 1	Adjusts the ADS lower limit.	

4905*	ADS Level	[0 = All / 1 = One]
4905 1	Checks the whole area (0 = All) or the area between 15 mm and 90 mm from the left edge (1 = One) to adjust the ADS level.	

4921*	Image Adj Selection	
4921 1	Image Adj Selection (Copy)	[0 ~ 10 / 0 / 1]
	Selects which mode the settings from SP 4922 to SP 4932 and are used for: 0 = None, 1 = Text 1, 2 = Text 2, 3 = Photo 1, 4 = Photo 2, 5 = Photo 3, 6 = Special 1, 7 = Special 2, 8 = Special 3, 9 = Special 4, 10 = Special 5	

4922*	Scanner Gamma	
	Selects "text" or "photo" as the priority output mode. This setting is applied to all image processing modes of SP 4921.	
4922 1	Scanner Gamma (Copy)	[0=System default/ 1=Text /2=Photo]
4922 3		

4923*	Notch Selection	
	Selects the value of the center ID adjustment notch for the ID adjustment LEDs. Normally the center notch is 3 (range 1-5). If -1 is selected, each notch shifts down (becomes lighter). If +1 is selected, each notch shifts up (becomes darker).	
	This setting is applied to all image processing modes of SP 4921.	
4923 1	Notch Selection (Copy)	[-1 = Light / 0 = Normal / +1 = Dark]

4926*	Texture Removal	
	Adjusts the texture removal level that is used with error diffusion. 0: The default value for each mode is used. Text 1, Photo 2, Special 2, and Special 5 have a default of 3 and Photo 1, 3 have a default of 1.	

	1: No removal applied. 2 – 5: Removal applied at the level specified here. The higher the setting (level), the less clear the image will become (more texture removal). This setting is only applied to the originals in SP 4921.	
4926 1	Texture Removal (Copy)	[0 ~ 6 / 1/step]
4926 3	Texture Removal (Scanner)	[0 ~ 6 / 1/step]

4927*	Line Width Correction	
	Adjusts the line width correction algorithm. Positive settings produce thicker lines; negative settings produce thinner lines. This setting is only applied to the originals in SP 4921.	
4927 1	Line Width Correction (Copy)	[-2 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step]
4927 3	Line Width Correction (Scanner)	[-2 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step]

4928*	Independent Dot Erase	
	Selects the dot erase level. Higher settings provide greater erasure. This setting is only applied to the originals in SP 4921.	
4928 1	Independent Dot Erase (Copy)	[-2 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step]
4928 3	Independent Dot Erase (Scanner)	[-2 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step]

4929*	Positive/Negative	[0 = No, 1 = Yes]
	Inverts white and black. This setting is only applied to the originals in SP 4921.	
4929 1	Positive/Negative (Copy)	

4930*	Sharpness-Edge	[-2 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step]
	Adjust the clarity. This setting is only applied to the originals in SP 4921.	
4930 1	Sharpness-Edge (Copy)	
4930 3	Sharpness-Edge (Scanner)	

4931*	Sharpness-Solid	[-2 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step]
	Adjust the clarity. This setting is only applied to the originals in SP 4921.	
4931 1	Sharpness-Solid (Copy)	
4931 3	Sharpness-Solid (Scanner)	

4932*	Sharpness-Low ID	[-2 ~ 2 / 0 / 1/step]
	Adjust the clarity. This setting is only applied to the originals in SP 4921.	
4932 1	Sharpness- Low ID (Copy)	

4941*	White Line Erase	[0 ~ 2 / 1 / 1/step]
4941 1	Selects the white line erase level. 0: None, 1: Weak, 2: Strong	
	This setting is effective only Photo 1, Photo 3, Special 3 or Special 4 mode. 0: White line erase is not used, and white level correction is used instead.	
	This setting is applied regardless of what mode has been selected in SP 4921.	

4942*	Black Line Erase	[0 ~ 3 / 2 / 1/step]
4942 1	Selects the black line erase level. This setting is effective only when originals are scanned by the A(R)DF.	
	[0 = No / 1 = Very weak / 2 = Weak / 3 = Strong]	
	This setting is applied regardless of what mode has been selected in SP 4921.	

5.2.4 SP5-XXX (MODE)

5001	All Indicators On	
5001 1	All LEDs turn on. The LCD turns on or off every 3 seconds. Press the reset key to end this program.	

5045*	[Accounting count]	[0 to 1 / 1 / -]
5045 1	0: Developments, 1: Pages	
	Selects the counting method to either developments or prints.	

5104*	A3/DLT Double Count	[0 = Enabled / 1 = Disabled / 2 = Disabled if the size is undetected]
5104 1	Selects whether the machine counts twice for each sheet of A3/11"x 17". If this is set to "Yes" is selected, the total (mechanical) counter and the current user counter will both increment by two for each A3/11" x 17" sheet.	

5113*	Optional Counter Type	0: None 11: MF key card (Increment)

		12: MF key card (Decrement)
5113	1	Selects the corresponding key for installed devices such as coin lock.

5120*	Clr-OP Count Remv	[0=Yes / 1=Standby only / 2=No]
5120	1	Determines under which conditions the copy job settings are reset when the key counter is removed. With 0, the settings are cleared if the counter is removed at the end of a job or midway through a job. With 1, they are only cleared if the counter is removed at the end of a job. With 2, they are not cleared at all, under either condition. With duplex copies, the job settings are always preserved, regardless of the setting of this SP mode.

5121*	Count Up Timing	[0 = Feed In / 1 = Exit]
5121	1	Selects whether the key counter increments at time of paper feed-in or at time of paper exit.

5127*	APS Mode	[0 = Enabled / 1 = Disabled]
5127	1	Enables or disables the APS mode..

5501*	PM Alarm Interval (Printout)	[0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 0K copies/step]
5501	1	Specifies when the PM alarm occurs.

5801	Memory Clear	
5801	2	Engine ( p.5-37)

5802	Machine Free Run	
5802	1	Starts a free run of both the scanner and the printer. Press "ON" to start; press "OFF" to stop.

5803	Input Check	
		( p.5-39)

5804	Output Check	
		( p.5-42)

5807*	Area Selection
5807 1	Selects the display language group. 1 = Japan, 2 = North America, 3 = Europe, 4 = Taiwan, 5 = Asia, 6 = China, 7 = Korea SP 5807 1 is not cleared by SP 5801 2 (p.5-37).

5810*	SC Code Reset
5810 1	Resets all level-A service call conditions, such as fusing errors. If the reset is successful, the display shows "Completed." If the reset fails, an error message shows.

5811*	Serial Num Input	
5811 1	Setting	Sets the machine serial number. FA
5811 3	ID 2 Code Display	Displays the ID 2 Code (used for NRS

5812*	Service TEL
5812 1	Service TEL (Telephone)
	Use this to input the telephone number of the service representative. (The number is displayed when a service call condition occurs.) To input a dash, press  . To delete the current telephone number, press  .
5812 2	Service TEL (Facsimile)
	Use this to input the fax number printed on user counter reports. To input a dash, press  . To delete the current fax number, press  .

5824	NVRAM Upload
5824 1	(p.5-44)

5825	NVRAM Download
5825 1	(p.5-44)

5827	Program Download
5827 1	Downloads programs to the machine

5901	Printer Free Run

5901 1	Executes the free run. Press "ON" to start; press "OFF" to stop.

5902	Test Pattern Print
5902 1	( p.5-49)

5907*	Plug & Play Setting
5907 1	Selects the brand name and production name for the Plug and Play function. These names are registered in the NVRAM. If the NVRAM becomes defective, these names should be re-registered. Use the right-arrow or left-arrow key to scroll through the list of brand names. To select a brand name, press the OK key. An asterisk (*) indicates which manufacture is currently selected. ( p.5-37)

5918*	A3/DLT Counter Display	[0 = Off / 1 = On]
5918 1	Sets the key press display for the counter key. This setting has no relation to (SSP) SP5-104 A3/DLT Double Count.	

5990	SMC Print		
5990 1	All	( p.5-52)	
5990 2	SP		
5990 3	User Program		
5990 4	Logging Data		
5990 5	Big font		

5993		DFU	
5993 1			

5998	Memory Clear
5998 1	Memory Clear

5.2.5 SP6-XXX (PERIPHERALS)

6006*	ADF Adjustment ( p.3-64 NOTE: Available menus depend on the machine model and its configuration.	
6006 1	ADF Adjustment (StoS/Front Regist)	[-5.0 ~ +5.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step]

	Adjusts the side-to-side registration for the front side of the original, for ADF mode. Use the  key to select “+” or “-” before entering the value	
6006 2	ADF Adjustment (Leading Regist)	[–5.0 ~ +5.0 / 0.0 / 0.1 mm/step]
	Adjusts the leading edge registration for ADF mode. Use the  key to select “+” or “-” before entering the value.	
6006 3	ADF Adjustment (Trailing Erase)	[–3.0 ~ +3.0 / –1.0 / 0.1 mm/step]
	Adjusts the trailing edge erase margin for ADF mode. Use the  key to select “+” or “-” before entering the value.	
6006 4	ADF Adjustment (StoS/Rear Regist)	[–5.0 ~ +5.0 / 0.0 / 0.5 mm/step]
	Adjusts the side-to-side registration for the rear side of duplex originals, for ADF mode. Use the  key to select “+” or “-” before entering the value.	
6006 5	ADF Adjustment (Sub-scan Magnif)	[–0.9 ~ +0.9 / 0.0 / 0.1 %/step]
	Adjust the sub-scan magnification for the ADF.	
6006 6	ADF Adjustment (Original Curl Adj)	[0 = No / 1 = Yes]
	Enables or disables the skew adjustment for the reverse sides of originals. When you enable SP6-006-6, adjust the distance of the skew adjustment (SP 6006 7).	
6006 7	ADF Adjustment (Skew Correction)	[–20 ~ +20 / 0 / 1 mm/step]
	Specifies the distance of the skew adjustment. SP 6006 7 is effective when you enable SP 6006 6 (ADF Adjustment [Original Curl Adj]).	

6009	ADF Free Run	
6009 1	Performs an ADF free run. Press "ON" to start; press "OFF" to stop.	

6010	Stamp Position Adjustment	[–10 ~ +10 / 0 / 1 mm/step]
6010 1	Adjusts the stamp position in the sub-scan direction. for the fax mode.	

6901	Display ADF/APS	
6901 1	Displays the status of the ADF original size sensors ( p.5-53).	

6910*	ADF Shading Time	[0 ~ 60 / 10 / 1 s/step]
6910 1	Adjusts the interval used for the shading processing in the ADF mode. Light and heat in the room may affect the scanner response. Reduce this setting if copy quality indicates that the white level is drifting during ADF copy jobs.	

5.2.6 SP7-XXX (DATA LOG)

7001*	Total Operation
7001 1	Shows the total operation time (total drum rotation time).

7401*	Counter–SC Total	[0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 1/step]
7401 1	Shows how many times SC codes are generated.	

7403*	SC History
7403 1	Shows the histories of the latest 10 SC codes.

7502*	Counter–Paper Jam	[0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 1/step]
7502 1	Shows the total number of copy paper jams.	

7503*	Counter–Orgn Jam	[0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 1/step]
7503 1	Shows the total number of original jams,	

7504*	Counter-Each P Jam	[0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 1/step]
	Displays the total number of the paper jams classified by timing and location.	
7504 1	Counter-Each P Jam (At power on)	
	Paper jam occurs at power on.	
7504 10	Counter-Each P Jam (Off-Regist NoFeed)	
	Paper does not reach the registration sensor (from a paper tray).	
7504 11	Counter-Each P Jam (Off-1 Vertical SN)	
	Paper does not reach the relay sensor.	
7504 12	Counter-Each P Jam (On-1 Vertical SN)	
	Paper is caught at the relay sensor.	
7504 21	Counter-Each P Jam (Off-2 Vertical SN)	
	Paper does not reach the vertical transport sensor.	
7504 22	Counter-Each P Jam (On-2 Vertical SN)	
	Paper is caught at the vertical transport sensor.	
7504 31	Counter Each P Jam (Off-3 Vertical SN)	
	Paper does not reach the vertical transport sensor in the optional paper feed unit.	
7504 32	Counter Each P Jam (On-3 Vertical SN)	

	Paper is caught at the vertical transport sensor in the optional paper feed unit.	
7504 50	Counter-Each P Jam (Off-Regist Bypass)	
	Paper does not reach the registration sensor (from the by-pass tray).	
7504 60	Counter-Each P Jam (Off-Regist Duplex)	
	Paper does not reach the registration sensor during reverse-side printing (for duplex printing).	
7504 70	Counter-Each P Jam (On-Regist SN)	
	Paper is caught at the registration sensor.	
7504 120	Counter-Each P Jam (On-Exit SN)	
	Paper is caught at the exit sensor (previous page).	
7504 121	Counter-Each P Jam (Off-Exit SN)	
	Paper does not reach the exit sensor.	
7504 122	Counter-Each P Jam (On-Exit SN)	
	Paper is caught at the exit sensor.	
7504 123	Counter-Each P Jam (Off-Dup Inverter)	
	Paper does not reach the duplex inverter sensor (from the registration roller).	
7504 125	Counter-Each P Jam (On-Dup Inverter)	
	Paper is caught at the duplex inverter sensor.	
7504 126	Counter-Each P Jam (Off-Dup Entrance)	
	Paper does not reach the duplex entrance sensor.	
7504 127	Counter-Each P Jam (Off-Dup Entrance)	
	Paper is caught at the duplex entrance sensor.	
7504 128	Counter-Each P Jam (Off-Duplex Exit)	
	Paper does not reach the duplex exit sensor.	
7504 129	Counter-Each P Jam (On-Duplex Exit)	
	Paper is caught at the duplex exit sensor.	
7504 130	Counter-Each P Jam (Off-1 bin Exit SN)	
	Paper does not reach the one-bin tray.	
7504 131	Counter-Each P Jam (On-1 bin Exit SN)	
	Paper is caught at the one-bin tray.	

7505*	Counter-Each O Jam	[0 ~ 9999 / 0 / 1/step]
	Displays the total number of the original jams on the ADF that have occurred	

	at a certain timing or at a certain location.
7505 210	Counter-Each O Jam (Off-Regist SN) The original does not reach the registration sensor.
7505 211	Counter-Each O Jam (On-Regist SN) The original is caught at the registration sensor.
7505 212	Counter-Each O Jam (Off-Relay SN) The original does not reach the exit sensor.
7505 213	Counter-Each O Jam (On-Relay SN) The original is caught at the exit sensor.
7505 214	Counter-Each O Jam (Off-Inverter SN) The original does not reach the reverse sensor.
7505 215	Counter-Each O Jam (On Inverter SN) The original is caught at the reverse sensor.
7505 216	Counter-Each O Jam (Insufficient gap) The distance between originals is not sufficient. This jam can occur when the original is not of the standard size.

7507*	Dsply-P Jam Hist
7507 1	Displays the latest 10 paper-jam history. The list below shows the possible 22 codes: 1, 10, 11, 12, 21, 22, 31, 32, 50, 60, 70, 120, 121, 122, 123, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131 The codes correspond to the menus of SP 7504. For example, the code 1 corresponds to SP 7504 1, and the code 10 corresponds to SP 7504 10.

7508*	Dsply-O Jam Hist
7508 1	Displays the total number of the original-jams history. The following are the possible seven codes: 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216 The codes correspond to the menus of SP 7505. For example, the code 210 corresponds to SP 7505 210, and the code 211 corresponds to SP 7505 211.

7801	Memory/Version/PN
7801 2	Memory/Version (BICU) Displays the version of the BICU board

7801 5	Memory/Version (ADF)
	Displays the P/N and suffix of the ADF ROM.
7801 15	Memory/Version (Printer/Scanner)
	Displays the P/N and suffix of the Printer/Scanner ROM.

7803*	Display-PM Count
7803 1	Displays the PM counter.

7804	Reset-PM Counter
7804 1	Resets the PM counter (SP 7803 1). When the program ends normally, the message "Completed" is displayed.

7807	Reset-SC/Jam Counters
7807 1	Resets the SC, paper, original, and total jam counters. When the program ends normally, the message "Completed" is displayed. SP 7807 1 does not reset the following logs: SP 7507 (Display-Paper Jam History) and SP 7508 (Display-Original Jam History).

7808	Reset-Counters
7808 1	Resets all counters except for the management counters. The management counters are the counters that are not changed by NVRAM Download (SP 5825 1) When the program ends normally, the message the message "Completed" is displayed.

7810	Reset-Key Op Code
7810 1	Resets the key operator code. Use SP 7810 1 when the customer has forgotten the key-operator code. When the program ends normally, the message "Completed" is displayed, if the program ends abnormally, an error message is displayed. If the customer forgets the key operator code. To specify a new key-operator code, use the User Tools: System Settings → Key Operator Tools → Key Operator Code → On → Enter Key Operator Code.

7832*	Display-Self-Diag
7832 1	Displays the SC codes and the number of their occurrences. Each number is in the range of 0 to 9999.

7991*	Dsply-Info Count	
	Displays the total operating time or the total number of operations. The time is displayed in the following format: day:hour:minute:second.	
7991 1	Dsply-Info Count (Dsply-Timer Count)	
	The total of the time when the main switch is kept on (excluding the time when the safety switch is off (p.6-29).	
7991 2	Dsply-Info Count (Dsply-APS Working)	
	The total of the time when the APS is working.	
7991 3	Dsply-Info Count (Dsply-ID S Work)	
	The total of the time when the ID sensor is working.	
7991 4	Dsply-Info Count (Dsply-Dev Counter)	
	The total number of paper outputs.	
7991 5	Dsply-Info Count (Dsply-ID Er Count)	
	The total number of ID-sensor errors.	

7992*	Reset-Info Count	
7992 1	Reset-Info Count (Reset-Timer Count)	
	Clears the counter of SP 7991 1.	
7992 5	Reset-Info Count (Reset-ID Er Count)	
	Clears the counter of SP 7991 5.	

5.2.7 SP8-XXX (HISTORY)

8191*	T: Total Scan PGS	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8191 1	Displays the total number of scanned pages. Both sides are counted when the front and reverse sides of an original (fed from the ADF) are scanned.	

8192*	C: Total Scan PGS	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8192 1	Displays the total number of scanned copies. Both sides are counted when the front and reverse sides of an original (fed from the ADF) are scanned.	

8195*	S: Total Scan PGS	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8195 1	Displays the total number of scanned originals. Both sides are counted when the front and reverse sides of an original (fed from the ADF) are scanned.	

8201	T: L Size Scan PGS	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8201 1	Displays the total number of scanned originals (by copying jobs and scanning jobs) classified by paper size. The following size is counted: A3/DLT and larger.	

8205	S: L Size Scan PGS (A3/DLT, Larger)	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8205 1	Displays the total number of scanned originals (by scanning jobs) classified by paper size. The following size is counted: A3/DLT and larger.	

8221*	ADF Org Feed	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8221 1	ADF Org Feed (Front)	
	Displays the total number of scanned front sides of originals fed from the ADF.	
8221 2	ADF Org Feed (Back)	
	Displays the total number of scanned reverse sides of originals fed from the ADF.	

8291*	T: Scan PGS/TWAIN	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8291 1	Displays the total number of sheets stamped by the ADF in scanning jobs.	

8293*	F: Scan PGS/TWAIN	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8293 1	Displays the total number of sheets stamped by the ADF in fax jobs.	

8381*	T: Total Prt PGS	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8381 1	Displays the print count of all application programs.	

8382*	C: Total Prt PGS	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8382 1	Displays the print count of the copier application program.	

8383*	F: Total Prt PGS	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8383 1	Displays the print count of the fax application program.	

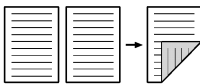
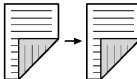
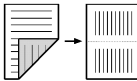
8384*	P: Total Prt PGS	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8384 1	Displays the print count of the printer application program.	

8385*	S: Total Prt PGS	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8385 1	Displays the print count of the scanner application program.	

8387*	O: Total Prt PGS	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8387 1	Displays the print count of application programs other than copier, printer, or scanner programs (such as external application programs).	

8391*	L size Prt PGS (A3/DLT, Larger)	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8391 1	Displays the print count of the AS/DLT size or larger paper.	

8411*	Prints/Duplex	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8411 1	Displays the total count of the duplex printing.	

8422*	C: PrtPGS/Dup Comb	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
	Displays the total print count of copier application classified by combination/duple type.	
8422 1	C: PrtPGS/Dup Comb (Simplex > Duplex)	Original Print 
8422 2	C: PrtPGS/Dup Comb (Duplex > Duplex)	Original Print 
8422 4	C: PrtPGS/Dup Comb (Simplex Combine)	Original Print 
8422 5	C: PrtPGS/Dup Comb (Duplex Combine)	Original Print 
8422 6	C: PrtPGS/Dup Comb (2>)	Original Print 
8422 7	C: PrtPGS/Dup Comb(4>)	Original Print 

8441*	T: PrtPGS/Ppr Size	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
	Displays the total print count classified by paper size. This is the total for all application programs.	
8441 1	(A3)	
8441 2	(A4)	
8441 3	(A5)	
8441 4	(B4)	
8441 5	(B5)	
8441 6	(DLT)	
8441 7	(LG)	
8441 8	(LT)	
8441 9	(HLT)	
8441 254	Other (Standard)	
8441 255	Other (Custom)	

8442*	C: PrtPGS/Ppr Size	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
	Displays the number of pages printed by the copier application program.	
8442 1	(A3)	
8442 2	(A4)	
8442 3	(A5)	
8442 4	(B4)	
8442 5	(B5)	
8442 6	(DLT)	
8442 7	(LG)	
8442 8	(LT)	
8442 9	(HLT)	
8442 254	Other (Standard)	
8442 255	Other (Custom)	

8445*	P: PrtPGS/Ppr Size	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
	Displays the number of pages printed by the copier application program.	
8445 1	(A3)	
8445 2	(A4)	
8445 3	(A5)	

8445 4	(B4)
8445 5	(B5)
8445 6	(DLT)
8445 7	(LG)
8445 8	(LT)
8445 9	HLT
8445 254	Other (Standard)
8445 255	Other (Custom)

8451*	C: PrtPGS/Ppr Tray	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
	Displays the total print count classified by paper source.	
8451 1	Bypass Tray	
8451 2	Tray 1	
8451 3	Tray 2	
8451 4	Tray 3	
8451 5	Tray 4	

8461*	T: PrtPGS/Ppr Type	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
	Displays the total print count classified by paper size. This is the total for all application programs.	
8461 1	Normal	
8461 4	Thick	
8461 7	OHP	
8461 8	Other	

8462*	C: PrtPGS/Ppr Type	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
	Displays the total print count classified by paper size.	
8462 1	Normal	
8462 4	Thick	
8462 7	OHP	
8462 8	Other	

8464*	P: PrtPGS/Ppr Type	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
	Displays the total print count classified by paper size. This is the total for all	

	application programs.
8464 1	Normal
8464 4	Thick
8464 7	OHP
8464 8	Other

8522*	C: PrtPGS/FIN (Sort)	[0 9999999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
8522 1	Displays the total number of printing classified by paper size.	

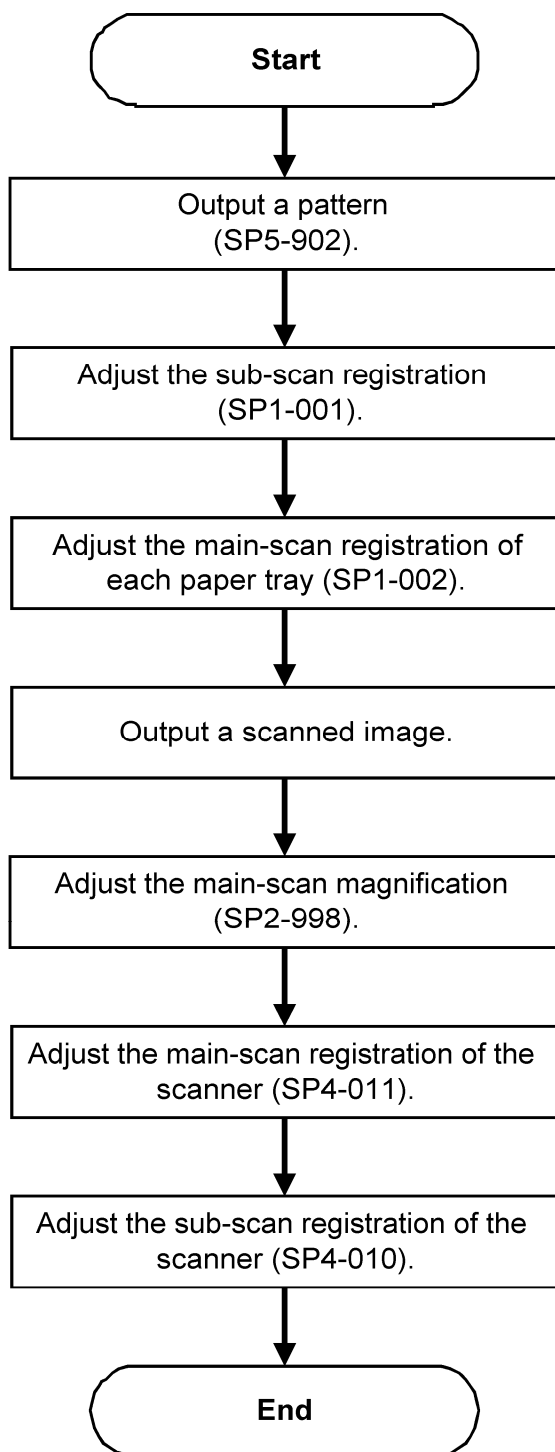
5.2.8 SP9-XXX (ETC.)

Not used in this machine.

5.3 USING SP MODES

5.3.1 ADJUSTING REGISTRATION AND MAGNIFICATION

To adjust the registration and magnification, you need to use several service programs. The chart shows an example of the procedure to adjust the machine in the basic configuration.



5.3.2 ID SENSOR ERROR ANALYSIS (SP 2221)

The image quality may become very degraded when the ID sensor does not operate properly. However, there is no such SC code that indicates ID-sensor malfunction. Instead, SP 2221 shows information about the ID sensor. Check this information when the image quality is unacceptable.

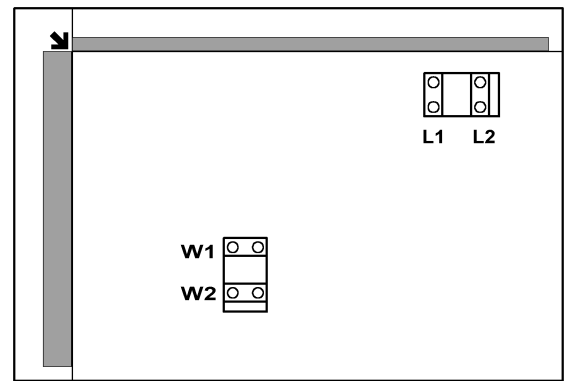
The table below lists the information shown with SP 2221 (ID Sensor Error Analysis).

SP	Error condition	Possible cause	Remarks
SP 2221 1 Vsg (VG in the display)	$V_{sg} < 2.5V$ or $(V_{sg} - V_{sp}) < 1.00V$	1. ID sensor defective 2. ID sensor dirty 3. Drum not charged	
SP 2221 2 Vsp (VP in the display)	$V_{sp} > 2.5V$ or $(V_{sg} - V_{sp}) < 1.00V$	1. Toner density very low 2. ID sensor pattern not created	
SP 2221 3 Power (PW in the display)	$V_{sg} < 3.5V$ when maximum power (979) is applied	1. ID sensor defective 2. ID sensor dirty 3. Drum not get charged	Power source for the ID-sensor light
SP 2221 4 Vsdp	No Error Conditions		
SP 2221 5 Vt	$V_t > 4.5V$ or $V_t < 0.2V$	1. TD sensor defective	
SP 2221 6 Vts			

5.3.3 DISPLAY APS DATA (SP 4301 1)

- Sensor Positions -

The APS (auto paper select) sensors are arranged as shown in the diagram.



- Reading the Data -

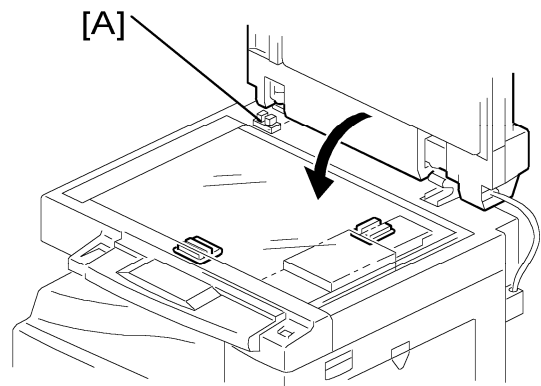
Example 1	Example 2
1. Paper Size: 11000000 8 ¹ / ₂ x13 ☐	1. Paper Size: 00110000 A4 ☐
2. DF Open: 1	2. DF Open: 0

Example 1 indicates that the paper size and its orientation is "8¹/₂ x 13 SEF," and that the document feeder (or platen cover) is open. Example 2 indicates that the paper size and its orientation is "A4 LEF," and that the document feeder (or platen cover) is closed.

The "Paper Size" data starts with eight digits. The first digit indicates the output of L2; the second digit, L1; the third digit, W2; and the fourth digit, W1. The other four digits (from the fifth through the eighth) are always "0000." In Example 1, the APS sensors L2 and L1 detect paper (W2 and W1 do not).

In Example 2, APS sensors W2 and W1 detect paper (L2 and L1 do not). The paper size and its orientation is based on the outputs of these four APS sensors.

The "DF Open" data shows "1" or "0," indicating if the document feeder (or platen cover) is open or closed respectively. The data is based on the output of the platen cover sensor [A].



5.3.4 MEMORY CLEAR

The basic machine (the machine without the optional controller box) stores all the data in the NVRAM on the BICU. The data is cleared by SP 5801 2 (see list on the following page).

002	Main Motor Reverse
003	Quenching Lamp

The DDST machine (the machine with the optional controller box) stores the engine data in the NVRAM on the BICU, and stores the other data in the NVRAM on the optional controller. To distinguish between the engine data and the other data, see SP 5801 3 through 15. This service program (SP 5801) manages the controller data. Any data that is not handled by SP 5801 is the engine data. The data in the BICU NVRAM (engine data) is cleared by SP 5998 1, while the data in the controller NVRAM (controller data) is cleared by SP 5801-xxx (see list on the following page).

002	Main Motor Reverse
003	Quenching Lamp

Machine	Data	NVRAM	Cleared by	Remarks
Basic	All data	BICU	SP 5801 2	
DDST	Engine data	BICU	SP 5998 1	Any data other than controller data
	Controller data	Controller	SP 5801-xxx	SCS, IMH, MCS, Copier application, Printer application, Scanner application, Web service/network application, NCS, R-Fax, DCS, UCS

- Exceptions -

SP 5801 2 (basic machine) and SP 5998 1 (DDST machine) clears most of the settings and counters stored in the NVRAM on the BICU (the values return to their default values).

However, the following settings are not cleared:

1. SP 5807 (Area Selection)
2. SP 5811 1 (Serial Num Input [Code Set])
3. SP 5811 3 (Serial Num Input [ID2 Code Display])
4. SP 5812 1 (Service TEL [Telephone])
5. SP 5812 2 (Service TEL [Facsimile])
6. SP 5907 (Plug & Play)
7. SP 7 (Data Log)
8. SP 8 (History)

Use SP 5802 2 (basic machine) or SP 5998 1 (DDST machine) after you have replaced the BICU NVRAM or when the BICU NVRAM data is corrupted. When the program ends normally, the message "Completed" shows. When you have replaced the controller NVRAM or when the controller NVRAM data is corrupted, use SP 5801 1. The message is the same as the basic machine.

- With Flash Memory Card

1. **Upload the NVRAM data to a flash memory card ( p.5-44).**
2. **Print out all SMC data lists ( p.5-52).**



-6850556. Be sure to print out all the lists. You have to manually change the SP settings if the NVRAM data upload ends abnormally.

3. **Select SP 5801 2.**
4. **Press the OK key.**
5. **Select "Execute." The messages "Execute?" followed by "Cancel" and "Execute" shows.**
6. **Select "Execute."**
7. **When the program has ended normally, the message "Completed" shows. If the program has ended abnormally, an error message shows.**
8. **Press the cancel key.**
9. **Turn the main switch off and on.**
10. **Download the NVRAM data from a flash memory card ( p.5-44)**

- Without Flash Memory Card -

1. **Print out all SMC data lists ( p.5-52).**

2. Select SP 5-801 (basic machine) or SP 5998 1
3. Press the OK key.
4. Select "Execute." The messages "Execute?" followed by "Cancel" and "Execute" show.
5. Select "Execute."
6. When the program has ended normally, the message "Completed" is displayed. If the program has ended abnormally, an error message shows.
7. Turn the main switch off and on.
8. Adjust the printer and scanner registration and magnification (p.3-60).
9. Refer to the SMC lists, and enter any values that differ from the factory settings. Double-check the values for SP 4901.
10. Adjust the standard white level (SP 4428).
11. Initialize the TD sensor (SP 2214).
12. Check the copy quality and the paper path.

5.3.5 INPUT CHECK (SP 5803)

- Conducting an Input Check -

1. Select SP 5803.
2. Select the number (see the table below) corresponding to the component.
3. Select "Execute." The copy mode is activated.
4. The symbols "01H" or "00H" will show (see the table below to cross-reference these symbols).

- Input Check Table -

Num.	Sensor/Switch	01H	00H
001	Safety SW	Open	Closed
002	Safety SW-LD 5V	Open	Closed
003	Right Cover SW	Open	Closed
004	Right Low Cover SW	Open	Closed
005	Tray Cover SW	Open	Closed
006	Upper Relay S	Paper detected	Not detected
007	Lower Relay S	Paper detected	Not detected
008	Vertical Trans S	Paper detected	Not detected
009	Registration Sensor	Paper detected	Not detected
010	Exit Sensor	Paper detected	Not detected
011	Duplex Inverter S	Paper detected	Not detected
012	Duplex Entrance S	Paper detected	Not detected

Num.	Sensor/Switch	01H	00H
013	Duplex Exit S	Paper detected	Not detected
014	By-pass PE S	Paper detected	Not detected
015	By-pass P Size S	*1	
016	Upper PE S	Paper detected	Not detected
017	Lower PE S	Paper detected	Not detected
018	Upper P Size SW	*1	
019	Lower P Size SW	*1	
020	BK-Upper Paper End S	Paper detected	Not detected
021	BK-Lower Paper End S	Paper detected	Not detected
022	BK-Up P Size SW	*1	
023	BK-Low P Size SW	*1	
024	BK-Up P Height S	*2	
025	BK-Low P Height S	*2	
026	BK-Upper Lift S	At upper limit	Not at upper limit
028	BK type	*3	
030	Duplex Installed	Installed	Not installed
031	Lower Lift S	At upper limit	Not at upper limit
032	Main M Lock	Locked	Not locked
033	Polygon M Lock	Locked	Not locked
034	BK-Lift M Lock	Locked	Not locked
035	Total CO Install	Installed	Not installed
036	Key CO Install	Installed	Not installed
037	L-Synchronization	Detected	Not detected
038	DF-Position S	Detected	Not detected
039	DF-Cover Open S	Detected	Not detected
040	DF-Original Set S	Detected	Not detected
041	DF-Registration S	Detected	Not detected
042	DF-Exit S	Detected	Not detected
043	DF-Trailing S	Detected	Not detected
044	DF-Reverse S	Detected	Not detected
045	Platen Cover S	Open	Closed
046	1 bin Installed	Installed	Not installed
047	1 bin Exit S	Paper detected	Not detected

Num.	Sensor/Switch	01H	00H
048	1 bin Paper S	Paper detected	Not detected
049	1 bin Tray S	Open	Closed
050	Fan Motor Lock	High speed	Not high speed
051	2 Tray BK Install	Installed	Not installed
053	HP Sensor	Detected	Not detected
054	Duplex Fan M Lock	Locked	Not locked



- *1 Paper Size

Copier	00	01	02	03	04	05	06	07
Europe	Not set	A4 LEF	8Hx13 SEF	A4 SEF	A5 LEF	LT LEF	--	A3 SEF
North America	Not set	A4 LEF	8Hx13 SEF	LT SEF	LG SEF	LT LEF	--	DLT SEF
China	Not set	A4 LEF	B5 LEF	A4 SEF	A5 LEF	B4 SEF	--	A3 SEF

Paper Feed Unit	00	01	03	04	05	0A	0C	0E	0F
Europe	Not set	LT SEF	LG SEF	A4 LEF	--	DLT SEF	A4 SEF	LT LEF	A3 SEF
North America	Not set	LT SEF	LG SEF	A4 LEF	--	DLT SEF	A4 SEF	LT LEF	A3 SEF
China	Not set	LT SEF	LG SEF	A4 LEF	--	DLT SEF	A4 SEF	LT LEF	A3 SEF

By-Pass Tray	04	0C	08	00	01	03	02	06	
Europe	A5 SEF	A5 SEF	A5 SEF	A5 SEF	8x13 SEF	A4 SEF	A3 SEF	A3 SEF	
North America	HLT SEF	HLT SEF	HLT SEF	HLT SEF	HLT SEF	LG SEF	DLT SEF	DLT SEF	
China	B6 SEF	B6 SEF	A5 SEF	A5 SEF	B5 SEF	A4 SEF	B4 SEF	A3 SEF	

- *2 Paper Amount -

10	Near end
11	About 25%
00	About 75%
00	About 100%

- *3 Available Paper Feed Unit -

00	None
20	2-tray paper feed unit
30	1-tray paper feed unit

5.3.6 OUTPUT CHECK (SP 5804)

- Conducting an Output Check –



- To prevent mechanical or electrical damage, do not keep an electrical component on for a long time.

1. **Select SP 5804.**
2. **Select the number (see the table below) corresponding to the component.**
3. **Select "ON."**
4. **To stop the operation, select "OFF."**

- Output Check Table -



- Number 005, 006, 040, and 041 may not respond when the fusing temperature is high.

Num.	Component
001	Main Motor Forward
002	Main Motor Reverse
003	Quenching Lamp
004	Toner Supply Motor Forward
005	Fan Motor High
006	Fan Motor Low
007	Registration Clutch
008	By-pass Feed Clutch
009	Upper Feed Clutch

Num.	Component
010	Lower Feed Clutch
011	BK-Low Lift Motor Up
012	BK-Low Lift Motor Down
013	Relay Clutch
014	BK-Relay Clutch
015	BK-Upper Feed Clutch
016	BK-Lower Feed Clutch
017	BK-Lift Motor
018	BK-Up Lift Motor Up
019	BK-Up Lift Motor Down
020	Duplex Inv Motor Reverse
021	Duplex Inv Motor Forward
022	Duplex Trans Motor
023	Duplex Gate Solenoid
024	Duplex Inv Motor Hold
025	Dup Trans Motor Hold
026	Polygon Motor
027	Polygon M/LD
028	LD
029	DF-Transport Motor
030	DF-Feed Motor
031	DF-Feed Clutch
032	DF-Pickup Solenoid
033	DF-Stamp Solenoid
034	DF-Gate Solenoid
035	1 bin Gate Solenoid
036	1 bin Tray Motor
037	1 bin Tray Motor Hold
038	Fusing Solenoid
040	Duplex Fan Motor High
041	Duplex Fan Motor Low

5.3.7 SERIAL NUMBER INPUT (SP 5811)

- Specifying Characters -

SP 5811 1 specifies the serial number. For the basic machine (the machine without the optional controller), you use the numeric keypad. For the DDST machine (the machine with the optional controller), you use the numeric keypad and the optional operation panel.

A serial number consists of 11 characters. You can change each character by pressing one of the first 11 keys on the numeric keypad (❶, ❷, ❸, ...❹, ❺, ❻).

For example, when you press the ❶ key, the first character of the serial number changes as follows:

0 ⇒ 1 ⇒ 2 ⇒ ... ⇒ 8 ⇒ 9 ⇒ A ⇒ B ⇒ ... ⇒ X ⇒ Y ⇒ Z.

When you press the ❷ key, the second character changes likewise.

You can specify a digit ("0" to "9") or a capital letter ("A" to "Z") for the first four characters of a serial number, and you can specify a digit in the other seven characters (not capital letters).

5.3.8 NVRAM DATA UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD (SP 5824/5825)

This procedure is for the basic machine only.



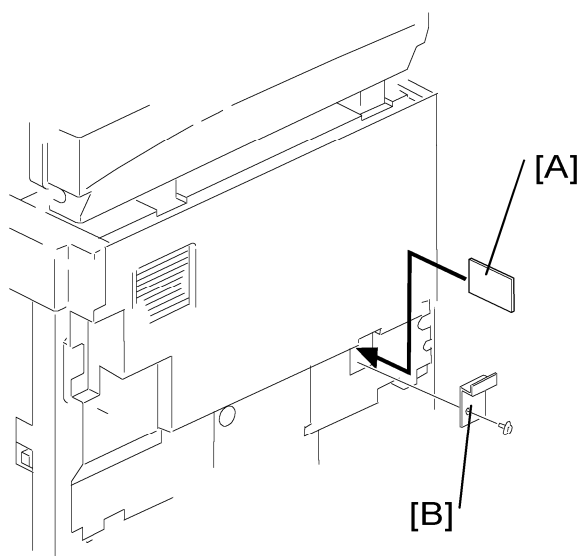
- 21. Make sure that you turn off the main switch before inserting or removing a flash memory card. Installing or removing a flash memory card while the main switch is on may damage the BICU or memory.

- Overview -

You can copy the data from the NVRAM to a flash memory card (NVRAM Upload), or from a flash memory card to the NVRAM (NVRAM download).

SP 5824 1 (NVRAM Upload)	From the BICU to a flash memory card
SP 5825 1 (NVRAM Download)	From a flash memory card to the BICU

You should execute NVRAM Upload before replacing the NVRAM or before executing SP 5801 2 (❶ p.5-37). You can copy back the data from the flash card to the NVRAM as necessary.

- NVRAM Upload (SP 5824 1) -

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the card cover [B] (1 rivet).
3. Turn the face of the flash memory card [A] ("A" is printed on it) toward your left-hand side, and insert it into the card slot.
4. Turn on the main switch.
5. Start the SP mode and select SP 5824 1.
6. The machine erases the settings on the card (if any), then writes the machine's settings to the flash memory card. This takes about 20 seconds. If uploading fails, an error message appears. If an error message appears, retry the upload procedure.
7. Turn off the main switch.
8. Remove the memory card.

- NVRAM Download (SP 5825 1) -

SP 5825 1 copies the data from the flash memory card to the NVRAM. The following data is NOT copied (the data in the NVRAM remains unchanged).

- SP 8221 1 (ADF Original Feed [Front])
- SP 8221 2 (ADF Original Feed [Back])
- SP 8381 1 (Total: Total Printer Pages)
- SP 8382 1 (Copy Application: Total Print Pages)
- SP 8391 1 (Large Size Print Pages [A3/DLT, Larger])
- SP 8411 1 (Prints Duplex)

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the card cover [B] (1 rivet).
3. Turn the face of the flash memory card [A] ("A" is printed on it) toward your left-hand side, and insert it into the card slot.
4. Turn on the main switch.
5. Start the SP mode and select SP 5825 1.
6. The machine erases the current settings, then writes the new settings onto the NVRAM on the BICU board. This takes about 1 second. If downloading fails, an error message appears. If an error message appears, retry the download procedure.
7. Turn off the main switch.
8. Remove the memory card.

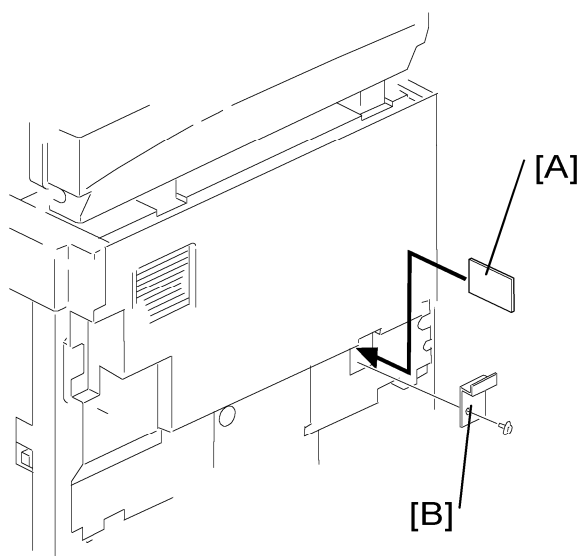
5.3.9 FIRMWARE UPDATE PROCEDURE

This section shows how to update the firmware.

The machine has the following firmware programs

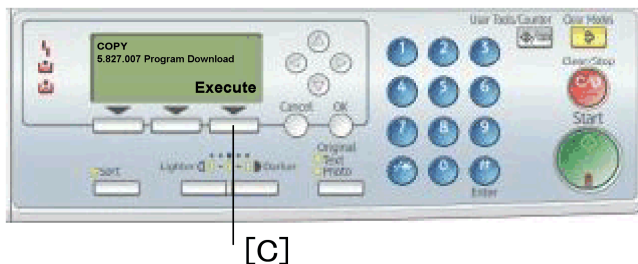
Firmware Type	SP Mode	Version
Engine (BICU)	7801 2	B2435581 Ver 0.04 EXP
DDST (Printer/Scanner)	7801 15	A.001

Engine (BICU) Firmware Update Procedure

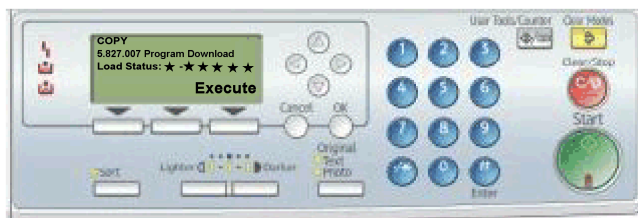


1. Turn the main switch off.

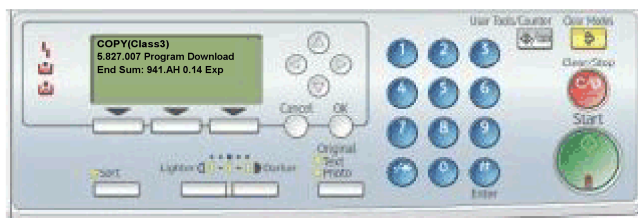
2. Remove the card cover [B] (1 rivet).
3. Insert the flash memory card [A].



4. Press down the power switch on the operation panel and hold it, and turn on the main switch.
5. Select "Execute" [C].

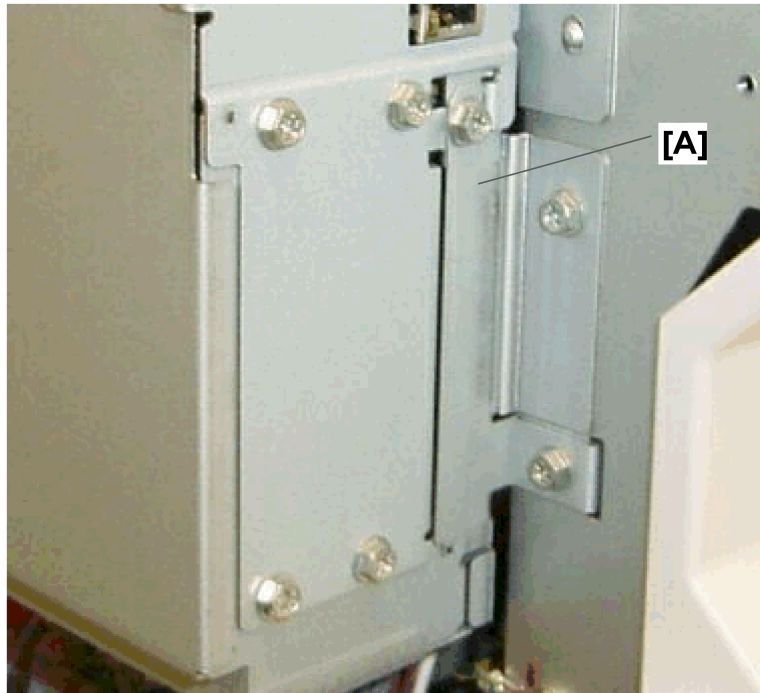


6. Do not touch any key while the message "Load Status..." shows. This message indicates that the program is running.

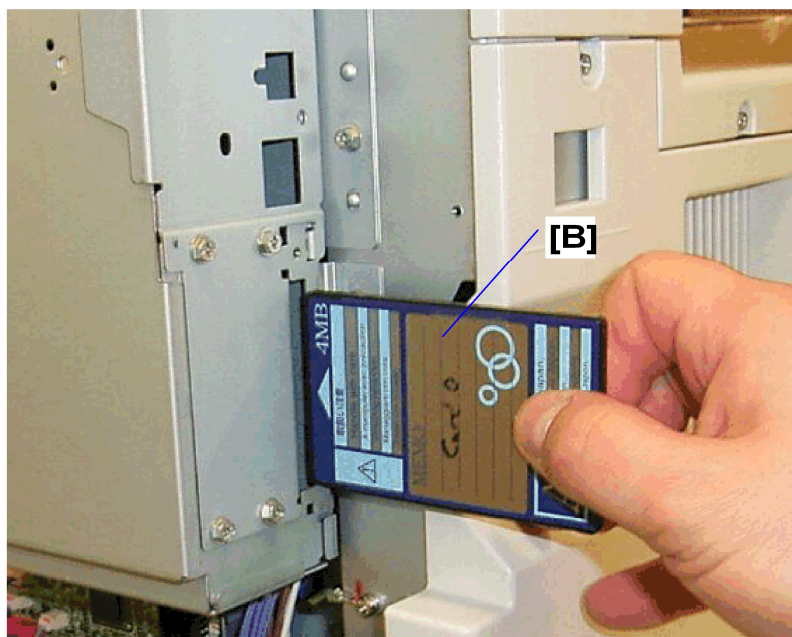


7. Make sure the message "End Sum..." shows. This message indicates that the program has ended normally.
8. Turn off the main switch.
9. Remove the flash memory card.
10. Replace the card cover [B] (1 rivet).
11. Turn the main switch on.
12. Check the operation.

DDST (Printer Scanner) Update Procedure



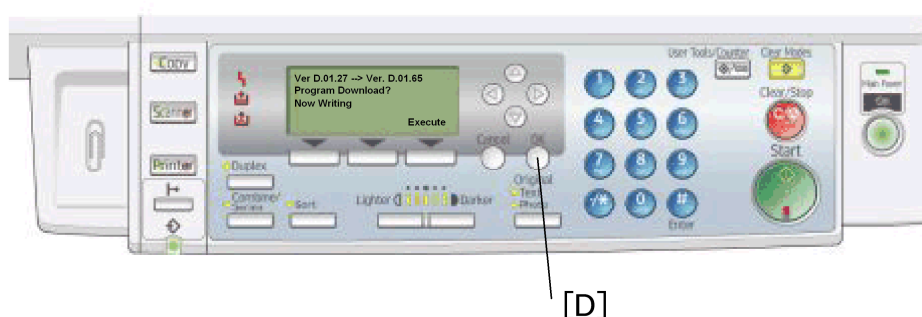
1. Turn the main switch off.
2. Remove the slot cover [A] (1 x )



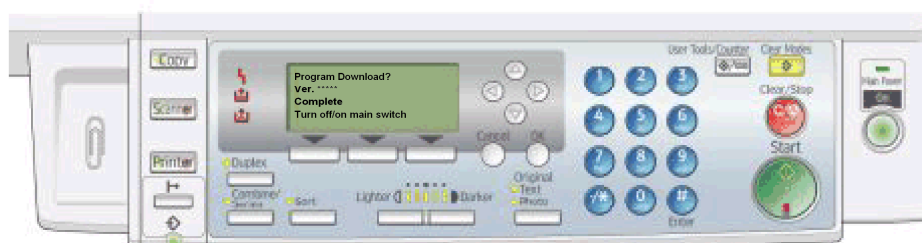
3. Insert the flash memory card [B] as shown above.



4. Turn on the main power switch.
5. Push the printer application key [C].



6. Push the OK key [D] and then push Execute.



Note

- Do not turn the machine off while the message “Now Writing” shows. This message indicates the program is running.
- Make sure the message “Completed” shows. This message indicates the program has successfully ended.

7. Turn off the main switch.
8. Remove the flash memory card.
9. Replace the slot cover [A] (1 x).

5.3.10 TEST PATTERN PRINT (SP 5902 1)

- Executing Test Pattern Printing -

1. Specify the pattern number and press the OK key.
2. Press the copy start key. The copy mode is activated

3. Specify copy settings and press the  key.
4. To return to the SP mode, press the  key.

- Test Patterns -

Test Patterns Using VCU	
No.	Pattern
0	(No print)
1	Vertical Lines (Single Dot)
2	Horizontal Lines (Single Dot)
3	Vertical Lines (Double Dot)
4	Horizontal Lines (Double Dot)
5	Grid Pattern (Single Dot)
6	Grid Pattern (Double Dot)
7	Alternating Dot Pattern
8	Isolated one dot
9	Black Band (Horizontal)
10	Trimming Area
11	Argyle Pattern (Single Dot)
12	Grayscales (Horizontal)
13	Grayscales (Vertical)
14	Grayscales (Vertical/Horizontal)
15	Grayscales (Vertical/Horizontal Overlay)
16	Grayscales With White Lines (Horizontal)
17	Grayscales with White Lines (Vertical)
18	Grayscales with White Lines (Vertical/Horizontal)

Test Patterns Using IPU	
No.	Pattern
30	Vertical Lines (Single Dot)
31	Horizontal Lines (Single Dot)
32	Vertical Lines (Double Dot)
33	Horizontal Lines (Double Dot)
34	Isolated Four Dots
35	Grid Pattern (Double Dot)

Test Patterns Using IPU	
36	Black Band (Vertical, 1024 Dots)
37	Grayscales (Horizontal, 512 Dots)
38	Grayscales (Vertical, 256 Dots)
39	ID Patch
40	Cross
41	Argyle Pattern (128-Dot Pitch)
42	Square Gradation (64 Grades)
43	Square Gradation (256 Grades)
44	Grayscales (Horizontal, 32-Dot Width)
45	Grayscales (Vertical, 32-Dot Width)
46	Trimming Area (A3)
47	A4 Gradation Patches 1 (128 Grades)
48	A4 Gradation Patches 2 (128 Grades)
49	Trimming Area (A4)

Test Patterns Using SBU	
No.	Pattern
51	Grid Pattern (double dot)
52	Gray scale 1 (256 grades)
53	Gray scale 2 (256 grades)

5.3.11 PAPER JAM COUNTERS (SP 7504)

The table below lists the menu numbers (the last three digits of SP 7504 XXX), and the paper jam timings and locations.

Code	
001	Paper jam occurs at power on.
010	Paper does not reach the registration sensor (from a paper tray).
011	Paper does not reach the relay sensor.
012	Paper is caught at the relay sensor.
021	Paper does not reach the vertical transport sensor.
022	Paper is caught at the vertical transport sensor.
031	Paper does not reach the vertical transport sensor in the optional paper feed

Code	
	unit.
032	Paper is caught at the vertical transport sensor in the optional paper feed unit.
050	Paper does not reach the registration sensor (from the by-pass tray).
060	Paper does not reach the registration sensor during reverse-side printing (for duplex printing).
070	Paper is caught at the registration sensor.
120	Paper is caught at the exit sensor (previous page).
121	Paper does not reach the exit sensor.
122	Paper is caught at the exit sensor.
123	Paper does not reach the duplex inverter sensor (from the registration roller).
125	Paper is caught at the duplex inverter sensor.
126	Paper does not reach the duplex entrance sensor.
127	Paper is caught at the duplex entrance sensor.
128	Paper does not reach the duplex exit sensor.
129	Paper is caught at the duplex exit sensor.
130	Paper does not reach the one-bin tray.
131	Paper is caught at the one-bin tray.

5.3.12 SMC PRINT (SP 5990)

SP 5990 outputs machine status lists.

1. Select SP 5990.

2. Select a menu:

- Basic machine: 001 All, 002 SP, 003 UP, 004 Log, or 005 Big Font
- DDST machine: 001 All (Data List), 002 SP (Mode Data List), 003 User Program, 004 Logging Data, 005 Diagnostic Report, 006 Non-Default, 007 NIB Summary, 008 Net File Log, 021 Copier User Program, 022 Scanner SP, 023 Scanner User Program, 040 Parts Alarm Counter Print, 064 Normal Count Print, 065 User Code Counter, 066 Key Operator Counter, 067 Contact List Print, 069 Heading1 print, 071 Heading3 print, 072 Group List Print, 128 ACC Pattern, 129 User Color Pattern, or 160:ACC Pattern Scan



- The output given by the menu "Big Font" is suitable for faxing.

3. Press the "Execute" key.

- Basic machine: The copy mode is activated.

- Specify copy settings and press the  key. The machine status lists is output.
- DDST machine: The machine status list is output.

4. To return to the SP mode, press the  key.

5.3.13 ORIGINAL JAM HISTORY DISPLAY (SP 7508)

- Viewing the Copy Jam History -

You can view the information on the most recent 10 events. The information on older events is deleted automatically.



- The information on jam history is saved in the NVRAM.

1. Select SP 7508.
2. Select one of the menu items ("Latest 1" through Latest 10").
3. Press the OK key. The summary of the jam history shows.
4. To view more information, select "Detail."

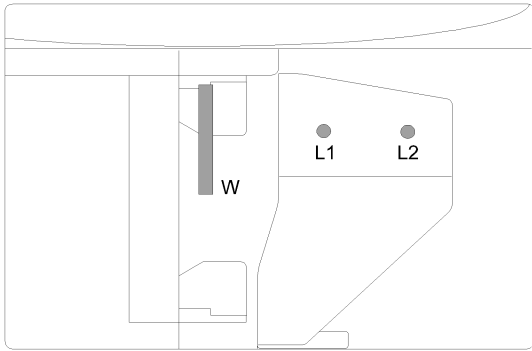
Jam History Codes

Code	Meaning
210	Original does not reach the registration sensor.
211	Original caught at the registration sensor.
212	Original does not reach the original exit sensor.
213	Original caught at the original exit sensor.
214	Original does not reach the original reverse sensor.
215	Original caught at the original reverse sensor.

5.3.14 ADF APS SENSOR OUTPUT DISPLAY (SP 6901)

- Sensor Positions -

	Large to Small			
W1	1	0	0	1
W2	0	0	1	1



- Reading Data -

W1	W2	L1	L2	Paper Size	
				NA	EU/AA
0	0	0	0	—	B5 LEF
0	0	1	1	11" x 17"	B4
0	1	0	0	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 5 ¹ / ₂ " LEF	A5 LEF
0	1	1	0	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 11" SEF	A4 SEF
1	1	1	1	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 14"	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 13"
1	0	0	0	11" x 8 ¹ / ₂ " LEF	A4 LEF
1	0	1	1	11" x 17"	A3
1	1	0	0	5 ¹ / ₂ " X 8 ¹ / ₂ " SEF	A5 SEF
1	1	1	0	—	B5 SEF

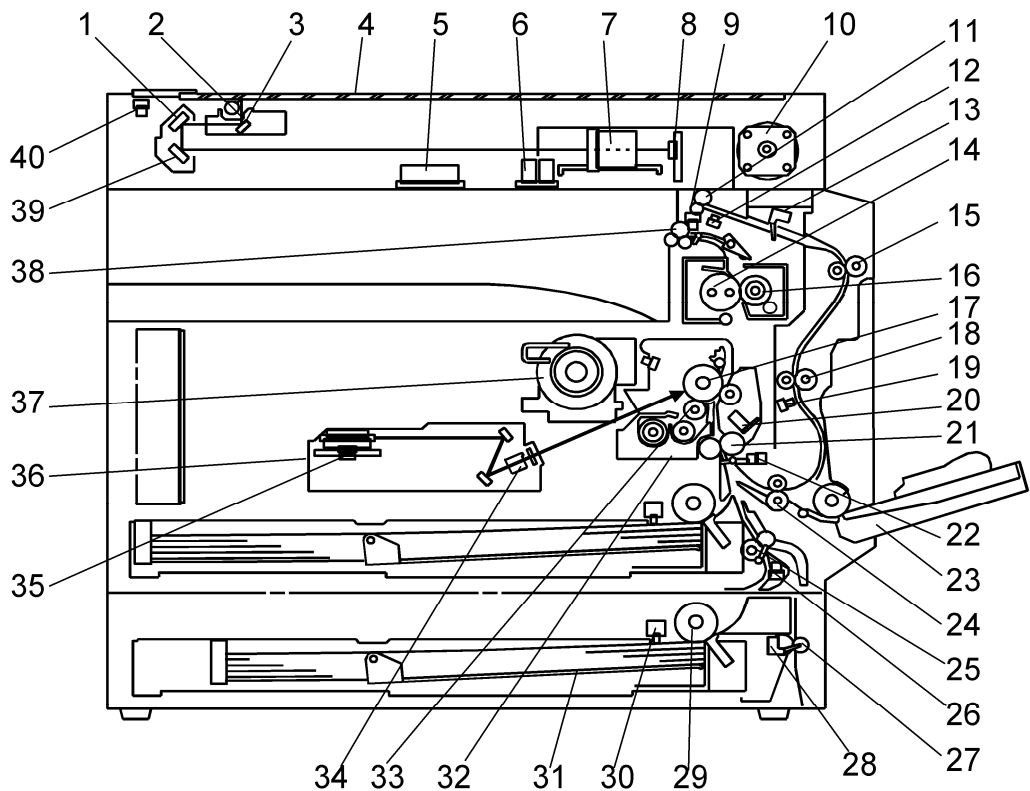
1: Detected

DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

6. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

6.1 OVERVIEW

6.1.1 COMPONENT LAYOUT



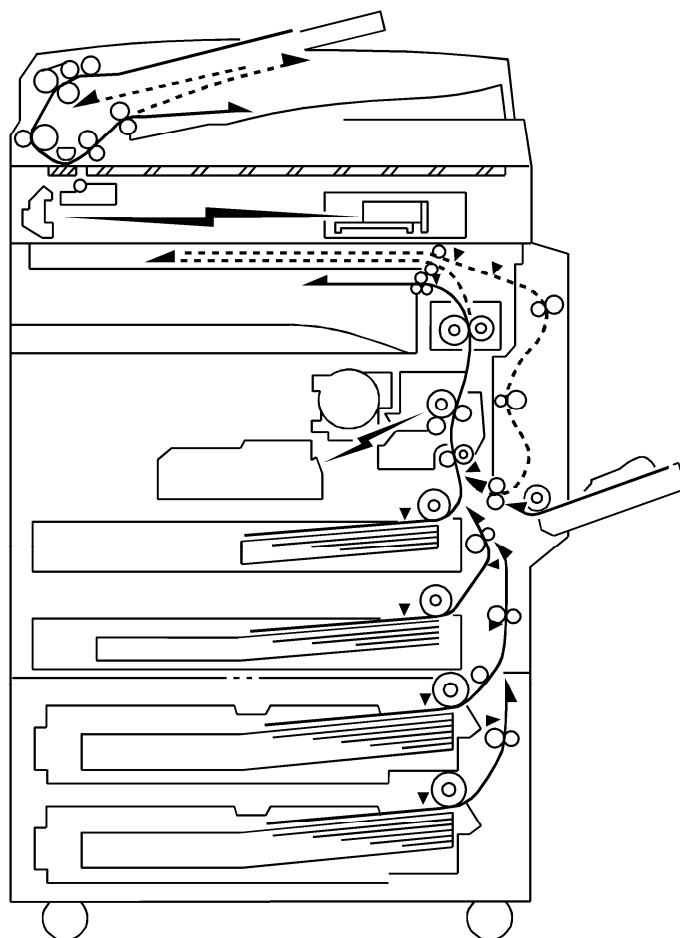
 Note

- 21. The above illustration is the B269/B277 model.
- 20. B245/B268/B276: No duplex unit, one paper tray

1. 2nd Mirror	21. Registration Roller
2. Exposure Lamp	22. Registration Sensor
3. 1st Mirror	23. By-pass Tray
4. Exposure Glass	24. Lower Transport Roller
5. Original Width Sensors	25. Upper Relay Roller
6. Original Length Sensors	26. Relay Sensor
7. Lens Block	27. Lower Relay Roller
8. SBU	28. Vertical Transport Sensor
9. Exit Sensor	29. Paper Feed Roller

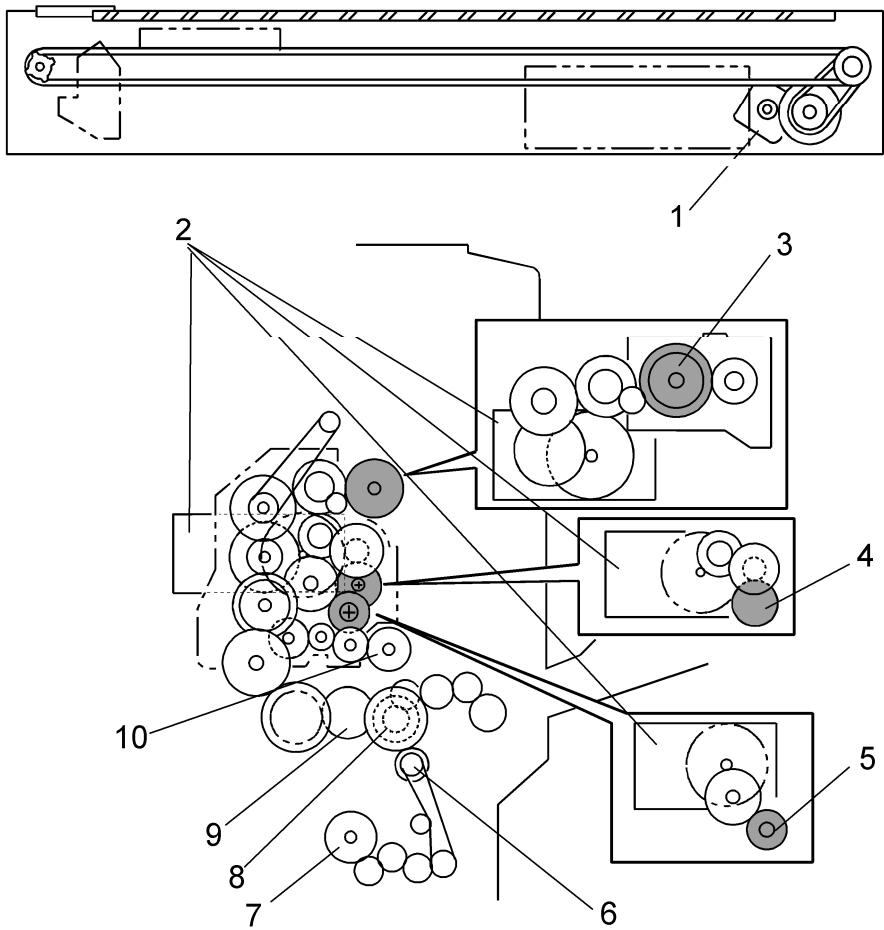
10. Scanner Motor	30. Paper End Sensor
11. Inverter Roller	31. Bottom Plate
12. Duplex Inverter Sensor	32. PCU
13. Duplex Entrance Sensor	33. Development Roller
14. Hot Roller	34. WTL
15. Upper Transport Roller	35. Polygon Mirror Motor
16. Pressure Roller	36. Laser Unit
17. OPC Drum	37. Toner Supply Bottle Holder
18. Middle Transport Roller	38. Exit Roller
19. Duplex Exit Sensor	39. 3rd Mirror
20. Image Density Sensor	40. Scanner HP Sensor

6.1.2 PAPER PATH



The B269/B277 model has a duplex unit mounted on the right side of the machine.
All models have a by-pass tray.

6.1.3 DRIVE LAYOUT

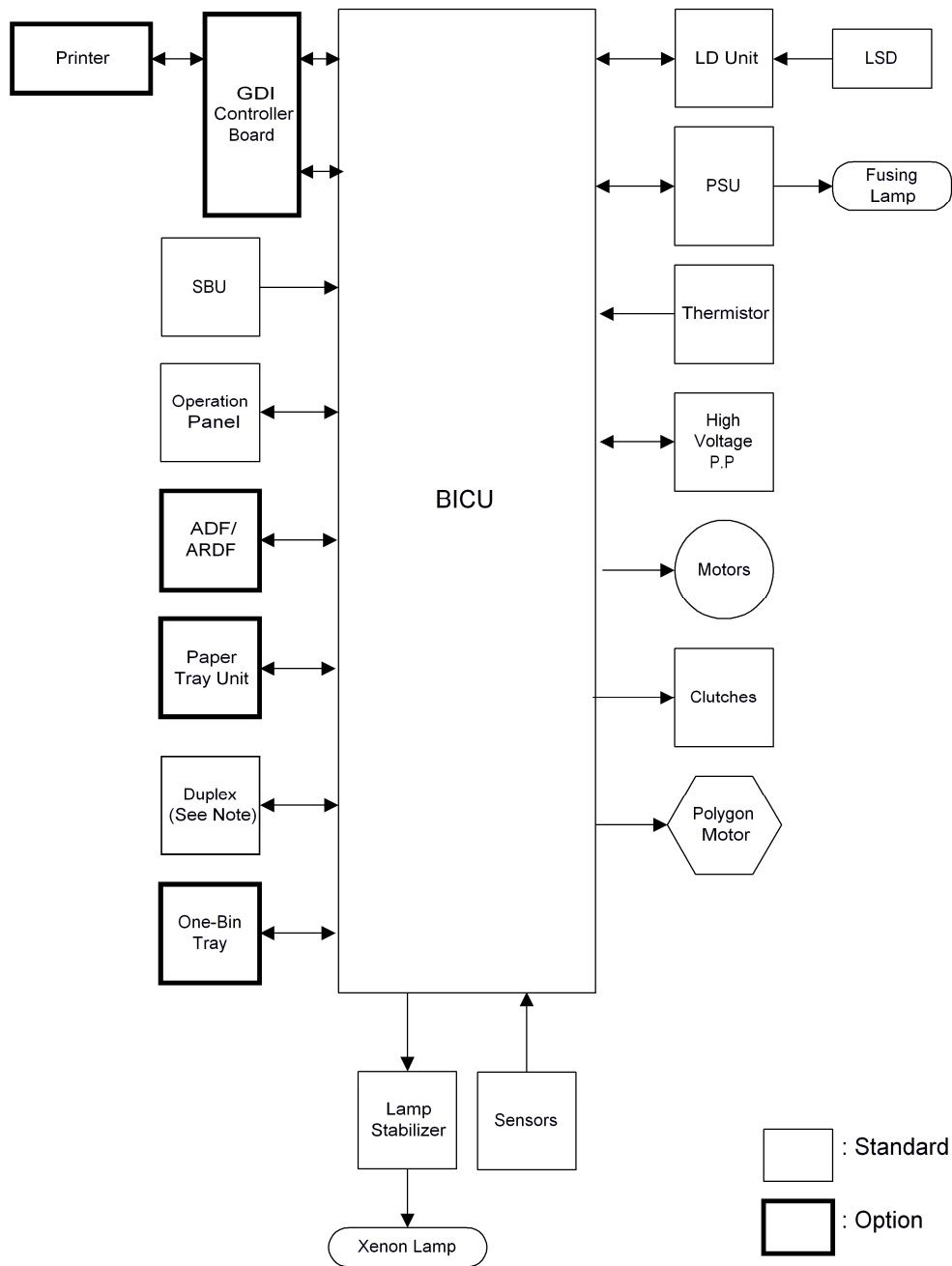


1. Scanner Motor	6. Relay Clutch
2. Main Motor	7. Lower Paper Feed Clutch
3. Hot Roller	8. By-pass Feed Clutch
4. OPC Drum	9. Upper Paper Feed Clutch
5. Development Roller	10. Registration Clutch

Detailed
Descriptions

6.2 BOARD STRUCTURE

6.2.1 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Only B269/B277 models contain the duplex unit.

The one-bin tray is for models B268/B269 (with the optional controller box).

6.2.2 BICU (BASE ENGINE AND IMAGE CONTROL UNIT)

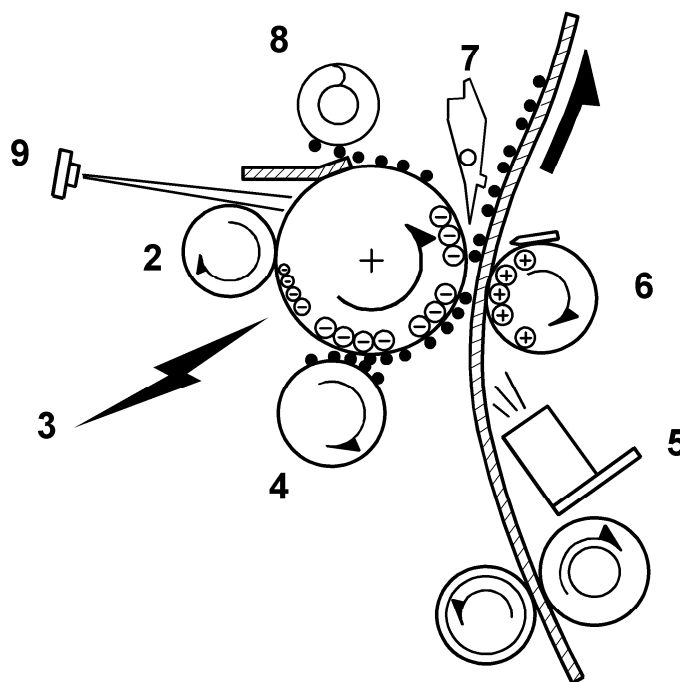
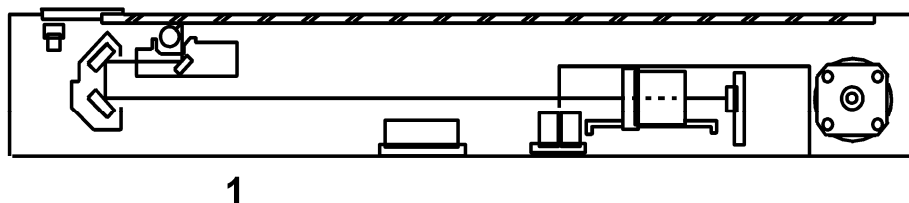
The main board controls the following functions:

1. Engine sequence
2. Timing control for peripherals
3. Image processing, video control
4. Operation control, system control (Basic machine only)
5. Machine control
6. Drive control for the sensors, motors, and clutches of the printer and scanner
7. High voltage supply board control
8. Serial interfaces with peripherals
9. Fusing control

6.2.3 SBU (SENSOR BOARD UNIT)

The SBU deals with the analog signals from the CCD and converts them into digital signals.

6.3 COPY PROCESS OVERVIEW



1. Exposure

A xenon lamp exposes the original. Light reflected from the original passes to the CCD, where it is converted into an analog data signal. This data is converted to a digital signal, processed and stored in the memory. At the time of printing, the data is retrieved and sent to the laser diode.

2. Drum Charge

In the dark, the charge roller gives a negative charge to the organic photo-conductive (OPC) drum. The charge remains on the surface of the drum because the OPC layer has a high electrical resistance in the dark.

3. Laser Exposure

The processed data scanned from the original is retrieved from the memory and transferred to the drum by a laser beam, which forms an electrical latent image on the drum surface. The amount of charge remaining as a latent image on the drum depends

on the laser beam intensity, which is controlled by the BICU board.

4. Development

The magnetic developer brush on the development roller comes in contact with the latent image on the drum surface. Toner particles are electrostatically attached to the areas of the drum surface where the laser reduced the negative charge on the drum.

5. ID Sensor

The laser forms a sensor pattern on the drum surface. The ID sensor measures the reflectivity of the pattern. The output signal is one of the factors used for toner supply control. Also, the ID sensor measures the reflectivity of the drum surface. The output signal is used for charge roller voltage control.

6. Image Transfer

Paper is fed to the area between the drum surface and the transfer roller at the proper time for aligning the copy paper and the developed image on the drum surface. Then, the transfer roller applies a high positive charge to the reverse side of the paper. This positive charge pulls the toner particles from the drum surface onto the paper. At the same time, the paper is electrostatically attracted to the transfer roller.

7. Paper Separation

Paper separates from the drum as a result of the electrostatic attraction between the paper and the transfer roller. The discharge plate (grounded) helps separate the paper from the drum.

8. Cleaning

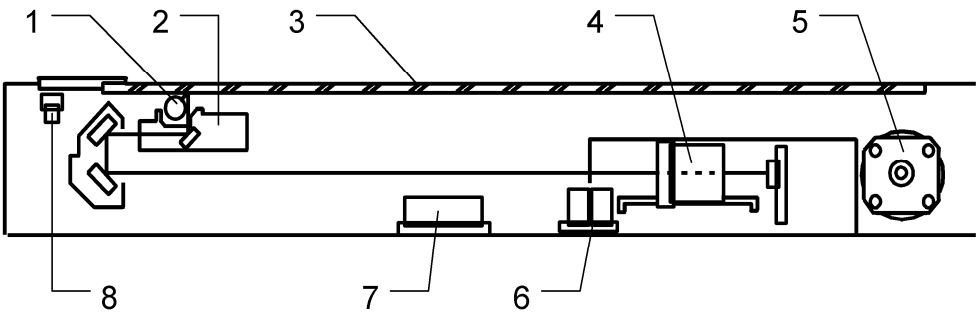
The cleaning blade removes any toner remaining on the drum surface after the image transfers to the paper.

9. Quenching

The light from the quenching lamp electrically neutralizes the charge on the drum surface.

6.4 SCANNING

6.4.1 OVERVIEW



1. Exposure Lamp	5. Scanner Motor
2. 1st Scanner	6. Original Length Sensor
3. Exposure Glass	7. Original Width Sensors
4. Lens Block	8. Scanner HP Sensor

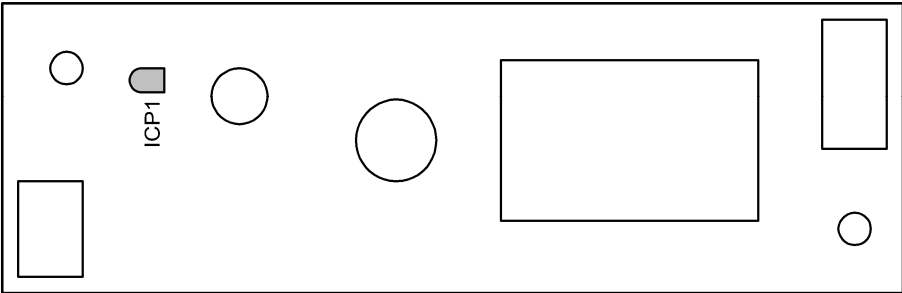
The original is illuminated by the exposure lamp (a xenon lamp). The image is reflected onto a CCD (charge coupled device) on the lens block via the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd mirrors, and through the lens on the lens block.

The 1st scanner consists of the exposure lamp, a reflector, and the 1st mirror.

A lamp stabilizer energizes the exposure lamp. The light reflected by the reflector is of almost equal intensity, to reduce shadows on pasted originals.

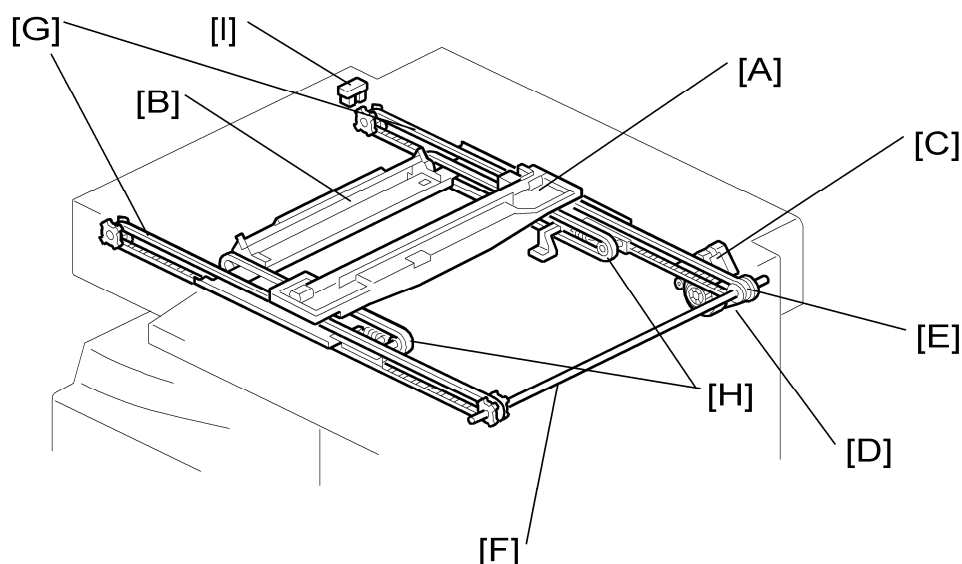
An optics anti-condensation heater is available as an option. It can be installed on the left side of the scanner. It turns on whenever the power cord is plugged in.

Lamp Stabilizer Fuse



	Rating	Manufacturer	Type No.
ICP1	DC50 V/1.5 A	ROHM CO.,LTD	ICP-N38

6.4.2 SCANNER DRIVE



A stepper motor drives the 1st and 2nd scanners [A, B]. The 1st scanner is driven by the scanner drive motor [C], drive gear through the timing belt [D], scanner drive pulley [E], scanner drive shaft [F], and two timing belts [G]. The 2nd scanner is driven through the 1st scanner and two timing belts [H].

- Book mode -

The BICU controls and operates the scanner drive motor. In full size mode, the 1st scanner speed is 100 mm/s during scanning. The 2nd scanner speed is half that of the 1st scanner. In reduction or enlargement mode, the scanning speed depends on the magnification ratio. The returning speed is always the same, whether in full size or magnification mode. The image length change in the sub scan direction is done by changing the scanner drive motor speed, and in the main scan direction it is done by image processing on the BICU board. Magnification in the sub-scan direction can be adjusted by changing the scanner drive motor speed using SP 4008. Magnification in the main scan direction can be adjusted using SP 4009.

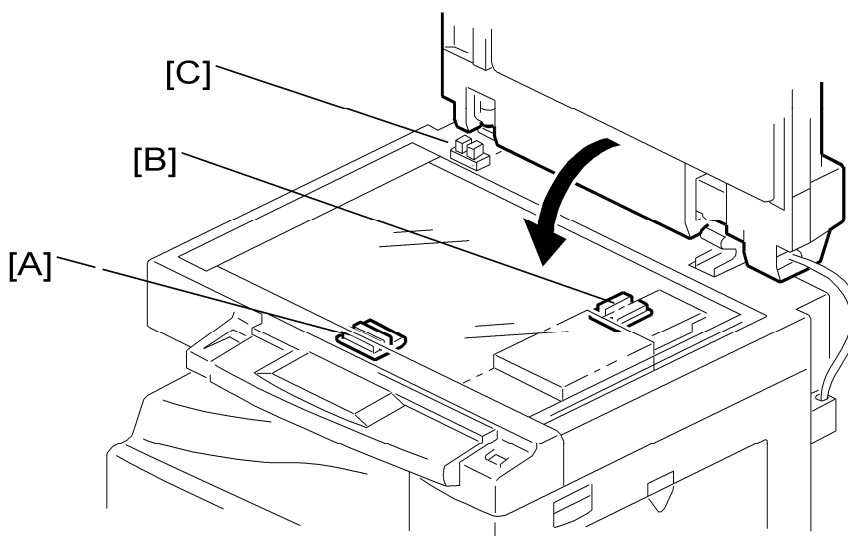
- ADF mode -

The scanners are always kept at their home position (the scanner HP. sensor [I] detects the 1st scanner) to scan the original. The ADF motor feeds the original through the ADF. In

reduction/enlargement mode, the image length change in the sub-scan direction is done by changing the ADF motor speed. Magnification in the main scan direction is done in the BICU board, like for book mode.

Magnification in the sub-scan direction can be adjusted by changing the ADF motor speed using SP 6006 5. In the main scan direction, it can be adjusted with SP 4009, like for book mode.

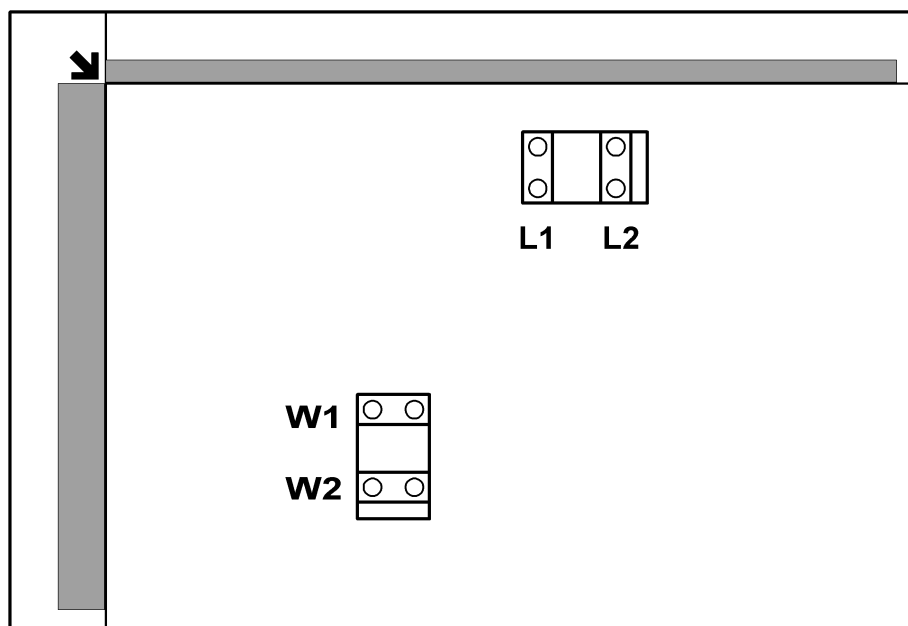
6.4.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION IN PLATEN MODE



In the optics cavity for original size detection, there are four reflective sensors. The original width sensors [A] detect the original width, and the original length sensors [B] detect the original length. These are the APS (Auto Paper Select) sensors. Each APS sensor is a reflective photosensor.

While the main switch is on, these sensors are active and the original size data is always sent to the CPU. However, the CPU checks the data only when the platen cover sensor [C] is activated. This is when the platen is positioned about 15 cm above the exposure glass, for example while it is being closed. The CPU can recognize the original size from the combination of on/off signals from the APS sensors.

If the copy is made with the platen fully open, the CPU decides the original size from the sensor outputs when the Start key is pressed.



Original Size		Length Sensors		Width Sensors		SP 4301 display
A4/A3 version	LT/DLT version	L2	L1	W2	W1	
A3	11" x 17"	1	1	1	1	11110000
B4	8.5" x 14"	1	1	0	1	11010000
8.5" x 13"	—	1	1	0	0	11000000
A4-SEF	8.5" x 13"	0	1	0	0	01000000
A4-LEF	11" x 8.5"	0	0	1	1	00110000
B5-LEF	8.5" x 11"	0	0	0	1	00010000
A5-LEF	8.5" x 5.5"	0	0	0	0	00000000
—	8.5" x 13"	0	1	0	1	01010000



-21. 0: High (no paper), 1: Low (paper present)

The above table shows the outputs of the sensors for each original size. This original size detection method eliminates the necessity for a pre-scan and increases the machine's productivity.

For other combinations, "Cannot Detect Original Size" will be indicated on the operation panel display (if SP 4303 is kept at the default setting).

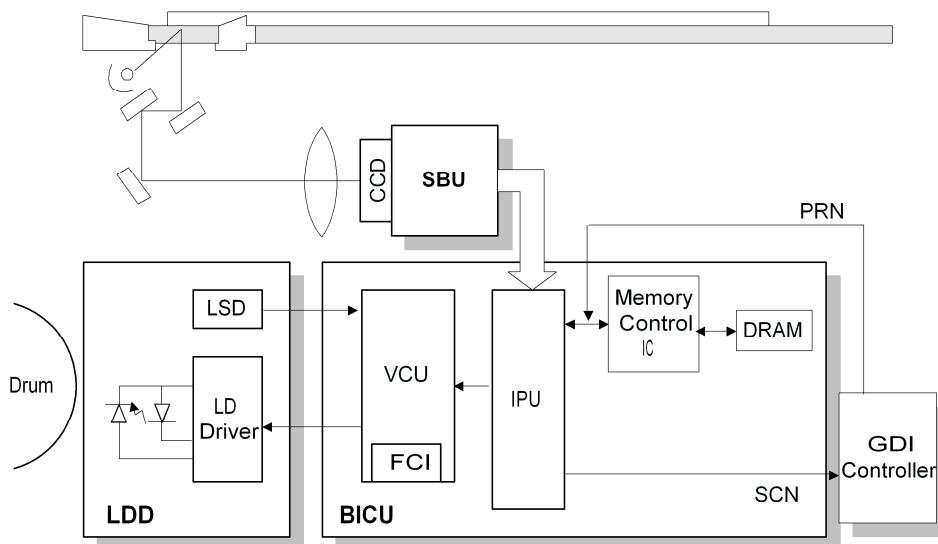
However, if the by-pass feeder is used, note that the machine assumes that the copy paper is short-edge first. For example, if A4 paper is placed long-edge first on the by-pass tray, the machine assumes it is A3 paper and scans the full A3 area for the first copy of each

Scanning

page of the original, disregarding the original size sensors. However, for each page, the data signal to the laser diode is stopped to match the copy paper length detected by the registration sensor. This means that copy time for the first page may be slower (because of the longer time required for scanning), but it will be normal for the rest of the job. Original size detection using the ADF is described in the manual for the ADF.

6.5 IMAGE PROCESSING

6.5.1 OVERVIEW



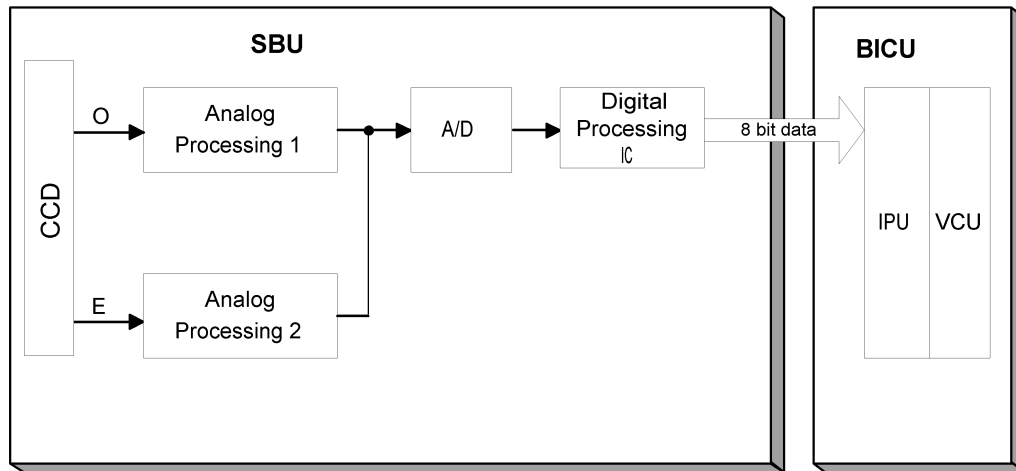
The CCD generates an analog video signal. The SBU (Sensor Board Unit) converts the analog signal to an 8-bit digital signal, then it sends the digital signal to the BICU board. The BICU board can be divided into three image-processing blocks: the IPU (Image Processing Unit), FCI (Fine Character Image), and VCU (Video Control Unit).

1. IPU: Auto shading, filtering, magnification, scanner gamma correction, ID gamma correction
2. VCU: Printer gamma correction, LD print timing control and laser power PWM control
3. FCI (inside the VCU): Smoothing

↓ Note

-21. The IPU and VCU are contained in the same IC called SCRATCH on the BICU.

6.5.2 SBU (SENSOR BOARD UNIT)



The CCD converts the light reflected from the original into an analog signal. The CCD line has 7,400 pixels and the resolution is 600 dpi (23.6 lines/mm).

The CCD has two output lines, for odd and even pixels, to the analog processing circuit.

The analog processing circuit performs the following operations on the signals from the CCD:

1. Z/C (Zero Clamp):

Adjusts the black level reference for even pixels to match the odd pixels.

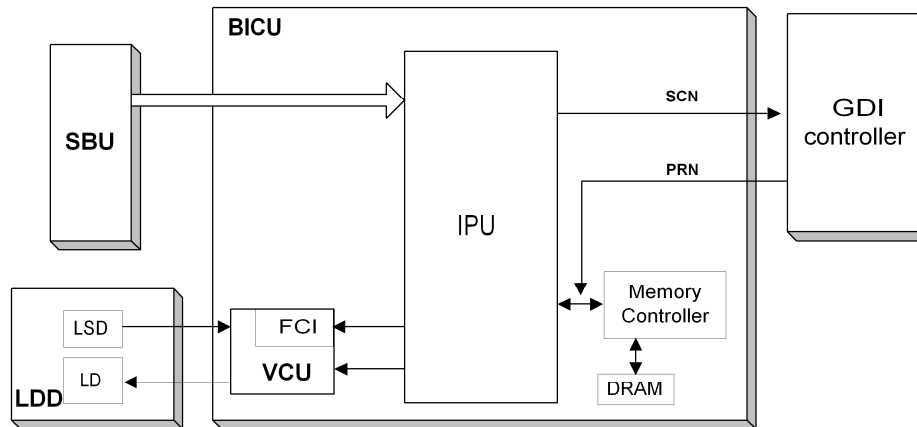
2. Signal Amplification:

The analog signal is amplified by operational amplifiers.

After the above processing, the analog signals are converted to 8-bit signals by the A/D converter. Each pixel will be assigned a value on a scale of 256 grades. Then, the digitized image data goes to the BICU board.

6.5.3 IPU (IMAGE PROCESSING UNIT)

Overview



The image data from the SBU goes to the IPU (Image Processing Unit) on the BICU board, which carries out the following processes on the image data:

1. **Auto shading**
2. **White/black line correction**
3. **ADS**
4. **Scanner gamma correction**
5. **Magnification (main scan)**
6. **Filtering (MTF and smoothing)**
7. **ID gamma correction**
8. **Binary picture processing**
9. **Error diffusion**
10. **Dithering**
11. **Video path control**
12. **Test pattern generation**

The image data then goes to the VCU (basic machine) or to the GDI controller (DDST machine).



- The IPU and VCU are contained in the same IC (called SCRATCH) on the BICU.

Image Processing Modes

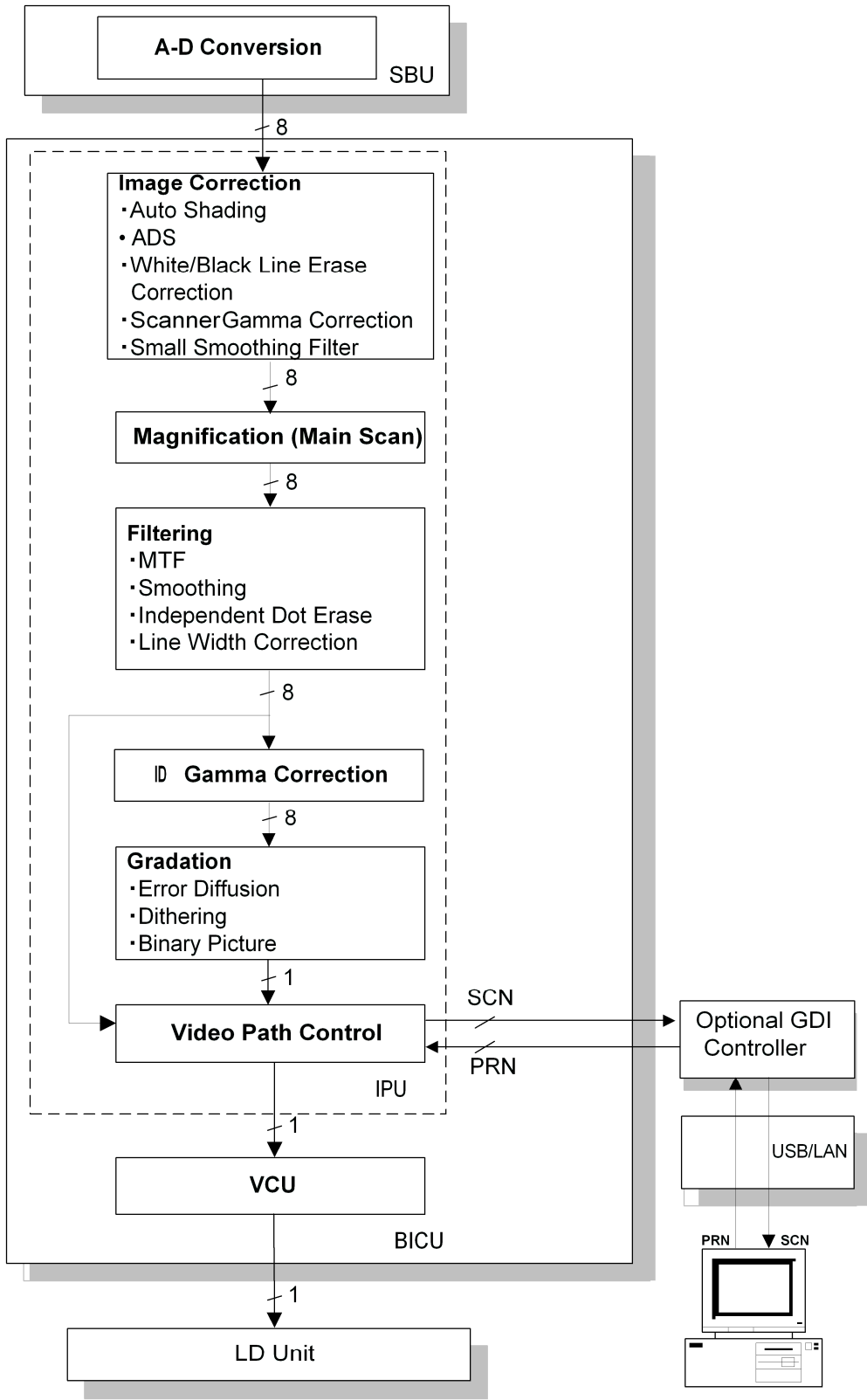
The user can select Text, Photo and Special original types. However, each of these original types has a range of different choices (such as “sharp”, “photographs”, etc), which are listed in the table on the next page.

- All modes can be customized with a range of SP modes that can be adjusted to meet user requirements.
- The user can select the mode that best suits their original with the following user tool: Original Type: User Tools – Copier Features – Image Adjustment

Original Type	Mode	Targeted Original Type
Text	Normal	Normal text originals
	Sharp	Newspapers, originals through which the rear side is moderately visible as faint text.
Photo	Photo priority	Text/photo images which contain mainly photo areas
	Text priority	Text/photo images which contain mainly text areas
	Photographs	Actual photographs
Special	Unneeded background	Originals through which the rear side is extremely visible (or have a colored background) with faint text. Also for originals with very grainy backgrounds (some newspapers) and faint text.
	Colored text	Originals with colored text and lines.
	Normal Pixel Photo	Photo images created by dither patterns (dots visible), such as newspaper photos – normal resolution.
	Coarse Pixel Photo	Photo images created by dither patterns (dots visible), such as newspaper photos – coarse resolution.
	Preserved Background (Normal Text)	Use instead of Normal Text if, e.g. an embedded white area causes Auto Image Density to initially remove the surrounding (darker) background but leave the rest. Use if the customer wishes to keep this background.

Image Processing Path

The following diagram shows the various stages of image processing and where they are performed.



Detailed
Descriptions

Original Modes

The machine has 10 original modes. There are two text modes, three photo modes, and five “special” modes.

The original mode key on the operation panel has two settings, text and photo. With the default settings, the machine uses “Normal Text (Text 1)” when the Text indicator is lit, and uses “Photo Priority (Photo 1)” when the Photo indicator is lit.

The customer can allocate different modes to the Text and Photo indicators with User Tools – Copier Features – Image Adjustment. Note that the Text indicator does not have to be allocated to a Text mode and the Photo key does not have to be allocated to a Photo mode. For example, the Text indicator can be allocated to Photo 3, and the Photo indicator can be allocated to Special 4.

If the user wishes to customize one of the original modes, the technician can change the settings using SP 4922 to SP 4942. Refer to “SP Modes for Each Image Processing Step”. However, only one of the original modes can be customized at any one time.

SP Modes for Each Image Processing Step

The table on the next page shows which SP modes are used for each step of image processing.

1. 4921: Selects **which original mode** the settings from SP 4922 to SP 4932 will be applied to.
2. 4922: Selects the scanner curve. You can select either a curve for text-based originals (brings out text) or a curve for photo originals (better distinctions between shades of dark colors).
3. 4923: Selects the central notch position for the ID adjustment LEDs.
4. 4926: Adjusts the texture removal level (used with error diffusion).
5. 4927: Adjusts the line width.
6. 4928: Selects the dot erase level.
7. 4929: Converts white to black, and black to white
8. 4930: Adjusts the clarity of line images and the edges of solid images.
9. 4931: Adjusts the clarity of solid image areas.
10. 4932: Adjusts the clarity of low ID lines.
11. 4941: Selects the white line erase level.
12. 4942: Selects the black line erase level.

If a fax and/or scanner/printer option is installed, you can make separate settings for copier, fax, and scanner/printer mode with these SPs.

NOTE: The gray area means the setting cannot be changed using SP mode.

	Text		Photo			Special					Note
	Normal	Sharp	Photo Priority	Text Priority	Photographs	Unneeded Background	Colored Text	Normal Pixel Photo	Coarse Pixel Photo	Preserved Background	
SBU		ADS		ADS			ADS				
Shading Correction											
Magnification											
Filtering											
Graduation											
Path Control											
VCU											

Auto Shading

Overview

There are two auto shading methods: black level correction and white level correction. Auto

shading corrects errors in the signal level for each pixel.

Black and white level correction is always done.

Black Level Correction

The IPU detects the black dummy data from one end of the CCD signal (32 pixels at the end are blacked off) and takes the average of the black dummy data. Then, the black level value from each image pixel is detected.

White Level Correction

Previous machines used 8-bit data (256 gradations), but this machine uses 6-bit data (64 gradations). When white level correction is applied to 8-bit data, white lines are more easily generated. This is because the normal variations in CCD pixel response (which are very slight), when rounded off by white level correction, will show up much easier on the copy when the data is divided into 256 gradations.

Before scanning the original, the machine reads a reference waveform from the white plate. The average of the white video level for each pixel is stored as the white shading data in the FIFO memory in the IPU (SCRATCH) chip.

The video signal information for each pixel obtained during image scanning is corrected by the IPU (SCRATCH) chip. If the maximum value of the video level is 64 or less, SC101 (exposure lamp error) is generated.

Auto shading is done before scanning for the first original as well as after scanning each page to prepare for the next page.

If the image density or the original mode is changed during a copy run, auto shading is done before scanning the next original.

White Line Erase

The white line erase feature is validated (default) when you specify a value other than "0" in SP 4941 1. This feature works as follows:

1. The copier scans the original.
2. The density level of each pixel is compared with its adjacent pixels.
3. If the density level of a pixel is extremely lower than adjacent pixels, the level is corrected. The density levels of the adjacent pixels are considered.

When you validate the white line erase feature, the feature works for all originals. This feature erases the white lines of 1- through 6-pixel width (approximately, up to 0.25 mm). The white lines that exceed this width are not erased.

When you specify "2," instead of "1," in SP 4941 1, the feature erases darker white lines (namely, less whiter lines). Note that this SP does not affect the width of white lines to be erased.

Black Line Erase

The black line erase feature is the function that erases black lines made by the dust or dirt on the exposure glass. The feature is validated (default) when you specify a value other than "0" in SP 4942 1.

When you specify a larger value in this SP, the feature erases weaker black lines (namely, less blacker lines). This SP also affects the width of black lines to be erased. If you specify "1" or "2," the feature erases the black lines of 1- through 4-pixel width (approximately, up to 0.17 mm); if you specify "3," the feature erases the black lines of 1- through 6-pixel width (approximately, up to 0.25 mm). Note that some black lines on the original may be erased when you specify a larger value in the SP.

Auto Image Density (ADS)

In the SBU

ADS prevents the background of an original from appearing on copies. As the scanner scans down the page, the IPU on the BICU detects the peak white level for each scan line. The IPU determines the reference value for the A/D conversion for a particular scan line using the peak white level for that scan line. Then, the IPU sends the reference value data to the reference controller on the SBU.

When an original with a gray background is scanned, the density of the gray area is the peak white level density. Therefore, the original background will not appear on copies. Because peak level data is taken for each scan line, ADS corrects for any changes in background density down the page.

As with previous digital copiers, the user can select manual image density when selecting ADS, and the machine will use both settings when processing the original.

By Original Type

ADS mode is only enabled when the user has selected:

1. Text mode 1 or 2 (Normal or Sharp), Photo mode 2 (Text/Priority), or Special mode 1 or 2 (Unneeded background or Colored Text).

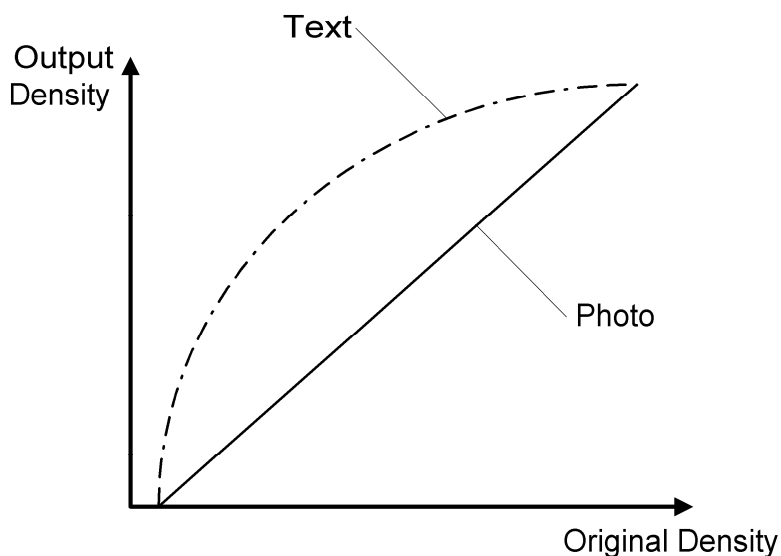
This can be done using Adjust Original Mode (3) in User Tools (Copier Features).

Scanner Gamma Correction

The CCD output is not proportional to the quantity of light received. Scanner correction corrects the CCD output so that grayscale data is proportional to the quantity of light received.

The machine has two possible scanner gamma curves: Text and Photo. When selecting Text, the machine does not use scanner gamma correction. As a result, the output is darker than the image density on the original. The advantage of this is that the machine can bring

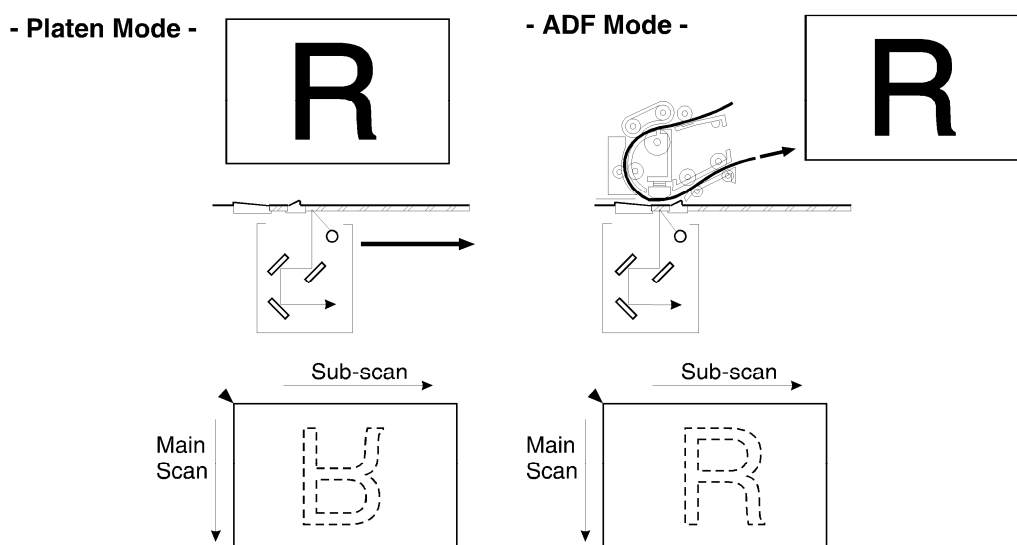
out gradations in paler areas. The disadvantage is that the machine cannot bring out gradations in darker areas, i.e. differences in shades of dark colors are hard to distinguish. When selecting Photo, the machine uses scanner gamma correction. One advantage of this is that the machine can bring out gradations in dark areas of photo image originals. The disadvantage is that it in some cases images come out lighter than the customer desires.



Main Scan Magnification

Changing the scanner speed enables enlargement and reduction along the sub scan direction. However, enlargement and reduction along the main scan direction is handled by the IPU (SCRATCH) chip. The processing for main scan enlargement/reduction is the same as in previous digital machines.

Mirroring for ADF Mode



When making copies using the ADF, the magnification circuit creates a mirror image. This is because the scanning start position along the main scan direction in ADF mode is at the opposite corner of platen mode.

In platen mode, the original is placed face down on the exposure glass. The main scan start position is at corner [A], and the scanner moves down the page. In ADF mode, the ADF feeds the leading edge of the original to the DF exposure glass. Therefore as mentioned above, the main scan start position will be at the opposite corner.

To create the mirror image, the IPU stores each line in LIFO (Last In First Out) memory.

Filtering

Overview

There are several software filtering processes for enhancing the desired image qualities of the selected original mode. There are three MTF filters: a smoothing filter; independent dot erase, and line width correction. Each can be used only when certain modes are selected (details below) and are automatically applied.

The strength levels for the MTF are controlled by SP 4932. The levels for line width correction and independent dot erase are controlled by SP 4927 and 4928, respectively. The MTF filters bring out sharpness. The three MTF filters are Edge, Solid Image and Low ID Line. Line width correction adjusts the line width. Independent dot erase removes unwanted dots from the image.

MTF Filter Adjustment - Edge

In order to determine whether a given dot is part of an edge or not, the IPU checks all surrounding dots (vertical, horizontal, and diagonal). If the IPU determines that the dot is part of an edge, the machine applies the MTF filter for edges, using the value set in SP

4930. The higher the setting, the sharper the image. However, this is only used when the customer uses Text 1, Text 2, Photo 1-3, Special 1, Special 2, or Special 5.

The default value is “0” for each mode. However the actual strength of “0” differs from mode to mode.

MTF Filter Adjustment - Solid

If the IPU detects that the dot is not part of an edge, the machine applies the MTF filter for solid areas using the value set in SP 4931. The higher the setting, the sharper the image. However, this is only used when the customer uses Text 2.

The default value is “0” for each mode. However the actual strength of “0” differs from mode to mode.

MTF Filter Adjustment - Low ID Line

The IPU also checks the image density of all dots. If a succession of low-density dots is detected, the machine interprets this as a low ID line and applies the MTF filter for low ID lines, using the value set in SP 4932. The higher the setting, the sharper the image.

However, this is only used when the customer uses Text 1, Text 2, Photo 2, Special 1, Special 2, or Special 5.

The default value is “0” for each mode. However, the actual strength of “0” differs from mode to mode.

Independent Dot Erase

When the user selects Text 1 and 2, Photo 2, and Special 1, 2, and 5 modes, independent dots are detected using a matrix and erased from the image. The detection level can be adjusted with SP 4928.

The higher setting, the greater number of dots the machine will erase. The machine erases the dots regardless of their image density. However, note that dots in mesh-like images may be mistakenly detected as independent dots.

Line Width Correction

When the user selects Text 1 and 2, Photo 2, Special 1, 2, and 5, the thickness of lines is adjusted using the setting of SP4-927. Note that the default for all modes except Special 2 is OFF.

Line width correction is done by the IPU (SCRATCH) chip.

ID Gamma Correction

The machine automatically selects the most appropriate ID gamma correction based on the selected original type and the operation panel ID setting.

In all modes, ID gamma correction can be adjusted with SP 4923.

Gradation Processing

Overview

There are three types of gradation processing (listed below). Refer to the “Default Image Processing Mode for Each Original Type” section for more details on which processes are used for each original mode.

1. Binary picture processing
2. Error diffusion
3. Dithering

Binary Picture Processing

The 8-bit image data is converted into 1-bit data (black and white image data). This is done when the user selects Text 2 or Special 1. The threshold for deciding whether a pixel is black or white cannot be adjusted.

Error Diffusion

Error diffusion reduces the difference in contrast between light and dark areas of a halftone image. Each pixel is corrected using the difference between it and the surrounding pixels. The corrected pixels are compared with an error diffusion matrix.

Error diffusion is applied when the user selects Text 1, Photo 1-3 and Special 2 and 5.

As the final step in error diffusion, a process called Texture Removal is applied to Text 1, Photo 2, Special 2, and Special 5 by default, but can also be applied to Photo 1 and 3 by changing the value of SP 4926.

Texture removal uses 256 threshold values in an 8 x 8 matrix. The value of SP 4926 controls the application of Texture Removal for each of the 6 modes listed above. The settings are as follows:

0: The default value for each mode is used. Text 1, Photo 2, Special 2, and Special 5 have a default of 3 (see below) and Photo 1 and 3 have a default of 1.

1: No removal applied.

2 – 6: Removal applied at the level specified here. The higher the setting (level), the less clear the image will become (more texture removal).

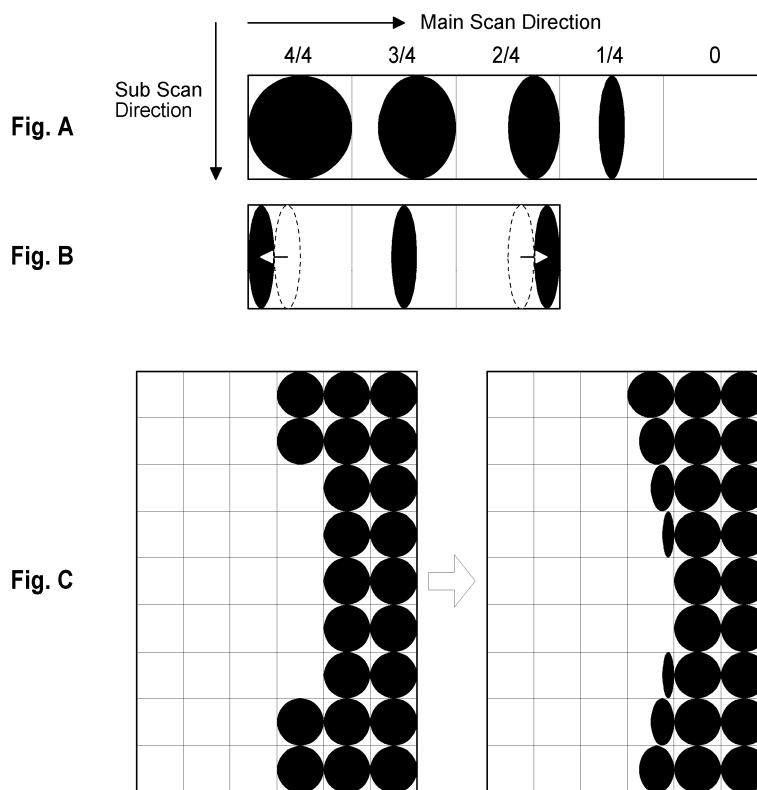
Dithering

Each pixel is compared with the threshold in a dither matrix. Several matrices are available to bring out half-tone areas in images such as newspaper-type photographs. Dithering is only used for Special 3 and Special 4.

6.5.4 VIDEO CONTROL UNIT (VCU)

Fine Character and Image (FCI)

The FCI performs image smoothing. This functions only affects binary picture processed images for certain original modes.



Usually, binary picture processing generates jagged edges on characters, as shown in the above illustration. These are reduced using edge smoothing. The FCI changes the laser pulse duration and position for certain pixels.

Fig. A shows the four possible pulse durations, and Fig. B shows how the laser pulse can be in one of three positions within the pixel. Fig. C shows an example of how edge smoothing is used.

FCI smoothing is only effective when Text 2 or Special 1 is selected. There is no SP adjustment for this.

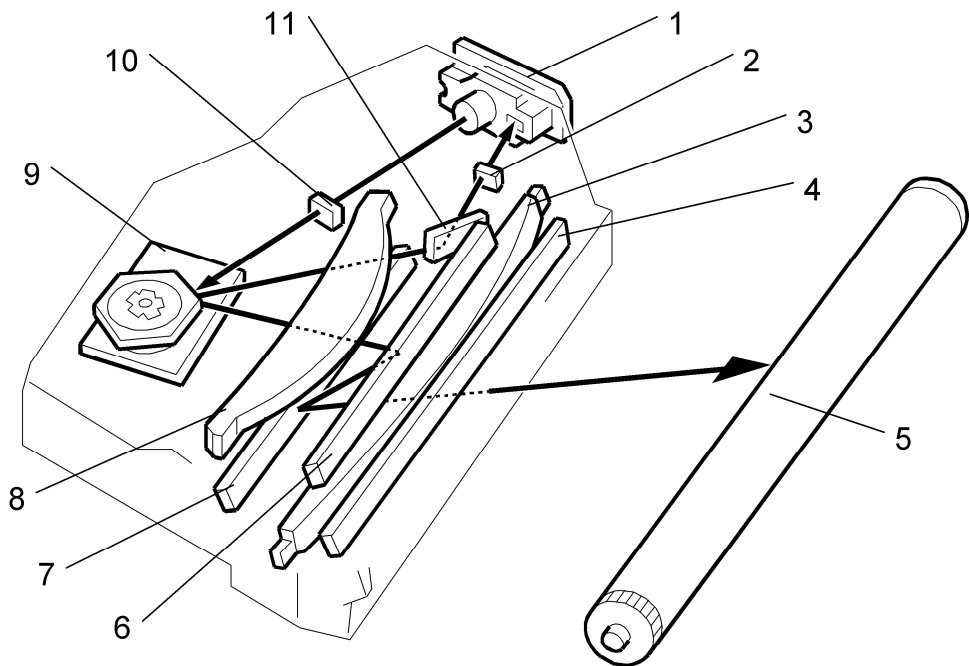
Printer Gamma Correction

Printer correction corrects the data output from the IPU to the laser diode to account for the characteristics of the engine components (e.g. drum, laser diode, lenses).

The machine chooses the most suitable gamma curve for the original type selected by the user. There is no SP adjustment for this.

6.6 LASER EXPOSURE

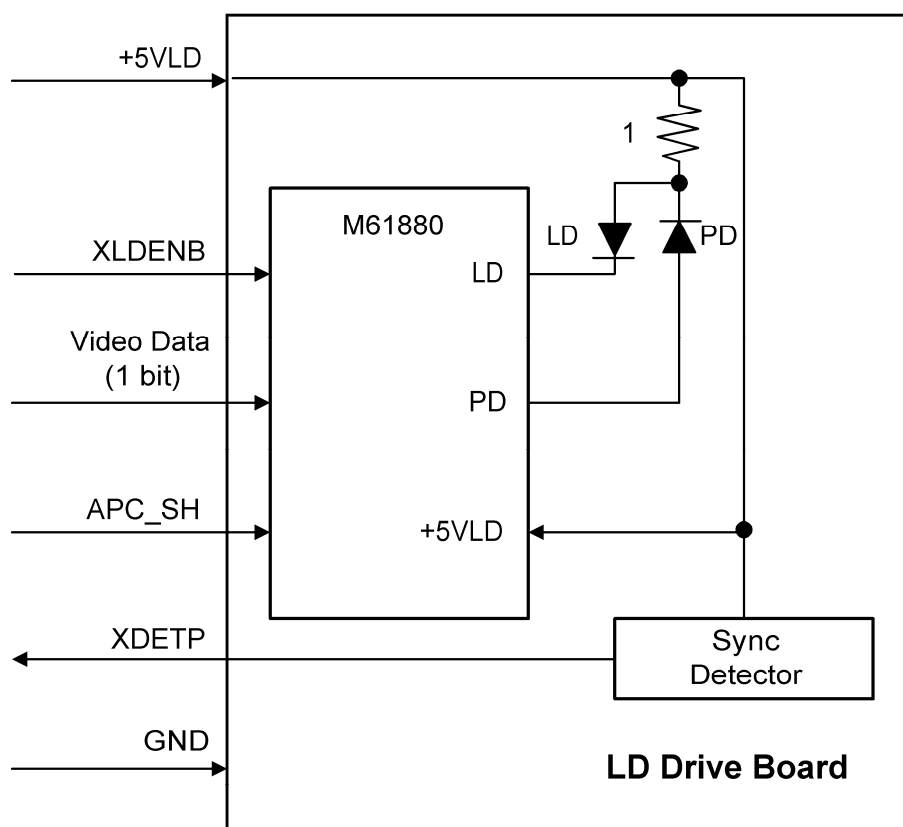
6.6.1 OVERVIEW



1. LD unit	7. 2nd mirror
2. Synchronization detector lens	8. F-theta lens
3. Double toroidal lens	9. Polygon mirror
4. Shield glass	10. Cylindrical lens
5. OPC drum	11. Synchronization detector mirror
6. 1st mirror	

1. The LD drive board controls both the laser output and laser synchronization mechanism.
2. The machine cuts off the power supply to the LD drive board if the front or right cover is opened.

6.6.2 AUTO POWER CONTROL (APC)



The LD driver IC drives the laser diode. To prevent the intensity of the laser beam from changing because of the temperature, the machine monitors the current passing through the laser diode (LD). The machine adjusts the current to the laser diode by comparing it with the reference level from the reference circuit.

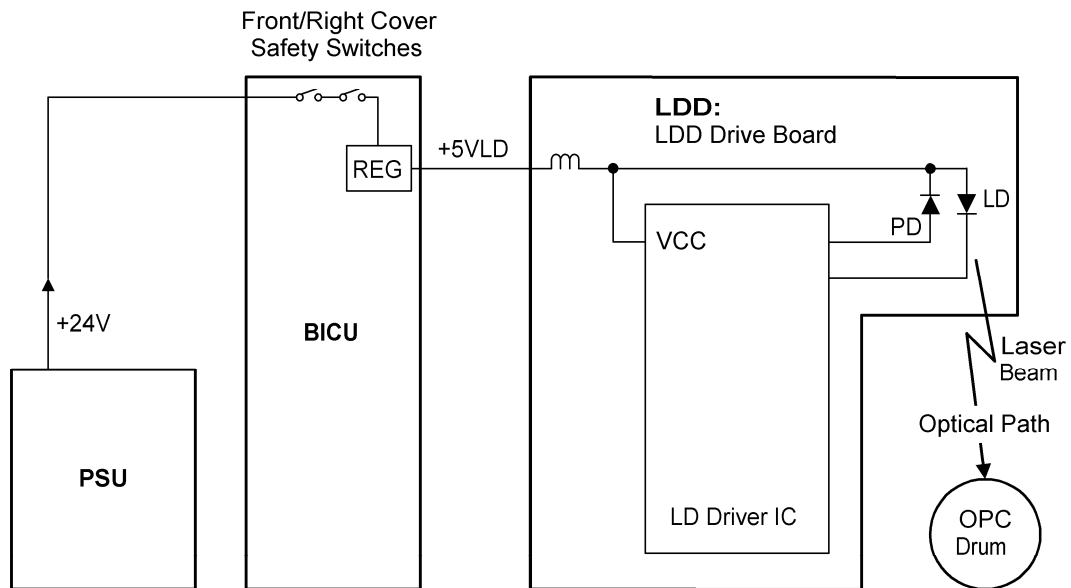
This auto power control is done just after the machine is turned on and during printing.

The laser diode power is adjusted on the production line.

↓ Note

- Do not touch the variable resistors on the LD unit in the field.

6.6.3 LD SAFETY SWITCH

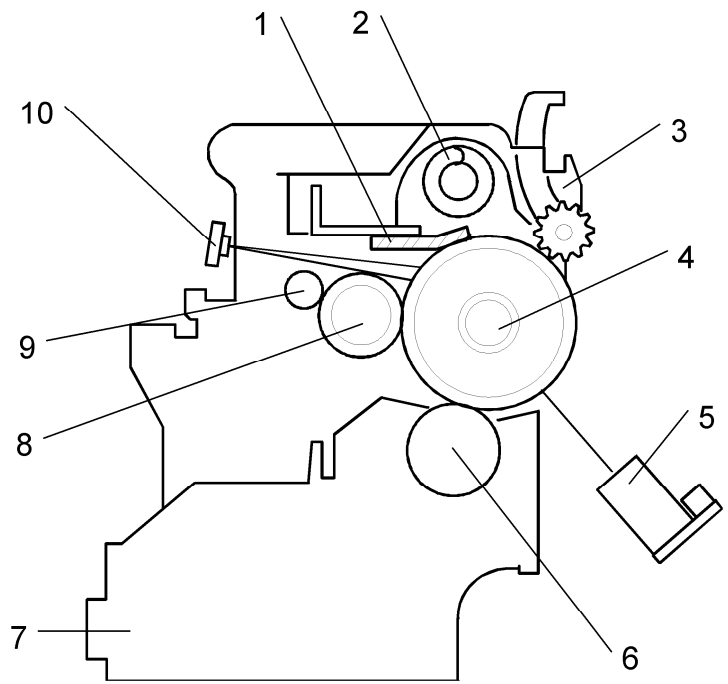


To ensure technician and user safety and to prevent the laser beam from inadvertently switching on during servicing, there are safety switches at the front and right covers. When the front cover or the right cover is opened, the power supply to the laser diode is interrupted.

The switches are installed on the +24V line coming from the power supply unit, then the +5VLD is generated from the +24V supply after it goes through the interlock switches.

6.7 PHOTOCONDUCTOR UNIT (PCU)

6.7.1 OVERVIEW



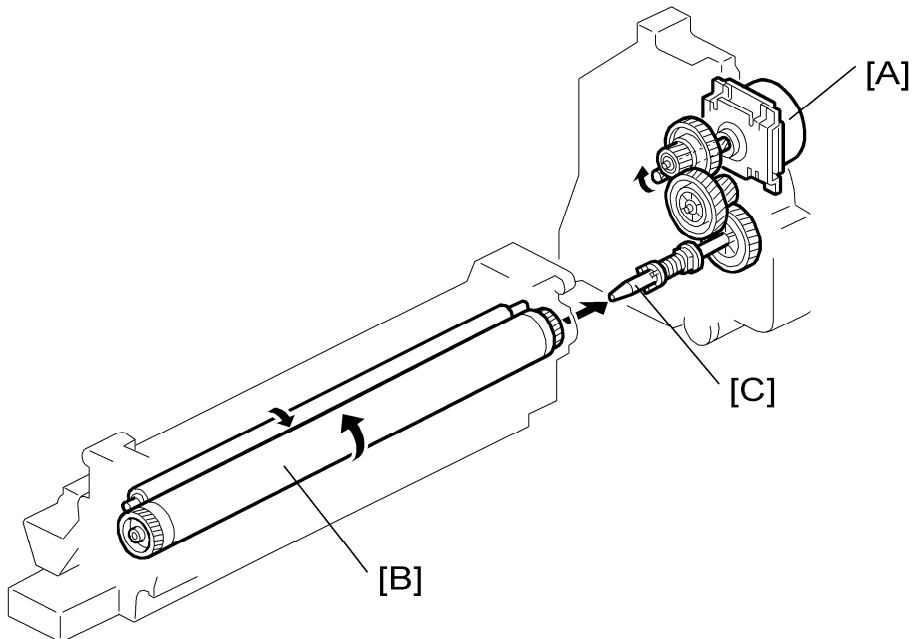
The PCU consists of the components shown in the above illustration. An organic photoconductor (OPC) drum (diameter: 30 mm) is used in this machine.

1. Cleaning Blade	6. Development Roller
2. Toner Collection Coil	7. Development Unit
3. Pick-off Pawl	8. Charge Roller
4. OPC Drum	9. Charge Roller Cleaning Brush
5. ID Sensor (see note)	10. Quenching Lamp (see note)

 Note

-21. The ID sensor and quenching lamp are not included in the PCU.

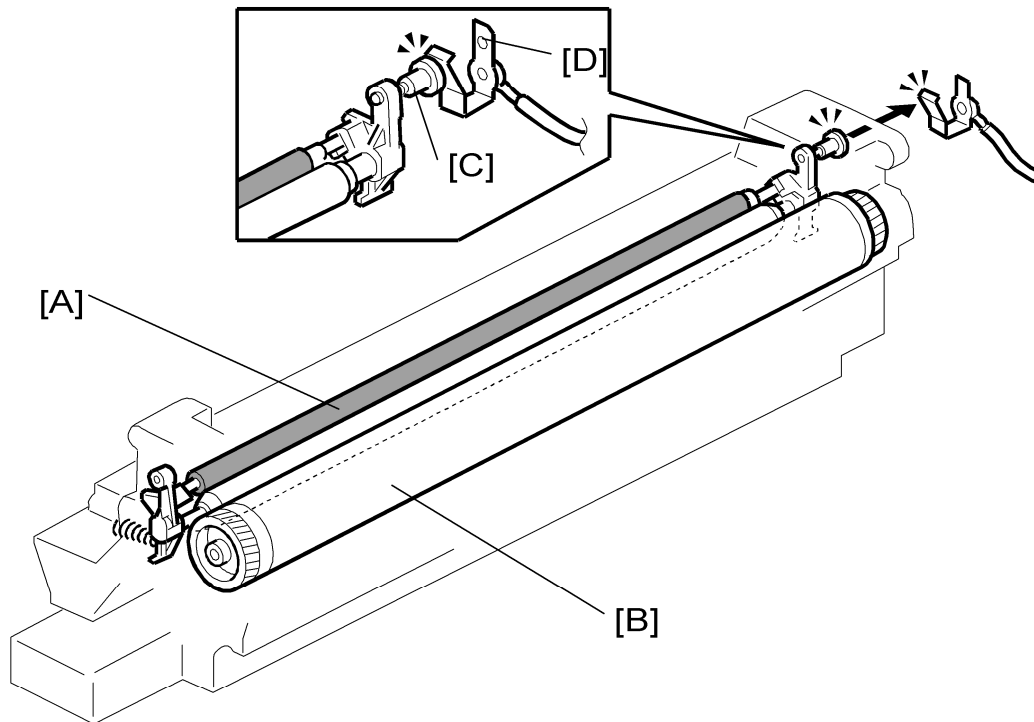
6.7.2 DRIVE



The main motor [A] drives the drum [B] through a series of gears and the drum drive shaft [C]. The main motor assembly includes a drive controller, which outputs a motor lock signal when the rotation speed is out of the specified range.

6.8 DRUM CHARGE

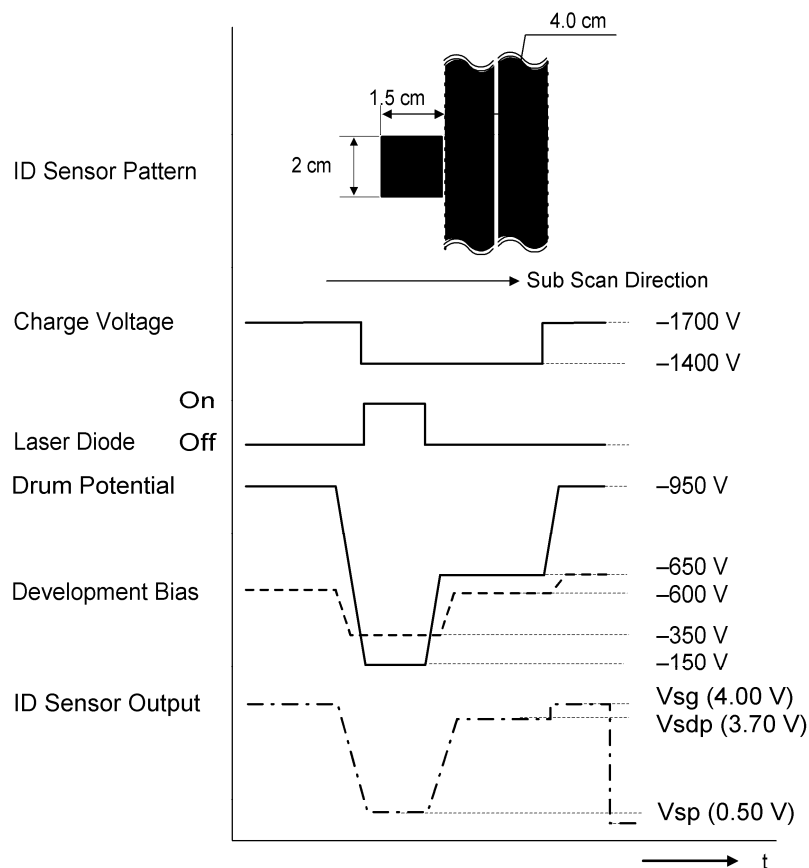
6.8.1 OVERVIEW



This copier uses a drum charge roller to charge the drum. The drum charge roller [A] always contacts the surface of the drum [B] to give it a negative charge of -950 V . The high voltage supply board gives a negative charge of -1700 V to the drum charge roller through the screw [C] and terminal plate [D]. This voltage can be changed using SP 2001 1.

6.8.2 CHARGE ROLLER VOLTAGE CORRECTION

Correction for Environmental Conditions



With a drum charge roller system, the voltage transferred from roller to drum varies with the temperature and humidity around the drum charge roller. The higher the temperature or humidity is the higher the applied voltage required.

To compensate, the machine uses the ID sensor to measure the effects of current environmental conditions. For this measurement, the process control parameters are balanced so that any small change in drum potential caused by environmental effects is reflected in a change in the amount of toner transferred to the drum.

This measurement is made immediately after the ID sensor pattern for toner density control. Immediately after making ID sensor pattern [A], the charge roller voltage stays the same, but the development bias goes up to -600 V; as a result the drum potential is reduced to -650 V. The laser diode is not switched on, and the drum potential is now slightly higher than the development bias, so a very small amount of toner transfers to the drum. The ID sensor measures the density of this pattern [B], and the output voltage is known as Vsp. This voltage is compared with Vsg (read from the bare drum at the same time).

Drum Charge

If the humidity drops, the drum potential goes up (to a higher negative voltage) even if the charge roller voltage supply stays the same (efficiency of voltage transfer is higher with lower humidity). As a result, less toner is transferred to ID sensor pattern [B]. If the sensor output reaches a certain point, the drum charge voltage will be reduced.

To determine whether to change the drum charge roller voltage, the machine compares V_{sdp} with V_{sg} .

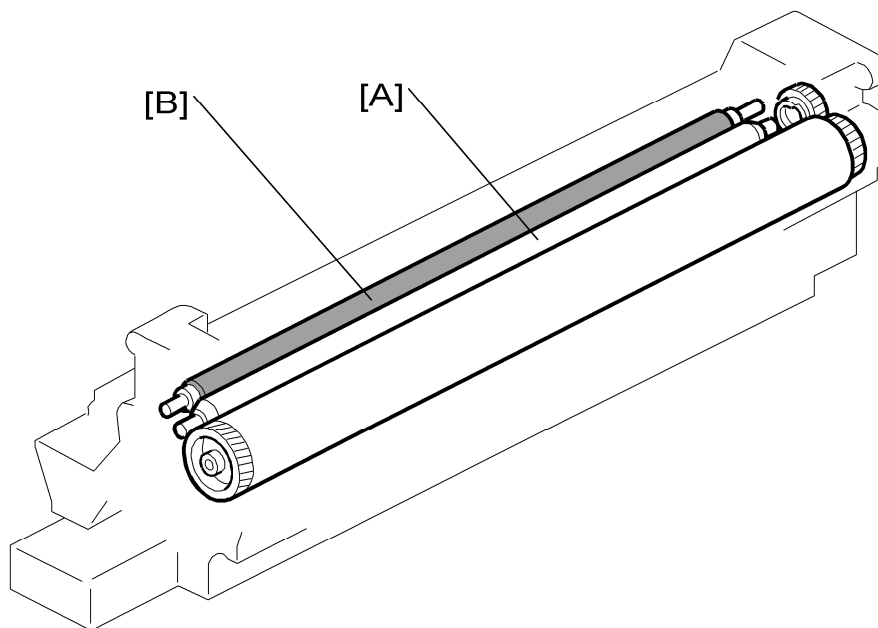
1. $V_{sdp}/V_{sg} > 0.95$ = Make the drum charge voltage less negative (smaller) by 50 V
2. $V_{sdp}/V_{sg} < 0.90$ = Make the drum charge voltage more negative (larger) by 50 V

6.8.3 ID SENSOR PATTERN PRODUCTION TIMING

The ID sensor pattern is made at the following times. (Not made every page or every job.)

1. During warm-up at power on
2. When the machine starts warming up from energy saver mode and the temperature is less than the target temperature as set with SP Mode.
3. When the machine starts warming up from energy saver mode and the machine prints more than 100 prints after generating the p-pattern.

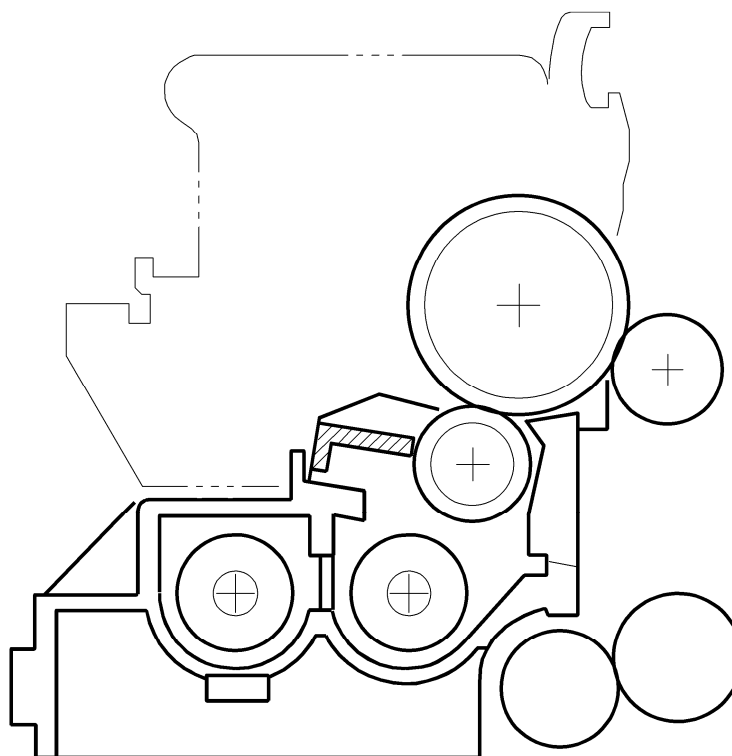
6.8.4 DRUM CHARGE ROLLER CLEANING



Because the drum charge roller [A] always contacts the drum, it gets dirty easily. So, the cleaning brush [B] also contacts the drum charge roller all the time to clean the surface of the drum charge roller.

6.9 DEVELOPMENT

6.9.1 OVERVIEW

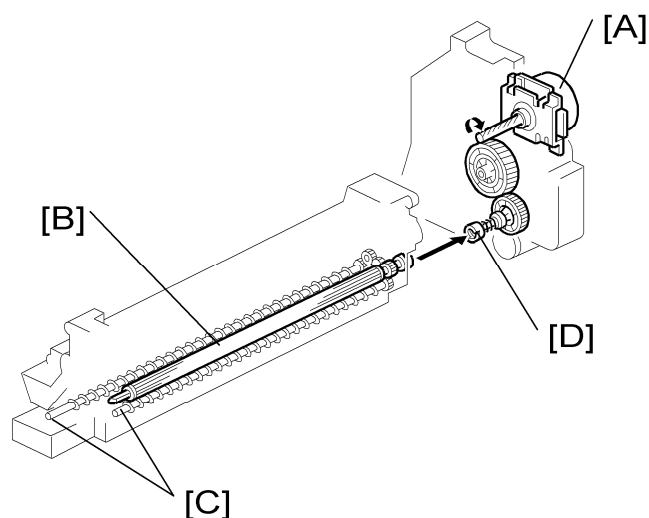


The development unit consists of the following parts.

1. Development roller
2. Mixing auger 2
3. TD sensor
4. Mixing auger 1
5. Doctor blade

This machine uses a single-roller development system. Two mixing augers mix the developer. The toner density (TD) sensor and image density (ID) sensor (see the illustration in the PCU section) are used to control the image density on the copy.

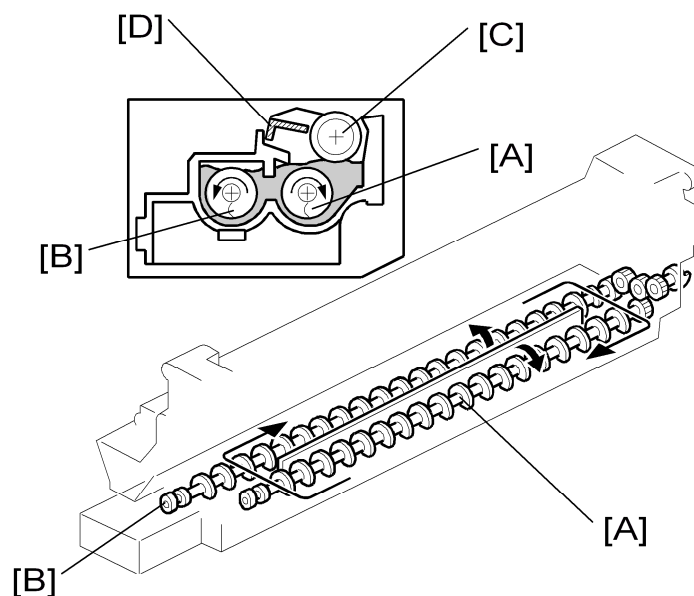
6.9.2 DRIVE



The main motor [A] drives the development roller [B] and mixing augers [C] through a train of gears and the development drive shaft [D]. When the PCU is pushed in, the development drive shaft engages the development roller gear.

The development drive gears (except for the gears in the development unit) are helical gears. These gears are quieter than normal gears.

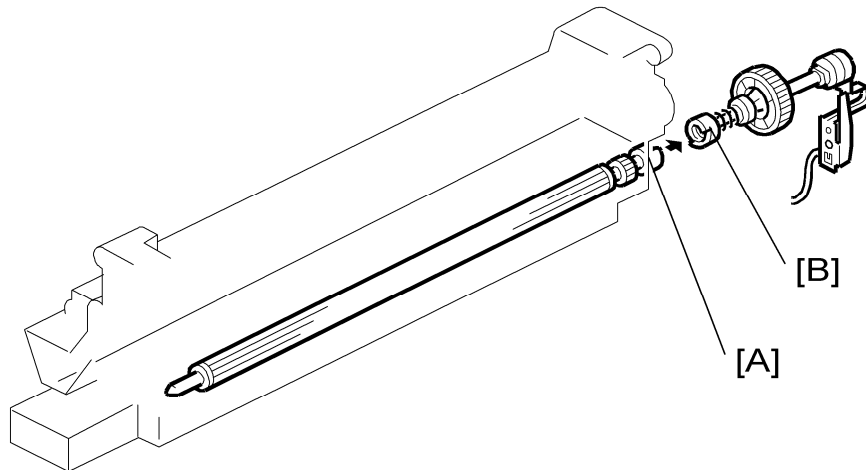
6.9.3 DEVELOPER MIXING



The two mixing augers, [A, B] keep the developer evenly mixed. Mixing auger 2 [A] transports excess developer, scraped off the development roller [C] by the doctor blade [D],

towards the front of the machine. Mixing auger 1 [B] returns the excess developer, along with new toner, to the rear of the mixing assembly. Here the developer is reapplied to the development roller.

6.9.4 DEVELOPMENT BIAS



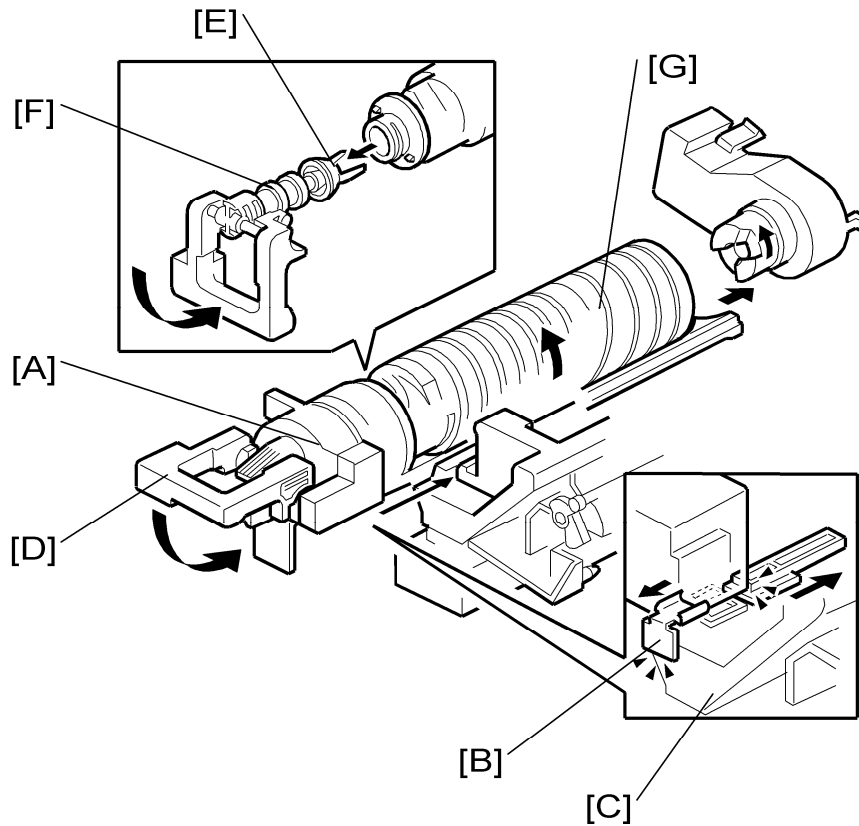
This machine uses a negative-positive development system, in which black areas of the latent image are at a low negative charge (about -154 ± 50 V) and white areas are at a high negative charge (about -950 V).

To attract negatively charged toner to the black areas of the latent image on the drum, the high voltage supply board applies a bias of -650 volts to the development rollers throughout the image development process. The bias is applied to the development roller shaft [A] through the drive shaft [B].

The development bias voltage (-650 V) can be adjusted with SP 2201 1.

6.9.5 TONER SUPPLY

Toner Bottle Replenishment Mechanism



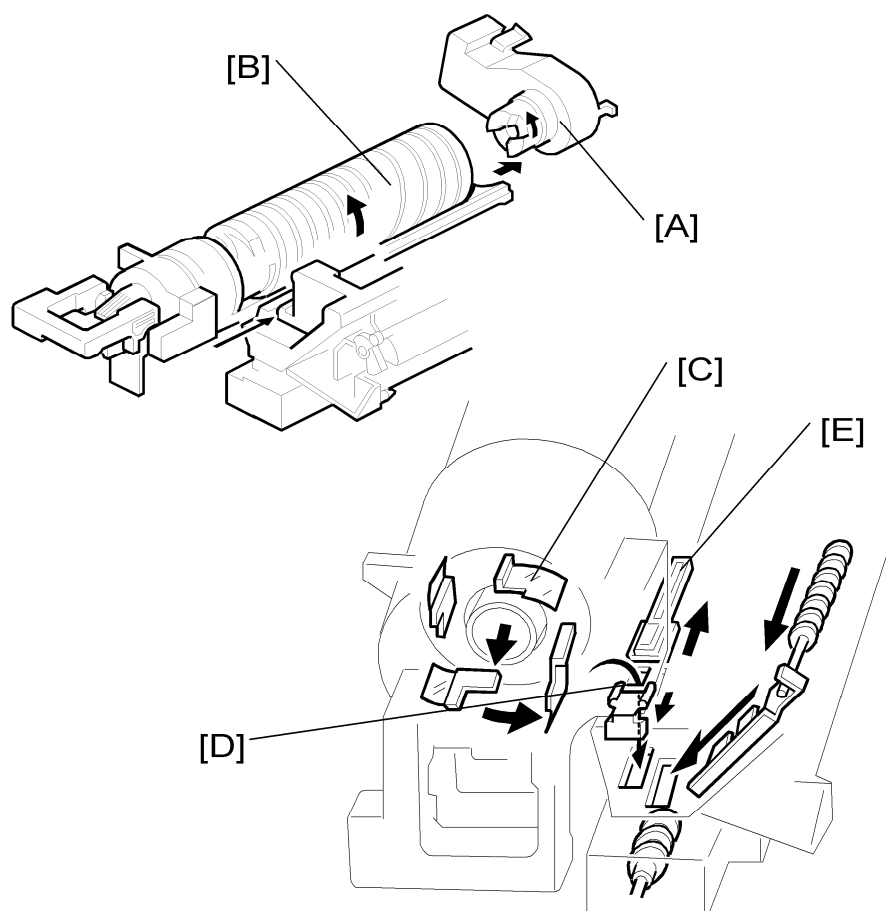
When a toner bottle is placed in the bottle holder unit [A] and the unit is pushed in completely, toner shutter [B] moves against the side [C] of the PCU. When the toner bottle holder lever [D] is put back in the original position, the cap [E] on the toner bottle is pulled away and kept in place by the chuck [F].

The toner supply mechanism transports toner from the bottle to the development unit. The toner bottle has a spiral groove [G] that helps move toner to the development unit.

To add a new toner bottle, first lift the toner bottle holder. When this is done, the chuck releases the toner bottle cap into its proper position to prevent toner from scattering.

Then, when the bottle holder unit is pulled out to add a new toner bottle, the toner shutter shuts to block the opening as a result of pressure from a spring.

6.9.6 TONER SUPPLY MECHANISM



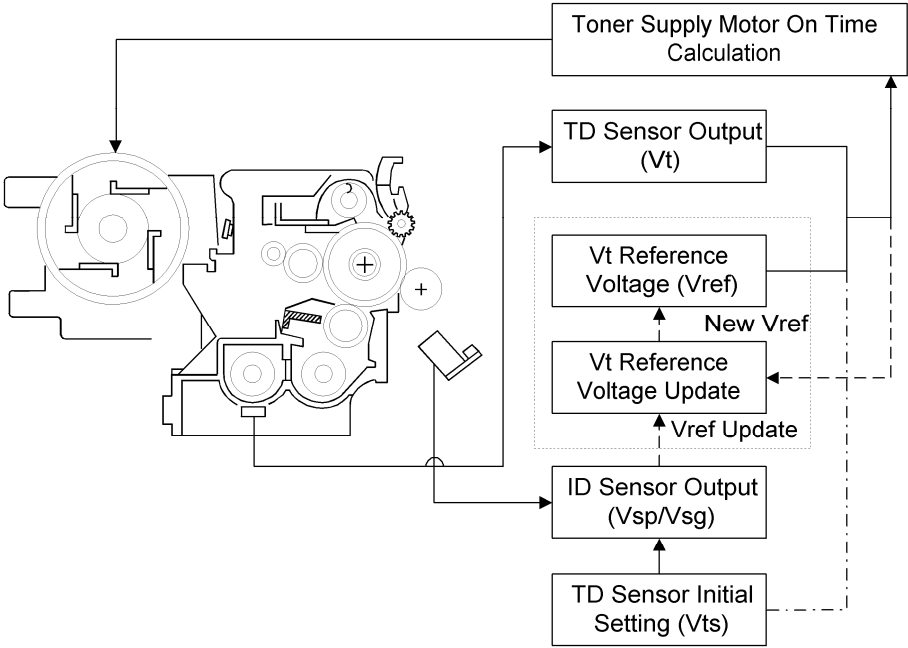
The toner supply motor [A] drives the toner bottle [B] and the mylar blades [C]. First, the toner falls down into the toner bottle holder. The toner supply mylar blades transfer the toner to the slit [D]. When the PCU is installed in the machine, the shutter [E] above the PCU is opened by the toner bottle holder. Then the toner falls down into the development unit through the slit and the shutter.

6.9.7 TONER DENSITY CONTROL

Overview

There are four modes for controlling toner supply as shown in the following tables, which can be changed with by SP 2921. The factory setting is sensor control 1 mode.

Basically, the toner concentration in the developer is controlled using the standard TD sensor voltage (V_{ts}), toner supply reference voltage (V_{ref}), actual TD sensor output voltage (V_t), and ID sensor output data (V_{sp}/V_{sg}).



The four-toner density control modes are as follows.

Sensor control 1

Mode	Sensor control 1 (SP 2921, “0”): Normally use this setting only
Toner supply decision	Compare V_t with a reference voltage (V_{ts} or V_{ref})
Toner control process	Toner is supplied to the development unit when V_t is higher than the reference voltage (V_{ts} or V_{ref}). This mode keeps the V_{ref} value for use with the next toner density control. V_{ts} is used for the first toner density control after a new PCU has been installed, until it has been corrected with the ID sensor output. V_{ref} is used after V_{ts} has been corrected with the ID sensor output voltage (corrected during the first toner density control for a new PCU).
Toner supply amount	Varies
Toner end detection	Performed

Sensor control 2

Mode	Sensor control 2 (SP 2921, “1”): For designer’s use only; do not use in the field
Toner supply decision	Compare V_t with a reference voltage (V_{ts})
Toner control process	This toner control process is the same as sensor control 1 mode.

	However, the reference voltage used is always V_{ts} .
Toner supply amount	Varies
Toner end detection	Performed

Fixed control 1

Mode	Fixed control 1 (SP 2921, "2"): For designer's use only; do not use in the field
Toner supply decision	Compare V_t with a reference voltage (V_{ts} or V_{ref})
Toner control process	This toner control process is the same as sensor control 1 mode.
Toner supply amount	Fixed (SP 2925)
Toner end detection	Performed

Fixed control 2

Mode	Fixed control 2 (SP 2921, "3"): Use temporarily if the TD sensor needs to be replaced
Toner supply decision	None
Toner control process	Toner is supplied every printed page regardless of V_t .
Toner supply amount	Fixed (SP 2925)
Toner end detection	Not performed

Toner Density Sensor Initial Setting

The TD sensor initial setting (SP 2214: Developer Initialize) procedure must be done after replacing the developer. During TD sensor initial setting, the TD sensor is set so that the TD sensor output is the value of SP 2926 (default: 2.4 V). This value will be used as the standard reference voltage (V_{ts}) of the TD sensor.

Toner Concentration Measurement

The toner concentration in the developer is detected once every copy cycle. The sensor output voltage (V_t) during the detection cycle is compared with the standard reference voltage (V_{ts}) or the toner supply reference voltage (V_{ref}).

Vsp/Vsg Detection

The ID sensor detects the following voltages.

1. V_{sg} : The ID sensor output when checking the drum surface
2. V_{sp} : The ID sensor output when checking the ID sensor pattern

In this way, the reflectivity of both the drum surface and the pattern on the drum are

checked, compensating for any variations in the reflectivity of the pattern on the drum or the reflectivity of the drum surface.

The ID sensor pattern is made on the drum by the charge roller and laser diode.

Vsp/Vsg is not detected every page or job; it is detected at the following times to decide Vref.

1. During warm-up at power on

If the machine starts warming up when the fusing temperature is 30C or less (default) after entering night mode or low power mode (SP 2994 specifies the temperature setting).

Toner Supply Reference Voltage (Vref) Determination

The toner supply reference voltage (Vref) is used for toner supply determination (see below). Vref is determined using the following data:

1. ID sensor output (Vsp/Vsg)
2. (Vts or the current Vref) - Vt

Toner Supply Determination

The reference voltage (Vts or Vref) is the threshold voltage for determining whether or not to supply toner. If Vt becomes greater than the reference voltage, the machine supplies additional toner.

This can be checked using SP 2220.

Toner Supply Motor On Time Determinations

For fixed control mode, the toner supply motor on time is specified by the setting of SP 2925, and does not vary. The default setting is 200 ms for each copy. The toner supply motor on time for each value of SP 2925 is as follows.

Value of SP2-925	Motor On Time (t = 200 ms)
0	T
1	2t
2	4t
3	8t
4	12t
5	16t
6	Continuously
7	Not supplied

For sensor control modes 1 and 2, the toner supply motor on time is decided by the following factors.

1. Vt
2. Vref or Vts

3. TD sensor sensitivity (coefficient: S, value is 0.4)

There are seven levels for toner supply motor on time as shown below.

Level	Decision	Motor On Time (seconds)
1	$(V_{ts} \text{ or } V_{ref}) < V_t \quad (V_{ts} \text{ or } V_{ref}) + S/16$	t (0.4)
2	$(V_{ts} \text{ or } V_{ref}) < V_t \quad (V_{ts} \text{ or } V_{ref}) + S/8$	t x 2 (0.8)
3	$(V_{ts} \text{ or } V_{ref}) < V_t \quad (V_{ts} \text{ or } V_{ref}) + S/4$	t x 4 (1.6)
4	$(V_{ts} \text{ or } V_{ref}) < V_t \quad (V_{ts} \text{ or } V_{ref}) + S/2$	t x 8 (3.2)
5	$(V_{ts} \text{ or } V_{ref}) < V_t \quad (V_{ts} \text{ or } V_{ref}) + 4S/5$	t x 16 (6.4)
6	$V_t \quad (V_{ts} \text{ or } V_{ref}) + 4S/16$ (near-end)	T (30); see note 3
7	$V_t \quad (V_{ts} \text{ or } V_{ref}) + S$ (toner end)	T (30); see note 3

Note

- 21. The value of "t" can be changed using SP 2922 (default: 0.4 second)
- 20. The value of "T" can be changed using SP 2923 (default: 30 seconds)
- 19. T (30) means that toner is supplied intermittently in a 1/3 duty cycle (1 s on, 2 s off) for 30 seconds

6.9.8 TONER SUPPLY IN ABNORMAL SENSOR CONDITIONS

ID Sensor

Readings are abnormal if any of the following conditions occur:

1. $V_{sg} \geq 2.5V$
2. $V_{sg} < 3.5V$ when maximum power (979) is applied
3. $V_{sp} \geq 2.5V$
4. $(V_{sg} - V_{sp}) < 1.0V$
5. $V_t \geq 4.5V$ or $V_t \leq 0.2V$

The above ID sensor values can be checked using SP 2221.

When this is detected, the machine changes the value of V_{ref} to 2.5 V then does the toner density control process (in a similar way to sensor control mode 2).

No SC code is generated if the ID sensor is defective.

TD Sensor

The TD sensor output is checked every copy. If the readings from the TD sensor become abnormal, the machine changes the toner density control mode to fixed supply mode 2, and the toner supply amount per page is always 200 ms, regardless of the value of SP 2925. If the machine detects the TD sensor error condition 10 times consecutively, an SC code is generated (SC390) and the machine must be repaired.

6.9.9 TONER NEAR END/END DETECTION AND RECOVERY

The toner near end and end conditions are detected using the V_t and V_{ref} values, in a similar way to toner density control.

This is done in all toner supply modes except for fixed mode 2, when toner end is not detected.

Toner Near End Detection

If V_t is at level 6 (see the table on the previous page) five times consecutively, the machine enters the toner near end condition and the toner end indicator starts blinking. Then the machine supplies toner for a certain time, which depends on the setting of SP 2923 (see the previous page).

Toner Near End Recovery

If the machine detects " $V_t < (V_{ref} \text{ or } V_{ts}) + 4S/5$ " twice consecutively in any of the following situations, the machine clears the toner near end condition.

1. While in the toner recovery cycle (supplying toner on and off for 30 seconds) after the machine has detected a toner near end condition.
2. During copying in the toner near end condition.
3. If the front cover is opened and closed for more than 10 seconds while a toner near end condition exists.

Toner End Detection

There are two situations for entering the toner end condition.

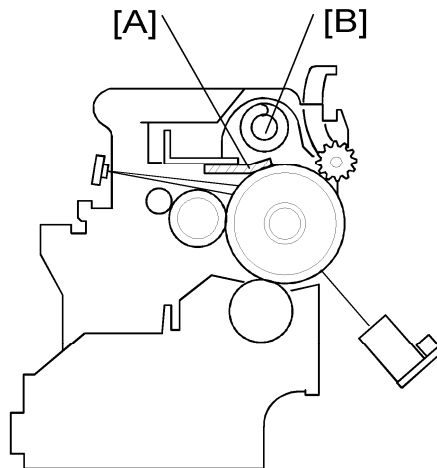
1. When V_t is level 7 three times consecutively, the machine enters the toner end condition.
2. When 50 copies have been made since entering the toner near end condition. The number of copies between toner near-end and toner end can be changed using SP 2213.

Toner End Recovery

While turning on the main switch, if the front cover is opened for 10 seconds or more and then closed while a Toner End condition exists (following toner bottle replacement), the machine clears the Toner End condition. The recovery procedure is the same as for toner near end. It takes about two minutes.

6.10 DRUM CLEANING AND TONER RECYCLING

6.10.1 DRUM CLEANING

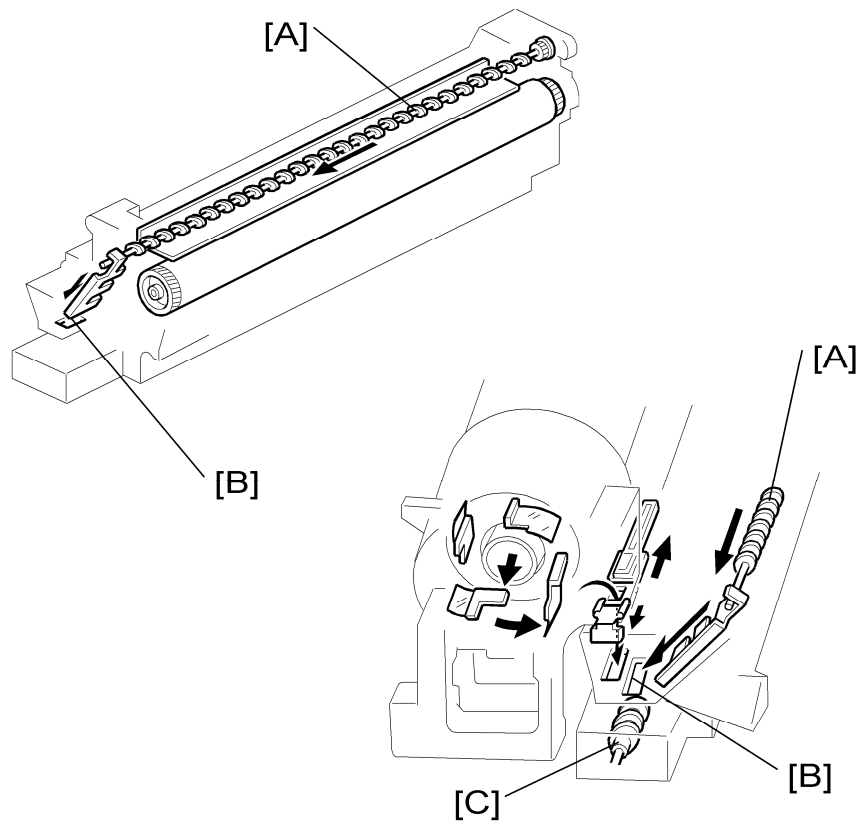


The cleaning blade [A] removes any toner remaining on the drum after the image is transferred to the paper. This model uses a counter blade system.

The cleaning blade scrapes off toner remaining on the drum. When toner builds up in the cleaning unit, toner at the top of the pile is removed by the toner collection coil [B].

To remove the toner and other particles that are accumulated at the edge of the cleaning blade, the drum turns in reverse for about 5 mm at the end of every copy job.

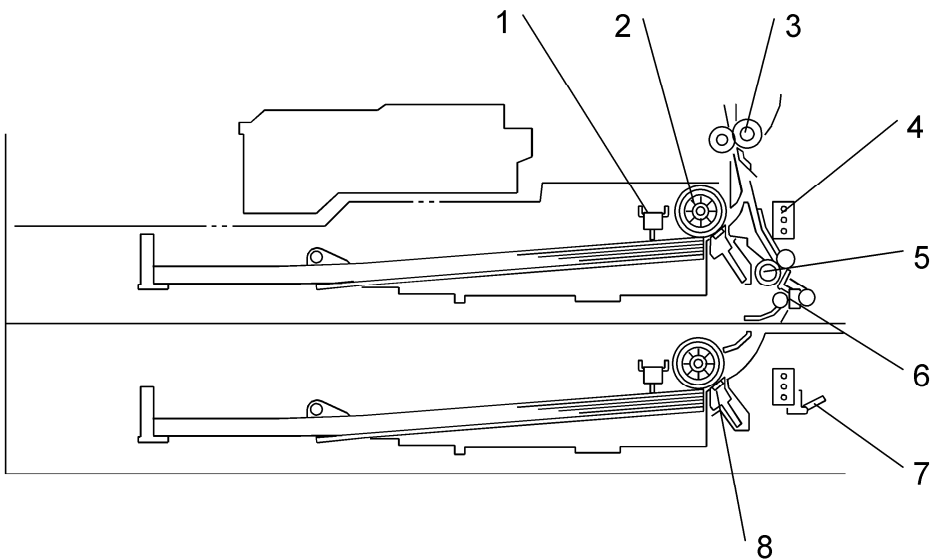
6.10.2 TONER RECYCLING



Toner picked up by the toner collection coil [A], is transported to the opening [B] in the side of the PCU. Then, this toner falls into the development unit with new toner coming from the toner bottle and it is all mixed together by mixing auger 1 [C] and used again.

6.11 PAPER FEED

6.11.1 OVERVIEW



There are one or two paper trays, each of which can hold 250 sheets.

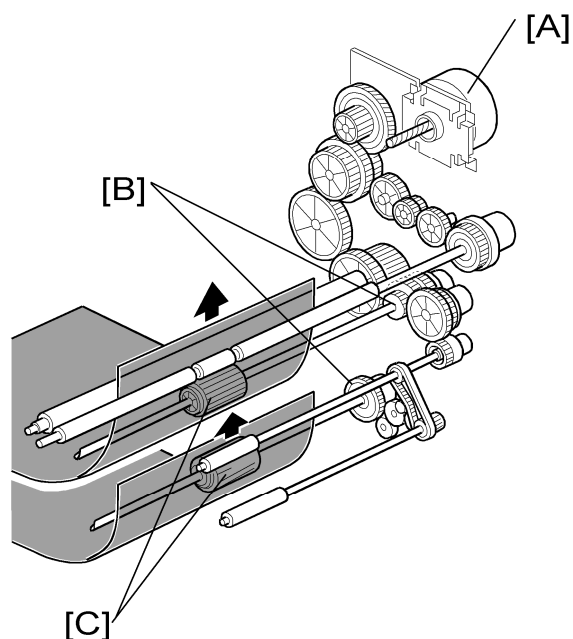
The paper tray feed stations use a friction pad system. To prevent paper from getting caught inside the machine when the tray is pulled out, the paper feed roller and shaft do not separate from the tray when the tray is pulled out.

The two relay sensors are used for paper jam detection. The lower one detects jams when paper is fed up from the optional paper feed unit.

The components of the paper feed station are as follows.

1. Paper End Sensor	5. Upper Relay Roller
2. Paper Feed Roller	6. Upper Relay Sensor
3. Registration Roller	7. Lower Relay Sensor
4. Paper Size Switch	8. Friction Pad

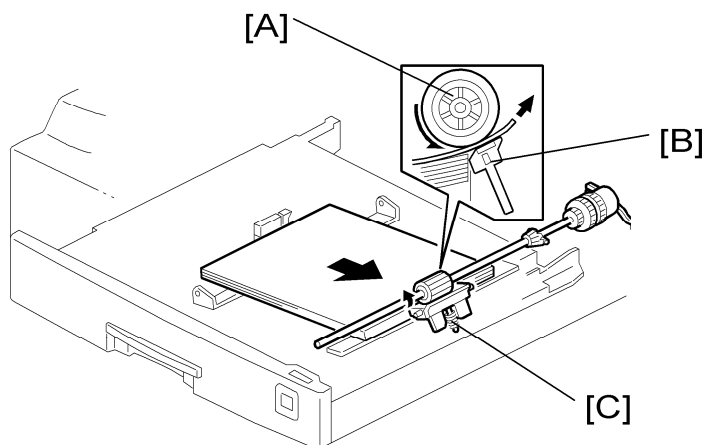
6.11.2 PAPER FEED DRIVE MECHANISM



The main motor [A] drives the pick-up and feed mechanism of both the first and second paper trays. The paper feed clutches [B] transfer drive from this motor to the paper feed rollers [C].

When the paper feed clutch turns on, the feed roller starts to feed the paper. The paper feed clutch stays on until shortly after the registration sensor has been activated.

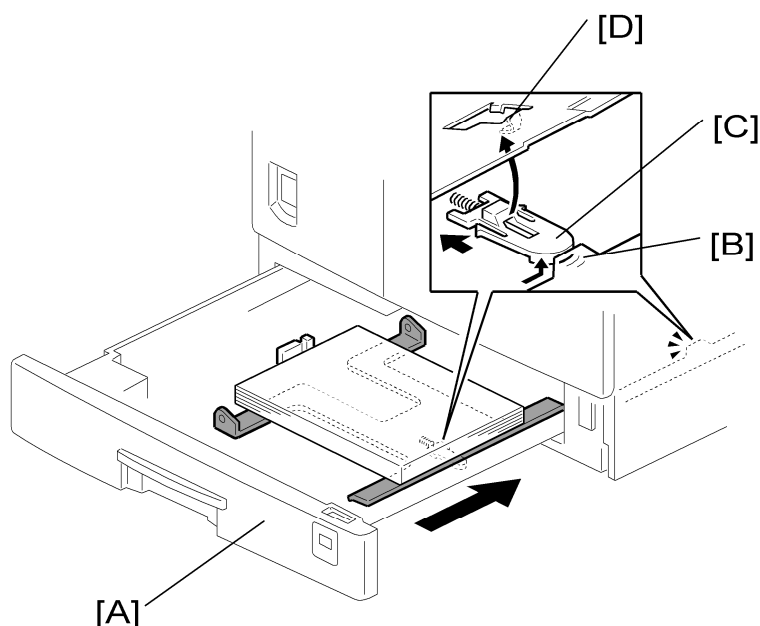
6.11.3 PAPER FEED AND SEPARATION MECHANISM



The paper feed roller [A] drives the top sheet of paper from the paper tray to the copier. The friction pad [B] allows only one sheet to feed at a time. The friction pad applies pressure to the feed roller with a spring [C].

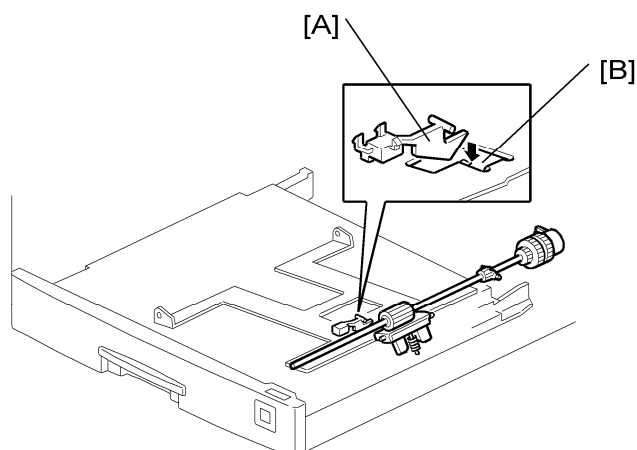
The friction pad pressure cannot be adjusted.

6.11.4 PAPER LIFT MECHANISM



When the paper tray [A] is closed, projection [B] on the copier frame pushes slider [C] (on the bottom part of the paper tray) off the bottom plate hook [D]. After the release slide comes off, compressed springs lift the bottom plate.

6.11.5 PAPER END DETECTION



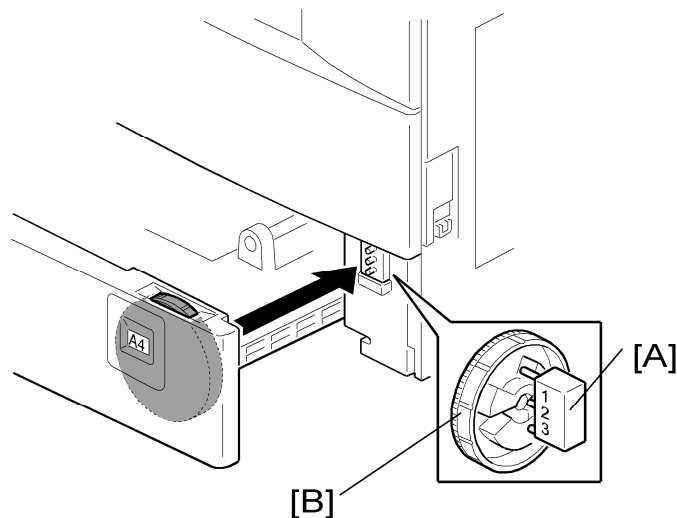
If there is any paper in the paper tray, the paper stack lifts the feeler, the paper end sensor [A] is deactivated.

When the paper tray runs out of paper, the paper end feeler drops into the cutout [B] in the tray bottom plate and the paper end sensor is activated.

When the paper tray is drawn out with no paper in the tray, the shape of the paper end feeler causes it to lift up.

6.11.6 PAPER SIZE DETECTION

Paper Tray



SW Size	1	2	3
A3, 11" x 17"	Off	Off	Off
A4 LEF	On	On	Off
A4 SEF, 8 ¹ / ₂ " x 11"	On	Off	Off
A5 LEF, 8 ¹ / ₂ " x 14"	Off	On	On
8 ¹ / ₂ " x 13"	On	Off	On
11" x 8 ¹ / ₂ "	Off	On	Off
* (Asterisk)	Off	Off	On

ON=Not pushed, OFF=Pushed

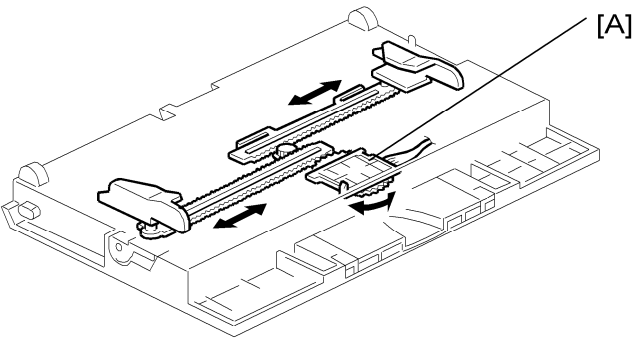
There are three paper size micro-switches [A] on the front right plate of the paper tray unit. The switches are actuated by a paper size actuator [B] behind the paper size indicator plate, which is on the front right of the tray.

Each paper size has its own actuator, with a unique combination of notches. To determine which size has been installed, the CPU reads which micro-switches the actuator has switched off.

The CPU disables paper feed from a tray if the paper size cannot be detected. If the paper size actuator is broken, or if there is no tray installed, the Add Paper indicator will light.

When the paper size actuator is at the "*" mark, the paper tray can be set up to accommodate one of a wider range of paper sizes by using User Tools. If the paper size for this position is changed without changing the User Tool setting, a paper jam will result.

By-pass Tray



The by-pass feed paper size switch [A] monitors the paper width. The side fence is connected to the terminal plate gear. When the side fences move to match the paper width, the circular terminal plate rotates over the wiring patterns on the rectangular part of the paper size switch. The patterns for each paper width in the paper size switch are unique.

North America

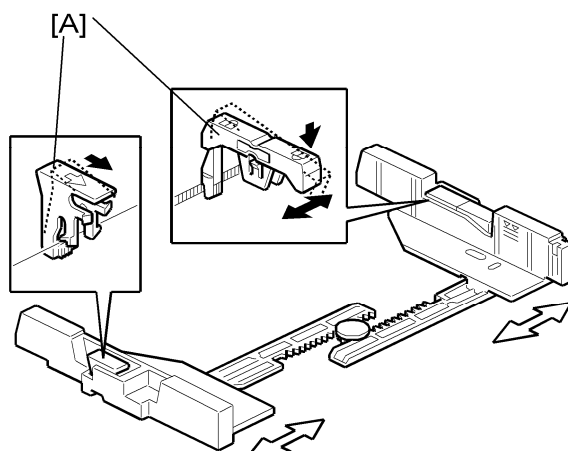
CN No. (BICU)	11" x 17"	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 14"	5 ¹ / ₂ " x 8 ¹ / ₂ "		
CN136-1	ON/OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
CN136-2	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON	OFF
CN136-3 (GND)	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
CN136-4	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF	ON
CN136-5	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	OFF

Europe/Asia

CN No. (BICU)	A3	A4 SEF	8" x 13"	A5 SEF
CN136-1	ON/OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
CN136-2	OFF	OFF	OFF	ON/OFF
CN136-3 (GND)	OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
CN136-4	OFF	ON	ON	OFF
CN136-5	ON	ON	OFF	OFF

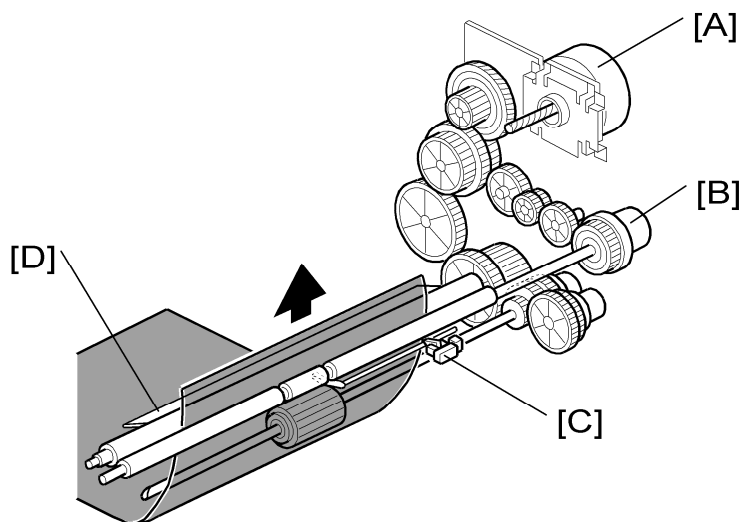
Detailed
Descriptions

6.11.7 SIDE FENCES



If the tray is full of paper and it is pushed in strongly, the fences may deform or bend. This may cause the paper to skew or the side-to-side registration to be incorrect. To correct this, each side fence has a stopper [A] attached to it. Each side fence can be secured with a screw, for customers who do not want to change the paper size.

6.11.8 PAPER REGISTRATION



The drive from the main motor [A] is transmitted to the registration roller through the registration clutch gear [B].

The registration sensor [C] is used for correcting paper skew and for detecting paper misfeeds.

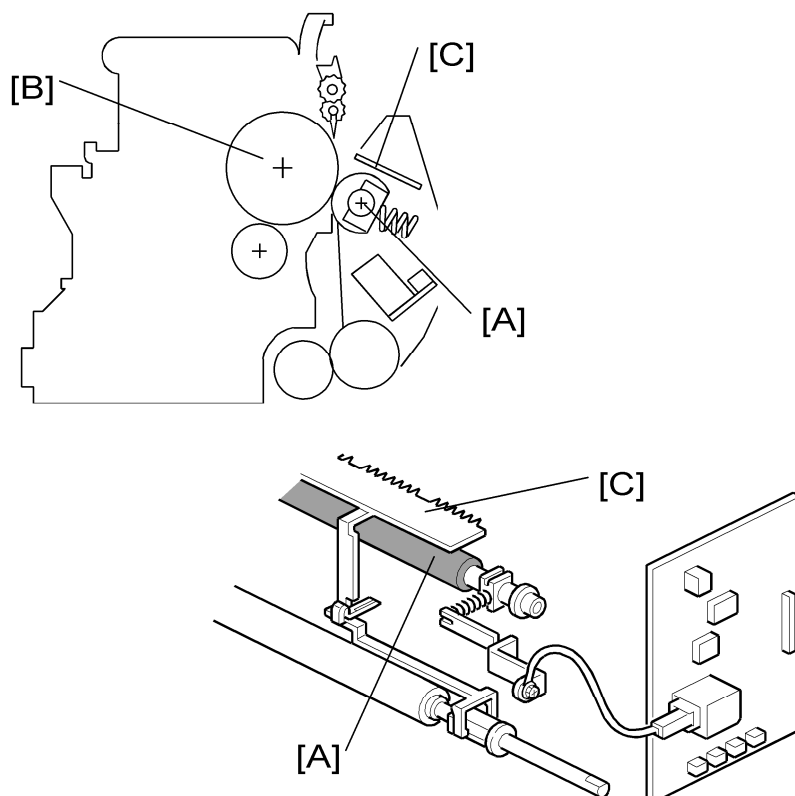
The cleaning mylar [D] contacts the registration roller. It removes paper dust from the registration roller so that this dust will not transfer into the development unit through the drum-cleaning unit.

The amount of paper buckle at the registration roller to correct skew can be adjusted with SP 1003.

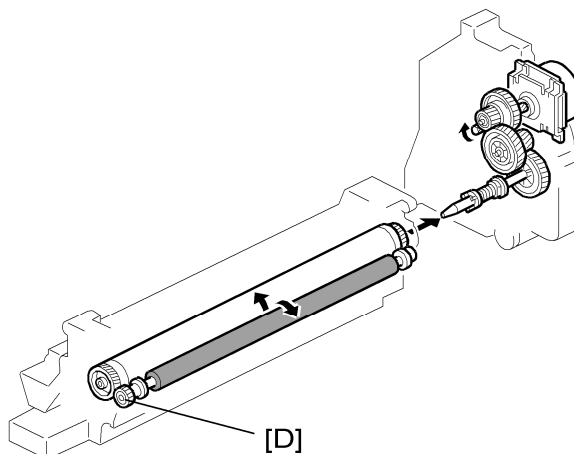
If jams frequently occur after registration, SP 1903 can be used to activate the relay clutch so that the relay roller assists the registration roller in feeding the paper along. When feeding from the by-pass tray, the by-pass feed clutch is activated, turning the by-pass feed roller. This feature may be needed when feeding thick paper, and cannot be used for the first paper feed tray.

6.12 IMAGE TRANSFER AND PAPER SEPARATION

6.12.1 OVERVIEW



The transfer roller [A] touches the surface of the drum [B]. The high voltage supply board supplies a positive current to the transfer roller, which attracts the toner from the drum onto the paper. The current depends on the paper width, paper type, and paper feed tray. The curvature of the drum and the discharge plate [C] help the paper to separate from the drum. The discharge plate is grounded.



Drive from the drum through a gear [D] turns the transfer roller.

6.12.2 IMAGE TRANSFER CURRENT TIMING

There are two transfer current levels: low and high. The image transfer procedure is as follows:

1. When the CPU receives the image writing start signal, the CPU instructs the high voltage supply board to supply +10 microamperes (low transfer current level) to the roller. This prevents any positively charged toner on the drum surface from transferring to the transfer roller.
2. At a certain time after the low transfer current has been supplied to the roller, high transfer current is applied to the roller to transfer the toner to the paper (see the table below).
3. After the trailing edge of the paper has passed through the roller, transfer current turns off. In multiple copy mode, the transfer current shifts again to the low transfer current.

The high transfer current levels (default) are as shown in the following table. With SP 2301, the high transfer current level used for the paper feed trays, duplex tray, by-pass tray, and cleaning can be adjusted.

	By-pass Tray (Thick/OHP)	Paper Tray/ By-pass Tray (Normal)	By-pass Tray (Special/ Envelope)	Duplex (2nd Side)	Duplex (2nd Side)
A3/A4 LEF	11 μ A	12 μ A	13 μ A	12 μ A	17 μ A
DLT	12 μ A	18 μ A	15 μ A	18 μ A	17 μ A
B4 SEF	12 μ A	12 μ A	15 μ A	12 μ A	18 μ A
LT SEF	17 μ A	17 μ A	15 μ A	17 μ A	24 μ A
A4 SEF	21 μ A	15 μ A	28 μ A	15 μ A	24 μ A
B5 SEF	22 μ A	19 μ A	28 μ A	19 μ A	22 μ A
A5 SEF	22 μ A	19 μ A	28 μ A	19 μ A	28 μ A
HLT SEF	22 μ A	19 μ A	28 μ A	—	—
B6 SEF	22 μ A	19 μ A	28 μ A	—	—
A6 SEF	22 μ A	19 μ A	34 μ A	—	—
Post card/ Envelope	22 μ A	19 μ A	34 μ A	—	—

Be careful when increasing the transfer current. This may cause a ghosting effect, in which part of the image at the top of the page is repeated lower down the page at a lower density.

In the worst case, it may also damage the OPC drum.

6.12.3 TRANSFER ROLLER CLEANING

If the paper size is smaller than the image, or if a paper jam occurs during printing, toner may be transferred to the roller surface. To prevent the toner from transferring to the back side of the printouts, the transfer roller requires cleaning before the next printing run.

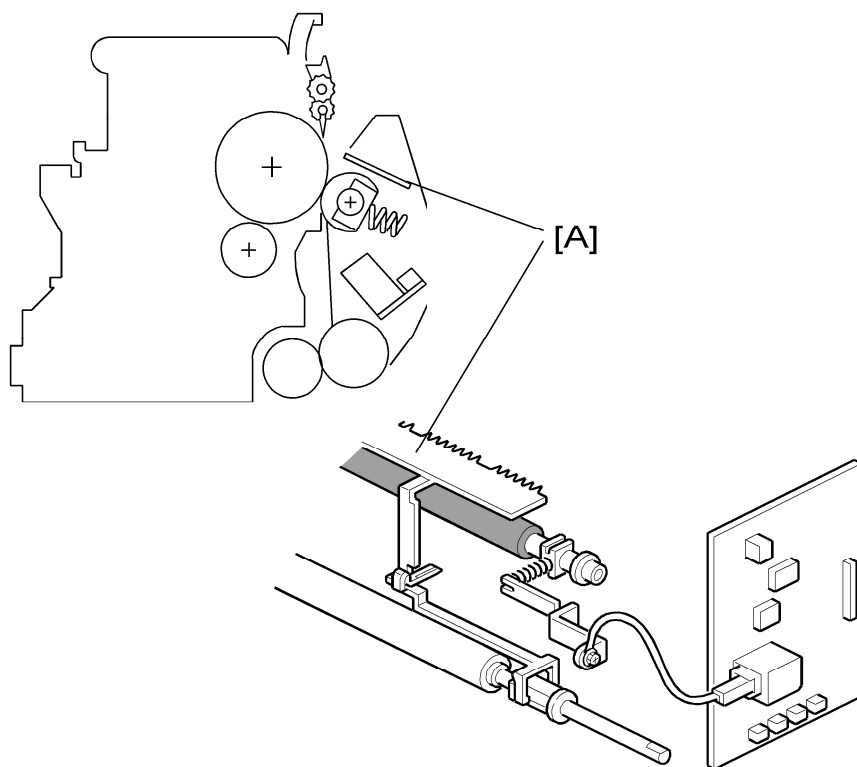
During transfer roller cleaning, the high voltage supply unit supplies a negative cleaning voltage (about -1 kV) to the transfer roller. Any negatively charged toner on the transfer roller is then transferred back to the drum. Then a positive cleaning current ($+10$ microamperes) is applied to the transfer roller to push back to the drum any positively charged toner on the transfer roller.

The machine goes through the cleaning mode in the following conditions:

1. Before starting the printing job (only if enabled with SP 2996; note that the default setting is off).
2. Just after the power is switched on.
3. After a copy jam has been cleared.
4. After 10 or more sheets of paper have been copied and the copy job has finished.

Also, the transfer roller cleaning current can be adjusted using SP 2301 4.

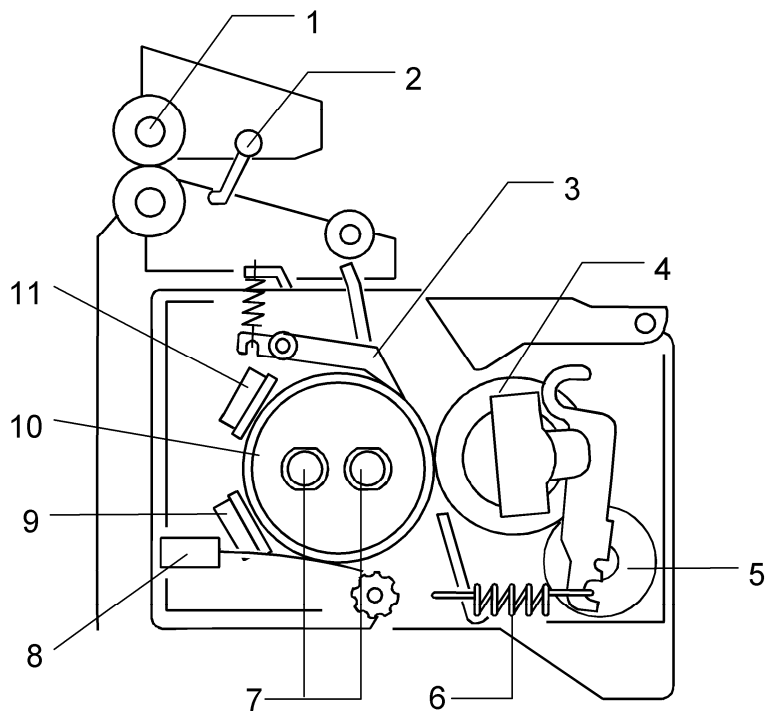
6.12.4 PAPER SEPARATION MECHANISM



The discharge plate [A] and the drum curvature of the drum help the paper to separate away from the drum. The discharge plate is grounded.

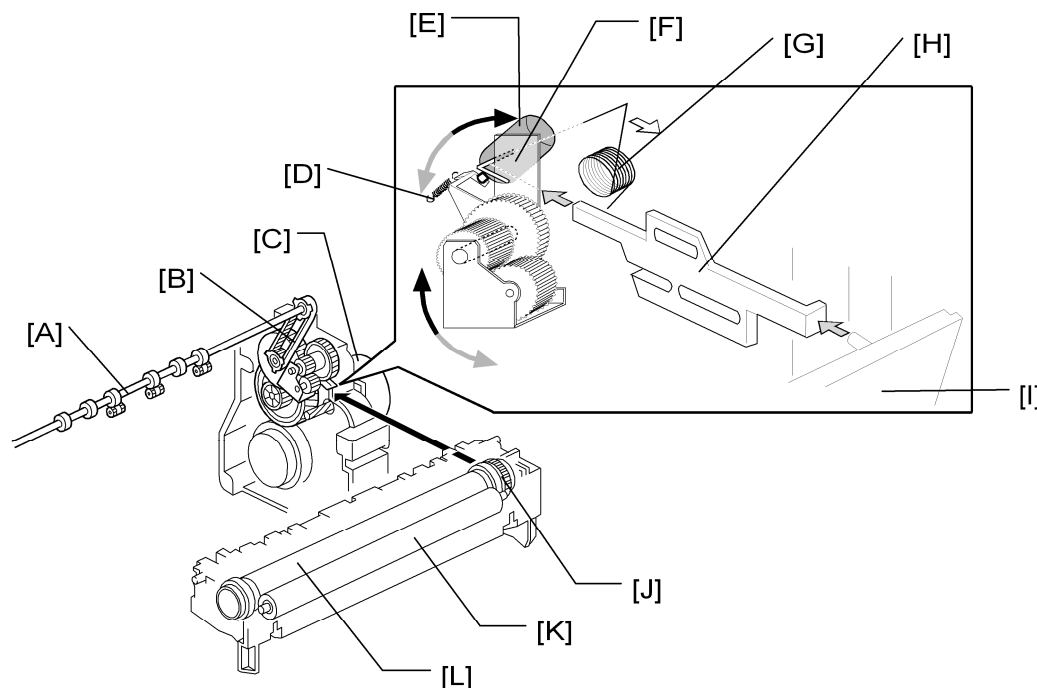
6.13 IMAGE FUSING AND PAPER EXIT

6.13.1 OVERVIEW



1. Paper exit roller	7. Fusing lamps
2. Exit sensor	8. Thermistor
3. Hot roller strippers	9. Thermostat
4. Pressure roller	10. Hot roller
5. Cleaning roller	11. Thermostat
6. Pressure spring	

6.13.2 FUSING UNIT DRIVE AND RELEASE MECHANISM



Fusing Unit Drive

The main motor [C] drives the fusing unit through a gear train, and drives the paper exit rollers [A] through the timing belt [B].

Drive Release Mechanism

When the right door [I] is open, the spring [G] pushes the top end of the gear holder [F] to the right. The drive gear is released from the fusing-unit drive gear [J]. When you close the right door, the mechanical link [H] pushes the spring [G]. The gear holder turns counterclockwise by the force of another spring [D], and engages with the fusing-unit drive gear.

Contact/Release Control

The drive power is not transmitted to the fusing unit during warming up when the fusing temperature (at the start) is 18°C or higher. The drive power is transmitted when the fusing temperature is less than 18°C. This contact/release control is based on the following conditions.

Fusing Temp.	Contact/Release
18C or higher	Release
Less than 18C	Contact

The hot roller [L] takes a shorter time to become hot enough if it is not turning during warming up. When, however, the fusing temperature (at the start) is low, the temperature of the hot-roller surface may become uneven.

You can disable this control (☛ p.5-3).

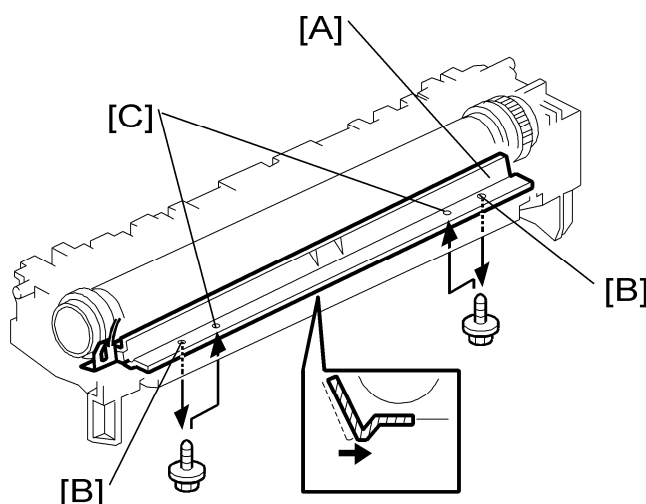
Drive Release Solenoid

Solenoid	Drive gear
Off	Engaged
On	Released

The fusing drive release solenoid [E] is on the rear end of the gear holder. When the solenoid is off, the spring [D] pulls the gear holder, and the drive gear engages with the fusing unit drive gear. When the solenoid is on, it pulls the top end of the gear holder to the right, and the gear holder turns clockwise. As a result, the drive gear is released from the fusing unit drive gear.

The release solenoid comes on when you turn on the main switch if the fusing temperature is 18C or higher. The solenoid releases the drive gear from the fusing unit drive gear. The fusing lamps heat the hot roller [L] more effectively since the heat is not conducted to the pressure roller [K]. When the hot roller becomes hot enough, the release solenoid turns off, letting the drive gear engage with the fusing unit drive gear.

6.13.3 FUSING ENTRANCE GUIDE SHIFT

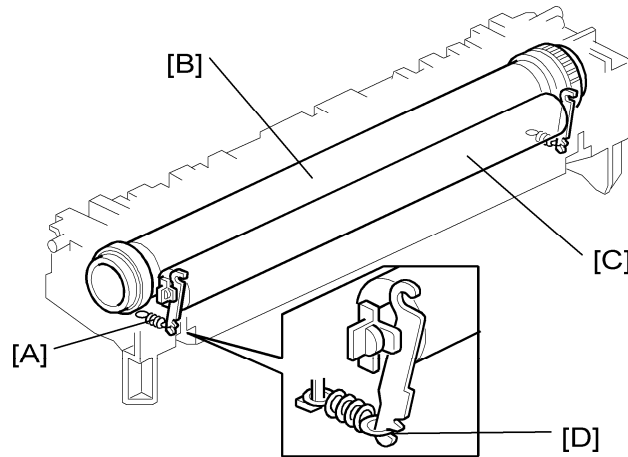


The entrance guide [A] is adjustable for paper thickness to prevent creasing. The outer screw holes [B] on each side are used as the default setting.

If creasing occurs frequently in the fusing unit, adjust the entrance guide to the right, by

securing it with the inner holes [C]. This allows more direct access to the gap between the hot roller and the pressure roller.

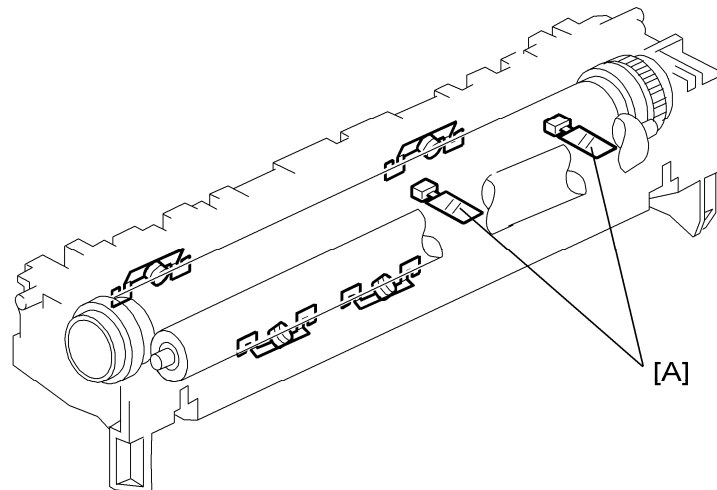
6.13.4 PRESSURE ROLLER



The pressure springs [A] constantly apply pressure between the hot roller [B] and the pressure roller [C]. Applied pressure can be changed by adjusting the position of the pressure springs. The spring is positioned at the end [D] as the default setting.

6.13.5 FUSING TEMPERATURE CONTROL

Overview



There are two fusing lamps (not identical), two thermistors, and four thermostats.

The fusing temperature is controlled using the thermistors [A].

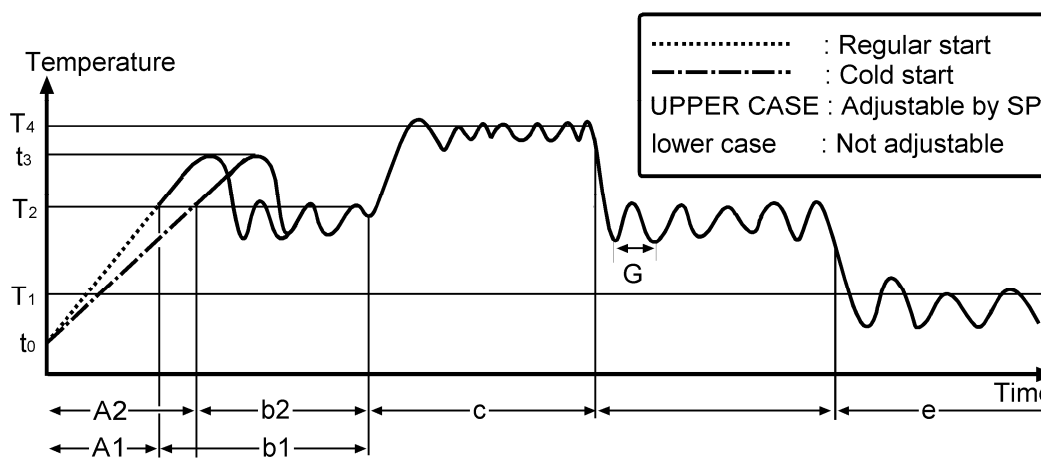
The CPU checks the output from the fusing thermistor once every 1.5 seconds. The CPU decides how long the lamps must be switched on during the next 1.5 seconds by comparing the following temperatures:

1. The center thermistor temperature and the target center temperature
2. The end thermistor temperature and the target end temperature

The fusing lamp works to maintain a target fusing temperature of 160C during copying.

Temperature Control

According to the operation mode, the fusing temperature is controlled. The diagram illustrates the transition of fusing temperature. After you turn the main switch on, the fusing temperature rises from the room temperature (t_0) to one of the specified temperatures. You can adjust some of the temperatures.



A1: Regular Start Mode/A2: Cold Start Mode (SP 1107 1-2)

Turning the fusing lamp on and off may affect the voltage of the power source in the room, causing the fluorescent lights in the room to flicker. To lighten this problem, you can reduce the checking repetition to 20 times.

When machine initialization ends, the fusing temperature is set to one of the following temperatures:

1. The Standby Temperature (T_2 : SP 1105 3-4) when there is no print job.
2. The First Print Temperature when the copier has received a print request during machine initialization.

You cannot directly adjust the First Print Temperature. This temperature is 10C higher (up to 185C) than the Copying Temperature (p.3-60).

C: Copying Mode

When the copier is making copies, the fusing temperature is set to one of the following temperatures:

1. The Warm Up Temperature (SP 1105 1-2) to output the first print after the Low Power Mode (p.3-60)
2. The Copying Temperature (T_4 : SP 1105 5-6) to output the second print (and after the second)

You can raise the Warm Up Temperature to make better the fusing quality of the first print. While the copier is adjusting the fusing temperature to the Warm Up Temperature, the message "Copy starts after warm up" is displayed.

c : Thick Paper Mode

When the machine is making copies on thick paper, the fusing temperature is set to the Thick Paper Temperature (SP 1105 9-10). When thick paper reaches the registration sensor, the copier checks the fusing temperature, and executes one of the following processing:

1. Stops feeding the thick paper (and keeps it at the registration sensor) and waits for the fusing temperature to reach the predefined temperature—the temperature 5C lower than the Thick Paper Temperature. (The fusing temperature keeps rising until it reaches the Thick Paper Temperature while the thick paper travels from the registration sensor to the fusing unit.)
2. Continues feeding paper and executes the print job if the fusing temperature is high enough.

b1/b2: Standby Mode

When the copier is not making copies, the fusing temperature is set to the Standby Temperature (T2: SP 1105 3-4). You can adjust this temperature. However, if you have raised this temperature, the BICU may be unable to generate a SC code in the event of fusing lamp error.

While in the Standby Mode, the copier checks the fusing temperature every 1.5 seconds (G: SP 1108 1). Turning on and off the fusing lamp may affect the voltage of the power source (in the room), causing the fluorescent lights (in the room) to flicker. To lighten such trouble, you can adjust the control period. However, if you elongate this period (to two seconds or longer), the BICU may be unable to generate a SC code in the event of a fusing lamp error.

e: Low Power Mode

When the Energy Saver Timer ( > System Settings > Timer Settings > Energy Saver Timer) expires, the fusing temperature is set to the Low Power Temperature (T1: SP 1105 7-8).

6.13.6 OVERHEAT PROTECTION

This machine protects its hardware from overheat by three features. Normally, the first feature can fully protect the hardware. The second feature works as the fail-safe feature for the first one. The third feature works as the fail-safe feature for the second one.

First Feature:

If the fusing temperature reaches 230C (or higher) and stays so for one second, the

controller turns the fusing lamp off. In a case like this, SC543 or SC553 shows.

Second Feature:

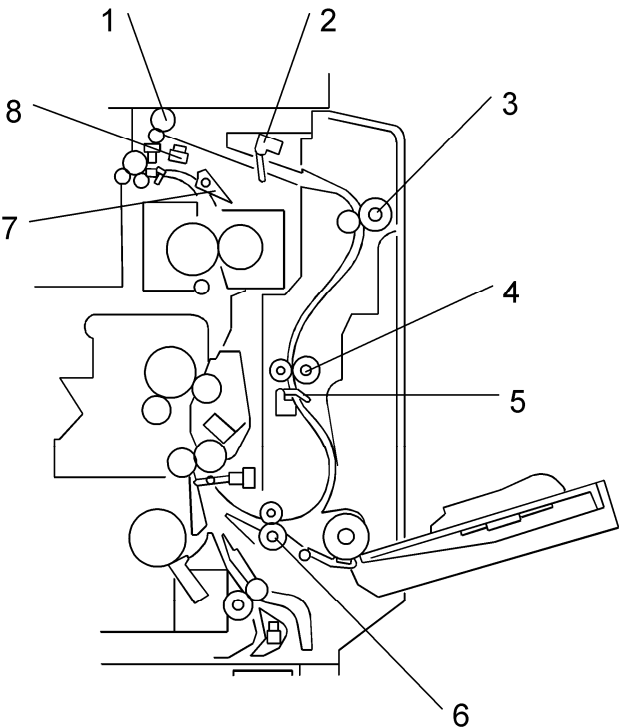
If the fusing feature reaches 250C, the controller cuts off the 24V line. (The fusing lamps are on the 24V line.)

Third Feature:

Two thermostats are attached on each line of the two fusing lamps. (four thermostats in total). One of the two thermostats cuts the power supply to the fusing lamp at 179C, and the other cuts the power supply at 180C. (Note that the thermostat temperature is somewhat lower than the fusing temperature.)

6.14 DUPLEX UNIT

6.14.1 OVERALL

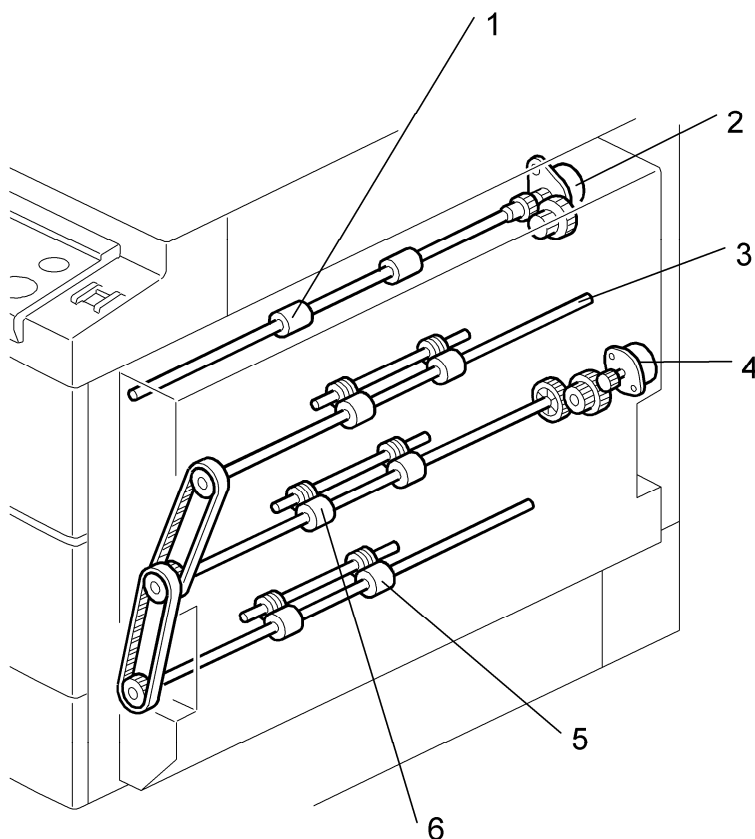


The printed page from the fusing unit goes straight through to the exit tray, or upward to the inverter section, depending on the position of the junction gate.

If the user selects duplex mode, the page is directed to the inverter tray, then reversed through the duplex unit, and back into the machine for printing the second side.

1. Duplex Inverter Roller	5. Duplex Exit Sensor
2. Duplex Entrance Sensor	6. Lower Transport Roller
3. Upper Transport Roller	7. Junction Gate
4. Middle Transport Roller	8. Duplex Inverter Sensor

6.14.2 DRIVE MECHANISM



1. Duplex Inverter Roller	4. Duplex Transport Motor
2. Duplex Inverter Motor	5. Lower Transport Roller
3. Upper Transport Roller	6. Middle Transport Roller

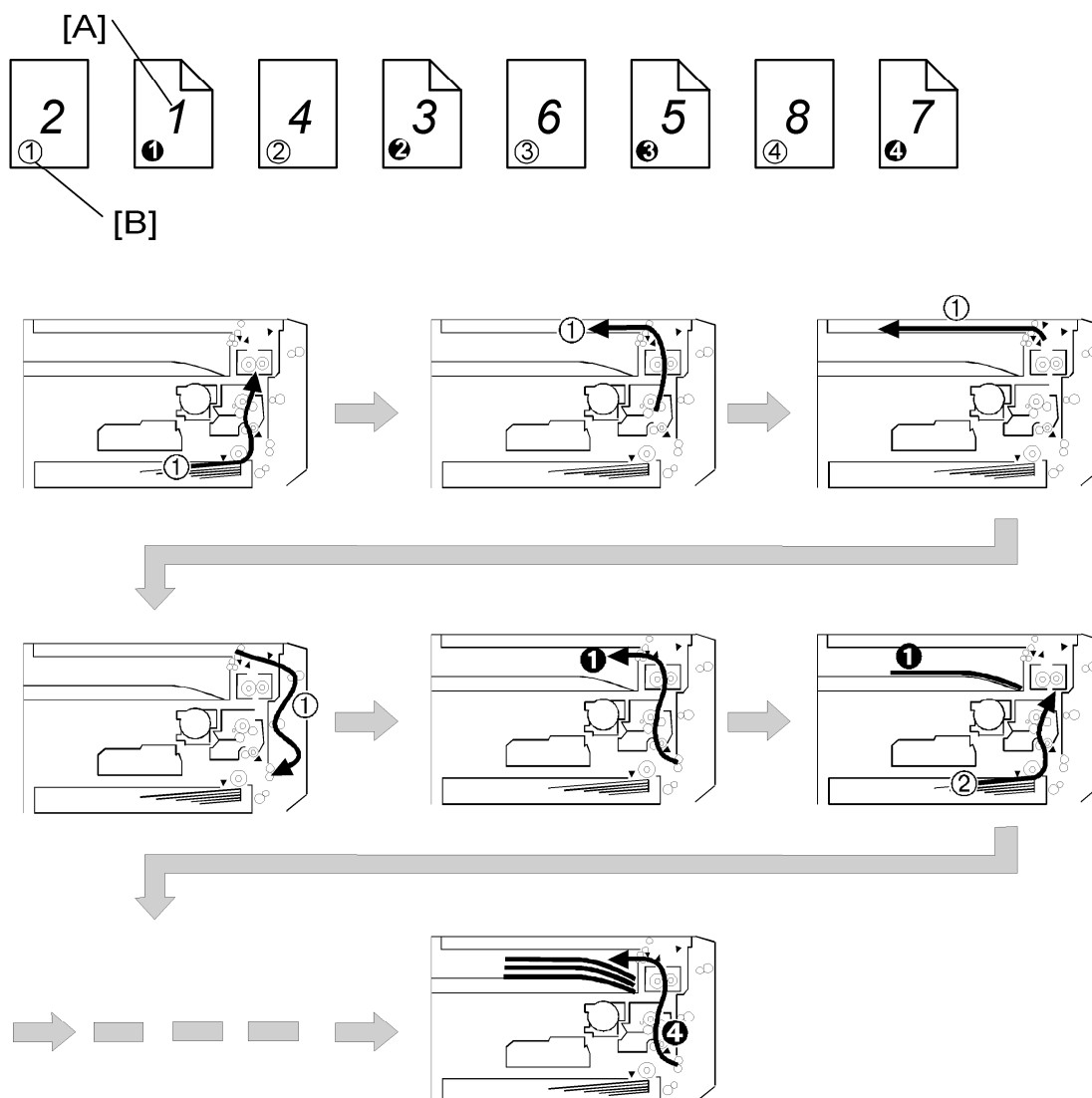
6.14.3 BASIC OPERATION

To increase the productivity of the duplex unit, copies are printed as follows.

- Larger than A4 Short-edge/LT Short-edge -

The paper feed path can hold only one sheet of copy paper at a time.

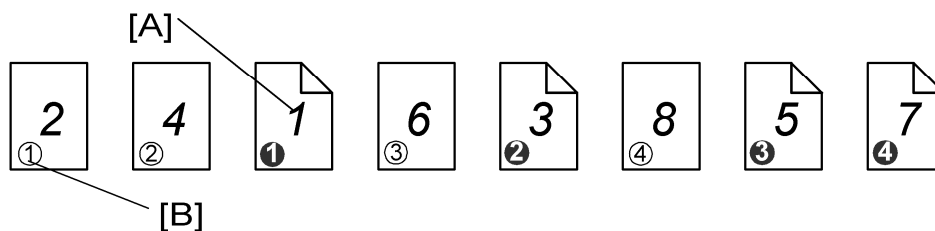
Example: 8 pages. The number [A] in the illustration shows the order of pages. The number [B] in the illustration shows the order of sheets of copy paper (if black, this indicates the second side).

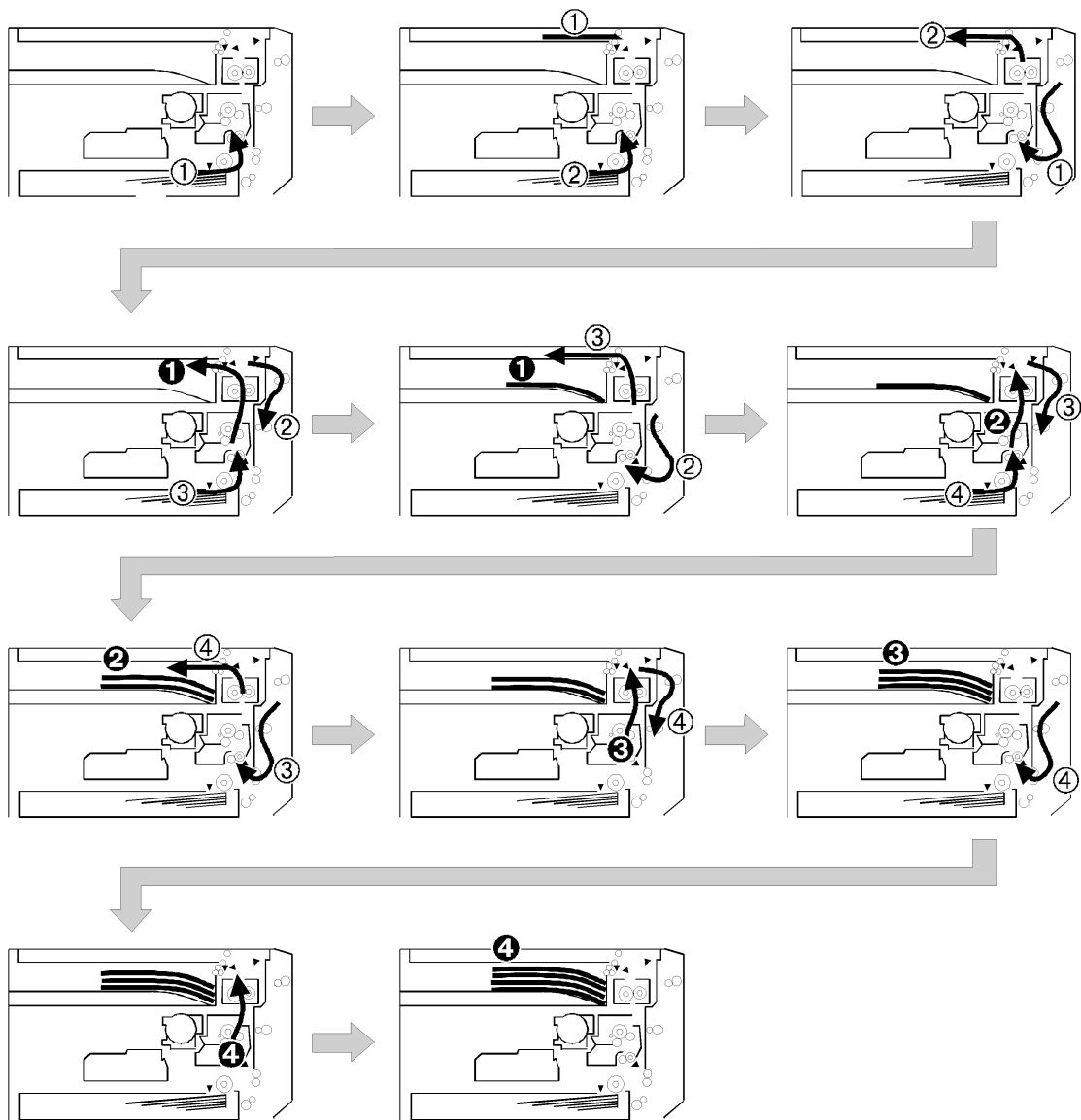


- Up to A4 Short-edge/LT Short-edge -

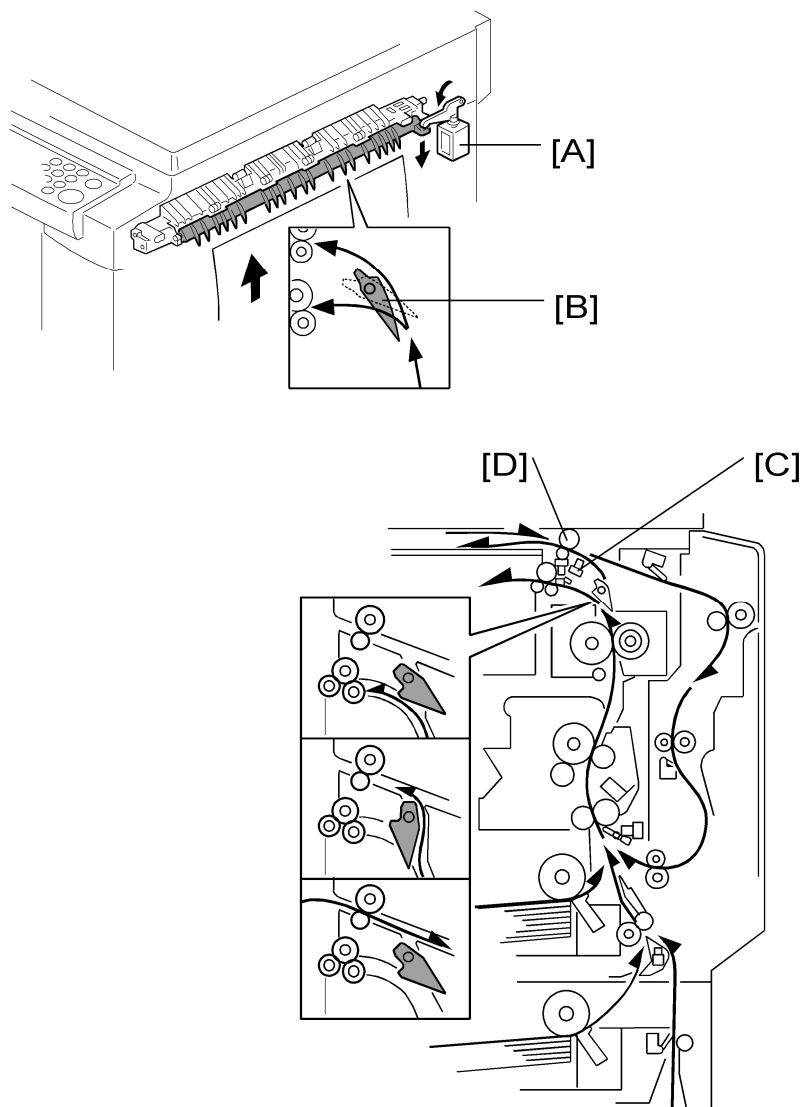
The paper feed path can hold two sheets of copy paper.

Example: 8 pages. The number [A] in the illustration shows the order of pages. The number [B] in the illustration shows the order of sheets of copy paper (if black, this indicates the second side).





6.14.4 FEED IN AND EXIT MECHANISM



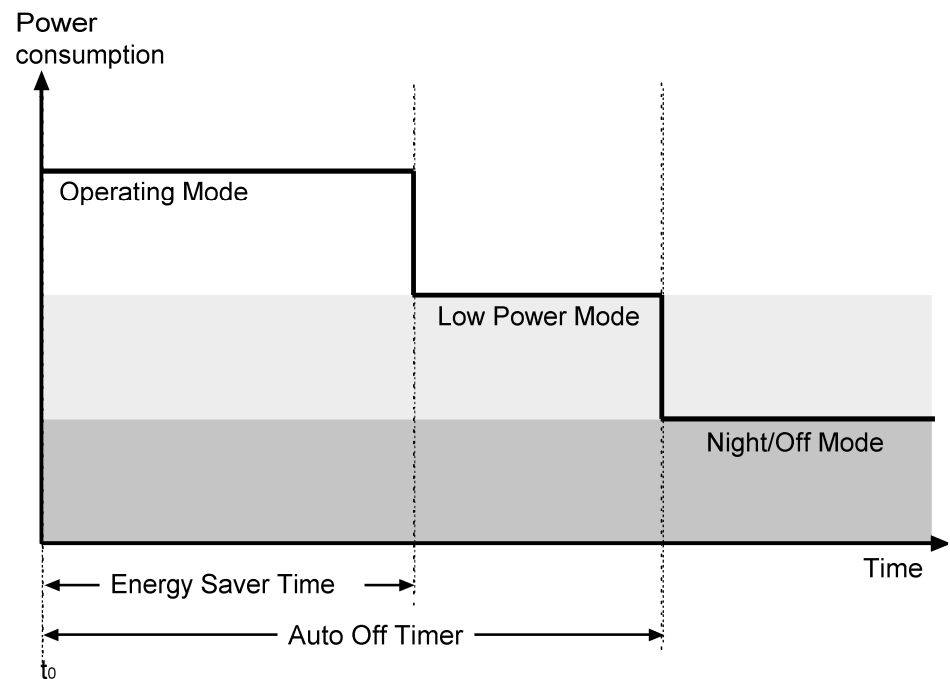
During duplex copying, the inverter gate solenoid [A] switches on and the junction gate [B] switches over to direct the paper to the inverter. When the paper trailing edge reaches the duplex inverter sensor [C], the inverter roller [D] reverses its rotation direction and the paper goes to the duplex unit. The paper is then sent to the mainframe registration rollers to print the reverse side.

If there are two or more copies being made with A4/8¹/₂" x 11" SEF (or smaller), the next sheet waits at the registration sensor for the current sheet to exit the inverter.

6.15 ENERGY SAVER MODES OF BASIC MACHINES

This section illustrates the energy saver modes of the basic machine (the machine without the optional controller). For the energy saver modes of the DDST machine (the machine with the optional controller), see the section of "Energy Saver Modes of DDST Machines".

6.15.1 OVERVIEW



The machine has two energy-saver modes: the Low Power Mode and the Night/Off Mode. The table lists the status of several components. For the fusing temperature, see the section of "Fusing Temperature Control".

	Operation panel	Engine	Exhaust fan
Operating Mode*	On	On	On
Low Power Mode	Off	On	Off
Night/Off Mode	Off	Off**	Off

* The "Operating Mode" here refers to all the modes (and status) other than the Low Power Mode and Night/Off Mode. Actual power consumption (during the Operating Mode) depends on job status and environmental conditions.

** The SRAM is alive and backs up the engine controller.

6.15.2 AOF

When AOF is off, the engine controller is unable to start the Night/Off Mode. The user should keep AOF on ( > System Settings > Key Operator Tools > AOF).

6.15.3 TIMERS

The engine controller references the Energy Saver Timer to start the Low Power Mode, and references the Auto Off Timer to start the Night/Off Mode. The user can set these timers ( > System Settings > Timer Settings).

The Energy Saver Timer and the Auto Off Timer start at the same time (t_0) when the machine ends all jobs or when the user ends all manual operations. Note that the Auto Off Timer does not wait for the Energy Saver Timer. Therefore, if the user specifies a smaller value in the Energy Saver Timer, the Auto Off Timer expires earlier than the Energy Saver Timer. In a case like this, the Low Power Mode is not activated. Instead, the engine controller starts the Night/Off Mode when the Auto Off Timer expires.

Specified value	Low Power Mode	Night/Off Mode
Energy Saver Timer > Auto Off Timer	Can start	Can start
Energy Saver Timer = Auto Off Timer	Cannot start	Can start
Energy Saver Timer < Auto Off Timer	Cannot start	Can start

6.15.4 RECOVERY

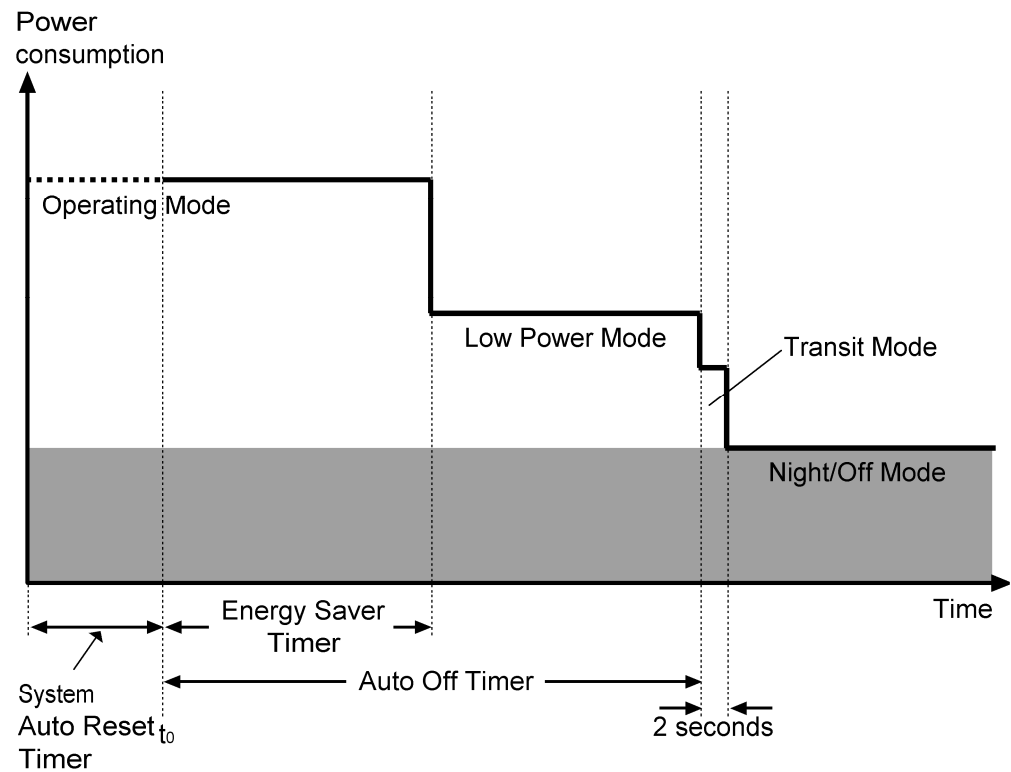
Any of the following operations brings the machine back to the Operating Mode:

1. The power switch is pressed.
2. Originals are set on the document feeder.
3. The platen cover (or document feeder) is opened.

6.16 ENERGY SAVER MODES OF DDST MACHINES

This section illustrates the energy saver modes of the DDST machine (the machine with the optional controller). For the energy saver modes of the basic machine (the machine without the optional controller), see the section of "Energy Saver Modes of Basic Machines".

6.16.1 OVERVIEW



The machine has three energy-saver modes: the Low Power Mode, the Transit Mode, and the Night/Off Mode. The Transit Mode continues for about two seconds (probably, the user does not recognize this mode when it occurs). The table lists the status of several components. For the fusing temperature, see the section of "Fusing Temperature Control".

	Operation panel	Engine	Exhaust fan
Operating Mode*	On	On	On
Low Power Mode	Off	On	Off
Transit Mode	Off	On	Off
Night/Off Mode	Off	Off**	Off

* The "Operating Mode" here refers to all the modes (or status) other than the Low Power

Mode and Night/Off Mode. Actual power consumption (during the Operating Mode) depends on job status and environmental conditions.

** The SRAM is alive and backs up the engine controller.

6.16.2 AOF

See "" in the section of "Energy Saver Modes of Basic Machines".

6.16.3 TIMERS

The Energy Saver Timer and Auto Off Timer start at the same time (t0) when the machine ends all jobs, when the user ends all manual operations, or when the controller starts the default application program (the program specified by the user [/123] > System Settings > General Features > Function Priority]). The default application program starts when the System Auto Reset Timer expires (/123 > System Settings > Timer Settings > System Auto Reset Timer).

For more information, see "s" in the section of "Energy Saver Modes of Basic Machines".

6.16.4 RECOVERY

Any of the following operations brings the machine back to the Operating Mode:

1. The power switch is pressed.
2. Originals are set on the document feeder.
3. The platen cover (or document feeder) is opened.
4. The controller receives a job over the network or the telephone line.
5. An SC code is generated.

SPECIFICATIONS

7. SPECIFICATIONS

7.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

Configuration:	Desktop		
Copy Process:	Dry electrostatic transfer system		
Originals:	Sheet/Book/Object		
Original Size:	Maximum A3/11" x 17"		
Copy Paper Size:	Maximum:	A3/11" x 17"	
	Minimum:	A5 LEF/8 ¹ / ₂ " x 5 ¹ / ₂ " (Paper tray), A6 SEF/5 ¹ / ₂ " x 8 ¹ / ₂ " (Bypass)	
	Custom sizes in the bypass tray:	Width: 90 – 297 mm (3.55" – 11.69"), Length: 148 – 600 mm (5.83" – 23.62")	
	NOTE: Physically, the by-pass tray can handle the following size (but this size is not recognized by the application software): Width: 305 mm Length: 1,260 mm		
Copy Paper Weight:	Paper Tray: 60 – 90 g/m ² , 16 – 24 lb. Bypass: 52 – 162 g/m ² , 14 – 43 lb.		
Reproduction Ratios:	3 enlargement and 4 reduction		
		A4/A3 Version	LT/DLT Version
Enlargement		200%	155%
		141%	129%
		122%	121%
Full Size		100%	100%
Reduction		93%	93%
		82%	78%
		71%	65%
		50%	50%
Zoom:	50% to 200%, in 1% steps		
Power Source:	Taiwan:	110 V, 60 Hz, 12 A	
	Korea:	220 V, 60 Hz, 7 A	

General Specifications

	North and South America:	120 V, 60 Hz, 12 A
	Europe, Asia:	220 – 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 7 A
Power Consumption:	Full System:	Not above 1.28 kW
	Off Mode (DDST):	Not above 10 W
	Off Mode (Basic):	Not above 1 W
	 Note -16. Full system - Maximum possible power consumption (any combination of mainframe and options), excluding optional heaters, key counter, fax unit, and printer controller.	
Noise Emission:	Standby (Mainframe/Full system):	Not above 40 dB(A)
	Operating (Mainframe only):	Not above 62 dB(A)
	Operating (Full System):	Not above 66 dB(A)
	 Note -16. The above measurements were made in accordance with ISO 7779. Measurements were taken from the normal position of the operator.	
Dimensions (W x D x H):	B245/B276/B268: 550 x 568 x 420 mm (21.7" x 22.4" x 16.5") B269/B277: 587 x 568 x 558 mm (23.1" x 22.4" x 23.0") Measurement Conditions 1. With bypass feed table closed 2. Without the A(R)DF	
Weight:	B245: 35 kg (78 lb.) B268/B276: 44 kg (96 lb.) B269/B277: 47 kg (103 lb.) (Excluding A(R)DF, platen cover, toner, and developer)	

Copying Speed in Multicopy Mode (copies/minute):

Mode			B245	B276	B277
1-sided	Memory copy	A3 SEF/11" 17"	9	10	11
1-sided		A4 LEF/11" x 8 ¹ / ₂ "	15	16	20
	DF 1-to-1	A3 SEF/11" 17"	8	8	8
A4 LEF/11"		15	16	18	

Mode			B245	B276	B277
x 8 ¹ / ₂ "					
1-sided	Memory copy	A3 SEF/11" 17"	—	—	5
2-sided		A4 LEF/11" x 8 ¹ / ₂ "	—	—	20



-16. Measurement Conditions:

-47219724. Figures are for one-sided original to one-sided copy except where stated otherwise

-47219723. Not APS mode

-47219722. 100% size

Warm-up Time:	Basic model: Less than 10 seconds (at 20C [68F]) DDST model: Less than 10 seconds (at 20C [68F])
First Copy Time:	Not more than 6.5 seconds Measurement Conditions 1. From the ready state, with the polygonal mirror motor operating. 2. A4/LT copying 3. Not APS mode 4. 100%size 5. Paper feed from the upper tray
Copy Number Input:	Numeric keypad, 1 to 99 (increment, decrement)
Manual Image Density:	5 steps
Automatic Reset:	Default is 60 seconds. Can be set from 10 to 999 seconds with user tools.
Automatic Shut-off:	Default is 1 minute. Can be set from 1 to 240 minutes with user tools.
Copy Paper Capacity:	Paper Tray: 1. 250 sheets (B245/B276/B268) 2. 250 sheets x 2 (B277/B269) Optional Paper Tray Unit: 1. 500 sheets x 1, or 500 sheets x 2 Bypass Tray: 1. 100 sheets (sheets up to 432 mm [17"])

General Specifications

	2. 40 postcards 3. 10 envelopes Copy weight: 80 g/m ² (20 lb.)
Toner Replenishment:	Cartridge replacement (260 g/cartridge)
Optional Equipment:	1. Platen cover 2. Auto document feeder 3. Auto-reverse document feeder (B269/B277 only) 4. Paper tray unit (1 tray) 5. Paper tray unit (2 trays) 6. 1-bin tray (B269/B277 only) 7. Tray heater (B269/B277 only) 8. Optics anti-condensation heater 9. DDST controller board
Toner Yield:	9k copies (A4 LEF, 6% full black, 1 to 2 copying, normal text mode)
Copy-Tray Capacity	250 sheets
Memory	Basic Model: 16 MB (BICU) DDST Model: 16 MB (BICU) + 32 MB Controller DDST + NIC Model: 16 MB (BICU) + 64 MB Controller
Duplex Unit (B269/B277 only)	
Copy Paper Size:	Maximum ⇨ A3/11" x 17" Minimum ⇨ A5/8 ¹ / ₂ " x 11"
Copy Paper Weight:	64 – 90 g/m ² (20 – 24 lb.)

7.2 SUPPORTED PAPER SIZES

7.2.1 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION

North America, Europe, Asia, Taiwan

Paper	Size (W x L)	North America		Europe/Asia/Taiwan	
		Platen	ADF	Platen	ADF
A3 SEF	297 x 420 mm	O	O	X	X
B4 SEF	257 x 364 mm	O	O	X	X
A4 SEF	210 x 297 mm	A4/LT	A4/LT	X	X
A4 LEF	297 x 210 mm	A4/LT	A4/LT	X	X
B5 SEF	182 x 257 mm	O	O	O	X
B5 LEF	257 x 182 mm	O	O	X	X
A5 SEF	148 x 210 mm	O	O	O	X
A5 LEF	210 x 148 mm	O	O	S ^a	X
B6 SEF	128 x 182 mm	O	O	O	O
B6 LEF	182 x 128 mm	O	O	O	O
8K SEF	267 x 390 mm	O	O	O	O
16K SEF	195 x 267 mm	O	O	O	O
16K LEF	267 x 195 mm	O	O	O	O
DLT SEF	11" x 17"	X	X	O	O
SEF	11" x 15"	O	O	O	O
LG SEF	8½" x 14"	X	X	O	O
LT SEF	8½" x 11"	X	X	A4/LT	A4/LT
LT LEF	11" x 8½"	X	X	A4/LT	A4/LT
HLT SEF	5½" x 8½"	O	X	O	O
HLT LEF	8½" x 5½"	S	X	O	O
F/GL (F4) SEF	8" x 13"	F	O	F	F
Foolscap SEF	8½" x 13"	F	O	F	F
Folio SEF	8¼" x 13"	F	O	F	F
USB4 SEF	10" x 14"	O	O	O	O
Eng Quarto SEF	8" x 10"	O	O	O	O
Eng Quarto LEF	10" x 8"	O	O	O	O

Key:

Supported Paper Sizes

X:	Detected
O:	Not detected
F:	Detected as F (8 ¹ / ₂ " x 13")
S:	Detected as specified
A4/LT:	Detected as A4 or LT as specified



-21. ^a When the settings of SP 4305 1 is "1: A4/LT," the settings of SP 4303 is invalidated (A5 LEF is not detected).

China, Korea

Paper	Size (W x L)	China/Korea		China/Korea (localized)	
		Platen	ADF	Platen ^b	ADF ^c
A3 SEF	297 x 420 mm	X	X	X	O
B4 SEF	257 x 364 mm	X	X	O	O
A4 SEF	210 x 297 mm	X	X	X	O
A4 LEF	297 x 210 mm	X	X	X	O
B5 SEF	182 x 257 mm	X	X	O	O
B5 LEF	257 x 182 mm	X	X	O	O
A5 SEF	148 x 210 mm	O	X	O	X
A5 LEF	210 x 148 mm	S	X	S	X
B6 SEF	128 x 182 mm	O	O	O	O
B6 LEF	182 x 128 mm	O	O	O	O
8K SEF	267 x 390 mm	O	O	X	X
16K SEF	195 x 267 mm	O	O	X	X
16K LEF	267 x 195 mm	O	O	X	X
DLT SEF	11" x 17"	O	O	O	O
SEF	11" x 15"	O	O	O	O
LG SEF	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 14"	O	O	O	O
LT SEF	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 11"	A4/LT	A4/LT	O	O
LT LEF	11" x 8 ¹ / ₂ "	A4/LT	A4/LT	O	O
HLT SEF	5 ¹ / ₂ " x 8 ¹ / ₂ "	O	O	O	O
HLT LEF	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 5 ¹ / ₂ "	O	O	O	O
F/GL (F4) SEF	8" x 13"	O	F	O	F
Foolscap SEF	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 13"	O	F	O	F
Folio SEF	8 ¹ / ₄ " x 13"	O	F	O	F

Paper	Size (W x L)	China/Korea		China/Korea (localized)	
		Platen	ADF	Platen ^b	ADF ^c
USB4 SEF	10" x 14"	O	O	O	O
Eng Quarto SEF	8" x 10"	O	O	O	O
Eng Quarto LEF	10" x 8"	O	O	O	O

Key:

X:	Detected
O:	Not detected
F:	Detected as F (8 ¹ / ₂ " x 13")
S:	Detected as specified
A4/LT:	Detected as A4 or LT as specified



-21. ^bChange the settings of SP 4305 1. Adjust the positions of the APS sensors.

-20. ^cChange the settings of SP 4305 1.

7.2.2 PAPER FEED AND EXIT**Main Frame, Duplex**

Paper	Size (W x L)	Main frame tray				Duplex
		China/Korea	North America	Europe	Asia/Taiwan	
A3 SEF	297 x 420 mm	X	M	X	X	X
A3 LEF	420 x 297 mm	O	O	O	O	O
B4 SEF	257 x 364 mm	X	M	M	M	X
B4 LEF	364 x 257 mm	O	O	O	O	O
A4 SEF	210 x 297 mm	X	M	X	X	X
A4 LEF	297 x 210 mm	X	X	X	X	X
B5 SEF	182 x 257 mm	M	M	M	M	X
B5 LEF	257 x 182 mm	X	M	M	M	X
A5 SEF	148 x 210 mm	O	O	O	O	X
A5 LEF	210 x 148 mm	X	M	X	X	X
B6 SEF	128 x 182 mm	O	O	O	O	O
B6 LEF	182 x 128 mm	O	O	O	O	O
A6 SEF	105 x 148 mm	O	O	O	O	O
A6 LEF	148 x 105 mm	O	O	O	O	O
DLT SEF	11" x 17"	M	X	M	M	X

Supported Paper Sizes

Paper	Size (W x L)	Main frame tray				Duplex
		China/ Korea	North America	Europe	Asia/ Taiwan	
DLT LEF	17" x 11"	O	O	O	O	O
LG SEF	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 14"	M	X	M	M	X
LG LEF	14" x 8 ¹ / ₂ "	O	O	O	O	O
Gov. LG SEF	8 ¹ / ₄ " x 14"	M	M	M	M	X
Gov. LG LEF	14" x 8 ¹ / ₄ "	O	O	O	O	O
LT SEF	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 11"	M	X	M	M	X
LT LEF	11" x 8 ¹ / ₂ "	M	X	X	X	X
HLT SEF	5 ¹ / ₂ " x 8 ¹ / ₂ "	O	O	O	O	O
HLT LEF	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 5 ¹ / ₂ "	M	M	M	M	O
Executive SEF	7 ¹ / ₄ " x 10 ¹ / ₂ "	M	M	M	M	X
Executive LEF	10 ¹ / ₂ " x 7 ¹ / ₄ "	M	M	M	M	X
F SEF	8" x 13"	M	M	M	M	X
F LEF	13" x 8"	O	O	O	O	O
Foolscap SEF	8 ¹ / ₂ " x 13"	M	X	X	X	X
Foolscap LEF	13" x 8 ¹ / ₂ "	O	O	O	O	O
Folio SEF	8 ¹ / ₄ " x 13"	M	M	M	M	X
Folio LEF	13" x 8 ¹ / ₄ "	O	O	O	O	O
8K SEF	267 x 390 mm	M	M	M	M	X
8K LEF	390 x 267 mm	O	O	O	O	O
16K SEF	195 x 267 mm	M	M	M	M	X
16K LEF	267 x 195 mm	M	M	M	M	X
C5 Env. SEF	162 x 229 mm	O	O	O	O	O
C6 Env. SEF	114 x 162 mm	O	O	O	O	O
DL Env. SEF	110 x 220 mm	O	O	O	O	O
Com10 SEF	4 ¹ / ₈ " x 9 ¹ / ₂ "	O	O	O	O	O
Monarch SEF	3 ⁷ / ₈ " x 7 ¹ / ₂ "	O	O	O	O	O
Custom		O	O	O	O	O

Key:

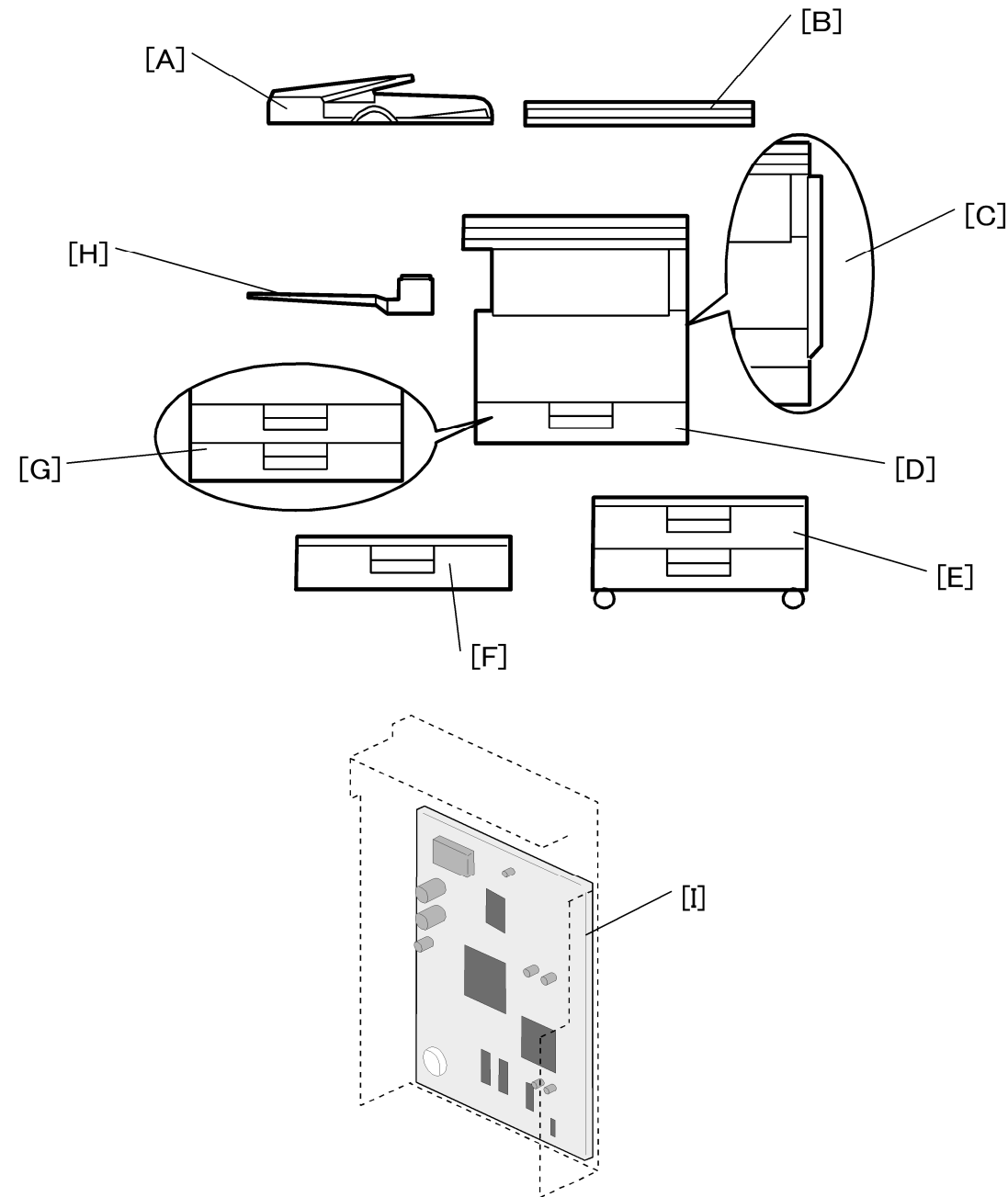
X:	Detected (Main frame tray)/Processed (Duplex)
O:	Not detected (Main frame tray)/Not processed (Duplex)
M:	Selected manually

K:	Specified from the key pad

↓ Note

-21. Custom W: 90 to 297 mm L: 148 to 600 mm

7.3 MACHINE CONFIGURATION



Unit/Component		Machine Code	Diagram
Copier	Copier (1-tray non-duplex model)	B245/B268/B276	[D]
	Copier (2-tray with duplex)	B269/B277	[C] + [G]
	Platen cover (optional)	B406	[B]
	ADF (optional)	B813	[A]
	ARDF (optional)	B814	[A]
	Paper tray unit–1 tray (optional)	B385	[F]
	Paper tray unit–2 trays (optional)	B384	[E]
	1-bin tray (optional, B277 only)	B621	[H]
DDST	DDST controller (optional)	B865/B866	[I]



- 21. The DDST controller comes with a dedicated controller box and printer/scanner panel.

7.4 OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

7.4.1 ARDF

Original Size:	Standard sizes 1. Single-sided mode: A3 to A5, 11" x 17" to 5¹/₂" x 8¹/₂" 2. Double-sided mode: A3 to A5, 11" x 17" to 5¹/₂" x 8¹/₂" Non-standard sizes (Single-sided mode only) 1. Max. width 297 mm 2. Min. width 105 mm 3. Max. length 1260 mm 4. Min. length 128 mm
Original Weight:	Single-sided mode: 40 – 128 g/m², 10 – 34 lb. Double-sided mode: 52 – 105 g/m², 14 – 28 lb.
Table Capacity:	50 sheets (80 g/m ² , 70 kg)
Original Standard Position:	Center
Separation:	FRR
Original Transport:	Roller transport
Original Feed Order:	From the top original
Reproduction Range:	50 to 200% (Sub scan direction only)
Power Source:	24 and 5 Vdc from the copier
Power Consumption:	50 W
Dimensions (W x D x H):	550 x 470 x 130 mm
Weight:	10 kg (22 lbs)

7.4.2 ADF

Original Size:	Standard sizes (Single-sided mode only): 1. A3 to A5, 11" x 17" to 5¹/₂" x 8¹/₂" Non-standard sizes (Single-sided mode only): 1. Max. width 297 mm 2. Min. width 105 mm 3. Max. length 1,260 mm 4. Min. length 128 mm

Original Weight:	52 – 105 g/m ² (14 – 28 lb)
Table Capacity:	30 sheets (80 g/m ² , 22 lb)
Original Standard Position:	Center
Separation:	FRR
Original Transport:	Roller transport
Original Feed Order:	From the top original
Reproduction Range:	50 – 200%
Power Source:	24 and 5 Vdc (from the main frame)
Power Consumption:	25 W
Dimensions (W x D x H):	550 mm x 470 mm x 90 mm
Weight:	Not above 7 kg (15 lb)

7.4.3 ONE-TRAY PAPER TRAY UNIT

Paper Size	A5 to A3, 5 ¹ / ₂ " x 8 ¹ / ₂ " SEF to 11" x 17"	
Paper Weight:	60 – 105 g/m ² , 16 – 28 lb	
Tray Capacity:	500 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb) x 1 tray	
Paper Feed System:	Feed roller and friction pad	
Paper Height Detection:	4 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, Near end)	
Power Source:	1. 24 Vdc and 5Vdc (from the copier/printer): 2. 120 Vac (120 V version) from the copier/printer when the optional tray heater is installed 3. 220 – 240 Vac (230 V version) from the copier/printer when the optional tray heater is installed	
Power Consumption:	Max:	20 W (Copying/printing) 23 W (Optional Tray Heater On)
	Average:	13 W (Copying/printing) 15 W (Optional Tray Heater On)
Weight:	12 kg (26.4 lb)	
Size (W x D x H):	550 mm x 520 mm x 134 mm	

7.4.4 TWO-TRAY PAPER TRAY UNIT

Paper Size	A5 to A3, 5 ¹ / ₂ " x 8 ¹ / ₂ " SEF to 11" x 17"
Paper Weight:	60 – 105 g/m ² , 16 – 28 lb
Tray Capacity:	500 sheets (80 g/m ² , 20 lb) x 2 trays

Optional Equipment

Paper Feed System:	Feed roller and friction pad	
Paper Height Detection:	4 steps (100%, 70%, 30%, Near end)	
Power Source:	1. 24 Vdc and 5Vdc (from the copier/printer): 2. 120 Vac (120 V version) from the copier/printer when the optional tray heater is installed 3. 220 – 240 Vac (230 V version) from the copier/printer when the optional tray heater is installed	
Power Consumption:	Max:	30 W (Copying/printing) 23 W (Optional Tray Heater On)
	Average:	17 W (Copying/printing) 15 W (Optional Tray Heater On)
Weight:	25 kg (55 lb)	
Size (W x D x H):	550 mm x 520 mm x 271 mm	

7.4.5 ONE-BIN TRAY

Paper Size:	Width: 140 ~ 297 mm
	Length: 140 ~ 432 mm
Output Standard Position:	Center
Paper Weight:	60 ~ 105 g/m ² , 16 ~ 28 lb
Tray Capacity:	100 sheets (A4 LEF 80 g/m ² , 20 lb)
Power Source:	5 VDC, 24 VDC (from the copier)
Power Consumption:	Max. 20 W
Weight:	1.55 kg (Base unit: 1.1 kg, Tray: 0.45 kg)
Size (W x D x H):	461 mm x 478 mm x 104 mm
	(508 mm x 478 mm x 104 mm when tray extended)

B813

DOCUMENT FEEDER DF2000

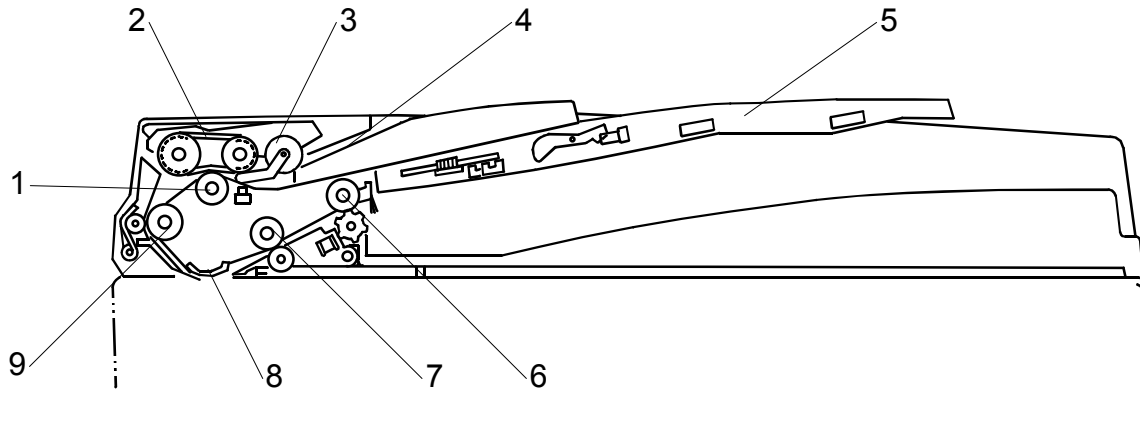
DOCUMENT FEEDER DF2000 B813

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. OVERALL INFORMATION	1
1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	1
1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT	2
1.3 DRIVE LAYOUT	3
2. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS	4
2.1 ADF B813 AND ARDF B814	4
2.2 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION	5
2.3 PICK-UP AND SEPARATION	7
2.4 ORIGINAL TRANSPORT AND EXIT MECHANISM	8
2.5 STAMP	9
2.6 TIMING CHARTS	10
2.6.1 A3, STAMP MODE	11
2.7 JAM DETECTION.....	12
2.8 OVERALL ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT	13
2.9 FREE RUN	14
3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	15
3.1 EXTERIOR COVERS	15
3.1.1 REAR COVER.....	15
3.1.2 ORIGINAL TABLE	15
3.1.3 FRONT COVER	15
3.1.4 ORIGINAL ENTRANCE GUIDE	15
3.1.5 DF FEED COVER	16
3.2 FEED UNIT	16
3.3 SEPARATION ROLLER	16
3.4 PICK-UP ROLLER.....	17
3.5 FEED BELT	17
3.6 ORIGINAL SENSORS (WIDTH, LENGTH, TRAILING EDGE).....	18
3.7 ORIGINAL SET SENSOR	19
3.8 TRANSPORT MOTOR	19
3.9 FEED COVER OPEN SENSOR/ FEED CLUTCH/ROM/DF DRIVE BOARD	20
3.10 REGISTRATION SENSOR.....	21
3.11 PICK-UP SOLENOID	21
3.12 STAMP SOLENOID	22

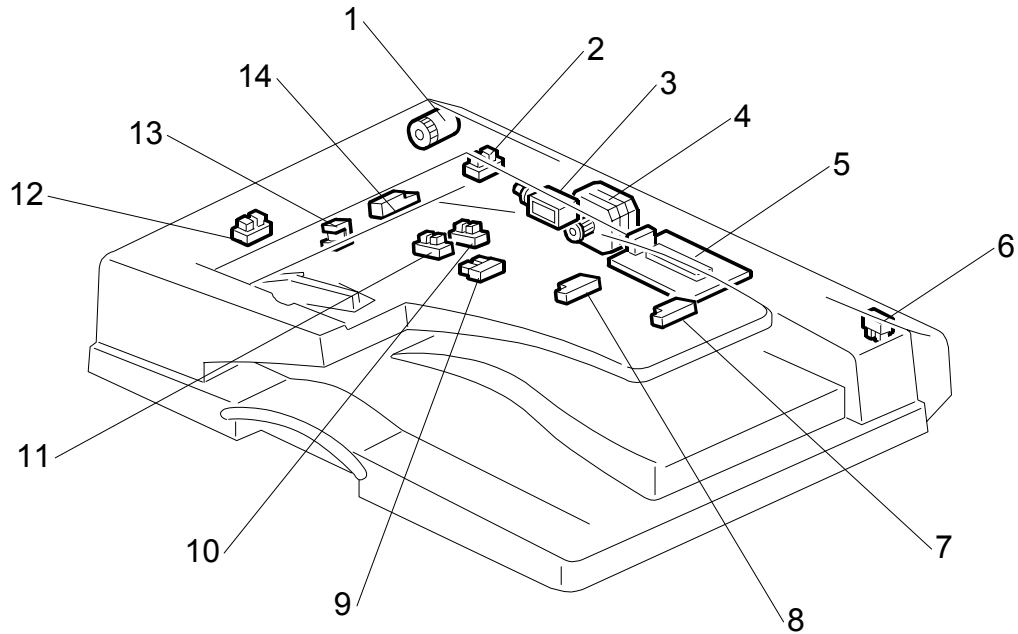
1. OVERALL INFORMATION

1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



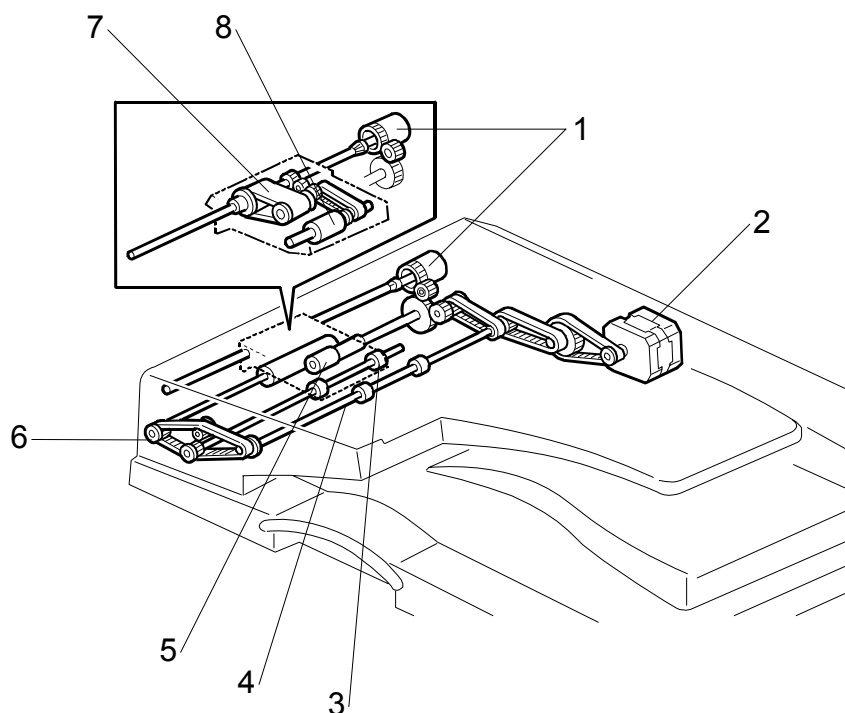
1. Separation roller	6. Original exit roller
2. Original feed belt	7. 2nd transport roller
3. Pick-up roller	8. Original exposure guide
4. Original entrance guide	9. 1st transport roller
5. Original table	

1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. DF feed clutch	8. Original length sensor 1
2. Feed cover open sensor	9. Original trailing edge sensor
3. DF pick-up solenoid	10. Original width sensor 1
4. DF transport motor	11. Original width sensor 2
5. DF drive board	12. Original set sensor
6. DF position sensor	13. Stamp solenoid
7. Original length sensor 2	14. Registration sensor

1.3 DRIVE LAYOUT



1. DF feed clutch	5. Separation roller
2. DF transport motor	6. 1st transport roller
3. 2nd transport roller	7. Original feed belt
4. Exit roller	8. Pick-up roller

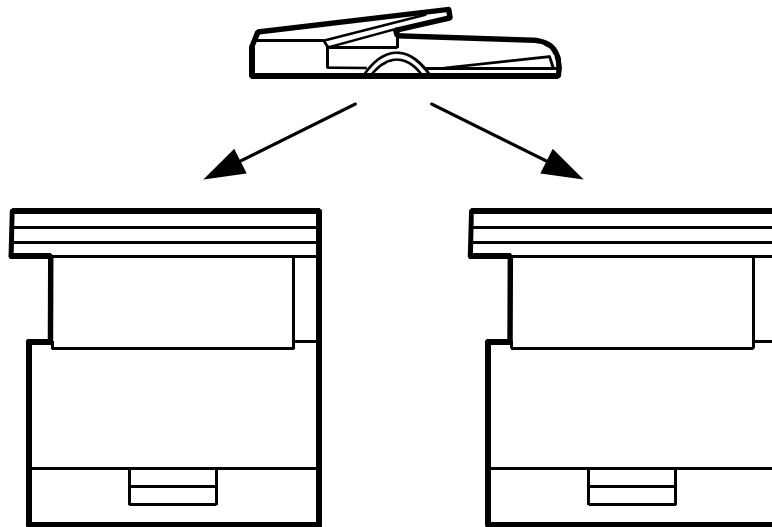
2. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 ADF B813 AND ARDF B814

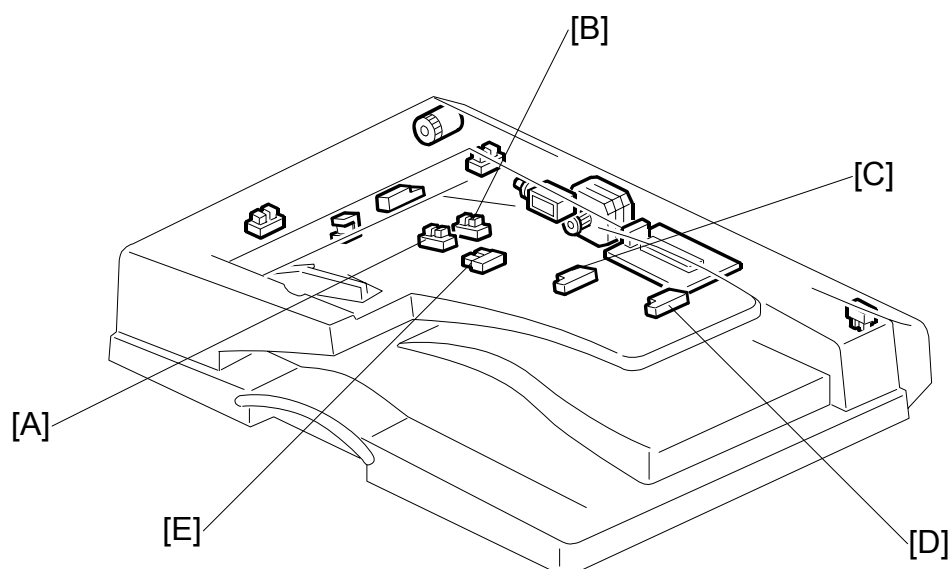
ADF B813 and ARDF B814 are both applicable to model B277 and model B229. When the copier starts, the controller of the document feeder communicates with the controller of the copier. The document-feeder controller checks the line speed of the copier, and decides the line speed of the document feeder. The table lists the line speeds of ADF B813 and ARDF B814.

	B277	B229
ADF B813	100 mm/sec	100 mm/sec (Color mode: 66.7 mm/sec)
ARDF B814	100 mm/sec	100 mm/sec (Color mode: 66.7 mm/sec)

NOTE: The line speed of B277 is 100 mm/sec; the line speed of B229 is 100 mm/sec (Color mode: 66.7 mm/sec).



2.2 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION



The DF uses two width sensors (width sensor 1 [A] and width sensor 2 [B]) to detect the original width, and two length sensors (length sensor 1 [C] and length sensor 2 [D]) to detect the original length. The DF detects the original size based on the combination of inputs from these sensors, as indicated in the table on the next page.

If using a non-standard original size, the user must input the original length at the operation panel.

The original width sensors have four possible output states: P1 to P4. The output depends on the position of the ridges on the toothed plate attached to the original rear fence.

During one-to-one copying, copy paper is fed to the registration roller in advance to increase the copy speed. The original exit trailing edge sensor [E] monitors the stack of originals in the feeder, and detects when the trailing edge of the last page has been fed in. This stops the ADF from causing the feed of an unwanted extra sheet of copy paper.

ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION

		NA	EU	Original Length 1	Original Length 2	P1	P2	P3	P4
1	A3 (297 x 420)	X	○	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON
2	B4 (257 x 364)	X	○	ON	ON	-	-	ON	-
3	A4 SEF (210 x 297)	X	○	ON	-	-	ON	-	-
4	A4 LEF (297 x 210)	X	○	-	-	-	-	-	ON
5	B5 SEF (182 x 257)	X	○	ON	-	ON	-	-	-
6	B5 LEF (257 x 182)	X	○	-	-	-	-	ON	-
7	A5 SEF (148 x 210)	X	○	-	-	ON	-	-	-
8	A5 LEF (210 x 148)	X	○	-	-	-	ON	-	-
9	11" x 17"	○ ₁	X	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON
10	11" x 15"	● ₁	X	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON
11	10" x 14"	○	X	ON	ON	-	-	ON	-
12	8 1/2" x 14"	○ ₂	X	ON	ON	-	ON	-	-
13	8 1/2" x 13"	X	○ ₄	ON	ON	-	ON	-	-
14	8" x 13"	● ₂	● ₄	ON	ON	-	ON	-	-
15	8 1/2" x 11" SEF	○ ₃	X	ON	-	-	ON	-	-
16	11" x 8 1/2" LEF	○	X	-	-	-	-	-	ON
17	8" x 10" SEF	● ₃	X	ON	-	-	ON	-	-
18	5 1/2" x 8 1/2" SEF	○	X	-	-	ON	-	-	-
19	8 1/2" x 5 1/2" LEF	○	X	-	-	-	ON	-	-

NA: America (North, Middle, South) EU: Europe, Asia, China, Taiwan

X: No ○: Yes ON: Paper present

○₁, ●₁: In NA, original size 11" x 15" is detected as 11" x 17"

○₂, ●₂: In NA, original size 8" x 13" is detected as 8 1/2" x 14"

○₃, ●₃: In NA, original size 8" x 10" is detected as 8 1/2" x 11"

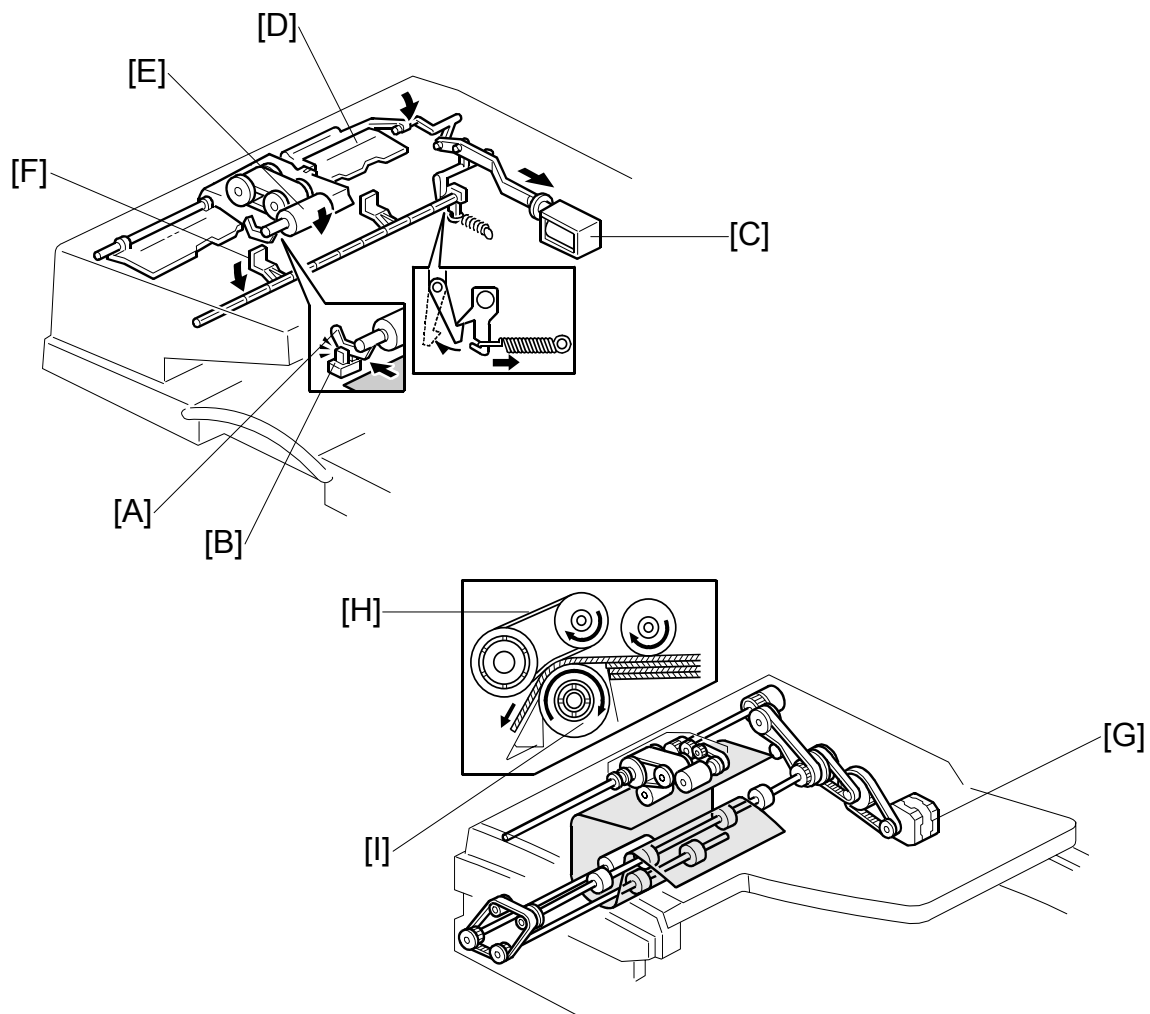
○₄, ●₄: In EU, original size 8" x 13" is detected as 8 1/2" x 13"

- Original Width Sensor States -

Width Sensor 1	High	Low	Low	High
Width Sensor 2	High	High	Low	Low
Detection State	P1	P2	P3	P4

Low = Blocked High = Open

2.3 PICK-UP AND SEPARATION

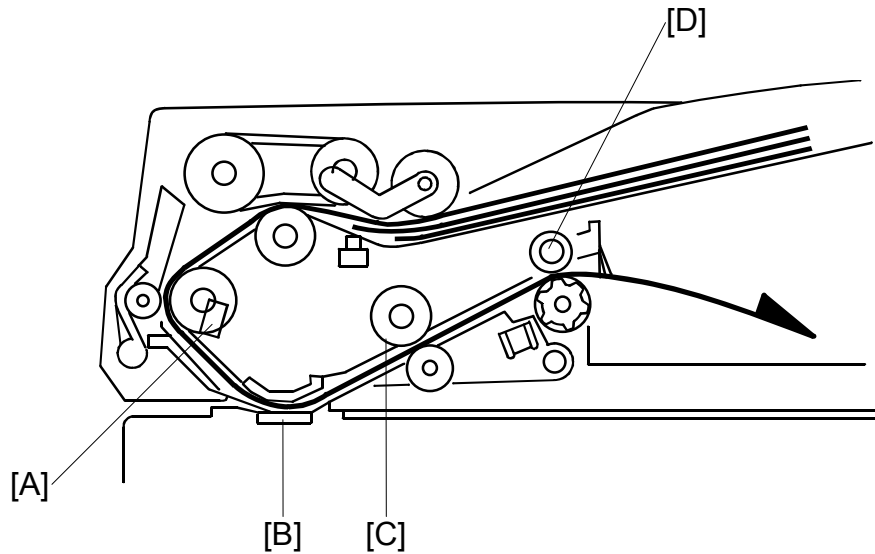


An FRR (feed and reverse roller) system is used.

Setting original(s) onto the feed table lifts the original set sensor feeler [A], causing the original set sensor [B] to issue a signal informing the main CPU that the DF is ready to start feeding.

When the Start key (Ⓢ) is pressed, the DF pick-up solenoid [C] turns on, causing the transport guide [D] and pick-up roller [E] to lower onto the original, while at the same time causing the original stoppers [F] to drop down to clear the feed path for the original. After 200 ms, the DF transport motor [G] turns on, feeding the top original page to the paper feed belt [H], where it is separated by the separation roller [I].

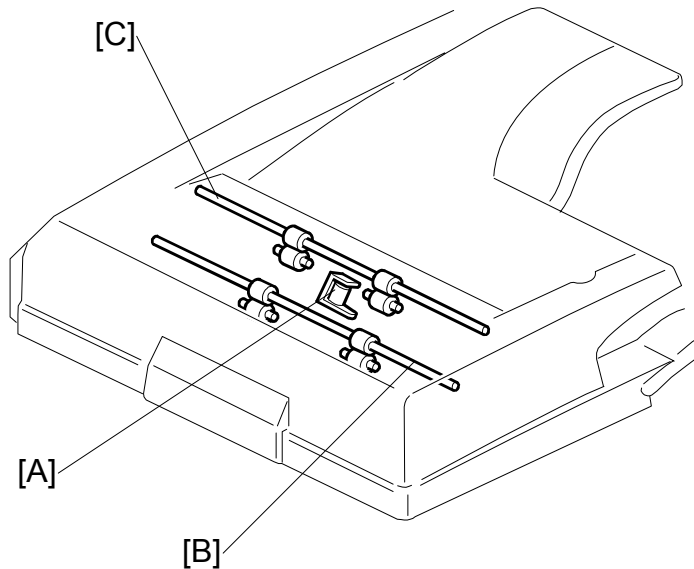
2.4 ORIGINAL TRANSPORT AND EXIT MECHANISM



When the leading edge of the original reaches the registration sensor at [A], the DF transport motor turns off. After a short time the DF transport motor turns on again. The original is fed past the DF exposure glass [B], where it is scanned. It is then fed through to the 2nd transport roller [C] and fed out by the exit roller [D].

The DF transport motor uses a constant speed to feed the original up to the registration sensor. When the motor turns on again to feed the original to the DF exposure glass, however, the speed depends on the selected reproduction ratio. At 100%, the speed is 100 mm/s (Color mode: 66.7mm/sec).

2.5 STAMP



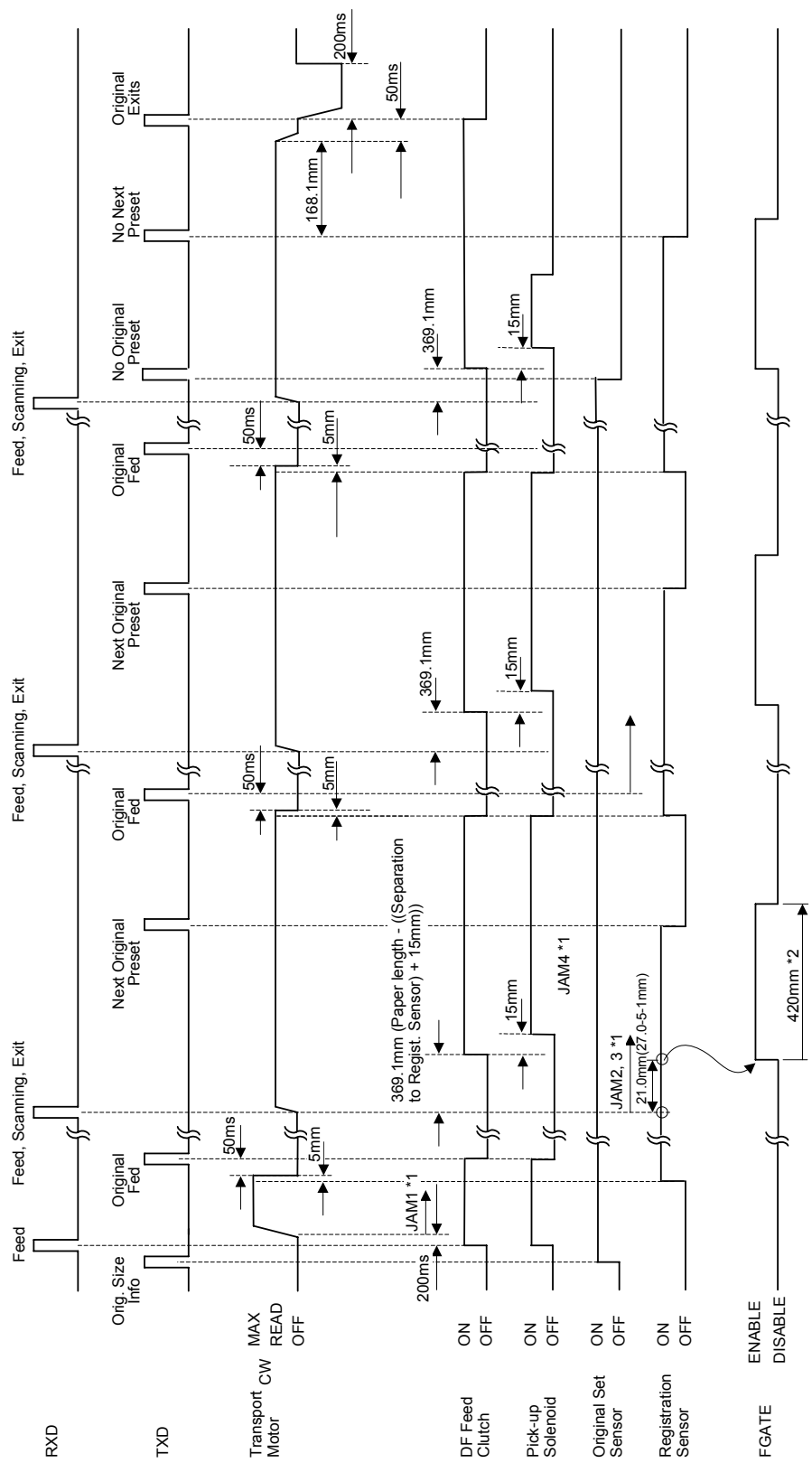
This function is only for fax mode. The fax unit includes the stamp.

The stamp solenoid [A] is located between the 2nd transport roller [B] and the exit roller [C]. The copier controls this solenoid directly.

When the original reaches the stamp position, the DF transport motor stops. Provided that the page was sent successfully (immediate transmission) or stored successfully (memory transmission), the stamp solenoid then comes on 300 ms after the DF motor stops. After stamping, the DF transport motor resumes feeding, at about 1.3 times the normal speed.

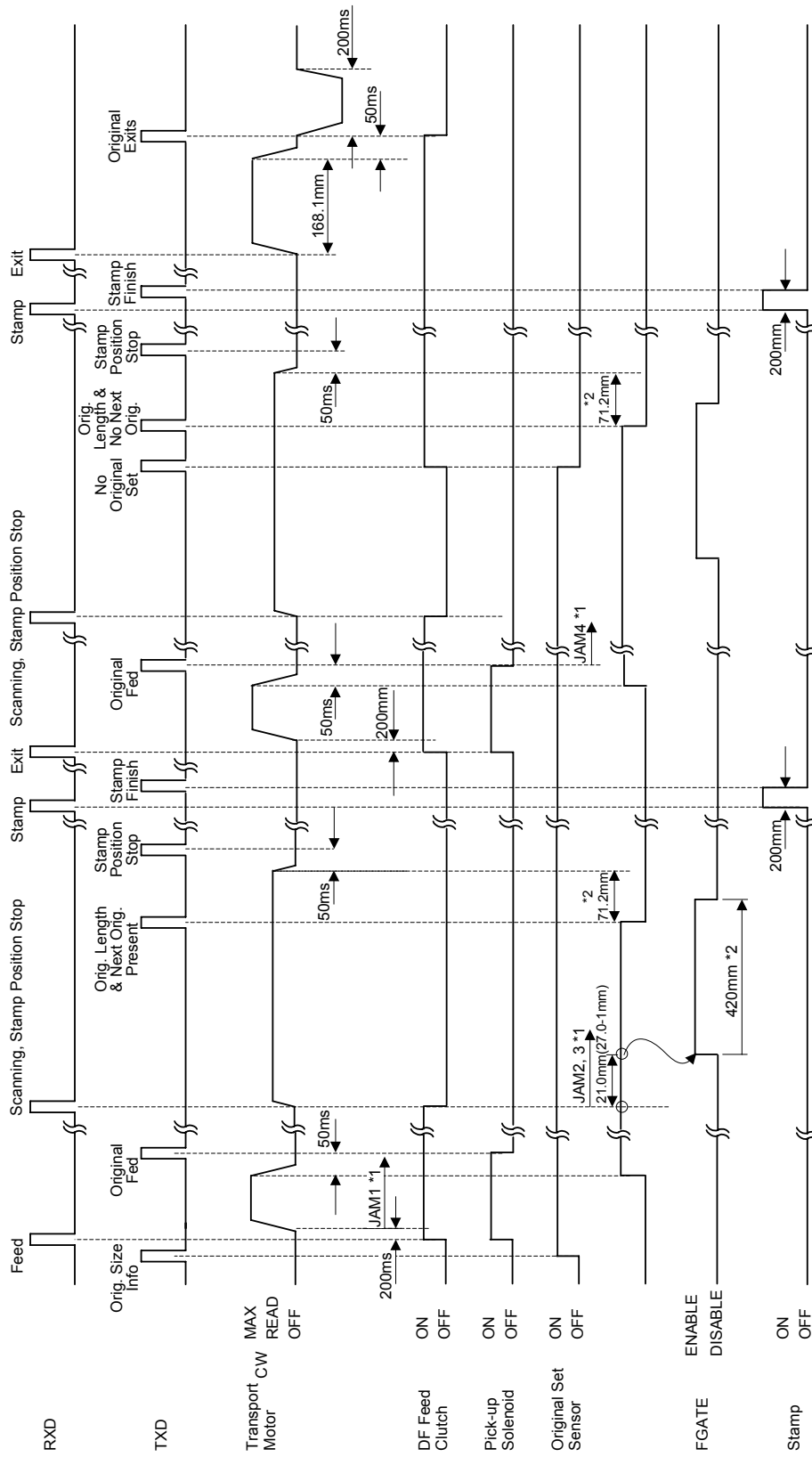
The positioning of the stamp on the original can be adjusted using SP6-010.

2.6 TIMING CHARTS



*1 For information about jam conditions, see Section 2.6.
*2 F Gate: This signal goes high when the laser start to wire a pate to the drum.
The distance depends on SP mode setting 6-006-2 and -3.

2.6.1 A3, STAMP MODE



*1 For information about jam conditions, see Section 2.6.

*2 F Gate: This signal goes high when the laser start to wire a pate to the drum.
The distance depends on SP mode setting 6-006-2 and -3.

2.7 JAM DETECTION

JAM 1: If the registration sensor fails to turn on within x_1 ms after the DF transport motor comes on to feed the original from the original tray.

$$x_1 = 2267 \text{ ms}$$

JAM 2: If the registration sensor fails to turn off within x_2 ms after the DF transport motor comes on to feed the original from the original tray.

$$x_2 = 1234 \text{ ms}$$

JAM 3: If there is no original at the registration sensor when scanning is started, even though the sensor had already turned on.

JAM 4: The current original is stopped after the registration sensor detects its leading edge, but the previous original is still at the scanning position.

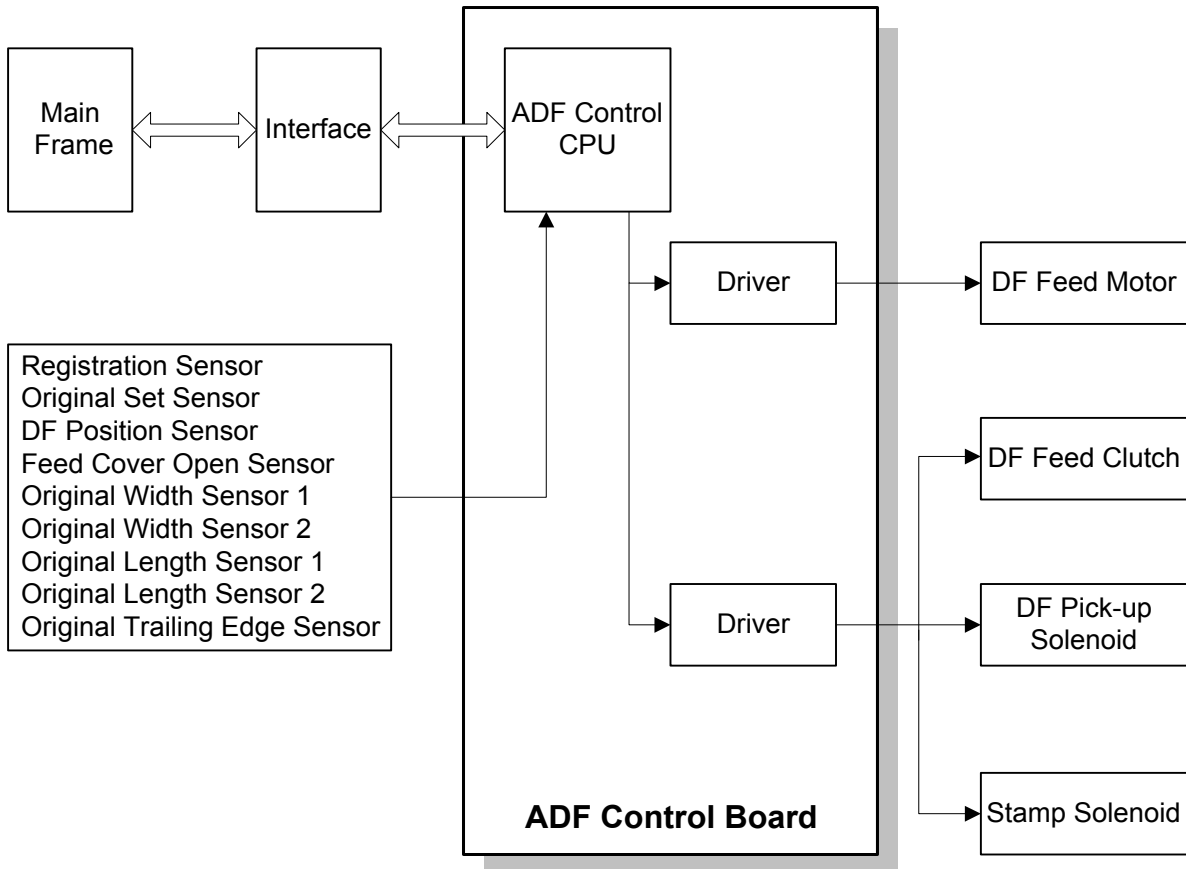
JAM 5: If the original stopped at the stamp position is removed.

JAM 6: If the cover is opened or the ADF is lifted up while the ADF is in operation.

JAM 7: If the DF gate signal (indicating that the original is now in the correct position for scanning) is not asserted when the original trailing edge passes the DF exposure glass.
JAM 7 occurs when the original is pulled out while it is being scanned.

2.8 OVERALL ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT

The DF CPU controls the DF transport motor, DF feed clutch, DF pick-up solenoid, and stamp solenoid. The DF CPU also monitors all sensors and provides updated status when prompted at regular intervals by the mainframe, which may then take action based on this information. The DF/mainframe connection is checked automatically immediately after the mainframe is powered on.



2.9 FREE RUN

You can use DIP switch 100 (on the DF control board) to carry out a one-sided free run.

Mode\Bits	Bit0	Bit1	Bit2	Bit3
Normal	Off	Off	Off	Off
FR with paper	On	Off	Off	Off
Feed/Transport Motor Test	On	On	Off	Off
Feed Solenoid Test	Off	Off	On	Off
Feed Clutch Test	On	Off	On	Off
Stamp Solenoid Test	Off	On	On	Off
Special I/F Test	Off	Off	Off	On
FR without paper	On	Off	Off	On
Transport Motor Test	On	On	Off	On

FR: Free run

Procedure

1. Set bit 1 and/or bit 2 on SW100 (on the DF control board) to ON.
2. Set originals on the original table.
3. The free run starts automatically after about 2 seconds.
4. To stop the run, set SW100 bits 1 and 2 back to OFF. To ensure that the system correctly resets, turn power off and then back on.

Free Run Process

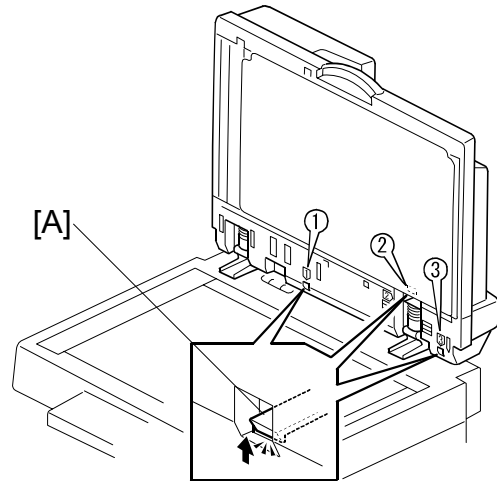
1. Set originals on the DF table.
2. The first original sheet feeds into the DF.
3. The sensor detects the original.
4. The DF outputs the original to the exit tray.
5. Steps 2 through 4 repeat for each subsequent original sheet. When all originals have been fed, the DF stops and waits for more.

3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3.1 EXTERIOR COVERS

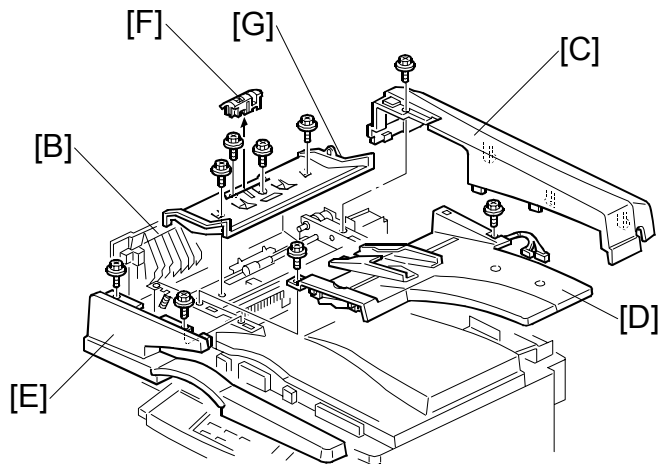
3.1.1 REAR COVER

1. Lift the DF.
2. Unhook the three latches [A] in the order marked on the DF body.
3. Close the DF.
4. Open the DF feed cover [B].
5. Rear cover [C] (⚙ x 1)



3.1.2 ORIGINAL TABLE

1. Rear cover (☛ 3.1.1)
2. Original table [D] (⚙ x 2, 📐 x 2)



3.1.3 FRONT COVER

1. Open the DF feed cover [B].
2. Original table. (☛ 3.1.2)
3. Front cover [E] (⚙ x 2)

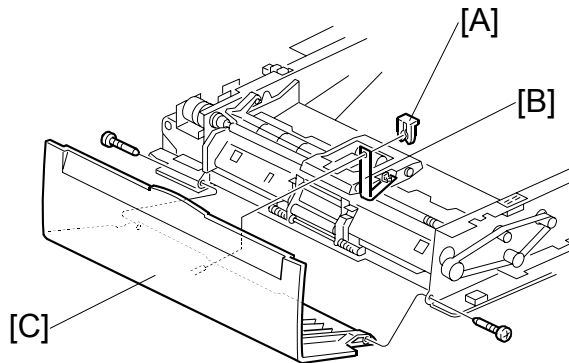
3.1.4 ORIGINAL ENTRANCE GUIDE

1. Feed unit (☛ 3.2)
2. Original table (☛ 3.1.2)
3. Roller cover [F]
4. Original entrance guide [G] (⚙ x 4)

FEED UNIT

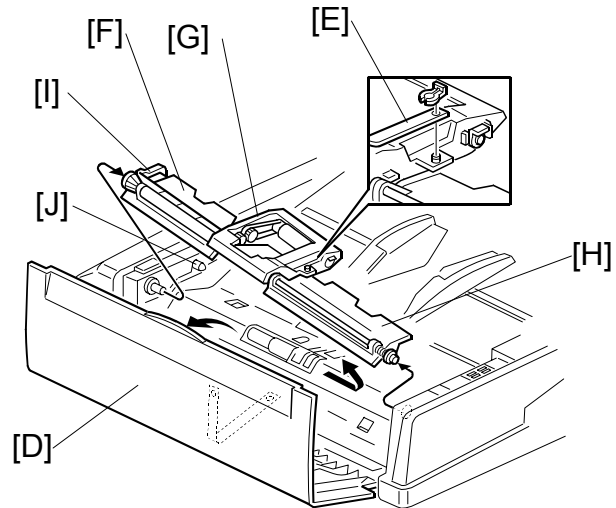
3.1.5 DF FEED COVER

1. Rear cover (☞ 3.1.1)
2. Original table (☞ 3.1.2)
3. Front cover (☞ 3.1.3)
4. Clip [A]
5. Strap [B] (☞ x 1)
6. DF feed cover [C] (☞ x 2)



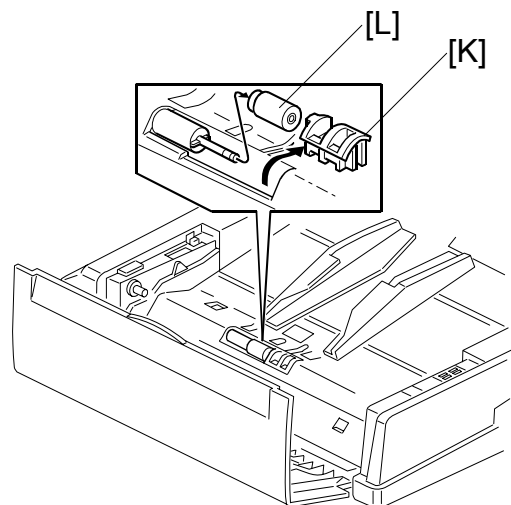
3.2 FEED UNIT

1. Open the DF feed cover [D] and detach the strap [E] (☞ x 1).
2. Raise the front guide flap [F] to about a 45-degree angle, and push the feed unit [G] into the spring so that it comes free.
NOTE: 1) The feed unit comes off very easily if you first lift flap [H] to about a 45-degree angle.
2) When reinstalling, be sure that the lever [I] is above the pin [J].

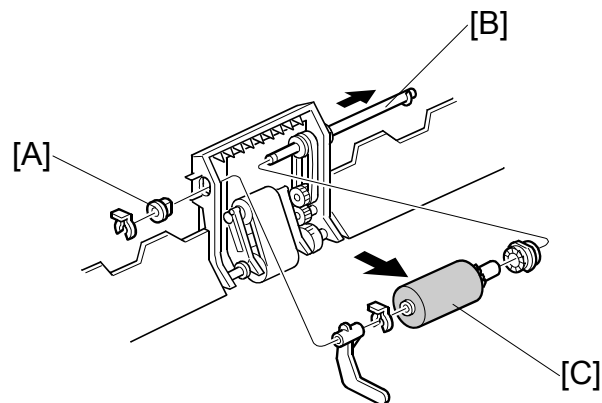


3.3 SEPARATION ROLLER

1. Feed unit (☞ 3.2)
2. Roller cover [K]
3. Separation roller [L] (☞ x 1).

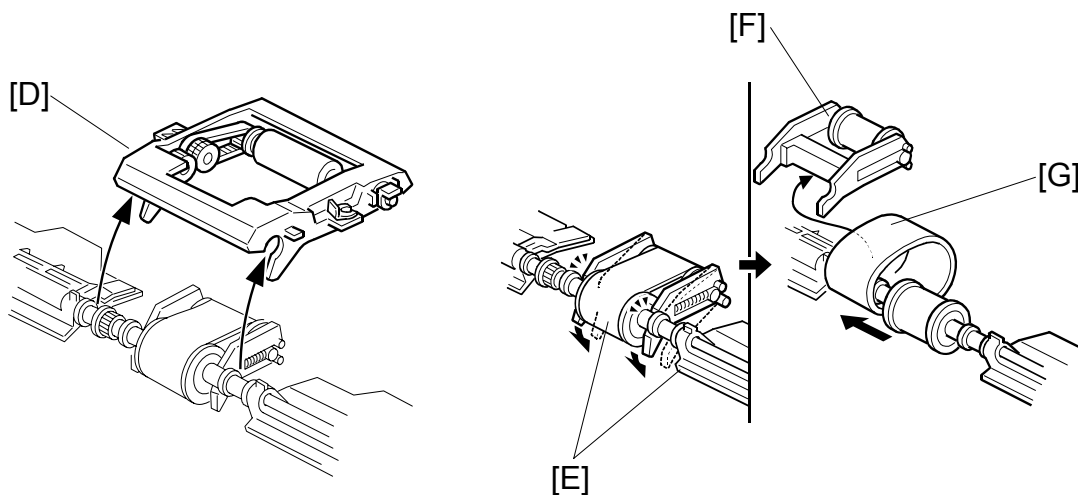


3.4 PICK-UP ROLLER



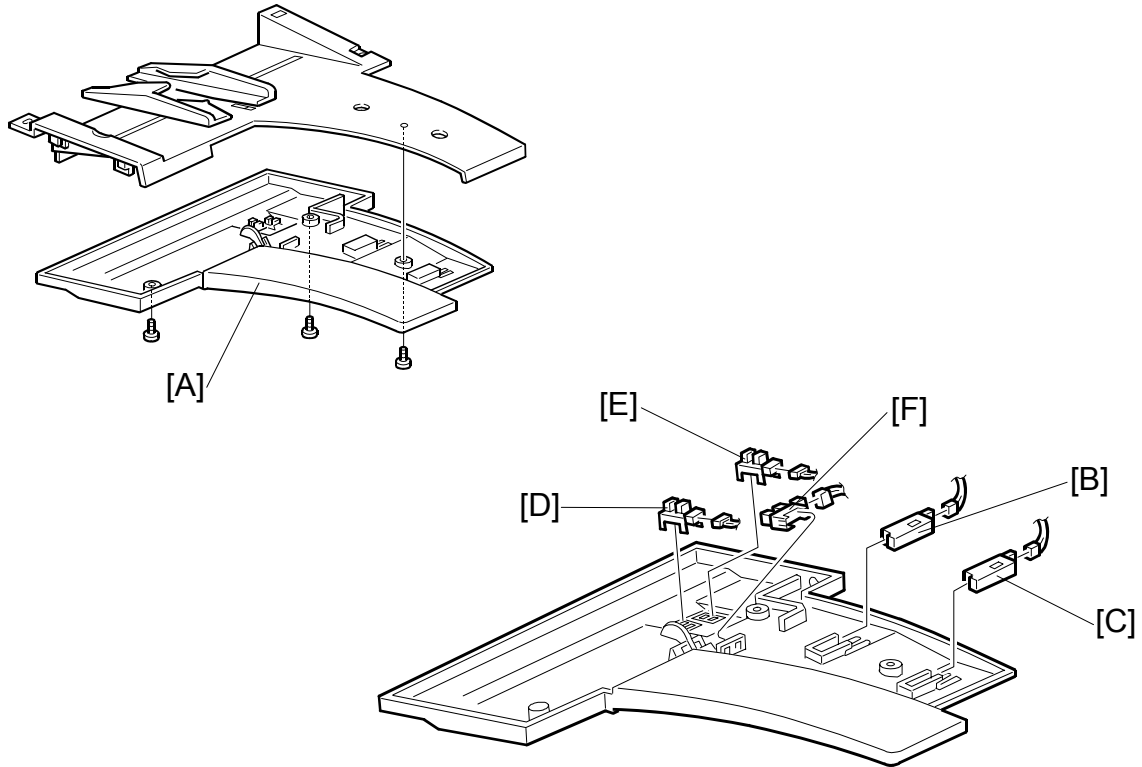
1. Feed unit (➡ 3.2)
2. Remove 2 clip rings and 1 bushing [A]
3. Pull the shaft [B] part way out at the gear end, so that the pick-up roller [C] can be taken off.

3.5 FEED BELT



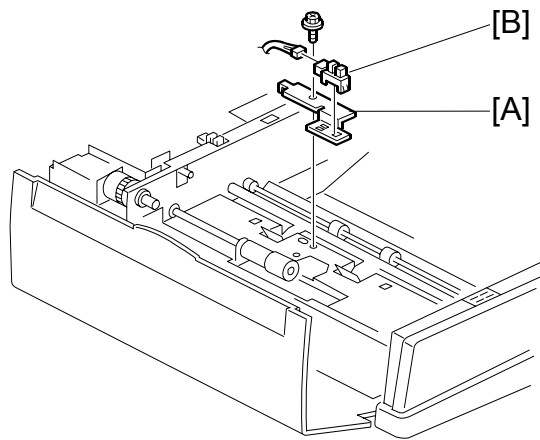
1. Feed unit (➡ 3.2)
2. Pick-up roller housing [D]
3. Push down on the lower wings [E] of the tensioning piece [F], so that the tensioning piece comes free of the shaft.
4. Take the tensioning piece out, and then remove the belt [G].

3.6 ORIGINAL SENSORS (WIDTH, LENGTH, TRAILING EDGE)



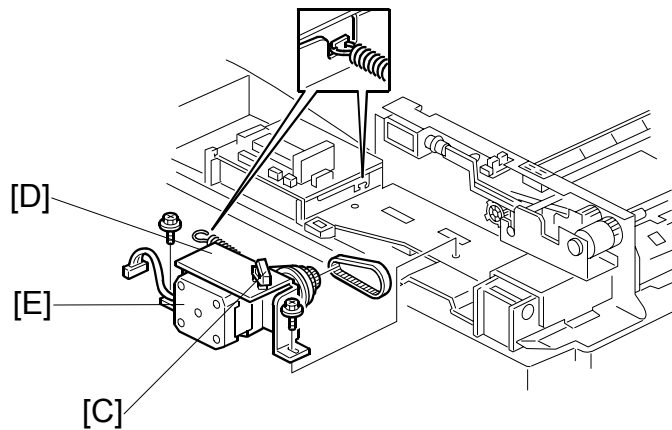
1. Original table (☞ 3.1.2)
2. Sensor platform [A] (🔩 x 3).
3. Length sensors [B], [C] (🔌 x 1 on each sensor)
NOTE: Replace both sensors at the same time, together with the wiring and connectors.
4. Width sensors [D], [E], and trailing edge sensor [F] (🔌 x 1 on each sensor)
NOTE: Replace all three sensors at the same time, together with the wiring and connectors.

3.7 ORIGINAL SET SENSOR



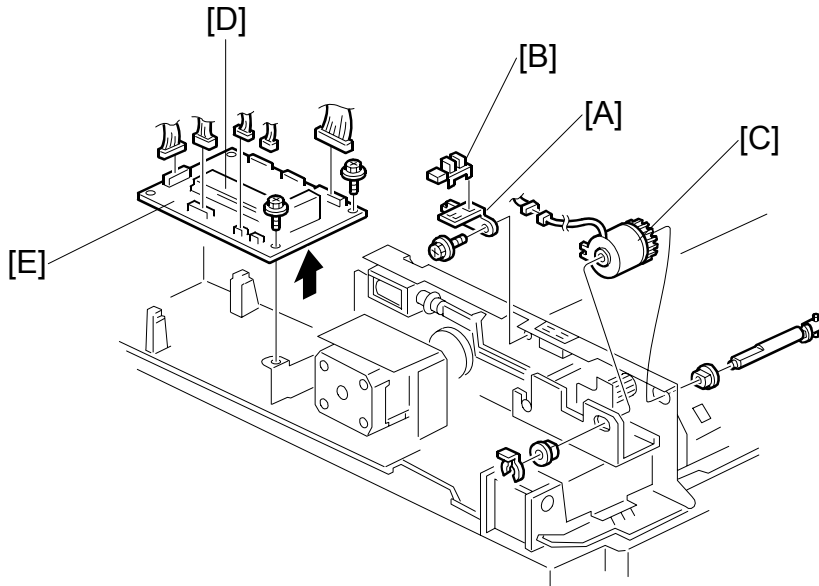
1. Original entrance guide (☛ 3.1.4)
2. Sensor bracket [A] (🔩 x 1)
3. Original set sensor [B] (🔌 x 1)

3.8 TRANSPORT MOTOR



1. Rear cover (☛ 3.1.1)
2. Open the wire clamp [C] at the top of the motor bracket [D].
3. Motor bracket [D] (🔩 x 2 , 1 spring)
NOTE: Unhook the spring at the board side.
4. Transport motor [E] (🔩 x 2, 🔌 x 1)

3.9 FEED COVER OPEN SENSOR/ FEED CLUTCH/ROM/DF DRIVE BOARD



Exterior

1. Rear cover (☛ 3.1.1)

Feed Cover Open Sensor

2. Sensor bracket [A] (☛ x 1)
3. Feed cover open sensor [B] (☛ x 1)

Feed Clutch

2. Feed unit (☛ 3.2)
3. Feed clutch [C] (☛ x 1, 1 bushing, ☛ x 1).
NOTE: Pull the shaft inward until the clutch can be removed.

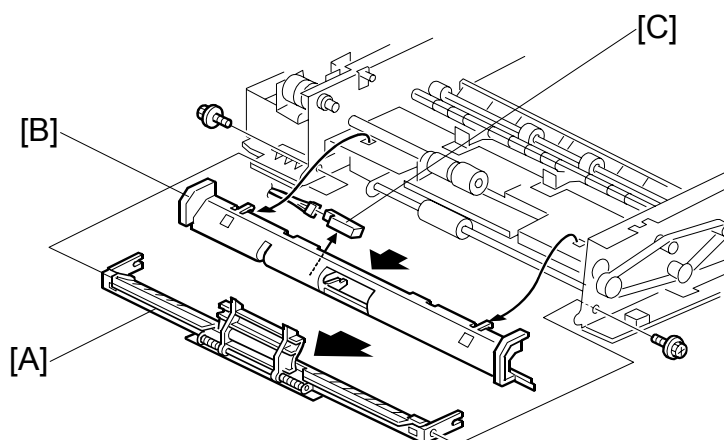
ROM

2. Replace the ROM [D] on the DF drive board.

DF Drive Board

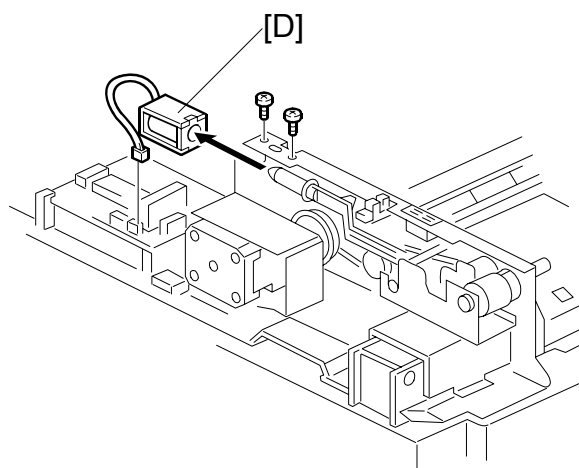
2. DF drive board [E] (☛ x 3, all connectors)

3.10 REGISTRATION SENSOR



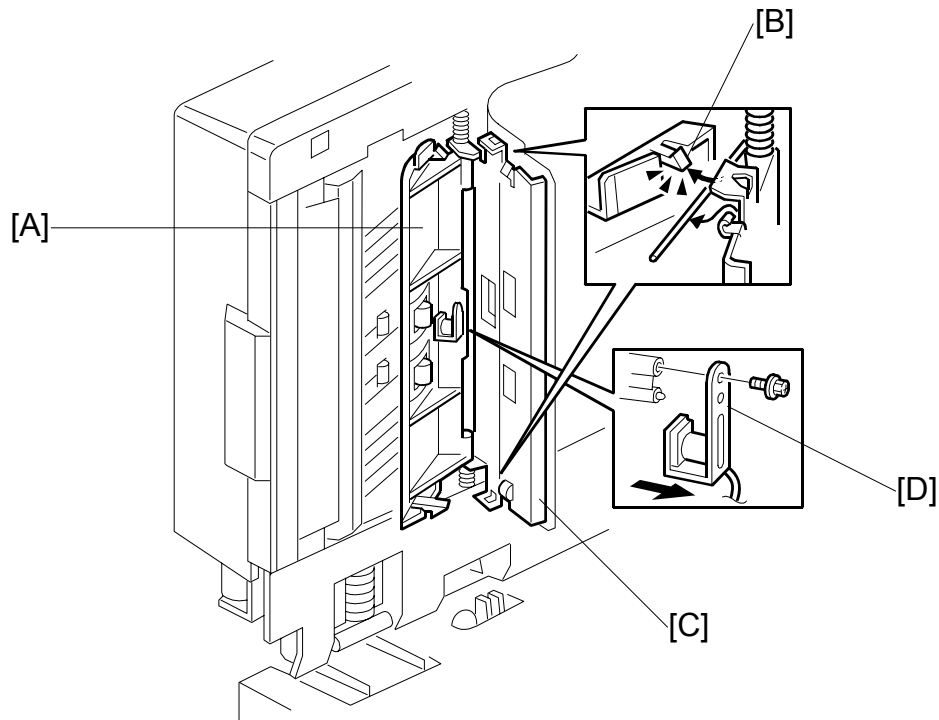
1. DF feed cover (☛ 3.1.5)
2. Original entrance guide (☛ 3.1.4)
3. Outer turn guide [A] (🔩 x 2)
4. Pop out the inner turn guide [B], and remove the registration sensor [C] (🔩 x 1)

3.11 PICK-UP SOLENOID



1. Rear cover (☛ 3.1.1)
2. Pick-up solenoid [D] (🔩 x 2, 📡 x 1)

3.12 STAMP SOLENOID



1. Rear cover (☞ 3.1.1)
2. Disconnect the stamp solenoid connector.
NOTE: Pull out the small connector piece from the large connector. (The large connector itself cannot fit through the hole in the frame.)
3. Lift the ADF upright and pull open the exit guide [A]. Release the front and rear hooks [B] and open the cover [C].
4. Remove the stamp solenoid [D] (⌀ x 1), and pull it out together with the wire.

B814

AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER

DF2010

AUTO REVERSE DOCUMENT FEEDER

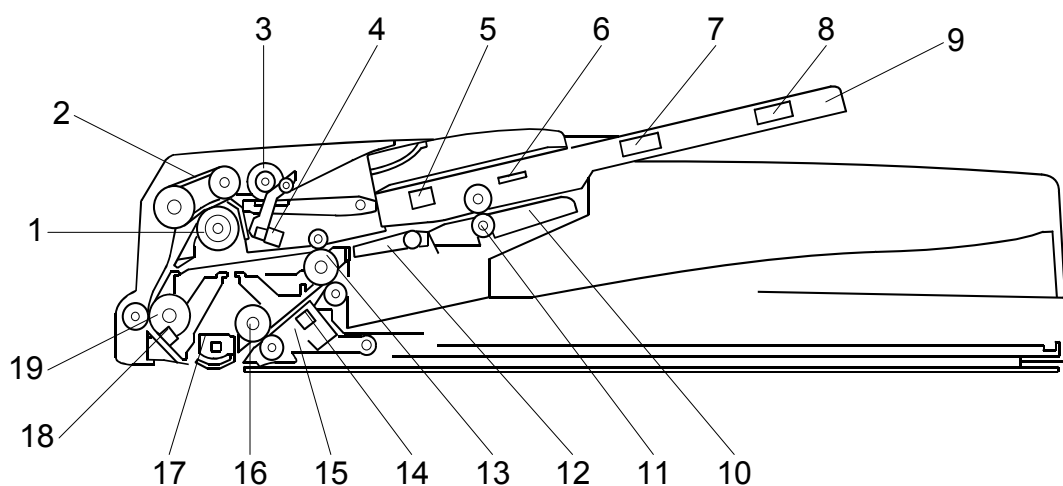
DF2010 B814

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION.....	1
1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT.....	1
1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT.....	2
1.3 DRIVE LAYOUT	3
2. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS	4
2.1 ADF B813 AND ARDF B814	4
2.3 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION	5
2.3 PICK-UP AND SEPARATION	7
2.4 ORIGINAL TRANSPORT AND EXIT	8
2.4.1 SINGLE-SIDED ORIGINALS.....	8
2.4.2 DOUBLE-SIDED ORIGINALS	9
2.4.3 ORIGINAL TRAILING EDGE SENSOR.....	10
2.5 STAMP	11
2.6 TIMING CHARTS	12
2.6.1 SINGLE-SIDED ORIGINAL MODE (A3).....	12
2.6.2 SINGLE-SIDED ORIGINAL MODE (A3, STAMP MODE).....	13
2.6.3 DOUBLE-SIDED ORIGINAL MODE	14
2.6.4 DOUBLE-SIDED ORIGINAL MODE (STAMP MODE)	15
2.7 JAM DETECTION.....	16
2.8 OVERALL ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT.....	17
2.9 FREE RUN	18
3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	19
3.1 DF EXIT TABLE AND COVER	19
3.2 ORIGINAL FEED UNIT.....	20
3.3 LEFT COVER	21
3.4 PICK-UP ROLLER.....	22
3.5 FEED BELT	23
3.6 SEPARATION ROLLER	24
3.7 ORIGINAL SET/ORIGINAL REVERSE SENSORS	25
3.8 ORIGINAL L/W SENSORS, TRAILING EDGE SENSOR	26
3.9 FEED CLUTCH, PICK-UP SOL, TRANSPORT MOTOR, FEED MOTOR...27	
3.10 REGISTRATION SENSOR.....	28
3.11 STAMP SOLENOID AND ORIGINAL EXIT SENSOR	29

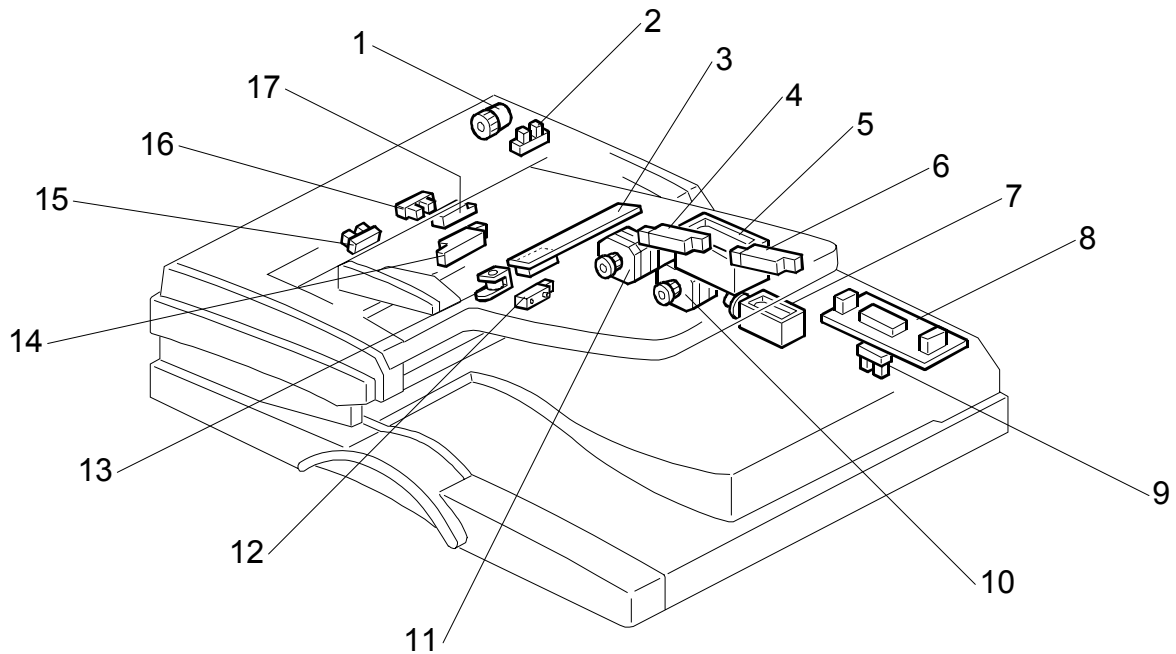
1. OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1.1 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Separation Roller	11. Reverse Roller
2. Paper Feed Belt	12. Junction Gate
3. Pick-up Roller	13. Exit Roller
4. Original Set Sensor	14. Original Exit Sensor
5. Original Trailing Edge Sensor	15. Stamp
6. Original Width Sensor Board	16. 2nd Transport Roller
7. Original Length Sensor 1	17. Original Exposure Guide
8. Original Length Sensor 2	18. Registration Sensor
9. Original Table	19. 1st Transport Roller
10. Reverse Table	

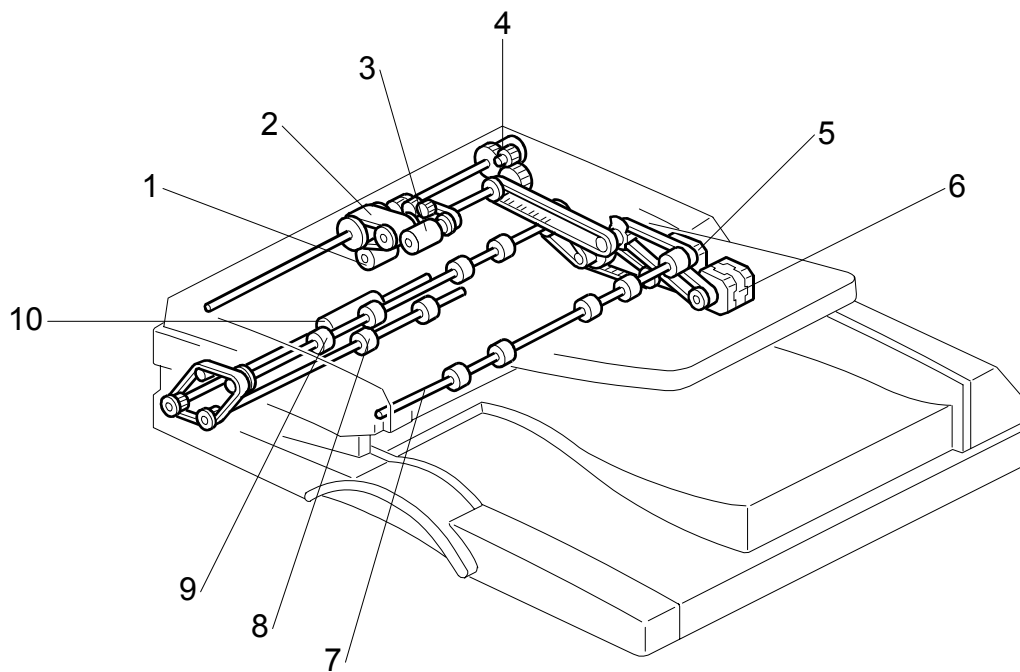
1.2 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. DF Feed Clutch	10. DF Feed Motor
2. Feed Cover Sensor	11. DF Transport Motor
3. Original Width Sensor Board	12. Original Exit Sensor
4. Original Length Sensor 1	13. Stamp Solenoid
5. DF Pick-up Solenoid	14. Original Trailing Edge Sensor
6. Original Length Sensor 2	15. Original Set Sensor
7. Junction Gate Solenoid	16. Original Reverse Sensor
8. DF Drive PCB	17. Registration Sensor
9. DF Position Sensor	

1.3 DRIVE LAYOUT

ARDF DF2010
B814



1. Separation Roller	6. DF Feed Motor
2. Original Feed Belt	7. Reverse Table Roller
3. Pick-up Roller	8. 2nd Transport Roller
4. DF Feed Clutch	9. Exit Roller
5. DF Transport Motor	10. 1st Transport Roller

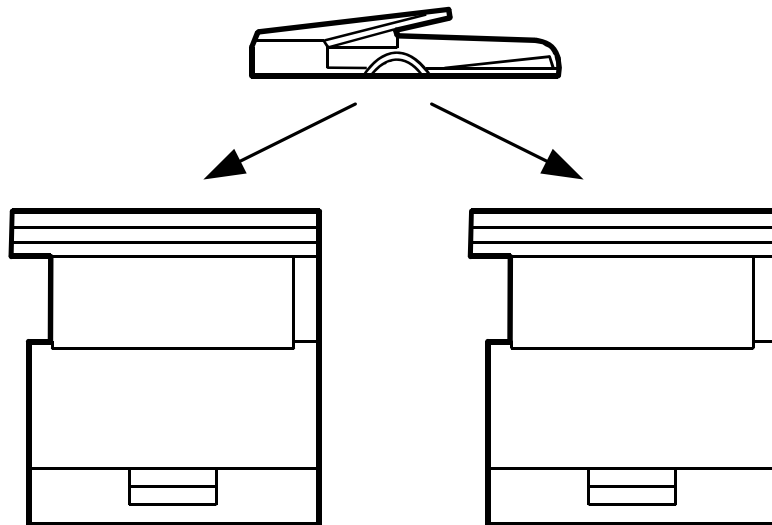
2. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

2.1 ADF B813 AND ARDF B814

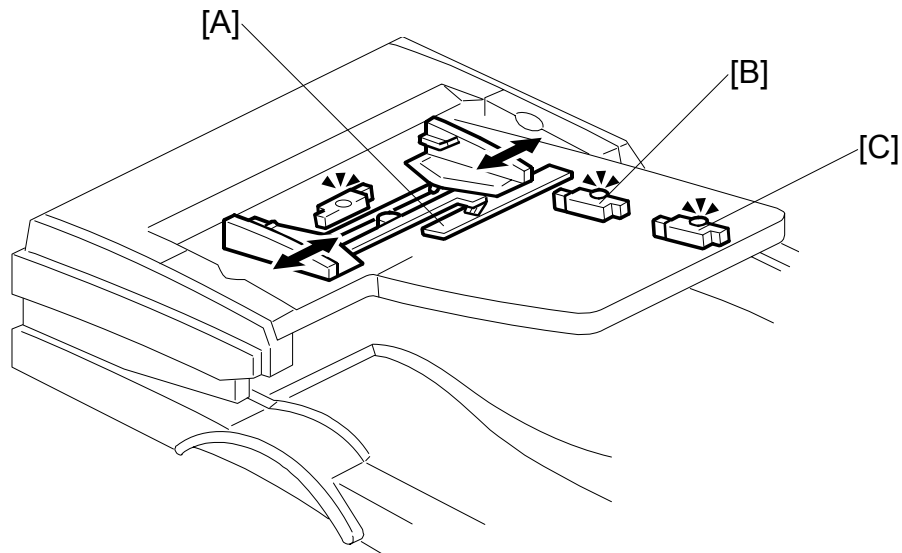
ADF B813 and ARDF B814 are both applicable to model B277 and model B229. When the copier starts, the controller of the document feeder communicates with the controller of the copier. The document-feeder controller checks the line speed of the copier, and decides the line speed of the document feeder. The table lists the line speeds of ADF B813 and ARDF B814.

	B277	B229
ADF B813	100 mm/sec	100 mm/sec (Color mode: 66.7 mm/sec)
ARDF B814	100 mm/sec	100 mm/sec (Color mode: 66.7 mm/sec)

The line speed of B277 is 100 mm/sec; the line speed of B229 is 100 mm/sec (Color mode: 66.7 mm/sec).



2.2 ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION



The original size detection mechanism consists of the original width sensor board [A] and two original length sensors-1 [B] and -2 [C]. Based on the combined output of the length sensors and the width sensor board, the machine can detect the size of the original. This integrated detection mechanism is detailed in the table on the next page.

Note that the width sensor's terminal plate is attached to the original guide, so the widths of the originals must all be the same.

ORIGINAL SIZE DETECTION

		NA	EU	Original Length 1	Original Length 2	P1	P2	P3	P4
1	A3 (297 x 420)	X	○	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON
2	B4 (257 x 364)	X	○	ON	ON	-	-	ON	-
3	A4 SEF (210 x 297)	X	○	ON	-	-	ON	-	-
4	A4 LEF (297 x 210)	X	○	-	-	-	-	-	ON
5	B5 SEF (182 x 257)	X	○	ON	-	ON	-	-	-
6	B5 LEF (257 x 182)	X	○	-	-	-	-	ON	-
7	A5 SEF (148 x 210)	X	○	-	-	ON	-	-	-
8	A5 LEF (210 x 148)	X	○	-	-	-	ON	-	-
9	11" x 17"	○ ₁	X	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON
10	11" x 15"	● ₁	X	ON	ON	-	-	-	ON
11	10" x 14"	○	X	ON	ON	-	-	ON	-
12	8 1/2" x 14"	○ ₂	X	ON	ON	-	ON	-	-
13	8 1/2" x 13"	X	○ ₄	ON	ON	-	ON	-	-
14	8" x 13"	● ₂	● ₄	ON	ON	-	ON	-	-
15	8 1/2" x 11" SEF	○ ₃	X	ON	-	-	ON	-	-
16	11" x 8 1/2" LEF	○	X	-	-	-	-	-	ON
17	8" x 10" SEF	● ₃	X	ON	-	-	ON	-	-
18	5 1/2" x 8 1/2" SEF	○	X	-	-	ON	-	-	-
19	8 1/2" x 5 1/2" LEF	○	X	-	-	-	ON	-	-

NA: America (North, Middle, South) EU: Europe, Asia, China, Taiwan

X: No ○: Yes ON: Paper present

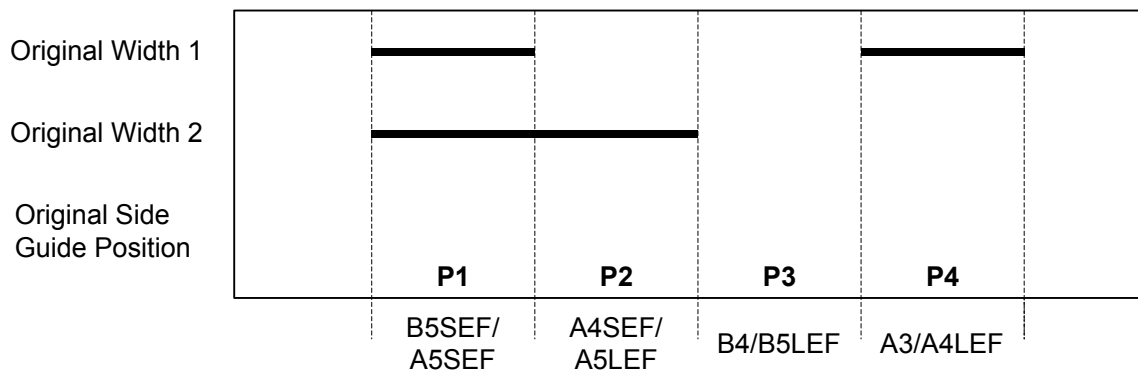
○₁, ●₁: In NA, original size 11" x 15" is detected as 11" x 17"

○₂, ●₂: In NA, original size 8" x 13" is detected as 8 1/2" x 14"

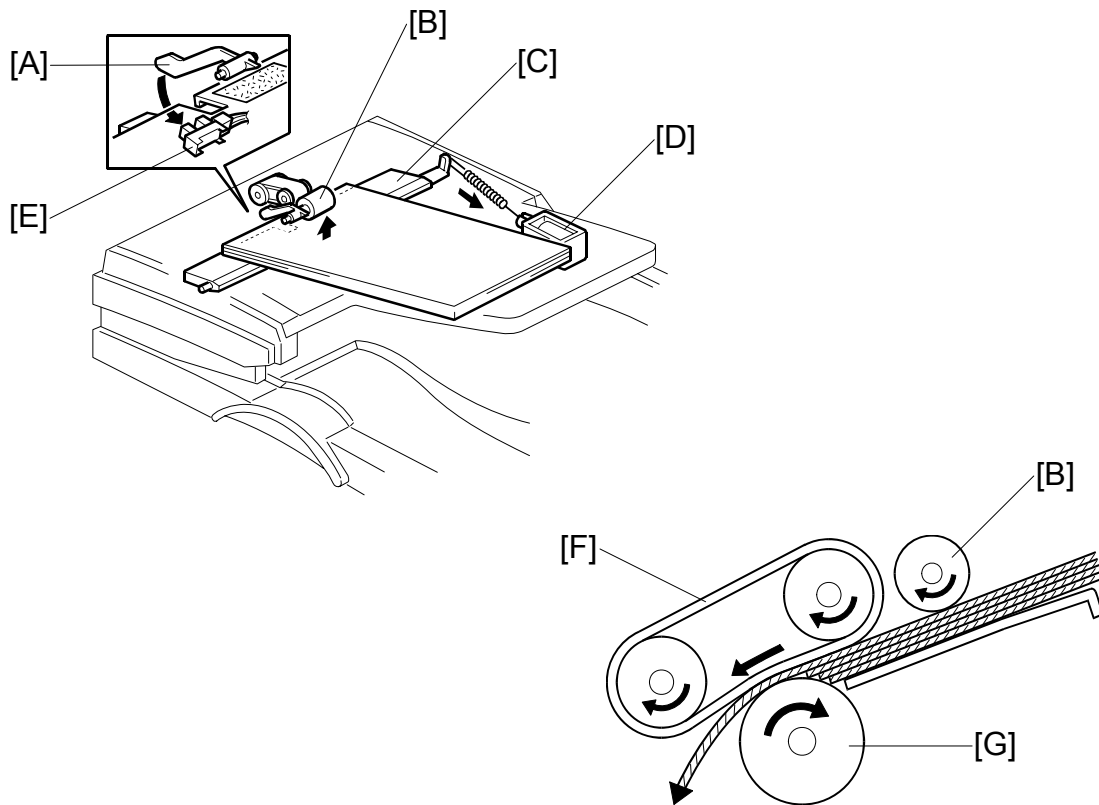
○₃, ●₃: In NA, original size 8" x 10" is detected as 8 1/2" x 11"

○₄, ●₄: In EU, original size 8" x 13" is detected as 8 1/2" x 13"

Original Width Sensor Board



2.3 PICK-UP AND SEPARATION



The original is set with the image facing up. The original pushes actuator [A] and the original set sensor [E] is activated.

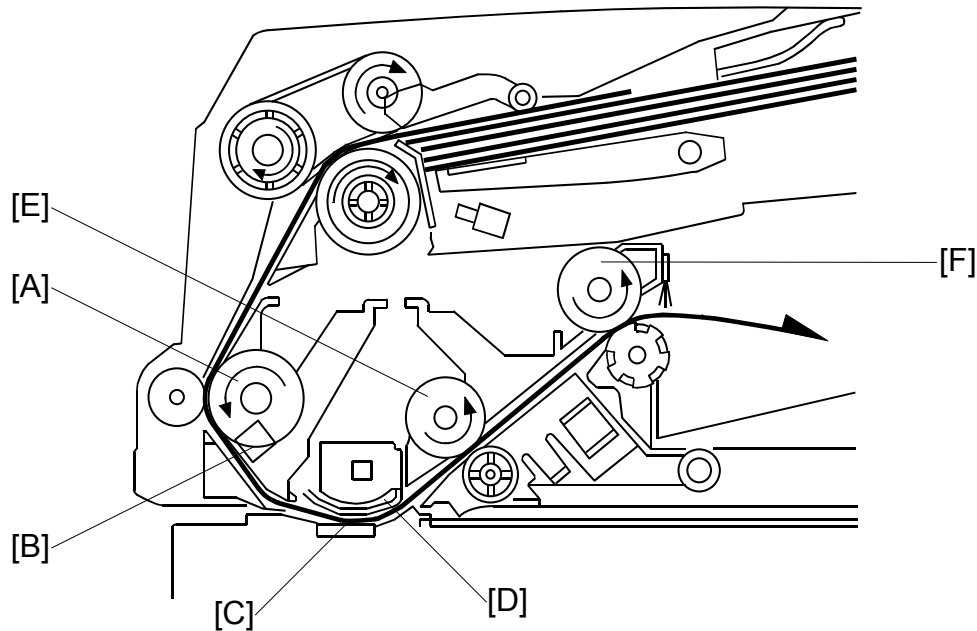
After pressing the start button, the pick-up solenoid [D] is activated and the lift plate [C] lifts the original up until it comes in contact with the pick-up roller [B]. The pick-up roller then feeds the top sheet of paper.

After being fed from the pick-up roller, the topmost sheet is separated from the stack by the separation roller and sent to the first transport roller.

The mechanism is an FRR system, consisting of the original feed belt [F] and separation roller [G].

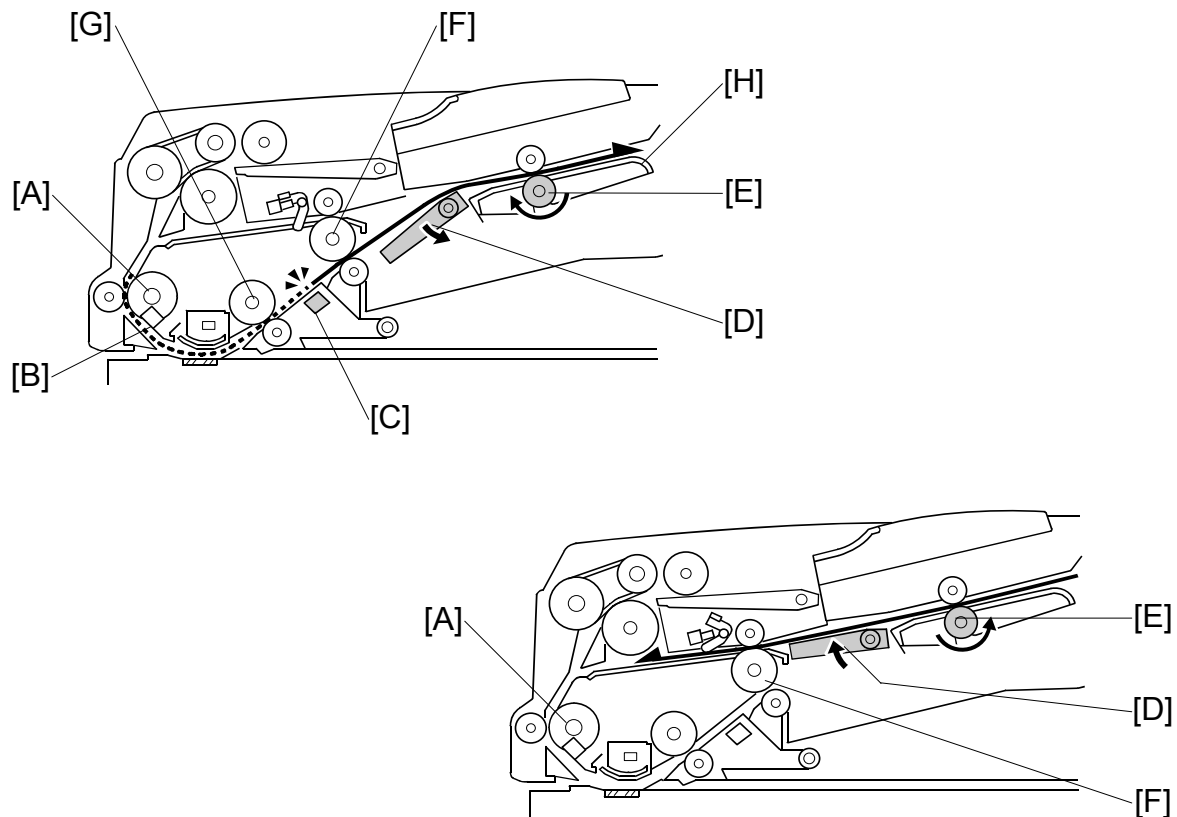
2.4 ORIGINAL TRANSPORT AND EXIT

2.4.1 SINGLE-SIDED ORIGINALS



The DF feed motor feeds the separated original to the first transport roller [A] at maximum speed. When the registration sensor [B] detects the leading edge, the motor stops for a short while. Then the feed and transport motors turn on again, and feed the original through the scanning area at a lower speed (the scanning area contains the original exposure guide [D] and DF exposure glass [C]). After scanning, the original is fed out by the second transport roller [E] and exit roller [F].

2.4.2 DOUBLE-SIDED ORIGINALS

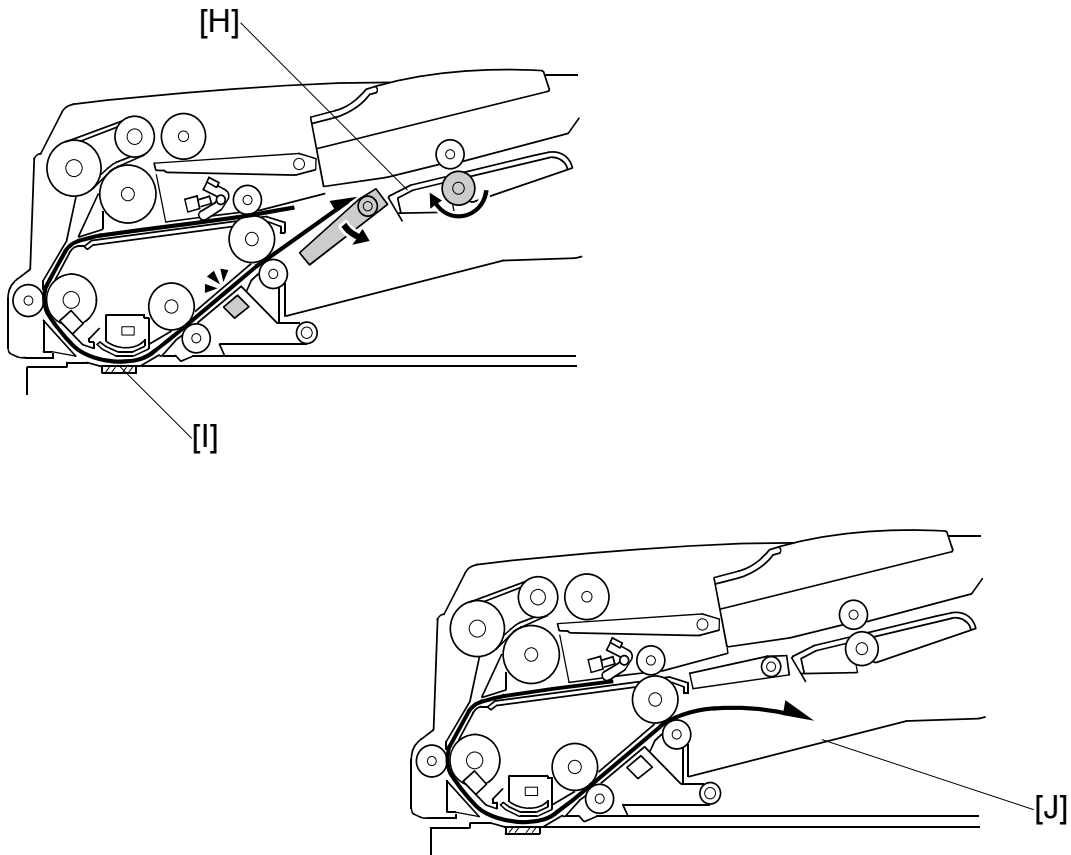


When the registration sensor [B] detects the leading edge of the original, the DF feed motor (which drives the feed roller) and transport motor (which drives the transport roller) both switch off. After a brief interval, the transport motor alone reactivates to drive the first transport roller [A] and second transport roller [G] and the exit roller [F]. The front side of the original is then scanned.

When the original exit sensor [C] detects the leading edge of the original, the junction gate solenoid is activated and the junction gate [D] opens. The original is then transported towards the reverse table [H].

Soon after the trailing edge of the original passes the exit sensor [C], the junction gate solenoid switches off and the junction gate [D] is closed. When the original has been fed onto the reverse table, the DF feed motor switches on in reverse. The original is then fed by the reverse roller [E] and then by the exit roller [F] and first transport roller [A] to the scanning area (where the reverse side will be scanned).

ORIGINAL TRANSPORT AND EXIT

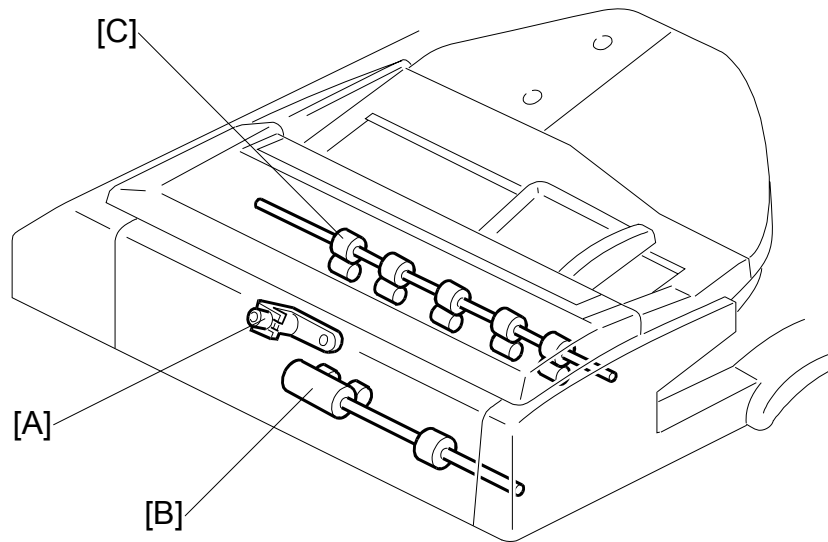


The original is then sent to the reverse table [H] a second time to be turned over. This is done so that the duplex copies will be properly stacked front side down in the exit tray [J] in the correct order.

2.4.3 ORIGINAL TRAILING EDGE SENSOR

During one-to-one copying, copy paper is fed to the registration roller in advance (while the original is still being scanned), to increase the copy speed. The trailing edge sensor monitors the stack of originals in the feeder, and detects when the trailing edge of the last page has been fed in. The main CPU then stops the copier from feeding an unwanted extra sheet of copy paper.

2.5 STAMP

ARDF DF2010
B814

This function is only for fax mode.

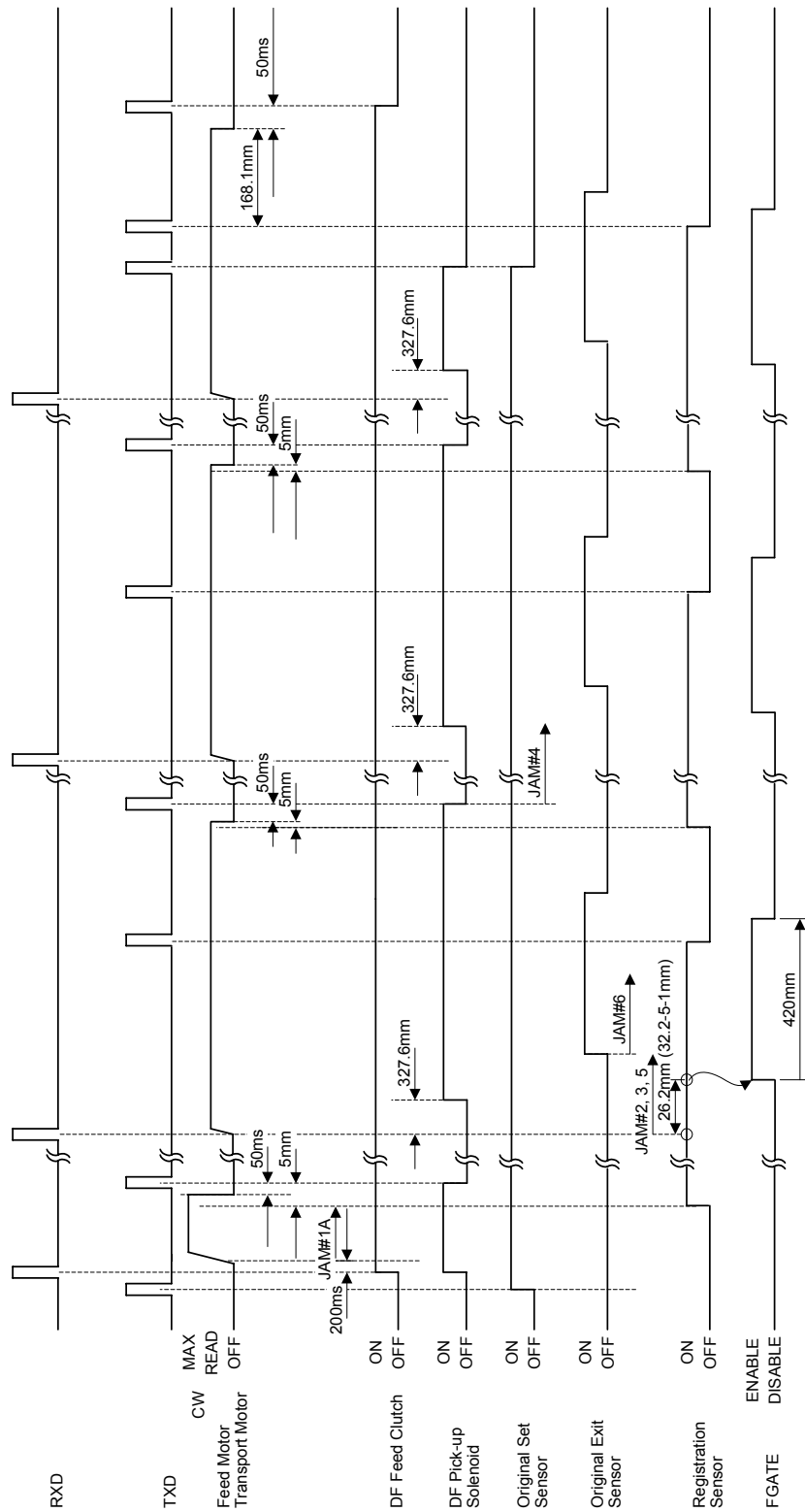
There is a stamp [A] between the 2nd transport roller [B] and the exit roller [C], and its solenoid is controlled by the copier directly.

When the original reaches the stamp position, the DF feed motor stops. At 300 milliseconds after stopping the DF feed motor, the stamp solenoid turns on if the page was sent successfully (immediate transmission) or stored successfully (memory transmission). After stamping, the DF feed motor starts again to feed out the document, and its speed is about 1.3 times the normal speed.

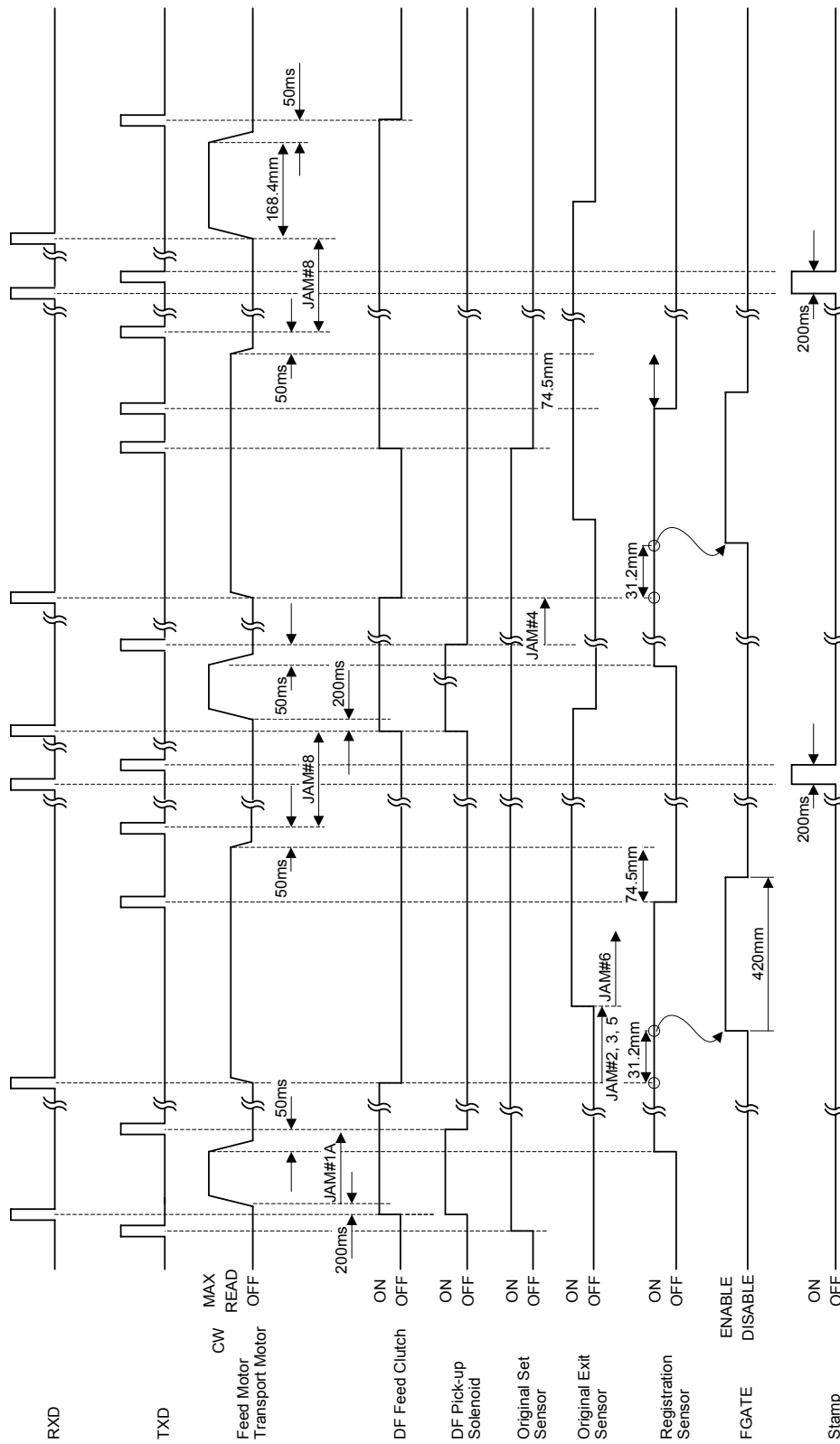
The stamping position on the original can be changed by adjusting SP6-010.

2.6 TIMING CHARTS

2.6.1 SINGLE-SIDED ORIGINAL MODE (A3)

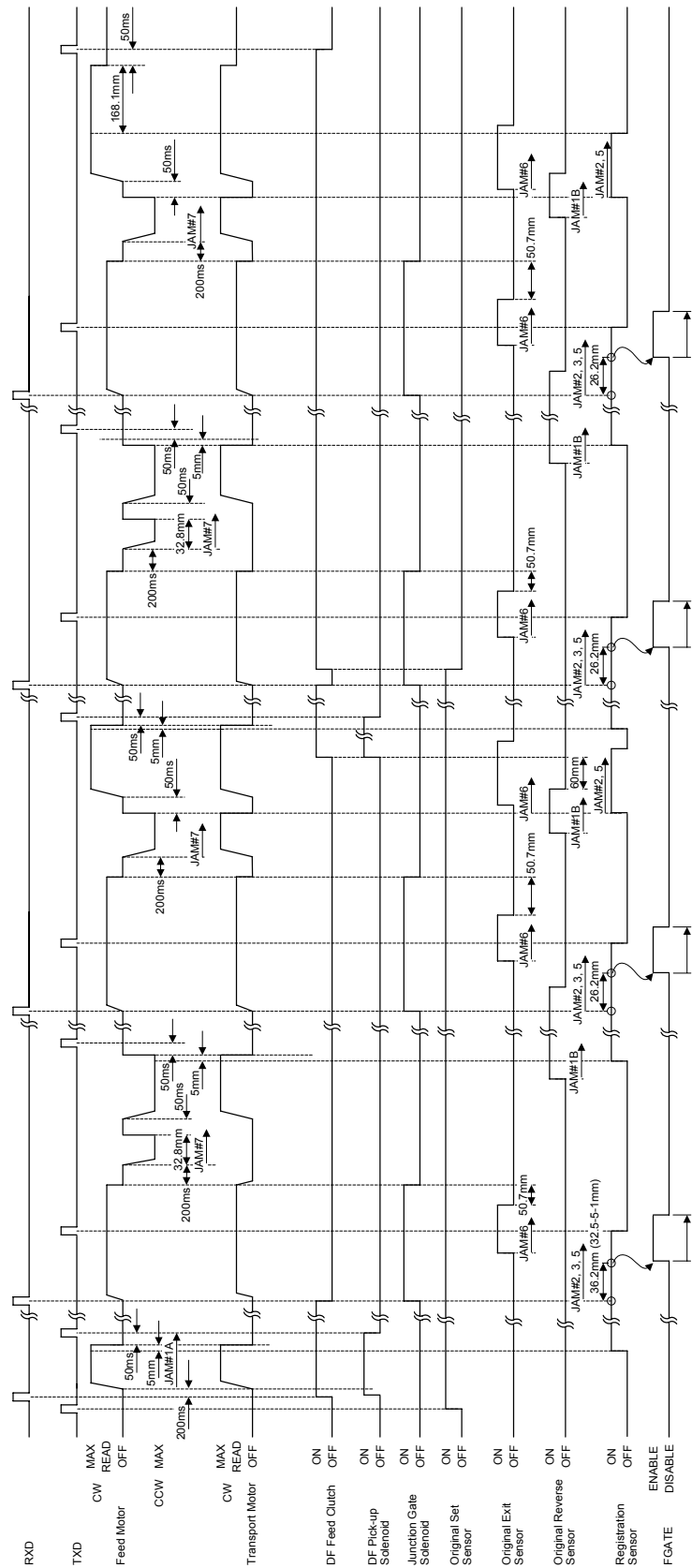


2.6.2 SINGLE-SIDED ORIGINAL MODE (A3, STAMP MODE)



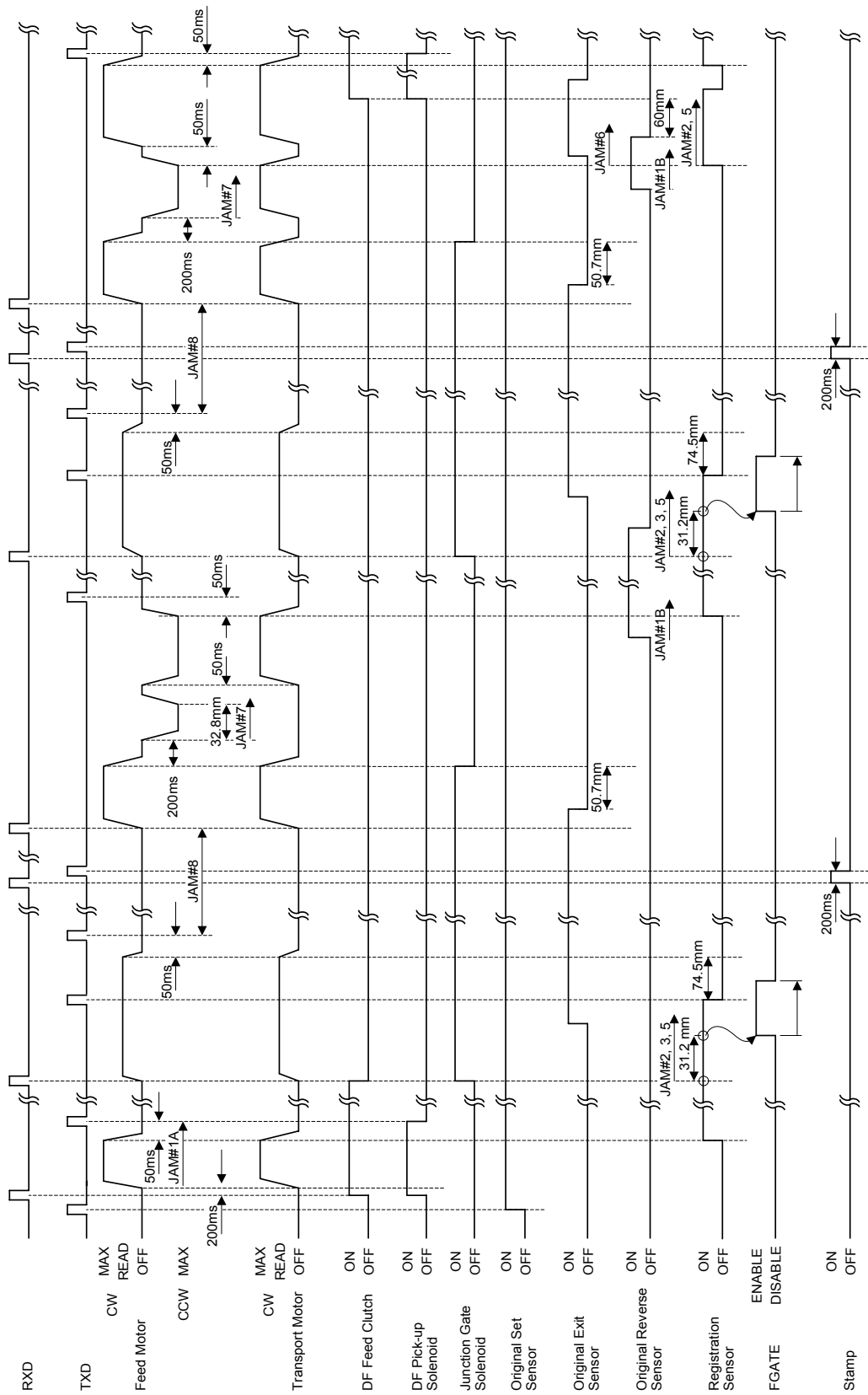
TIMING CHARTS

2.6.3 DOUBLE-SIDED ORIGINAL MODE



2.6.4 DOUBLE-SIDED ORIGINAL MODE (STAMP MODE)

**ARDF DF2010
B814**

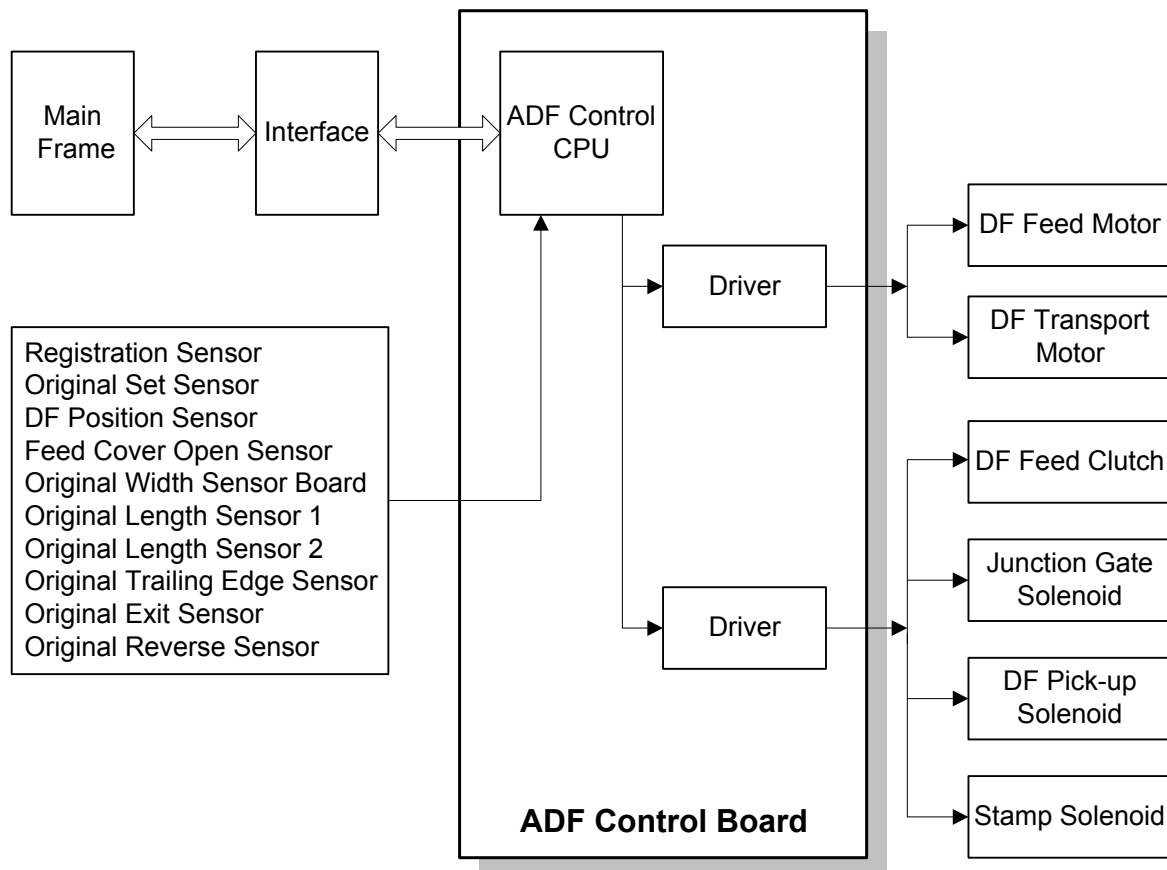


2.7 JAM DETECTION

- JAM 1A:** If the registration sensor does not turn on within X1 ms after original feed starts.
X1 = 1,000 ms
- JAM 1B:** If the registration sensor does not turn on within 953 ms after the leading edge of the original reaches the original reverse sensor (duplex mode only)
- JAM 2:** If the registration sensor does not turn off within X2 ms after receiving the feeding signal from the Mainframe and after turning on.
X2 = (Original length/line speed) +2,000 ms
- JAM 3:** If there is no original at the registration sensor when scanning is started, even though the sensor had already turned on.
The operator may then remove the original from the ADF.
- JAM 4:** The current original is stopped after the registration sensor detects its leading edge, but the previous original is still at the scanning position.
- JAM 5:** If the original exit sensor does not turn on within X3 ms after receiving relaying signal from the Mainframe and after the registration sensor turns on.
X3 = 140 mm/line speed
- JAM 6:** If the original exit sensor does not turn off within X4 ms after the original exit sensor turns on.
X4 = (Original length/line speed) +1,030 ms
- JAM 7:** If the original reverse sensor does not turn on within 2,329 ms after the reversing process begins (Duplex mode only).
- JAM 8:** If the original stopped at the stamp position is removed.
- JAM 9:** If the cover is opened or the ADF is lifted up while the ADF is in operation.
- JAM 10:** If the DF gate signal (indicating that the original is now in the correct position for scanning) is not asserted when the original trailing edge passes the DF exposure glass.
JAM 10 occurs when the original is pulled out while it is being scanned.

2.8 OVERALL ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT

The DF CPU controls the transport motor, DF feed motor, DF feed clutch, junction gate solenoid, stamp solenoid, and pick-up solenoid. The DF CPU also monitors all DF sensors and provides updated status information when prompted at regular intervals by the mainframe, which may then take action based on this information. The DF–mainframe connection is checked automatically just after power is supplied to the mainframe.



2.9 FREE RUN

Two types of free runs can be performed by using Dip Switch DPS 100 on the DF control board. The switch settings are as follows:

DPS 100

Mode\Bits	Bit0	Bit1	Bit2	Bit3
Normal	Off	Off	Off	Off
One-sided FR with paper	On	Off	Off	Off
Two-sided FR with paper	Off	On	Off	Off
Feed/Transport Motor Test	On	On	Off	Off
Feed Solenoid Test	Off	Off	On	Off
Feed Clutch Test	On	Off	On	Off
Stamp Solenoid Test	Off	On	On	Off
Inverter Solenoid Test	On	On	On	Off
Special I/F Test	Off	Off	Off	On
One-sided FR without paper	On	Off	Off	On
Two-sided FR without paper	Off	On	Off	On
Transport Motor Test	On	On	Off	On
Feed Motor Test	Off	Off	On	On

Procedure

1. Turn on SW 1 or 2 (DPS 100 on DF control board).
2. Set the original on the original table.
3. After 2 seconds, the free run will automatically start.
4. To stop the free run, turn all DIP switches OFF, then turn the main power off and on.

One-sided Free Run Process

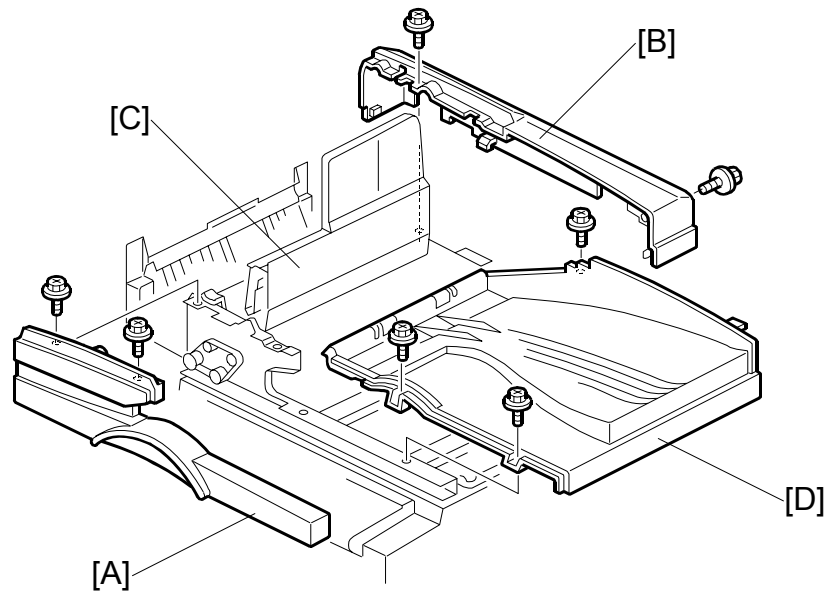
1. The originals are set on the original table.
2. The first page of the original is fed into the DF.
3. The sensors detect the original.
4. The original is output to the exit tray.
5. Steps 2-4 above are repeated for any additional originals set on the original table. If there are no additional originals, the DF will stop and wait.

Two-sided Free Run Process

The process is the same, except that the original reverse cycle is added.

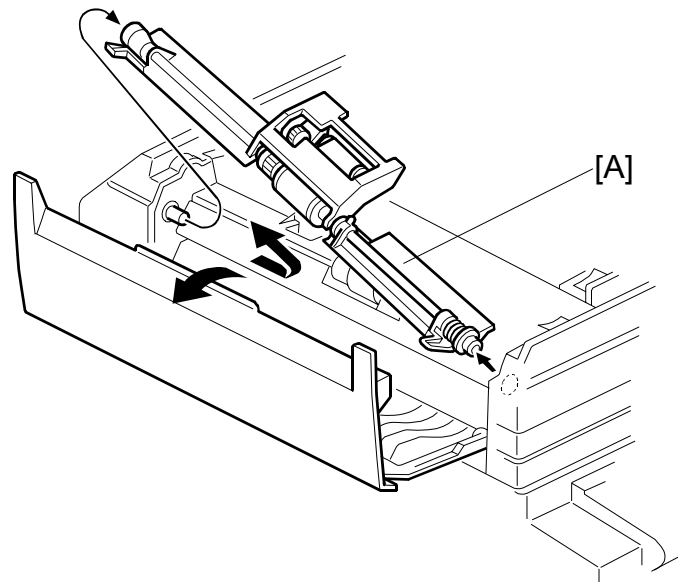
3. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

3.1 DF EXIT TABLE AND COVER

ARDF DF2010
B814

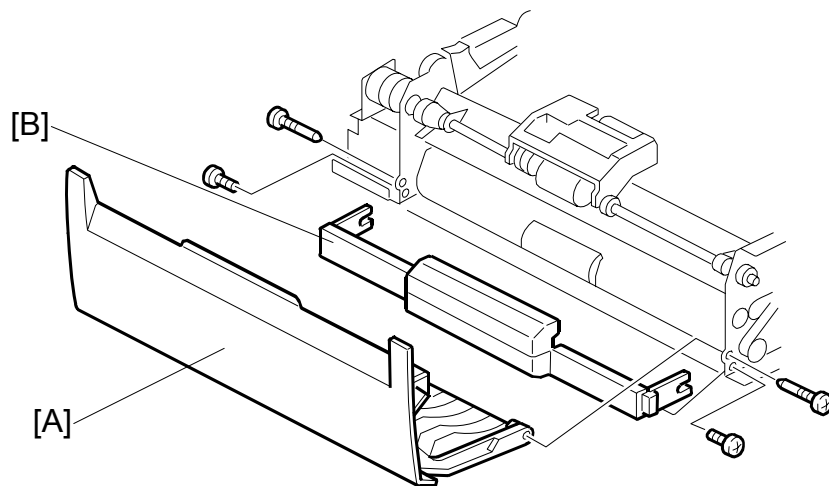
1. Open the left cover.
2. [A] Front cover (🔩 x 2)
3. [B] Rear cover (🔩 x 2). Take care not to break the 3 hooks.
4. [C] Open the reverse table
5. [D] Original exit table (🔩 x 3)

3.2 ORIGINAL FEED UNIT



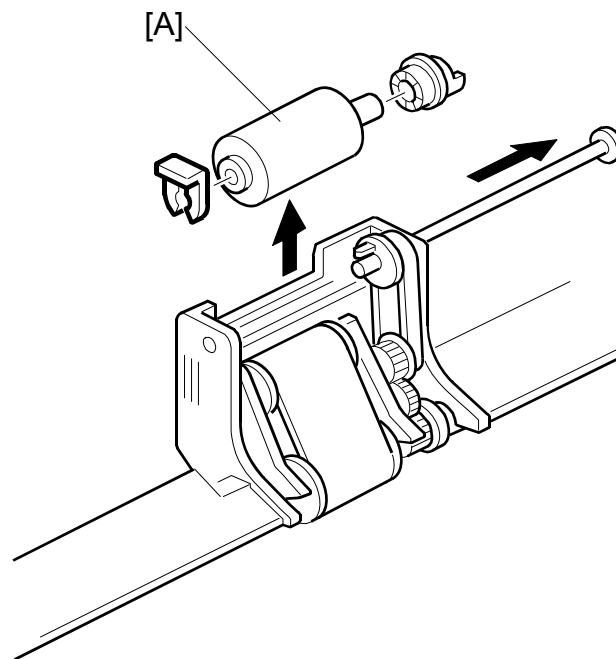
1. Open the left cover.
2. [A] Original feed unit

3.3 LEFT COVER

ARDF DF2010
B814

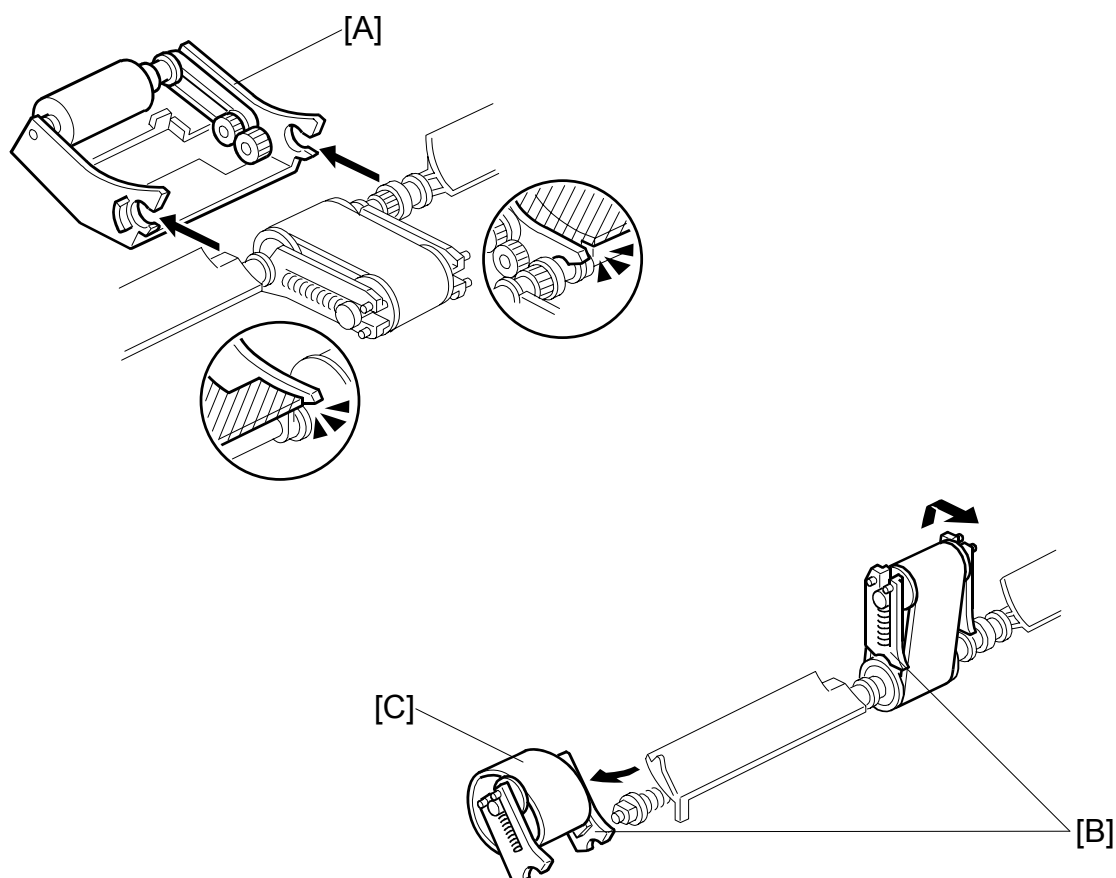
1. Front and rear covers (☛ 3.1)
2. [A] Left cover (🔩 x 2)
3. [B] Lower left stay unit (🔩 x 2)

3.4 PICK-UP ROLLER



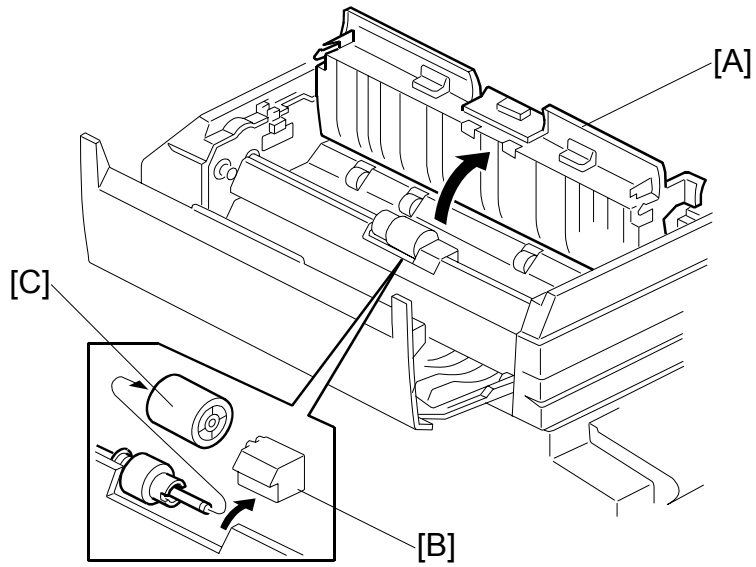
1. Original feed unit (➡ 3.2)
2. [A] Pick-up roller (1 snap ring)

3.5 FEED BELT

ARDF DF2010
B814

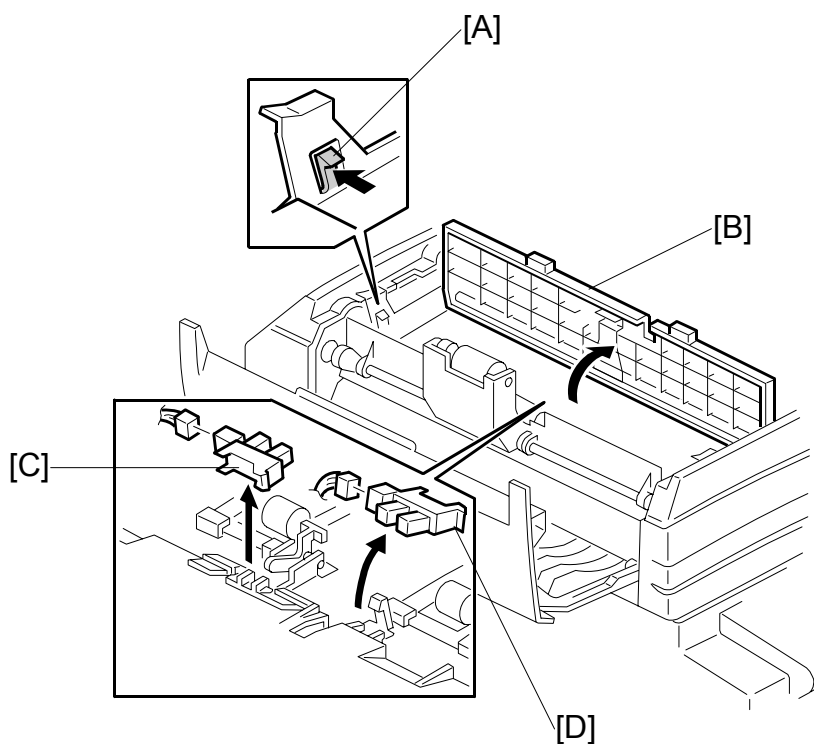
1. Original feed unit (➡ 3.2)
2. [A] Paper feed guide
3. [B] Belt holders
4. [C] Feed belt

3.6 SEPARATION ROLLER



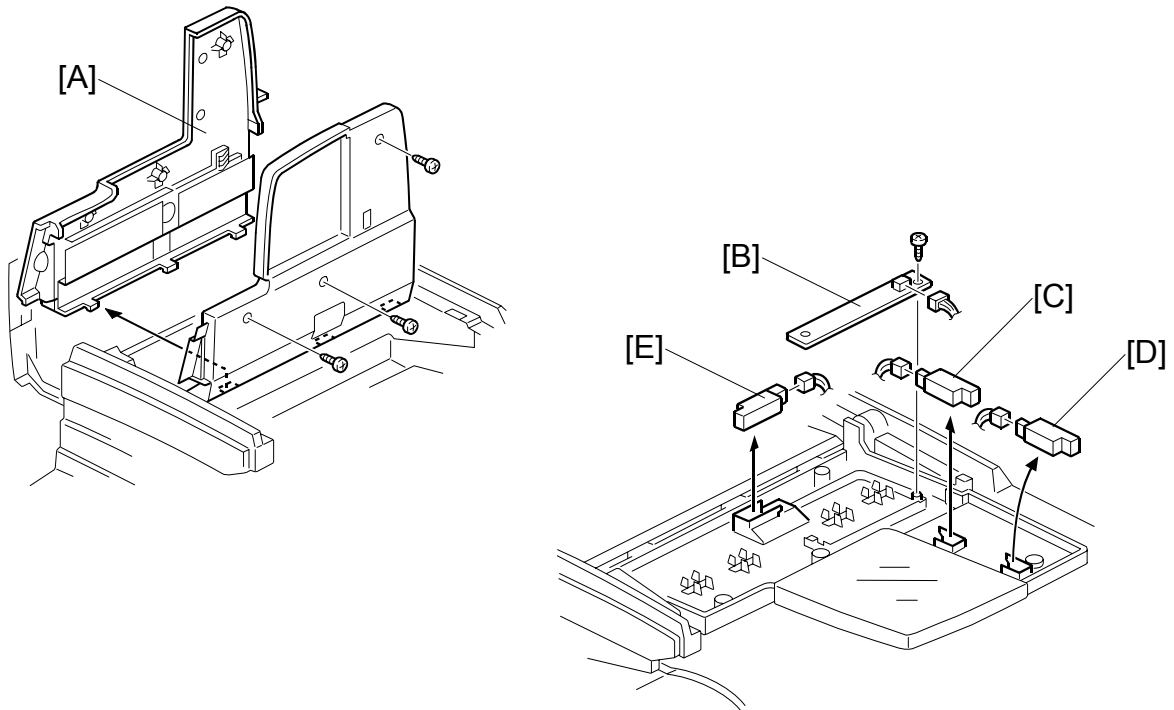
1. Lift the original feed guide [A].
2. [B] Separation roller cover
3. [C] Separation roller

3.7 ORIGINAL SET/ORIGINAL REVERSE SENSORS

ARDF DF2010
B814

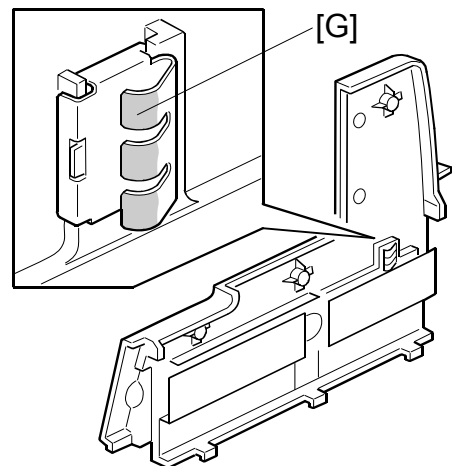
1. Open the left cover.
2. While pushing the left and right pawls [A], open the original feed guide plate [B].
3. [C] Original set sensor (🔌 x 1)
4. [D] Original reverse sensor (🔌 x 1)

3.8 ORIGINAL L/W SENSORS, TRAILING EDGE SENSOR



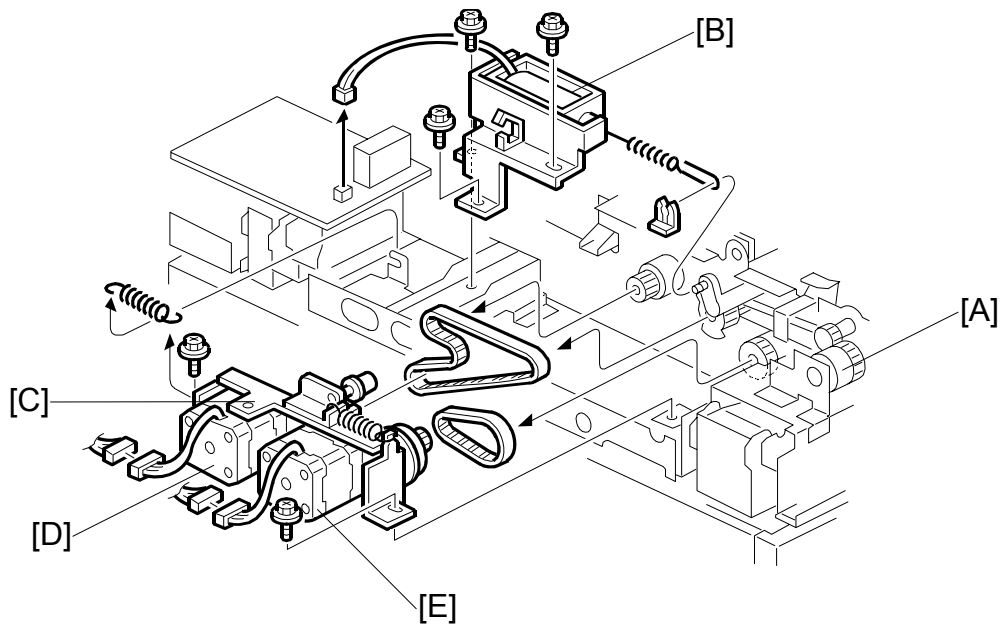
1. Open the original table.
2. [A] Upper part of the table (x 3)
3. [B] Width sensor board (x 1)
4. [C] Length sensor-1 (x 1)
5. [D] Length sensor-2 (x 1)
6. [E] Trailing edge sensor (x 1)

To ensure proper detection of paper size, after wiping off the sensor board and terminal plate with a dry cloth (or cloth with alcohol), apply silicone grease (KS-660) to the terminal plate [G].



3.9 FEED CLUTCH, PICK-UP SOL, TRANSPORT MOTOR, FEED MOTOR

ARDF DF2010
B814



Exterior

1. Rear cover (🔩 3.1)

DF Feed Clutch

1. [A] DF feed clutch [A] (🔩 x 1, 🌀 x 1)

Pick-up Solenoid

1. [B] Pick-up solenoid (🔩 x 3, 1 snap ring, 🌀 x 1)

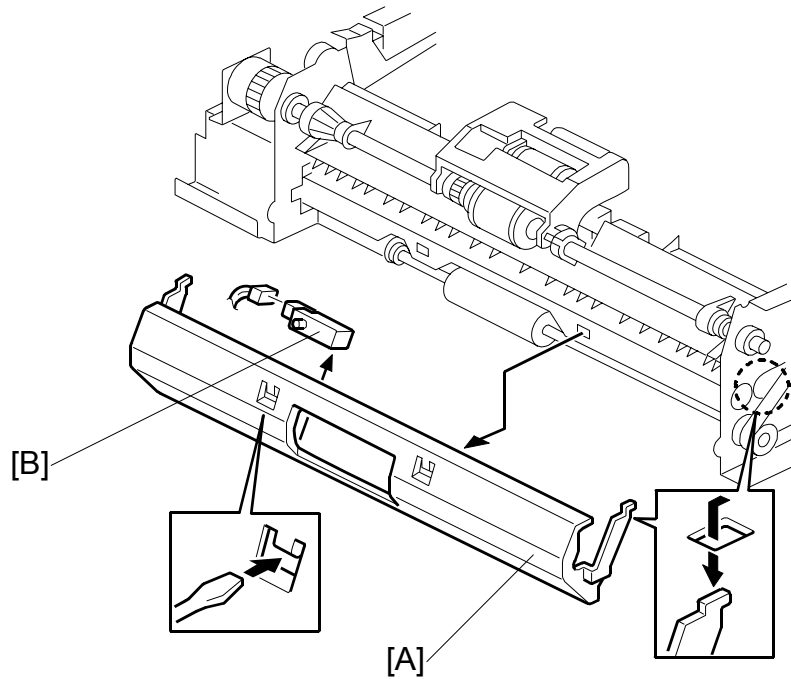
Transport Motor

1. [C] Bracket (🔩 x 2)
2. [E] Transport motor (🔩 x 2, 🌀 x 1)

DF Feed Motor

1. [C] Bracket (🔩 x 2)
2. [D] DF feed motor (🔩 x 2, 🌀 x 1)

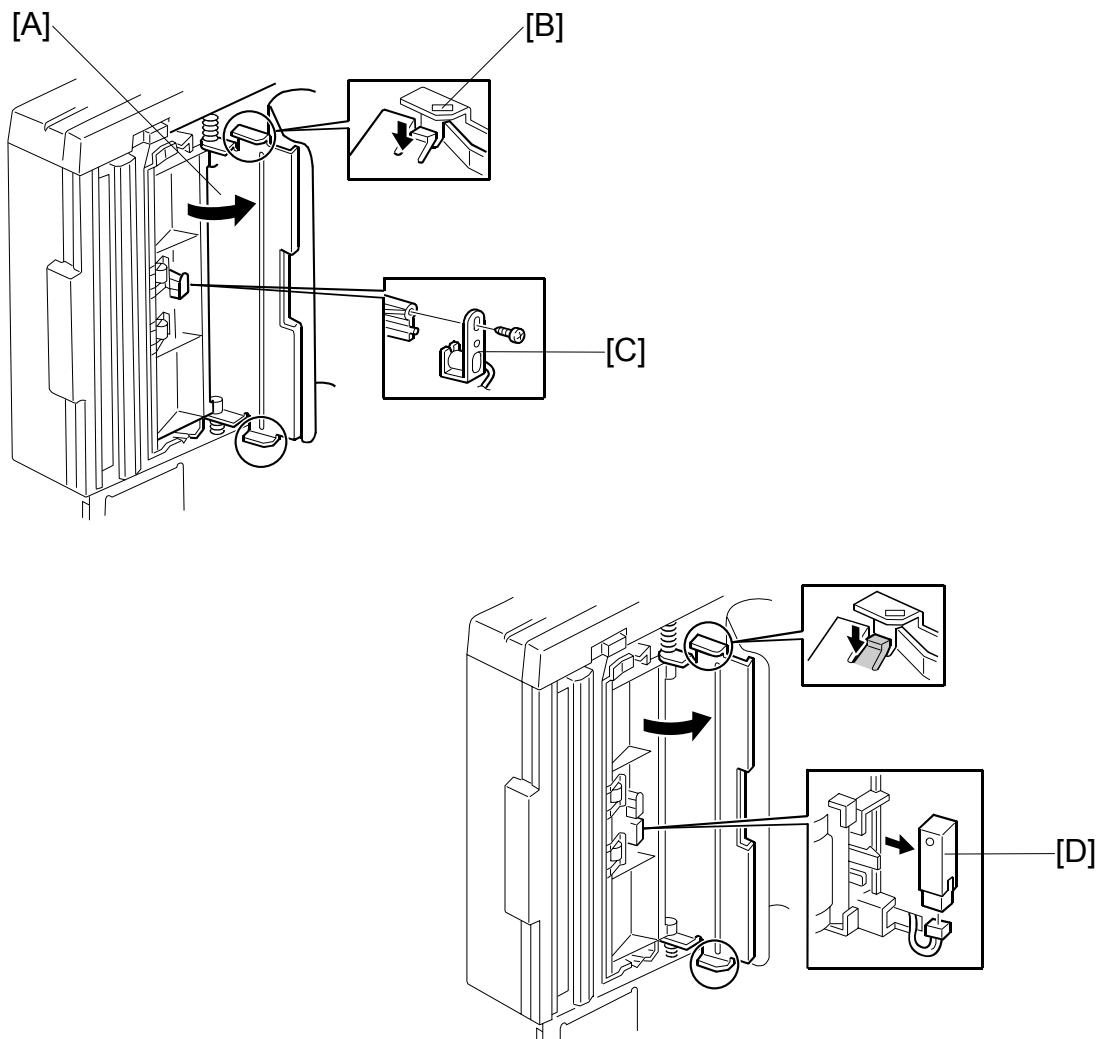
3.10 REGISTRATION SENSOR



1. Front and rear covers (☞ 3.1)
2. Left cover and lower left stay unit (☞ 3.3)
3. [A] Transport guide plate
4. [B] Registration sensor (☞ x 1)

3.11 STAMP SOLENOID AND ORIGINAL EXIT SENSOR

ARDF DF2010
B814



1. Front cover, Rear cover, Original exit table (➡ 3.1)
2. Open the exit guide plate [A]. Next, detach the unit by inserting a screwdriver or other tool into one of the small openings [B] on either side of the guide plate holder and pushing firmly.
3. [C] Stamp solenoid (🔩 x 1, 📏 x 1)
4. [D] Original exit sensor (📏 x 1)

DDST UNIT TYPE A/B
B865/B866

Trademarks

Microsoft®, Windows®, and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and /or other countries.

PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Ethernet® is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights involved with those marks.

B865/B866

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INSTALLATION.....	1
1.1 DDST EXPANSION.....	1
1.1.1 ACCESSORY CHECK.....	1
1.1.2 INSTALLING EXPANSION COMPONENT.....	1
1.2 INSTALLING PANELS AND KEYS	3
2. TROUBLESHOOTING	4
2.1 CONTROLLER ERRORS.....	4
2.2 LED DISPLAY	4
2.1.1 FATAL ERROR	4
3. SERVICE TABLES.....	6
3.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE.....	6
3.1.1 ENABLING AND DISABLING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE	6
Entering the SP mode.....	6
Exiting the Service Mode	6
3.2 PRINTER SERVICE MODE	7
3.2.1 SERVICE MODE TABLE.....	7
3.2.2 SP MODES RELATED TO PRINTER CONTROLLER	7
3.3 SCANNER SERVICE MODE.....	8
3.3.1 SCANNER PROGRAM MODE TABLE.....	8
3.4 FIRMWARE UPDATE PROCEDURE.....	9
3.5 POWER-ON SELF TEST	9
4. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS	10
4.1 OVERVIEW	10
4.2 CONTROLLER FUNCTIONS	11
4.2.1 PAPER SOURCE SELECTION.....	11
Tray Priority (Auto Tray Select).....	11
Tray Lock.....	11
Manual Tray Select.....	11
4.2.2 AUTO CONTINUE	12
4.2.3 PAPER OUTPUT TRAY (ONLY WHEN 1 BIN-TRAY IS INSTALLED)	13
Output Tray Selected	13
4.2.4 DUPLEX PRINTING	13
4.3 SCANNER FUNCTIONS	13
4.3.1 IMAGE PROCESSING FOR SCANNER MODE	13
Image Data Path.....	13
4.4 NETWORK INTERFACE (B866 ONLY)	15
4.4.1 LED INDICATORS.....	15
4.5 USB.....	16
4.5.1 SPECIFICATIONS.....	16

4.5.2 USB 1.1/2.0	16
4.5.3 USB CONNECTORS.....	17
4.5.4 PIN ASSIGNMENT	17
4.5.5 REMARKS ABOUT USB	18
Related SP Mode.....	18
4.6 NVRAM ON THE DDST CONTROLLER.....	18

SPECIFICATIONS

1. GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS	
1.1 PRINTER.....	19
1.2 SCANNER.....	19
2. SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES	20
2.1 PRINTER.....	20
PRINTER DRIVERS	20
UTILITY SOFTWARE	20
2.2 SCANNER.....	21
SCANNER DRIVER.....	21
SCANNER UTILITIES.....	21
3. MACHINE CONFIGURATION.....	22
3.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS	22

1. INSTALLATION

1.1 DDST EXPANSION

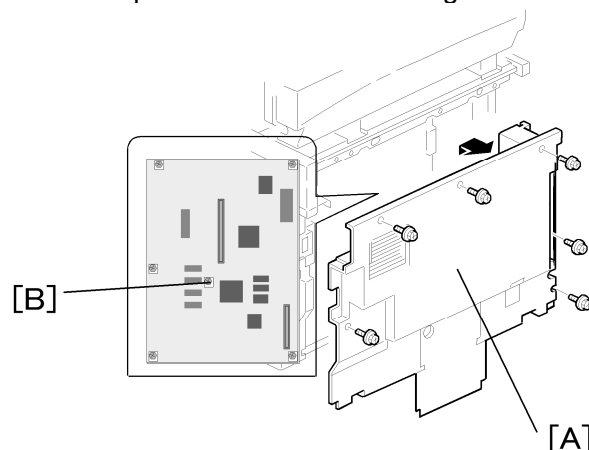
1.1.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Cover-CPS NA	1
2	Cover-CPS EU	1
3	Ferrite Core (B866 only)	1
4	Tapping Screw-M3X6	6
5	Sheet-EULA	1
6	Seal-Caution	1
7	Installation Procedure	1

1.1.2 INSTALLING EXPANSION COMPONENT

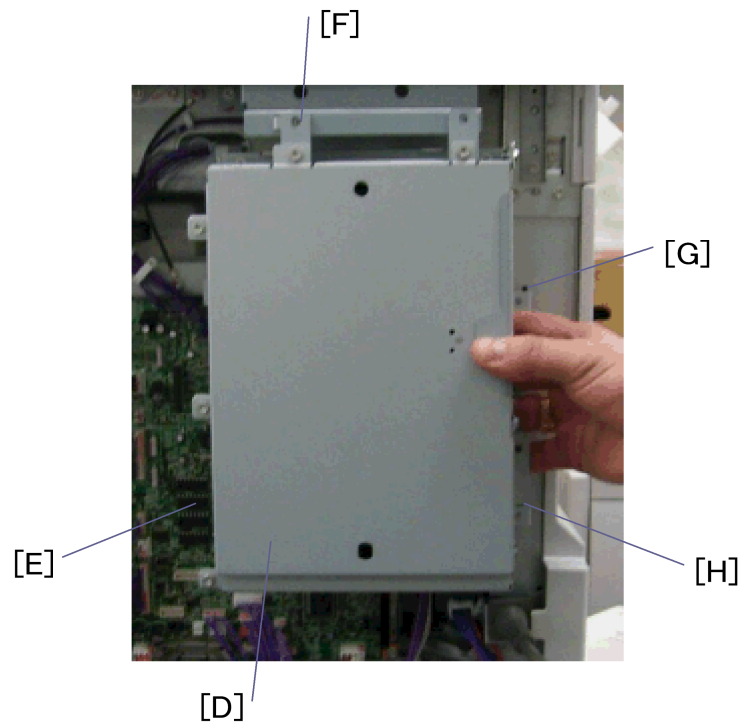
CAUTION

-21. Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

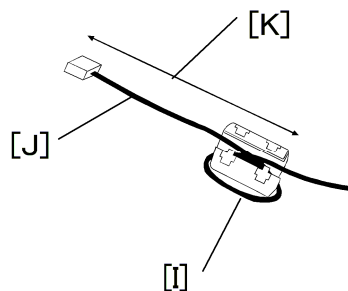


1. Remove the rear cover [A] (⚙ x 6).
2. Remove one screw [B] from the BICU.

DDST Unit
B865/B866



3. Connect the controller box [D] to the BICU. Make sure that the BICU [E] is not damaged and that the three openings [F][G][H] hold the controller box.
4. Fasten the screws (⌀ x 7).



5. Attach the ferrite core [I] to the network cable [J]. The end of the ferrite core must be about 10 cm (4") from the end of the cable [K].



-6850556. This procedure is only for machines with the B866 option.

6. Re-attach the rear cover [A] (⌀ x 6).

1.2 INSTALLING PANELS AND KEYS



1. Remove the dummy cover [A] from the operation panel.



2. Install the printer/scanner panel [B] on the operation panel.

DDST Unit
B865/B866

2. TROUBLESHOOTING

2.1 CONTROLLER ERRORS

ERROR CODES	INDICATION ON THE OPERATION PANEL
Code ROM error	ROM Error
Resident RAM error	On Board Memory Error
Option RAM error	DIMM has a problem
CPU error	CPU Error
NVRAM error	NV-RAM Error
NIB interface error	Ethernet Board Error
USB error	USB Error

Refer to the main unit service manual for descriptions on SC code.

NOTE: The following error messages only display when you press print button

2.2 LED DISPLAY

The controller uses two LEDs to display error status even while the LED message is not active.

To see these LEDs, remove the machine's rear cover and the cover of the controller.

2.2.1 FATAL ERROR

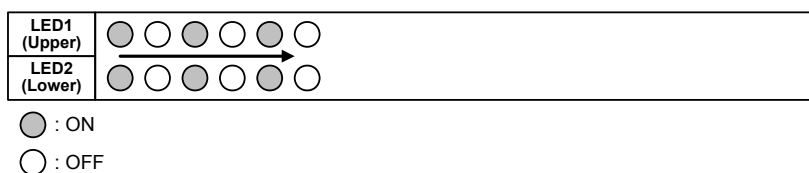
If the controller detected a fatal error during the power-on self-test, it uses 2 LEDs to notify the cause of the error.

If one of the following fatal errors happens, the LED status changes as shown (read from the left of the diagram to the right).

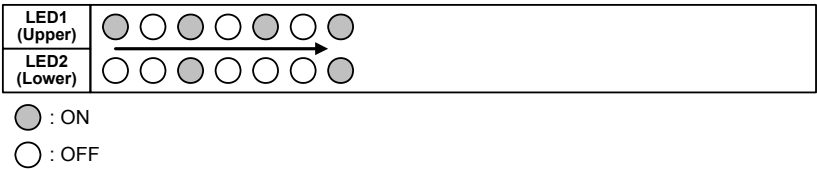
LED1=LED5 on the board (Red)

LED2=LED6 on the board (Yellow)

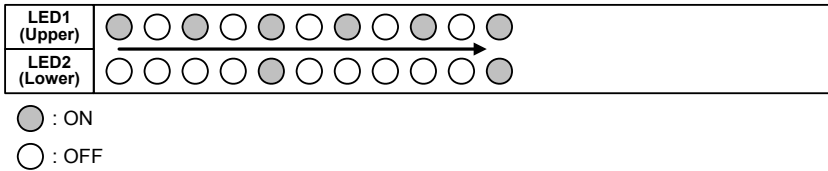
Code ROM Error



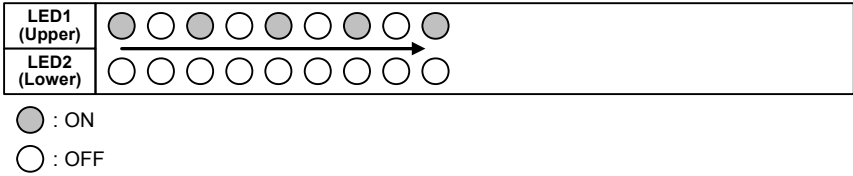
Resident RAM Error



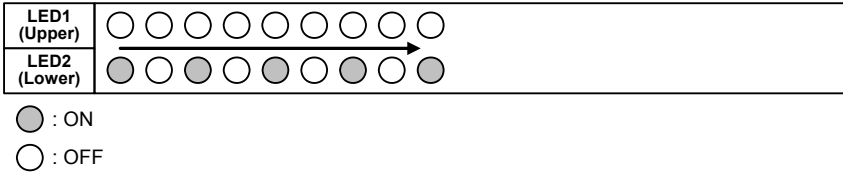
CPU Error



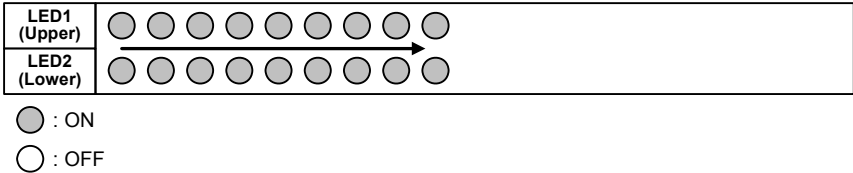
Idle



During ROM Download



ROM Download Completed



Turn off the machine and turn it back on. If the controller detects the same error, Replace the controller.

DDST Unit
B865/B866

3. SERVICE TABLES

3.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

CAUTION

Before accessing the service menu, do the following:

Confirm that there is no print data in the printer buffer (the Data In LED must not be lit or blinking).

If there is some data in the buffer, wait until all data has been printed.

The main power LED () lights or flashes while the platen cover or ADF/ARDF is open, while the main unit is communicating with the network server (B866 only), or while the machine is accessing the memory for reading or writing data.

3.1.1 ENABLING AND DISABLING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

Entering the SP mode



1. Press the Clear Mode key.



2. Use the keypad to enter "107".



3. Hold down Clear/Stop for at least 3 seconds.

4. Enter the Service Mode.

Printer SP

Select "Printer SP" to enter printer SP mode.

Scanner SP

Select "Scanner SP" to enter scanner SP mode.

Exiting the Service Mode

Press the cancel key to exit from the service mode.

3.2 PRINTER SERVICE MODE

3.2.1 SERVICE MODE TABLE

SP No.	Description	Function and Setting
1003	Clear Setting	Clear Initialize System
1005	Display Version	Displays the version of the controller firmware.

3.2.2 SP MODES RELATED TO PRINTER CONTROLLER

The following SP modes are located in the copier SP mode. Refer to the main unit service manual.

SP No.	Description	Function and Setting
5104	A3/DLT Double Count	Specifies whether the counter is doubled for A3/DLT. 0: No, 1: Yes If ① is selected, the total counter and the current user code counter count up twice when A3 or DLT paper is used.
5801	Memory All Clear	Resets data for process control and all software counters, and returns all modes and adjustments to their defaults values. ➡ the main unit manual for details.
5907	Plug & Play	Selects the brand name and the production name for Windows Plug & Play. This information is stored in NVRAM.
7832	Detailed Display of Self-Diagnostics	Displays the controller self-diagnostic result. ➡ this manual for details.

DDST Unit
B865/B866

3.3 SCANNER SERVICE MODE

3.3.1 SCANNER PROGRAM MODE TABLE

Service Table Key

Notation	What it means
[range / default / step]	Example: [-9 ~ +9 / +3.0 / 0.1 mm step]. The setting can be adjusted in the range ± 9 , value reset to +3.0 after an NVRAM reset, and the value can be changed in 0.1 mm steps with each key press.
<i>italics</i>	Comments added for your reference.
*	This value is stored in NVRAM. After a RAM reset, the default value (factory setting) is restored.

SP No.	Mode Number		Function and [Setting]
1005*	1	Erase Margin	Creates an erase margin for all edges of the scanned image. <i>If the machine has scanned the edge of the original, create a margin.</i> <u>[0 – 5 / 0mm / 1mm step]</u>

For the settings of the image quality, see the copier SP-mode table.

3.4 FIRMWARE UPDATE PROCEDURE

Firmware updating procedure is described in the copier service manual.

3.5 USER PROGRAM MODE

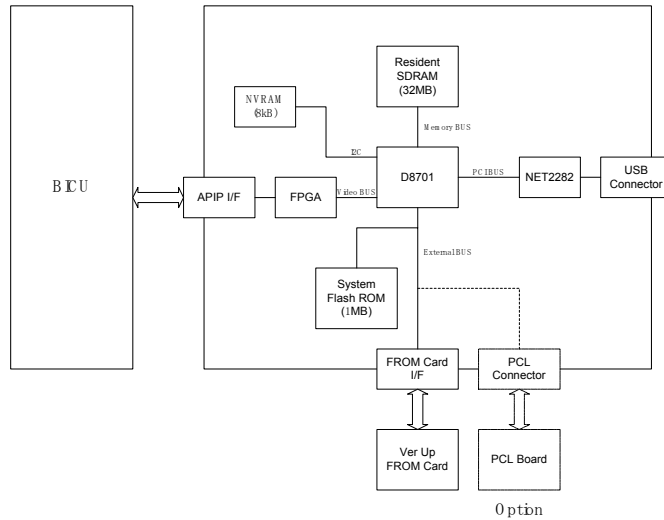
See the copier Operating Instruction.

DDST Unit
B865/B866

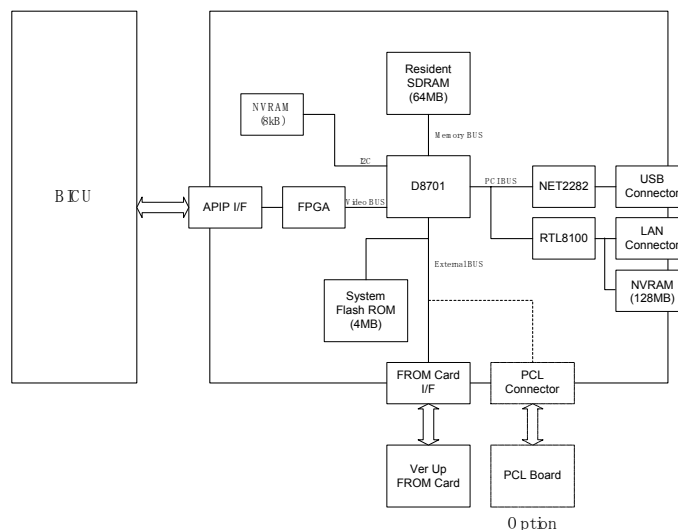
4. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

4.1 OVERVIEW

B865 (Without Network Interface Card)



B866 (With Network Interface Card)



This machine uses the GDI controller to enable the printer features.

Main components:

- CPU: D8701
- Flash ROM: 1MB/4MB
- SDRAM: 32MB/64MB 96MHz
- NVRAM(8KB): Stores the controller setting
- NVRAM(128MB):Store the MAC address
- USB: NET2282

Optional components:

- PCL Board

4.2 CONTROLLER FUNCTIONS

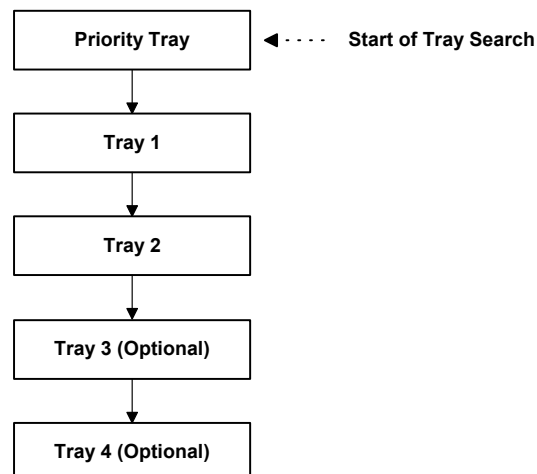
4.2.1 PAPER SOURCE SELECTION

Tray Priority (Auto Tray Select)

The Tray Priority setting determines the start of the tray search when the user selects “Auto Tray Select” with the driver. The machine searches for a paper tray with the specified paper size and type.

When no tray contains paper that matches the paper size and type specified by the driver, the controller stops printing until the user loads the correct paper.

The Tray Priority setting can be specified using the Paper Size Setting in the user tools.
(User Tools/ System Settings/ Paper Size Settings)



The by-pass tray is not part of the tray search.

Tray Lock

If Tray Lock is enabled for a tray, the controller skips the “locked” tray in the tray search process.

The Tray Lock setting can be specified by selecting “No” for the “Apply Auto Paper Select” setting in the Paper Size Setting screen in the user tools.
(User Tools/ System Settings/ Paper Size Settings)

The by-pass feeder cannot be locked.

Manual Tray Select

If the selected tray does not have the paper size and type specified by the driver, the controller stops printing until the user loads the correct paper.

4.2.2 AUTO CONTINUE

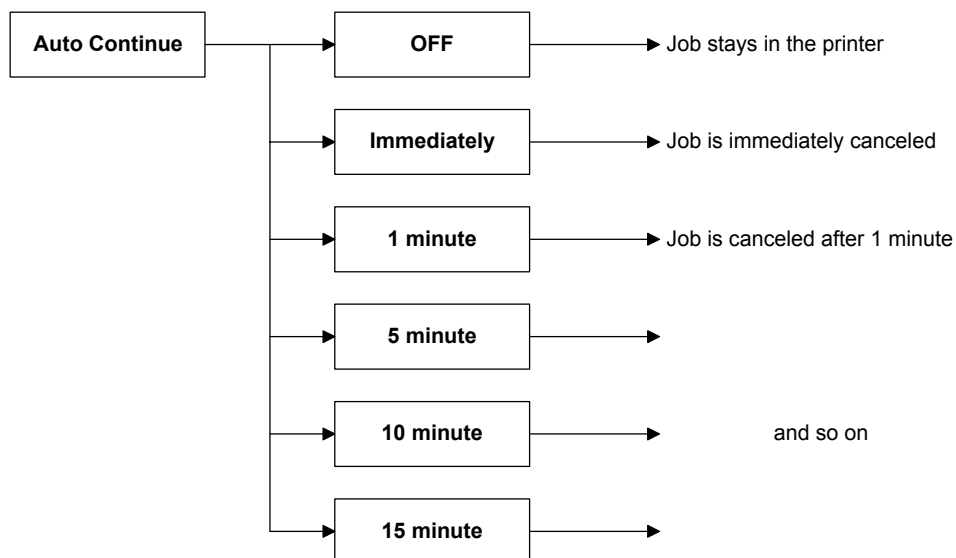
When this function is enabled, the machine stops printing and cancels the print job if there is no paper tray which matches the paper size and paper type specified by the driver.

If Auto Continue is enabled, the machine waits for a specified period (0, 1, 5, 10, 15 minutes) for the correct size paper to be set in the tray, then cancels the print job if the interval expires.

- The interval can be set with the Printer Settings in the user tools.
(User Tools/ Printer Settings/ System/ Auto Continue)

If Auto Continue is disabled, the machine will not print the job, but will not cancel it, so the job stays in the print queue.

If no paper tray matches the paper size and paper type specified by the driver:



The default setting for Auto Continue is “Off.”

4.2.3 PAPER OUTPUT TRAY (ONLY WHEN 1 BIN-TRAY IS INSTALLED)

The default paper output tray for each application (copy/printer) can be selected using the System Settings menu in the user tools.

(User Tools/ System Settings/ General Features)

If a print job does not specify an output tray or if the driver specifies the default tray, the default paper output tray is used.

Output Tray Selected

- If an output tray is specified by the driver, it overrides the default tray setting in the user tools.
- If the machine cannot print to the selected output tray, it prints to the default paper output tray.

4.2.4 DUPLEX PRINTING

Duplex printing is available with all output bin options but not all paper sizes. If a job specifies duplex printing but the paper size to be used cannot be used by the duplex unit, the job will be printed single-sided.

- When the by-pass feeder is selected as the paper source, duplex printing is automatically disabled.

DDST Unit
B865/B866

4.3 SCANNER FUNCTIONS

4.3.1 IMAGE PROCESSING FOR SCANNER MODE

The image processing for scanner mode is done in the IPU chip on the BICU board. The IPU chip chooses the most suitable image processing methods (gamma tables, dither patterns, etc) depending on the settings made in the driver.

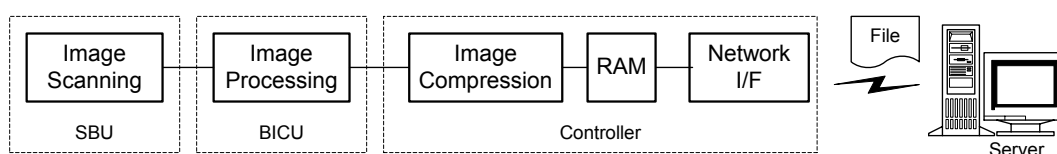
The image compression method can be selected with SP mode (MR/MH/MMR for binary picture processing).

Image Data Path

1. Image Store/Image Delivery Mode

The user can select the following modes from the LCD.

1) Delivery only



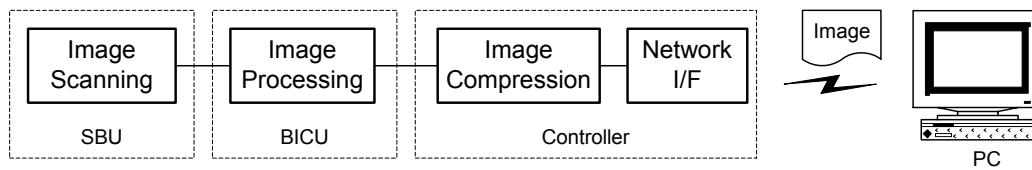
SCANNER FUNCTIONS

After image processing and image compression, all image data for the job are stored in the printer controller RAM using TIFF file or PDF file format (binary picture processing). The type of TIFF or PDF format used depends on the user's scanner settings.

When delivery mode is selected, the controller creates a file which contains the destination and page information, then the controller sends the file to a server.

2. Twain Mode

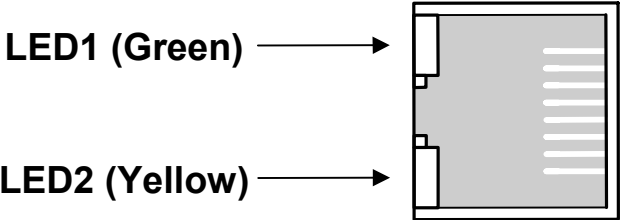
After image processing and image compression, the data (TIFF or PDF) is sent to the scanner Twain driver directory on the computer.



4.4 NETWORK INTERFACE (B866 ONLY)

4.4.1 LED INDICATORS

The LED is on the optional controller box.



Description	On	Off
LED1 (Green): Link status	Link success	Link failure
LED2 (Yellow): Data rate	100 Mbps	10 Mbps

DDST Unit
B865/B866

4.5 USB

4.5.1 SPECIFICATIONS

USB connectivity is provided as an option for this machine.

Interface: USB 1.1, USB 2.0
Data rates: 480 Mbps (high speed), 12 Mbps (full speed)
High speed mode is only supported by USB 2.0.

4.5.2 USB 1.1/2.0

USB (Universal Serial Bus) offers simple connectivity for computers, printers, keyboards, and other peripherals. In a USB environment, terminators, device IDs (like SCSI), and DIP switch settings are not necessary.

USB 1.1 provides the following features:

- Plug & Play. As soon as a new device is connected via USB, the operating system recognizes it, and the appropriate driver is installed for it automatically if the driver is available. If the driver is not available, a message prompts the user for the driver disk for immediate installation.
- Hot swapping (cables can be connected and disconnected while the computer and other devices are switched on)
- No terminator or device ID required
- Data rates of 12 Mbps (full speed)
- Common connectors for different devices
- Bi-directional data communication between device and host computer via a 4-byte header and DEVICE ID.

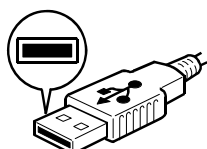
USB 2.0 is an evolution of the USB 1.1 specification. It uses the same cables, connectors, and software interfaces so the user will see no change. It provides an easy-to-use connection to a wide range of products with a maximum data rate of 480 Mbps (high speed).

Up to 127 devices can be connected and 6 cascade connections are allowed. Power is supplied from the computer and the maximum cable length is 5 m.

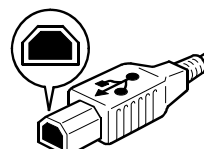
4.5.3 USB CONNECTORS

USB is a serial protocol and a physical link, which transmits all data on a single pair of wires. Another pair provides power to downstream peripherals. The USB standard specifies two types of connectors, type “A” connectors for upstream connection to the host system, and type “B” connectors for downstream connection to the USB device.

Type “A” connector



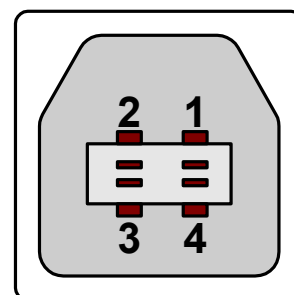
Type “B” connector



4.5.4 PIN ASSIGNMENT

The controller has a type “B” receptacle.

Pin No.	Signal Description	Wiring Assignment
1	Power	Red
2	Data –	White
3	Data +	Green
4	Power GND	White



DDST Unit
B865/B866

4.5.5 REMARKS ABOUT USB

- The machine does not print reports specifically for USB.
- Only one host computer is allowed for the USB connection.
- After starting a job using USB, do not switch the printer off until the job has been completed. When a user cancels a print job, if data transmitted to the printer has not been printed at the time of cancellation, the job will continue to print up to the page where the print job was cancelled
- When the controller board is replaced, the host computer will recognize the machine as a different device.

Related SP Mode

“USB Settings” in the printer engine service mode. Data rates can be adjusted to full speed fixed (12 Mbps). This switch may be used for troubleshooting if there is a data transfer error using the high speed mode (480 Mbps).

Data rates can also be adjusted using the UP mode “USB Setting” in the Host Interface in the System menu. This mode can be accessed only when the “Enter”, “Escape”, then “Menu” keys are pressed to enter the UP mode.

4.6 NVRAM ON THE DDST CONTROLLER

- Socket type
- When the DDST controller is replaced, remove the NVRAM from the old DDST controller and install it on the new DDST controller. NVRAM keeps machine-specific data (IP address and controller setting).

SPECIFICATIONS

1. GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

1.1 PRINTER

Printing Speed:	Maximum 20 ppm (A4/LT LEF): B269/B277 model Maximum 16 ppm (A4/LT LEF): B268/B276 model
Printer Languages:	DDST PCL6/PCL5e (option)
Resolution:	600 dpi (DDST/PCL 6/PCL5e) 300 dpi (PCL 6/PCL5e)
Resident Fonts:	PCL: 35 Intellifonts 10 True Type fonts
Host Interfaces:	Ethernet (100 Base-TX/10 Base-T) (B866only) USB2.0
Network Protocols:	TCP/IP
Memory:	32/64 MB
Supported Paper Size	See the copier service manual.

DDST Unit
B865/B866

1.2 SCANNER

Standard Scanner	Main scan/Sub scan
Resolution:	600 dpi
Available scanning	Twain Mode:
Resolution Range:	100 ~ 600 dpi
Scanning	25 spm for TWAIN
Interface:	Ethernet (100 Base-TX/10 Base-T for TCP/IP)(B866only) USB2.0

2. SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES

2.1 PRINTER

The printer drivers and utility software are provided on one CD-ROM. An auto-run installer allows you to select which components to install.

PRINTER DRIVERS

Printer Language	Windows 98SE/ME	Windows NT4.0	Windows 2000	Macintosh
DDST	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
PCL 6 (option)	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
PCL 5e (option)	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

NOTE: 1) The printer drivers for Windows NT 4.0 are only for the Intel x86 platform. There is no Windows NT 4.0 printer driver for the PowerPC, Alpha, or MIPS platforms.

UTILITY SOFTWARE

Software	Description
Agfa Font Manager (Win 98SE/ME, NT4, 2000)	A font management utility with screen fonts for the printer.
Smart DeviceMonitor for Admin (Win 98SE/ME, NT4, 2000)	A printer management utility for network administrators. NIB setup utilities are also available.
DeskTopBinder (Win 98SE/ME, NT4, 2000)	A printer management utility for client users. Peer-to-peer printing utility and parallel/recovery printing functions are included.
DeskTopBinder Lite (Win 98SE/ME, NT4, 2000)	A utility for document management
Printer Utility for Mac	This software provides several convenient functions for printing from Macintosh clients.

2.2 SCANNER

The scanner driver and utility software are provided on one CD-ROM.

SCANNER DRIVER

- Network Twain Driver for Win98SE/ME/NT3.51/NT4.0/2000

SCANNER UTILITIES

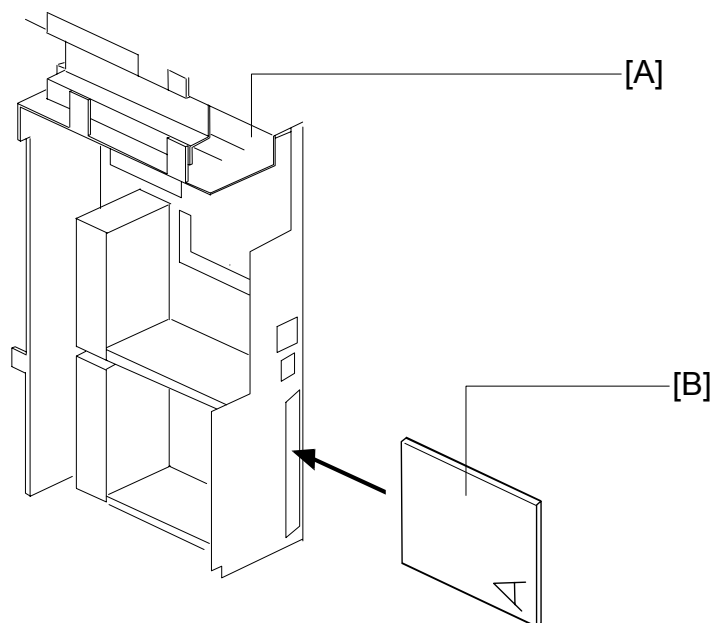
- Scan Router V2 Lite for Win98SE/ME/NT4.0/2000
- Desk Top Binder V2 Lite for Win98SE/ME/NT4.0/2000

DDST Unit
B865/B866

SPECIFICATIONS

3. MACHINE CONFIGURATION

3.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS



Item	Machine Code		Remarks
Controller Box	B865/866	[A]	Required to install the printer/scanner unit
PCL option	-	[B]	Only installing PCL driver

**MFP EXPANSION CONTROLLER BOX/
PRINTER SCANNER/FAX
B843/B867/B868
INSTALLATION PROCEDURE ONLY**

NOTE: THE MFP EXPANSION MUST BE INSTALLED BY A CUSTOMER SERVICE REPRESENTATIVE WHO HAS COMPLETED THE TRAINING COURSES ON THE BASE MACHINE AND THE MFP EXPANSION.

MFP EXPANSION CONTROLLER BOX/ PRINTER SCANNER/FAX B843/B867/B868

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INSTALLATION	1
1.1 MFP EXPANSION	1
1.2 ACCESSORY CHECK.....	1
1.3 INSTALLING EXPANSION COMPONENT.....	2
Step 1–Controller Box.....	2
Step 2–Printer/Scanner.....	3
Step 3–Fax	4
Step 4–Reassembling	5
1.4 INSTALLING PANELS AND KEYS	6
Step 5–Panel	6
Step 6–Printer/Scanner Keys.....	6
Step 7–Fax Keys	7
Step 8–Printer/Scanner and Fax Keys.....	7
1.5 SETTINGS.....	8
Step 9–MFP Model Settings	8
Step 10–Fax Model (without printer/scanner) Settings	8
Step 11–Fax Settings.....	8
Step 12–Settings for all models	9

** WARNING**

1. **Never install telephone wiring during a lightning storm.**
2. **Never install telephone jacks in wet locations unless the jack is specifically designed for wet locations.**
3. **Never touch uninsulated telephone wires or terminals unless the telephone line has been disconnected at the network interface.**
4. **Use caution when installing or modifying telephone lines.**
5. **Avoid using a telephone (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be remote risk of electric shock from lightning.**
6. **Do not use a telephone or cellular phone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.**

** CAUTION**

1. **Before installing the fax unit, switch off the main switch, and disconnect the power cord.**
2. **The Controller board on this machine contains a lithium battery. The danger of explosion exists if a battery of this type is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.**
3. **The optional fax and memory board contain lithium batteries, which can explode if replaced incorrectly. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Do not recharge or burn the batteries. Used batteries must be handled in accordance with local regulations.**

1. INSTALLATION

1.1 MFP EXPANSION

This includes the installation procedures for the optional controller box, optional printer scanner, and optional fax. See each step as necessary.

Machine Configuration	Reference		
	Component	Panel and Key	Settings
Printer/scanner	Step 1 → 2 → 4	Step 5 → 6	Step 9 → 12
Fax	Step 1 → 3 → 4	Step 5 → 7	Step 10 → 11 → 12
Printer/scanner + Fax	Step 1 → 2 → 3 → 4	Step 5 → 8	Step 9 → 11 → 12

1.2 ACCESSORY CHECK

	No.	Description	Q'ty
Controller Box	1	Installation procedure	1
	2	Controller box	1
	3	Operation panel	1
	4	Expansion decal	1
	5	Screw M3 x 8	1
	6	Tapping screw M3 x 6	6
	7	Ground cable	1
	8	Clamp	1
	9	Operating instructions (-17, -19, -21, -29)	1 set
Printer Scanner	1	Installation procedure	1
	2	Dummy cover-fax	1
	3	Dummy key top	1
	4	Printer/Scanner key panel	2
	5	SD card	1
	6	RAM DIMM	1
	7	Ferrite core	1
	8	Operating instructions	1 set
	9	FCC label	1
Fax	1	Installation procedure	1
	2	Fax application panel	1
	3	Key top-fax	2
	4	Copy key panel	2
	5	FCU	1
	6	SG3 label	1
	7	Handset bracket (-17)	1
	8	Modular code (-17)	1
	9	User function key decal (-17, -29)	1
	10	Ferrite core	1
	11	Connector cover-Network cable	1
	12	Connector cover-Tel line (-17)	1
	13	Serial number decal	1
	14	SD card	1
	15	FCC label (-17)	1

MFP Expansion
B843
Printer/Scanner
/Fax B867/B868

1.3 INSTALLING EXPANSION COMPONENT

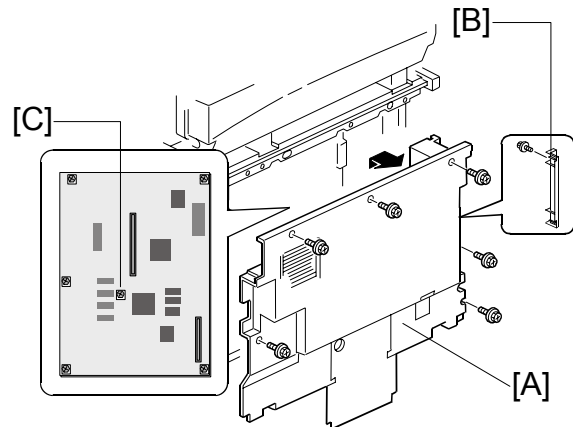
⚠ CAUTION

Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

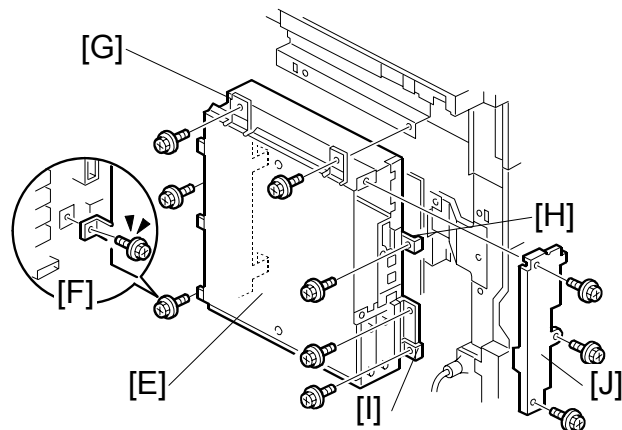
NOTE: In this installation procedure, the symbol "🔩" indicates screws.

Step 1–Controller Box

1. Remove the rear cover [A] (🔩 x 6).
2. Remove the slot cover [B] (🔩 x 1).
3. Remove one screw [C] from the BICU.

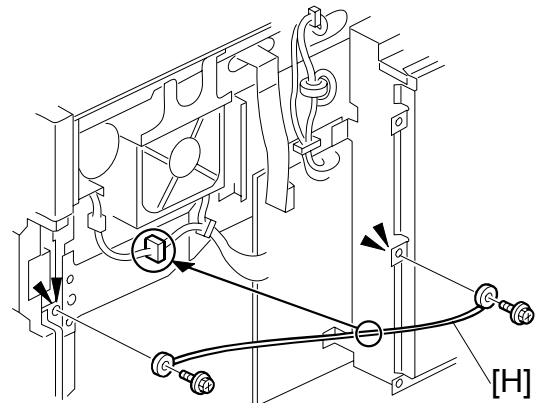
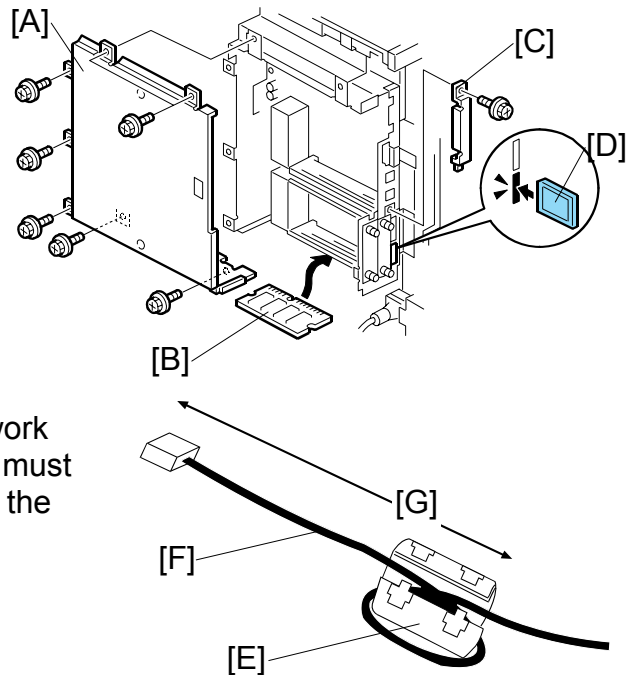


4. Connect the controller box [E] to the BICU. Make sure that the BICU is not damaged [F] and that the three openings [G][H][I] hold the controller box.
5. Fasten the screws (🔩 x 7 [including the screw [C]]).
6. Remove the FCU cover [J] (🔩 x 3).

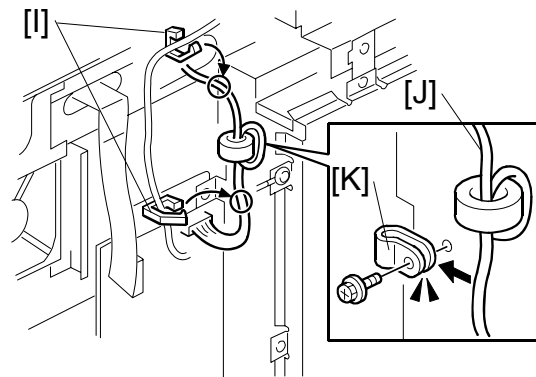


Step 2–Printer/Scanner

1. Remove the controller-box cover [A] (⌀ x 7).
2. Install the RAM DIMM [B].
3. Remove the SD-card cover [C] (⌀ x 1).
4. Install the SD card [D] in the lowest slot.
5. Install the SD-card cover.
6. Attach the ferrite core [E] to the network cable [F]. The end of the ferrite core must be about 8 cm (3.2") from the end of the cable [G].
7. Install the ground cable [H] as shown, and then clamp the cable (⌀ x 2, ⌀ x 1).

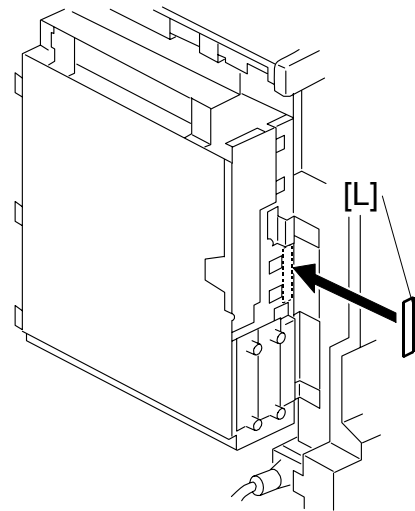


8. Release the clamps [I], and then bind the harness [J] with the clamp [K].
9. Attach the clamp [K] to the controller box.
10. If you do not install the FCU, reinstall the FCU bracket, which has been removed in step 1, to the controller box.



MFP Expansion
B843
Printer/Scanner
/Fax B867/B868

11. Attach the FCC label [L] at the right-hand side of the USB connector on the controller box (for the NA model only).

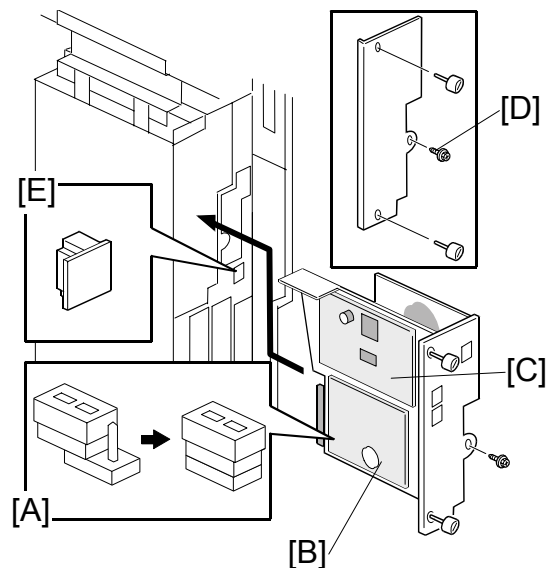


Step 3–Fax

1. Short the jumper [A] on the MBU [B].

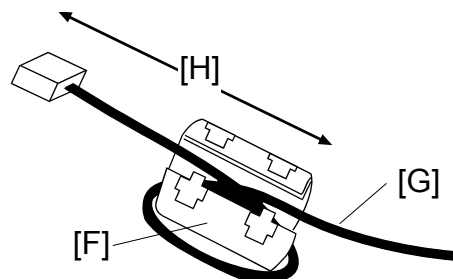
NOTE: The jumper works as the battery switch.

2. Before installing the Fax unit, push the MBU [B] and confirm that the MBU is properly connected to the FCU [C].
3. Install the FCU [C] into the slot (⌀ x 3 [including the screw [D] removed in Step 1]).
4. Attach the connector cover [E] to the network cable slot if you do not connect a network cable.
5. **For NA model only**, attach the connector cover to the "TEL" slot if a handset or an external telephone is not installed.



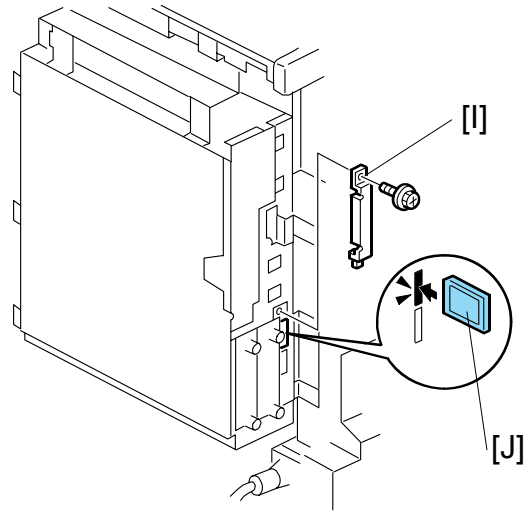
6. Attach the ferrite core [F] to the telephone line [G]. The end of the ferrite core must be about 7 cm (2.8") from the end of the cable [H].
7. Connect the telephone cable to the "LINE" jack.

NOTE: Connect the handset cable to the "TEL" jack if the handset is installed.

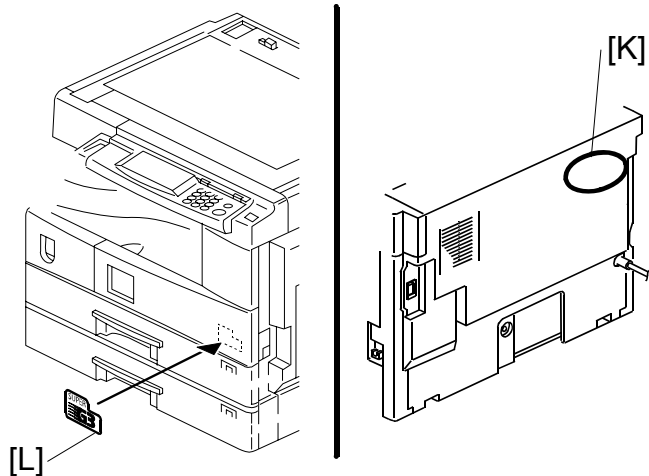


If the printer/scanner option has already been installed, skip steps 8 and 9.

8. Remove the SD-card cover [I] (⚙ x 1).
9. Insert the SD card [J] in the SD card slot 2 (second from the bottom).



10. Attach the serial number decal of the fax unit to the rear left [K] on the rear cover of the mainframe.
11. Attach the SG3 decal [L] to the right side corner of the front cover.
12. **For NA model only**, attach the FCC decal below the serial number decal of the fax unit.



MFP Expansion
B843
Printer/Scanner
/Fax B867/B868

If you install the printer /scanner option after installing the FCU, do the following procedure.

- 1) Do "Step 2-Printer/Scanner".
- 2) Turn on the main power switch, and then enter the SP mode.
- 3) Confirm that the address book data is in the SD card, which is installed in the SD card slot 2 (second from the bottom) with SP5-846-043.
- 4) Copy the address book data in the SD card (slot 2) to the SD card of the printer/scanner (slot 1) with SP5-846-042.
- 5) Turn off the main power switch after completing copying.
- 6) Remove the SD card in the SD card slot 2.
- 7) Keep it in the safe place.

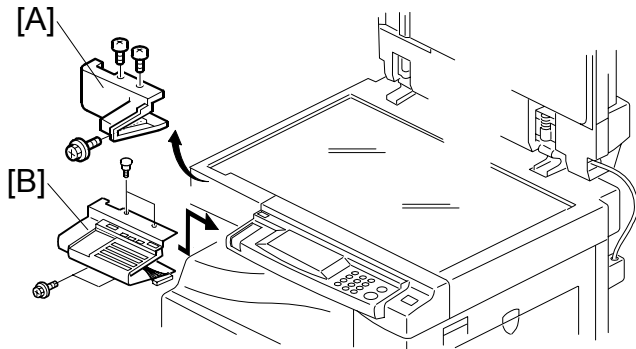
Step 4-Reassembling

1. Reassemble the controller box.
2. Install the rear cover.

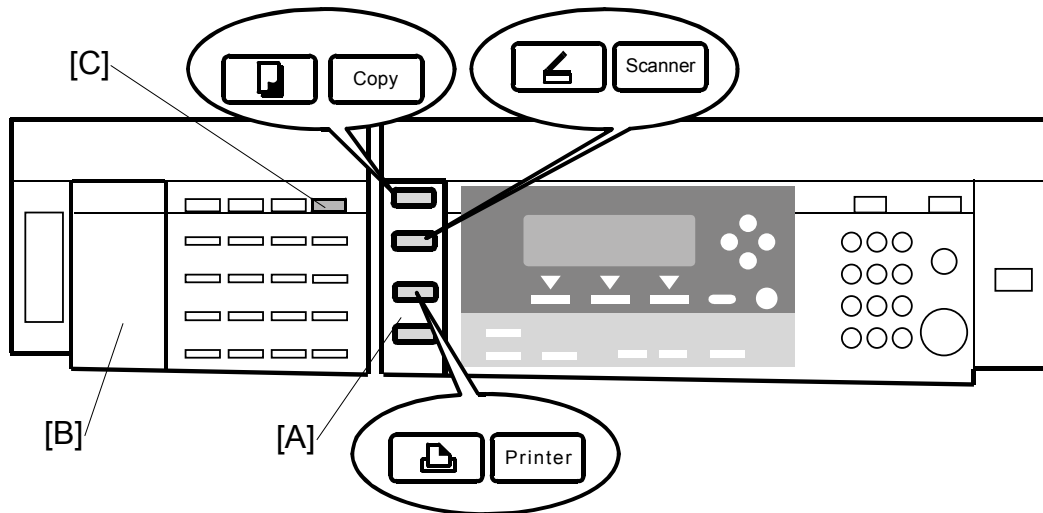
1.4 INSTALLING PANELS AND KEYS

Step 5–Panel

1. Remove the front upper left cover [A] (⌘ x 3).
2. Install the optional operational panel [B] (⌘ x 1, ⌘ x 4 [including three screws removed in step 1]).

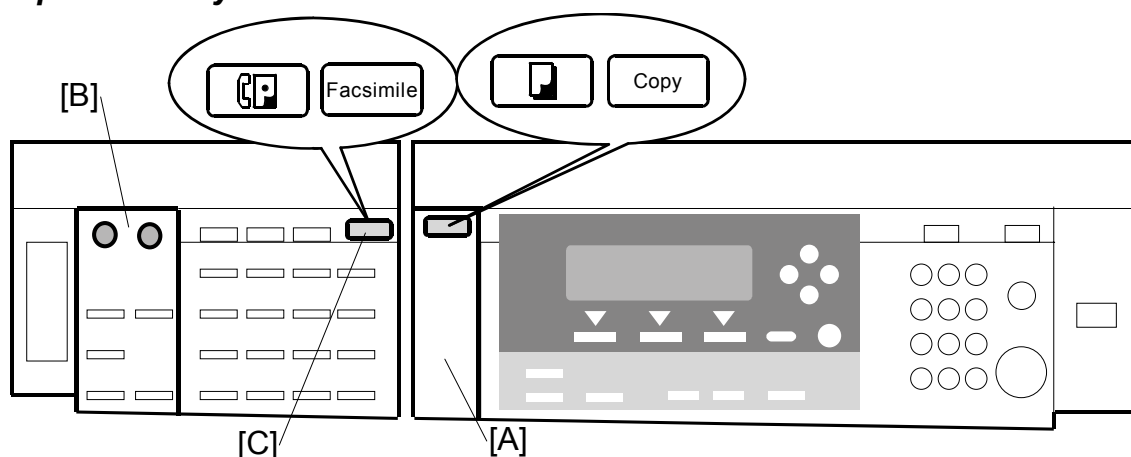


Step 6–Printer/Scanner Keys



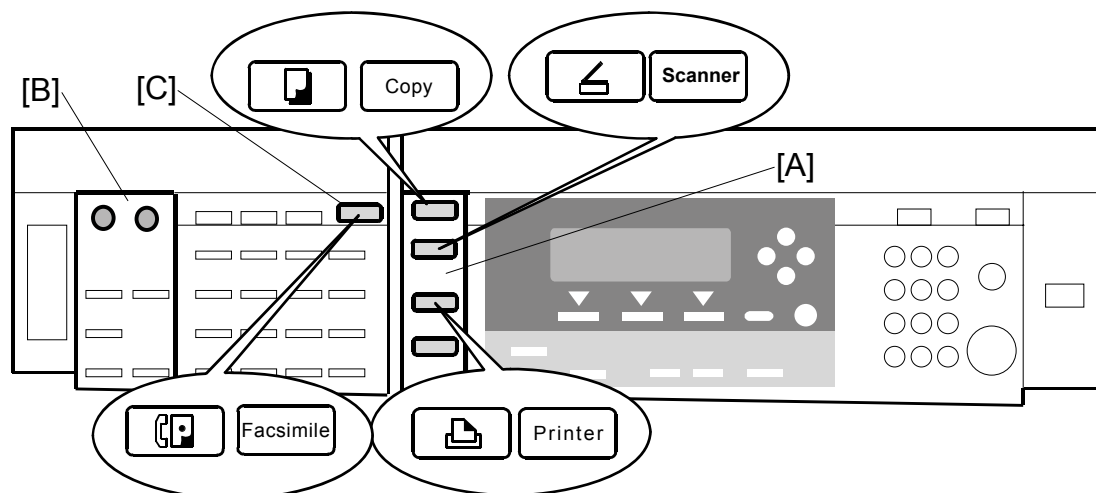
1. Remove the dummy cover (from the basic operation panel) and install the printer/scanner key panel [A].
2. Install the dummy fax cover [B].
3. Install the dummy key top [C].

Step 7–Fax Keys



1. Remove the dummy cover (from the basic operation panel) and install the copy key panel [A].
2. Install the fax panel [B].
3. Remove the dummy key (from the optional operation panel) and install the fax key [C] to the optional operation panel.

Step 8–Printer/Scanner and Fax Keys



1. Remove the dummy cover (from the basic operation panel) and install the printer/scanner key panel [A].
2. Install the fax panel [B].
3. Remove the dummy key (from the optional operation panel) and install the fax key [C] to the optional operation panel.

MFP Expansion
B843
Printer/Scanner
/Fax B867/B868

1.5 SETTINGS

Step 9–MFP Model Settings

1. Turn the main switch on.
2. Start the SP mode.
3. Select SP5-985-001 (NIC setting) and change the setting value to "1" (ON).
4. Select SP5-985-002 (USB setting) and change the setting value to "1" (ON).
5. Turn the main switch off and on.

Step 10–Fax Model (without printer/scanner) Settings

1. Turn the main switch on.
2. Start the SP mode.
3. Select SP5-985-001 (NIC setting) and change the setting value to "0" (OFF).
4. Select SP5-985-002 (USB setting) and change the setting value to "0" (OFF).
5. Turn the main switch off and on.

Step 11–Fax Settings

Initializing the Fax unit

When you press the Fax key for the first time after installation, the error "SRAM problem occurred / SRAM was formatted" will show on the LCD for initializing the program of the fax unit. Turn the main power switch off/on to clear the error display.

NOTE: If another error occurs after initialization, this can be a functional problem.

1. Select fax SP1-101-016 and specify the country code.
2. Select fax SP3-101-001 and specify the service station.

Step 12–Settings for all models

1. Start the SP mode.
2. Select SP5-801-001 and initialize the all SP data.
3. Exit the SP mode, and then start the UP mode.
4. Select the "@Remote Service" ("User Tool" > "System Settings > Administrator Tools" > "Extended Security" > @Remote Service") and select "Prohibit". (or do not "Prohibit" if customer is using @Remote)
5. Exit the UP mode, and then start the SP mode.
6. Select SP5-870-003 and execute initialization for @Remote. (If customer is using @remote only)
7. Select SP5-907-001 and specify the "Plug & Play".
8. Select SP5-870-001 and execute writing certification for @Remote. (If customer is using @remote only)
9. Select SP5-302-002 and specify the time zone.
10. Select SP5-307-001, 003, and 004 and specify the daylight-saving time settings.
11. Exit the SP mode.
12. Turn the main switch off and on.
13. Start the UP mode.
14. Specifies the date and time with "Set Date" or "Set Time" (User Tool" > "System Settings" > "Set Date" or "Set Time").

MFP Expansion
B843
Printer/Scanner
/Fax B867/B868

PRINTER/SCANNER UNIT

B867

PRINTER/SCANNER UNIT B867

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INSTALLATION	1
1.1 CONTROLLER BOX AND PRINTER/SCANNER	1
1.1.1 ACCESSORY CHECK.....	1
1.1.2 INSTALLING EXPANSION COMPONENT	2
1.1.3 INSTALLING PANELS AND KEYS.....	5
1.1.4 SETTINGS	6
1.2 CONTROLLER OPTIONS	8
1.2.1 OVERVIEW.....	8
1.2.2 POSTSCRIPT3 INSTALLATION.....	9
1.2.3 JAVA VM OPTION INSTALLATION	9
1.2.4 WIRELESS LAN (IEEE 802.11B) INSTALLATION	10
1.2.5 IEEE 1284 INSTALLATION	12
1.2.6 BLUETOOTH INSTALLATION.....	13
1.2.7 USB HOST INSTALLATION	14
1.2.8 REMOTE COMMUNICATION GATE INSTALLATION	15
2. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	18
2.1 MAIN BOARD	18
2.1.1 PRECAUTIONS.....	18
2.1.2 CONTROLLER BOARD.....	18
3. TROUBLESHOOTING	22
3.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS.....	22
3.1.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS.....	22
3.1.2 GW SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS.....	23
4. SERVICE TABLES.....	37
4.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE	37
4.1.1 ENABLING AND DISABLING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE	37
4.2 SP MODE TABLES.....	38
4.2.1 SP4-XXX (MODE).....	38
4.2.2 SP5-XXX (MODE).....	41

4.2.3 SP7-XXX (DATA LOG)	85
4.2.4 SP8-XXX (HISTORY)	90
4.3 PRINTER SERVICE MODE	113
4.3.1 SERVICE MODE TABLE	113
4.3.2 SP MODES RELATED TO PRINTER CONTROLLER	113
4.4 SCANNER SERVICE MODE	115
4.4.1 SCANNER PROGRAM MODE TABLE	115
4.5 USING SP MODE	116
4.5.1 MEMORY CLEAR	116
4.5.2 SERIAL NUMBER INPUT (SP5-811)	117
4.5.3 SMC PRINT (SP5-990)	118
4.5.4 COUNTER-EACH PAPER JAM (SP7-504)	118
4.5.5 ORIGINAL JAM HISTORY DISPLAY (SP7-508)	119
4.5.6 FIRMWARE UPDATE PROCEDURE	120
4.5.7 NVRAM DATA UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD	126
4.5.8 POWER-ON SELF TEST	127
5. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS	128
5.1 OVERVIEW	128
5.2 CONTROLLER FUNCTIONS	130
5.2.1 PAPER SOURCE SELECTION	130
5.2.2 AUTO CONTINUE	131
5.2.3 PAPER OUTPUT TRAY	131
5.2.4 DUPLEX PRINTING	132
5.3 SCANNER FUNCTIONS	133
5.3.1 IMAGE PROCESSING FOR SCANNER MODE	133
5.4 NETWORK INTERFACE	134
5.4.1 LED INDICATORS	134
5.5 IEEE 802.11B (WIRELESS LAN)	135
5.5.1 SPECIFICATIONS	135
5.5.2 TRANSMISSION MODES	136
5.5.3 SECURITY FEATURES	137
5.5.4 WIRELESS LAN TROUBLESHOOTING NOTES	137
5.6 BLUETOOTH	140
5.6.1 SPECIFICATIONS	140
5.6.2 BLUETOOTH PROFILES	140

5.6.3 BLUETOOTH SECURITY FEATURES	141
5.7 USB.....	142
5.7.1 SPECIFICATIONS	142
5.7.2 USB 1.1/2.0.....	142
5.7.3 USB CONNECTORS	143
5.7.4 PIN ASSIGNMENT	143
6. SPECIFICATIONS.....	145
6.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS	145
6.1.1 PRINTER	145
6.1.2 SCANNER	146
6.2 SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES	147
6.2.1 PRINTER	147
6.2.2 SCANNER	148
6.3 MACHINE CONFIGURATION	149
6.3.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS.....	149

Read This First

Safety Notices

Important Safety Notices

Prevention of Physical Injury

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the copier and peripherals, make sure that the power cord is unplugged.
2. The wall outlet should be near the copier and easily accessible.
3. Note that some components of the copier and the paper tray unit are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main power switch is turned off.
4. If a job has started before the copier completes the warm-up or initializing period, keep hands away from the mechanical and electrical components because the starts making copies as soon as the warm-up period is completed.
5. The inside and the metal parts of the fusing unit become extremely hot while the copier is operating. Be careful to avoid touching those components with your bare hands.

Health Safety Conditions

Toner and developer are non-toxic, but if you get either of them in your eyes by accident, it may cause temporary eye discomfort. Try to remove with eye drops or flush with water as first aid. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.

Observance of Electrical Safety Standards

The copier and its peripherals must be installed and maintained by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.

Safety and Ecological Notes for Disposal

1. Do not incinerate toner bottles or used toner. Toner dust may ignite suddenly when exposed to an open flame.
2. Dispose of used toner, developer, and organic photoconductors in accordance with local regulations. (These are non-toxic supplies.)
3. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.

Laser Safety

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) prohibits the repair of laser-based

optical units in the field. The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

⚠ WARNING

- Use of controls, or adjustment, or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

⚠ WARNING FOR LASER UNIT

WARNING: Turn off the main switch before attempting any of the procedures in the Laser Unit section. Laser beams can seriously damage your eyes.

CAUTION MARKING:

**CAUTION
VORSICHT**



>PS<

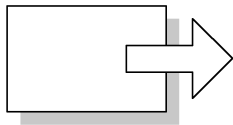
INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN.
AVOID EXPOSURE TO BEAM.
UNSICHTBARE LASERSTRAHLUNG
WENN ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET.
NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.

Symbols and Abbreviations

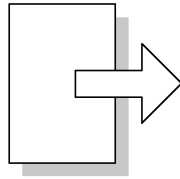
Conventions Used in this Manual

This manual uses several symbols.

Symbol	What it means
	Refer to section number
	Screw
	Connector
	E-ring
	Clip ring
	Clamp



Short Edge Feed (SEF)



Long Edge Feed (LEF)

Cautions, Notes, etc.

The following headings provide special information:

WARNING

- Failure to obey warning information could result in serious injury or death.

CAUTION

- Obey these guidelines to ensure safe operation and prevent minor injuries.

Important

- Obey these guidelines to avoid problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine.
- Always obey these guidelines to avoid serious problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine.
bold is added for emphasis.

Note

- This information provides tips and advice about how to best service the machine.

1. INSTALLATION

1.1 CONTROLLER BOX AND PRINTER/SCANNER

When you install the printer/scanner option, the GW controller box must also be installed. This procedure shows the installation procedure for the GW controller box and printer/scanner option.

1.1.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

	No.	Description	Q'ty
Controller Box	1	Installation procedure	1
	2	Controller box	1
	3	Operation panel	1
	4	Expansion decal	1
	5	Screw M3 x 8	1
	6	Tapping screw M3 x 6	6
	7	Ground cable	1
	8	Clamp	1
Printer Scanner	1	Installation procedure	1
	2	Dummy cover-fax	1
	3	Dummy key top	1
	4	Printer/Scanner key panel	2
	5	SD card	1
	6	RAM DIMM	1
	7	Ferrite core	1
	8	Operating instructions	1
	9	FCC label	1

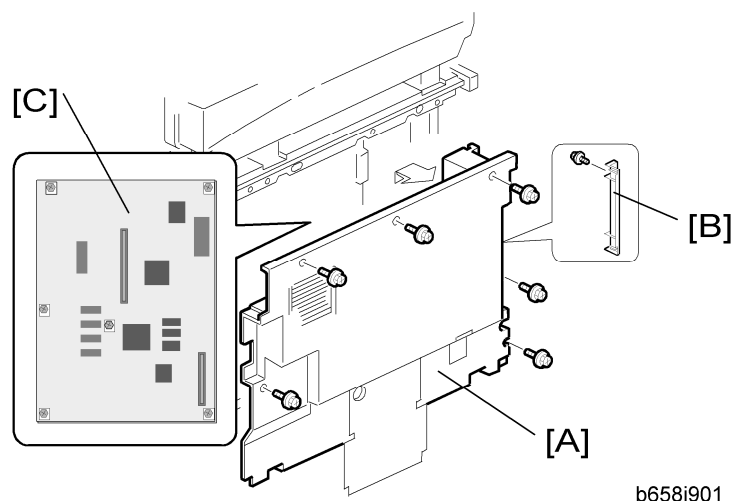
B867
Printer/
Scanner Unit

1.1.2 INSTALLING EXPANSION COMPONENT

CAUTION

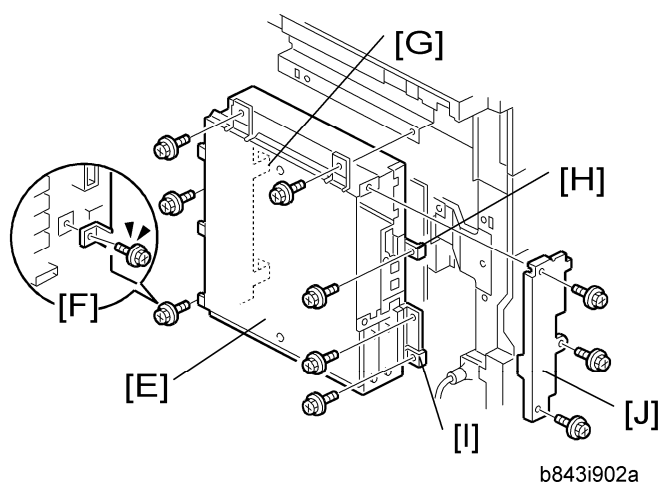
- Unplug the machine power cord before starting the following procedure.

Step 1–Controller Box



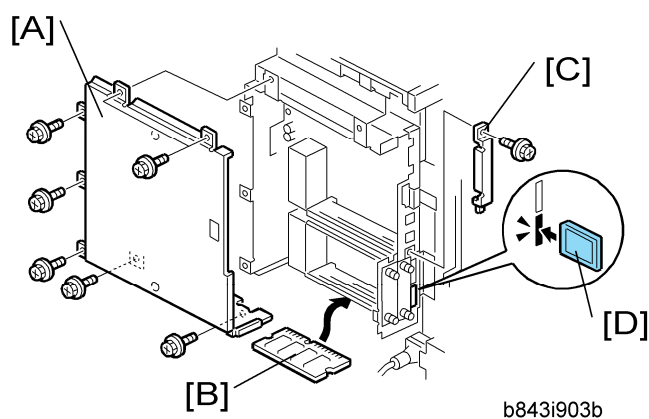
b658i901

1. Remove the rear cover [A] (ϕ x 6).
2. Remove the slot cover [B] (ϕ x 1).
3. Remove one screw [C] from the BICU.



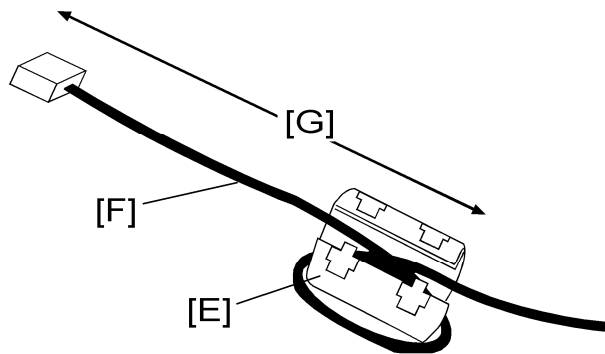
4. Connect the controller box [E] to the BICU. Make sure that the BICU is not damaged [F] and that the three openings [G][H][I] hold the controller box.
5. Fasten the screws (⌀ x 7 [including the screw [C]]).
6. Remove the FCU cover [J] (⌀ x 3).

Step 2–Printer/Scanner



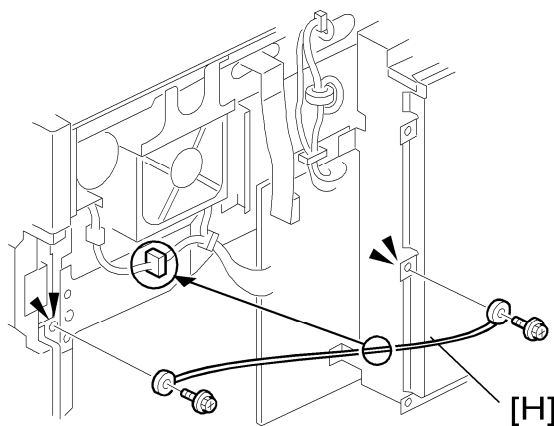
1. Remove the controller-box cover [A] (⌀ x 7).
2. Install the RAM DIMM [B].
3. Remove the SD-card cover [C] (⌀ x 1).
4. Install the SD card [D] in the lowest slot.
5. Install the SD-card cover.

Controller Box and Printer/Scanner



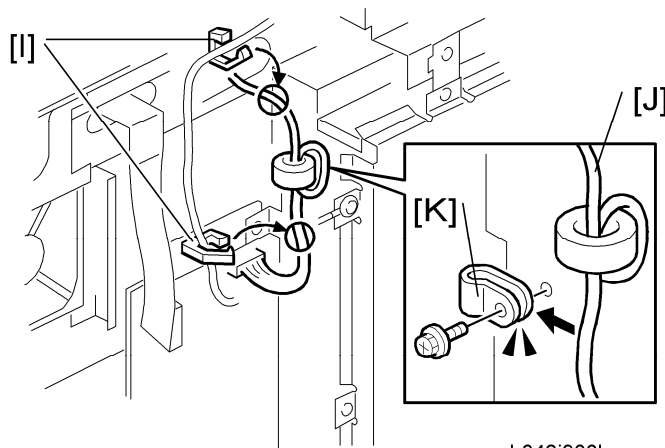
b658i912

6. Attach the ferrite core [E] to the network cable [F]. The end of the ferrite core must be about 8 cm (3.2") from the end of the cable [G].



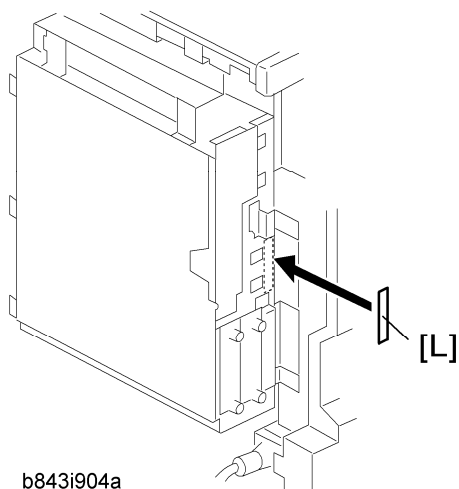
b843i504

7. Install the ground cable [H] as shown, and then clamp the cable (⚙ x 2, ⚙ x 1).



b843i900b

8. Release the clamps [I], and then bind the harness [J] with the clamp [K].
9. Attach the clamp [K] to the controller box.
10. If you do not install the FCU, reinstall the FCU bracket (which has been removed in Step 1 Item 7), to the controller box.



11. Attach the FCC label [L] at the right-hand side of the USB connector on the controller box (for the USA model only).

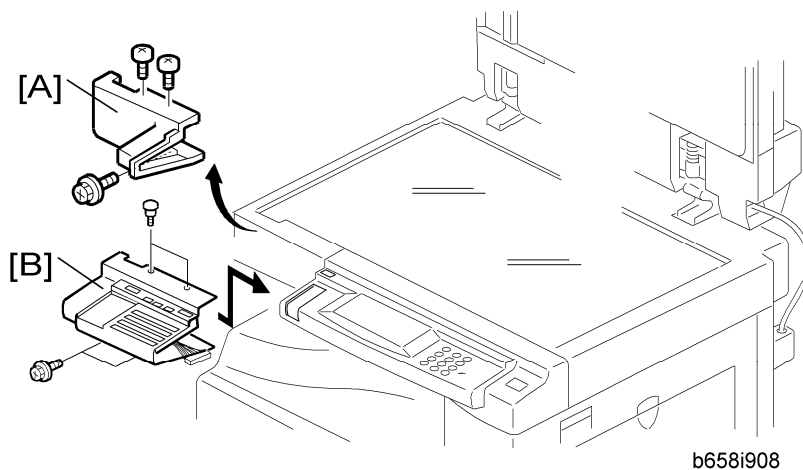
If installing fax option go to fax installation step now.

Step 4–Reassembling

1. Reassemble the controller box.
2. Install the rear cover.

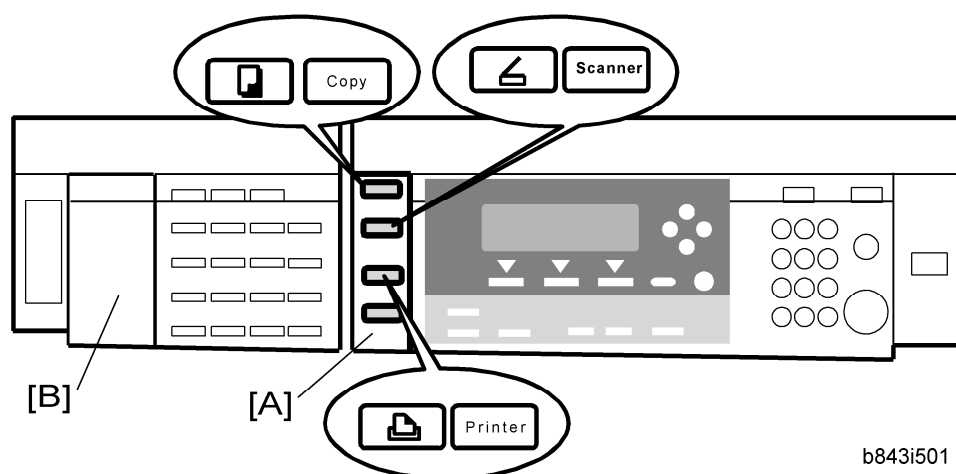
1.1.3 INSTALLING PANELS AND KEYS

Step 5–Panel



1. Remove the front upper left cover [A] (⌀ x 3).
2. Install the optional operational panel [B] (⌀ x 1, ⌀ x 4 [including the three screws removed in step 1]).

Step 6–Printer/Scanner Keys



1. Remove the dummy cover (from the basic operation panel) and install the printer/scanner key panel [A].
2. Install the dummy fax cover [B].

1.1.4 SETTINGS

Step 9–Printer/Scanner Model Settings

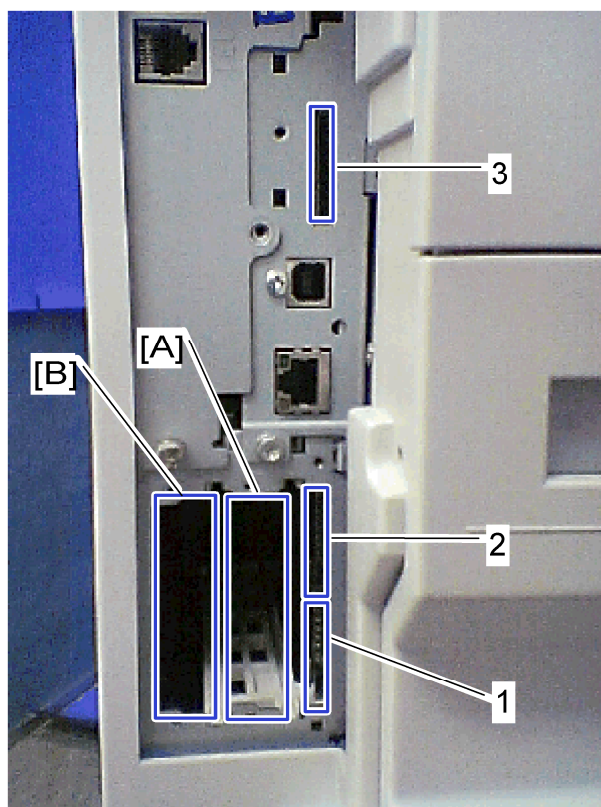
1. Turn the main switch on.
2. Start the SP mode.
3. Select SP5-985-001 (NIC setting) and change the setting value to "1" (ON).
4. Select SP5-985-002 (USB setting) and change the setting value to "1" (ON).
5. Turn the main switch off and on.
6. Start the SP mode.
7. Select SP5-801-001 and initialize the all SP data.
8. Exit the SP mode, and then start the UP mode.
9. Select the "@Remote Service" ("User Tool" > "System Settings > Administrator Tools" > "Extended Security" > @Remote Service") and select "Prohibit".
10. Exit the UP mode, and then start the SP mode.
11. Select SP5-870-003 and execute initialization for @Remote.
12. Select SP5-907-001 and specifies the "Plug & Play".
13. Select SP5-870-001 and execute writing certification for @Remote.
14. Select SP5-302-002 and specify the time zone.
15. Select SP5-307-001, 003, and 004 and specify the daylight-saving time settings.
16. Exit the SP mode.
17. Turn the main switch off and on.
18. Start the UP mode.

19. Specifies the date and time with "Set Date" or "Set Time" (User Tool" > "System Settings" > "Set Date" or "Set Time").

1.2 CONTROLLER OPTIONS

1.2.1 OVERVIEW

This machine has I/F card slots and SD card slots for optional I/F connections and applications.



b867i503

I/F Card Slot

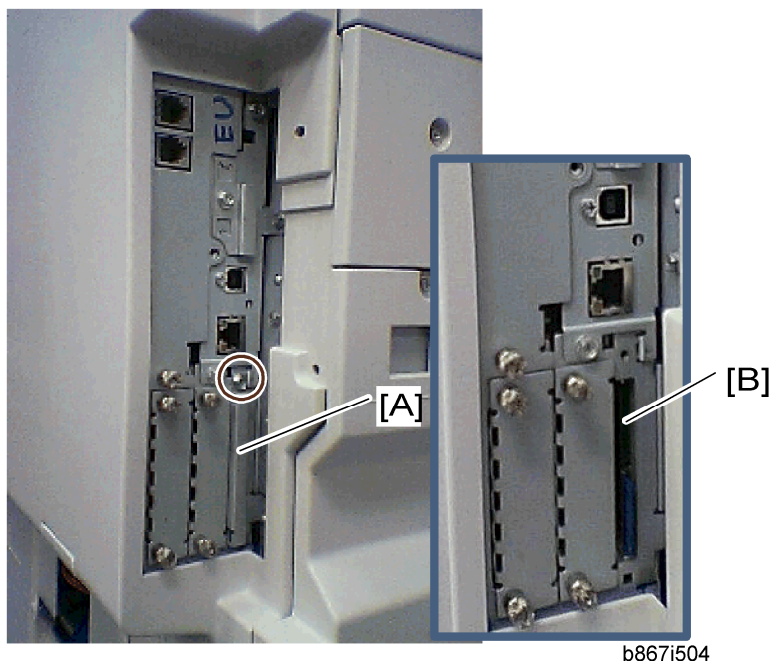
- Slot [A] is used for one of the optional I/F connections: (IEEE1284, IEEE802.11 (Wireless LAN), Bluetooth or Embedded RCG-M).
- Slot [B] do not use.

SD Card Slot

- Slot [1] is used for optional printer/scanner application only.
- Slot [2] is used for PostScript3.
- Slot [3] is used for the Java VM Option or service use.

1.2.2 POSTSCRIPT3 INSTALLATION

Installation Procedure



1. Remove the SD card slot cover [A] (1 x 1).
2. Install the PostScript3 SD card into the slot 2 [B].
3. Reinstall the SD card slot cover [A] (1 x 1).
4. Turn on the main power switch.
5. Print out the configuration page (User Tools/ Counter > Printer Features > List/ Test Print), and then check that this device is detected.
6. Attach the "Adobe PostScript3" decal to the front cover of the machine.

1.2.3 JAVA VM OPTION INSTALLATION

Installation Procedure

SD card slot 3 is basically used only for service maintenance. Do not leave an SD card in slot 3 after installing an application.

Controller Options



b867i505

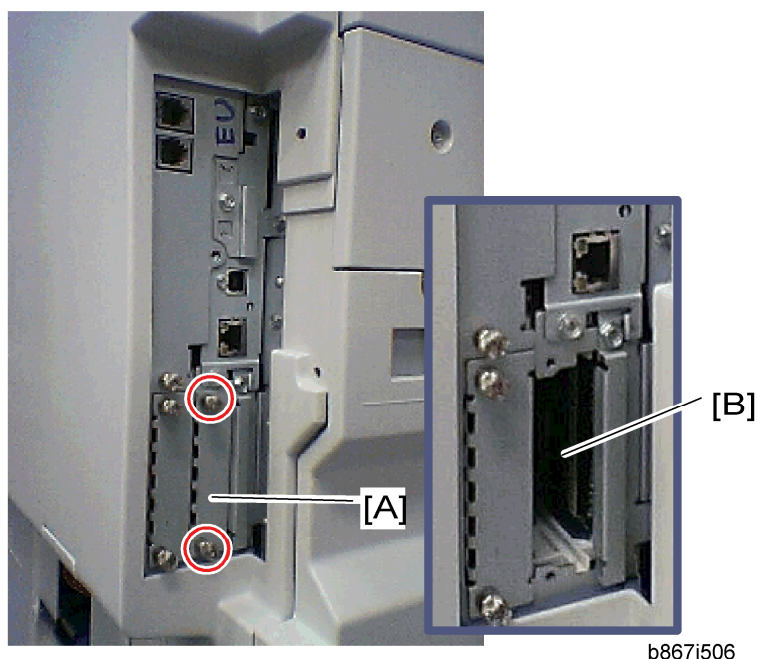
1. Remove the slot cover [A] from the SD card slot 3 (⑧ x 1).
2. Turn the SD-card label face to the rear of the machine. Then push it slowly into slot 3 [B] until you hear a click.
3. Turn on the main power switch.
4. Follow the vendor's installation procedure.
5. After installing, turn off the main power switch
6. Remove the SD card from slot 3.
7. Attach the slot cover [A] (⑧x 1).

1.2.4 WIRELESS LAN (IEEE 802.11B) INSTALLATION

Component Check

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Wireless Adapter	1
2	Wireless LAN Card	1
3	LAN Card Cover	4
4	Caution Sheet	1
5	Label	1

Installation Procedure



1. Remove the interface cover [A] (⌀ x 2).
2. Install the Wireless adaptor to the slot A [B] (⌀ x 2).
3. Install the Wireless LAN card to the wireless adaptor.
4. Attach the antenna cap to the wireless LAN card.
5. Turn on the main power switch.
6. Print out the configuration page (User Tools/Counter > Printer Features > List/Test Print), and then check that this device is detected.

If reception is poor, you may need to move the machine:

- Make sure that the machine is not located near an appliance or any type of equipment that could generate a strong magnetic field.
- Position the machine as close as possible to the access point.

SP Mode Settings for IEEE 802.11b Wireless LAN

The following SP commands can be set for IEEE 802.11b

SP No.	Name	Function
5840 004	SSID	Used to confirm the current SSID setting.
5840 006	Channel MAX	Sets the maximum range of the channel settings for the country.

Controller Options

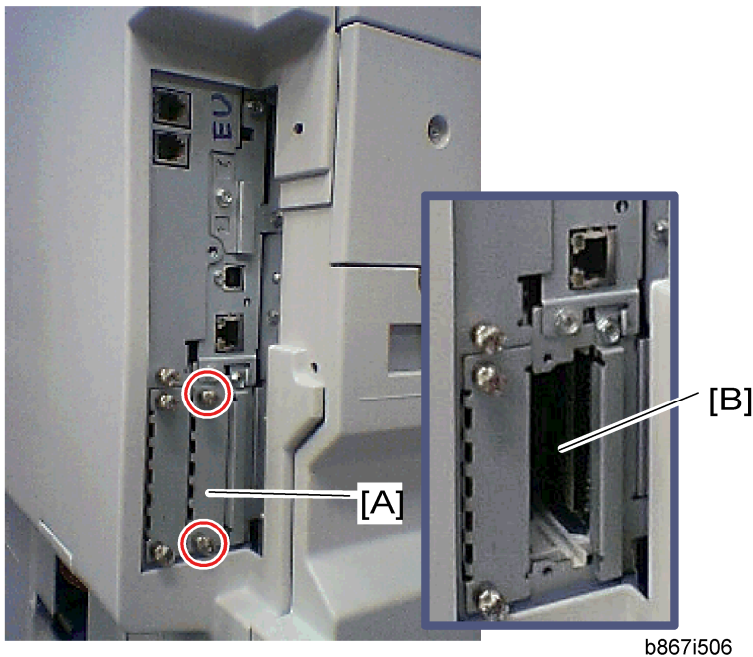
5840 007	Channel MIN	Sets the minimum range of the channel settings allowed for your country.
5840 011	WEP Key Select	Used to select the WEP key (Default: 00).
5840 018	SSID Check	Used to check the SSID.
5840 020	WEP Mode	Used to display the maximum length of the string that can be used for the WEP Key entry.

1.2.5 IEEE 1284 INSTALLATION

Component Check

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	IEEE1284 Interface Ass'y	1
2	UL Sheet	1
3	Caution Sheet	1

Installation Procedure



- 1. Remove the interface cover [A] (2).
- 2. Install the IEEE 1284 board in interface slot A [B] (2).
- 3. Turn on the main power switch.
- 4. Print out the configuration page (User Tools/Counter > Printer Features > List/Test Print), and then check that this device is detected.

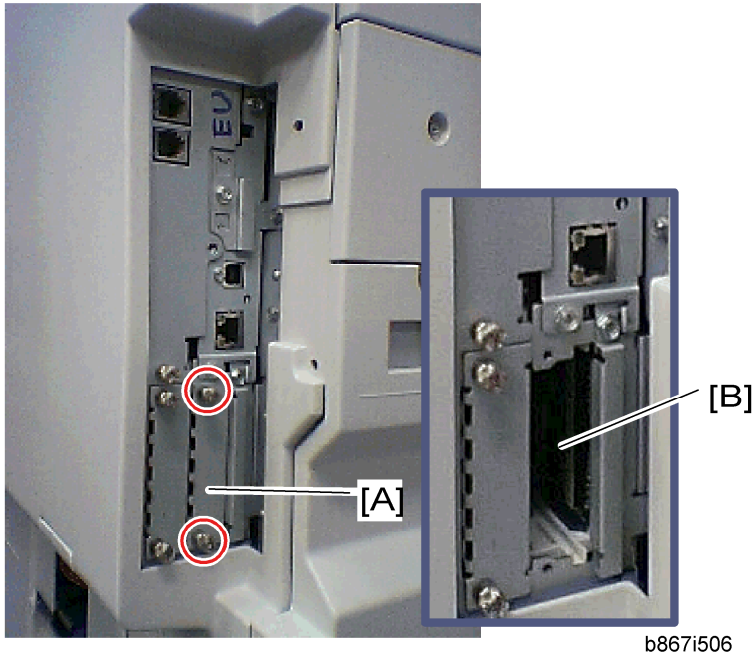
1.2.6 BLUETOOTH INSTALLATION

Component Check

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Wireless Adapter	1
2	Bluetooth Card	1
3	Bluetooth Card Adapter	1
4	Bluetooth Card Cover	1
5	UL/FCC Sheet	1
6	Caution Sheet	1

B867
Printer/
Scanner Unit

Installation Procedure



Controller Options

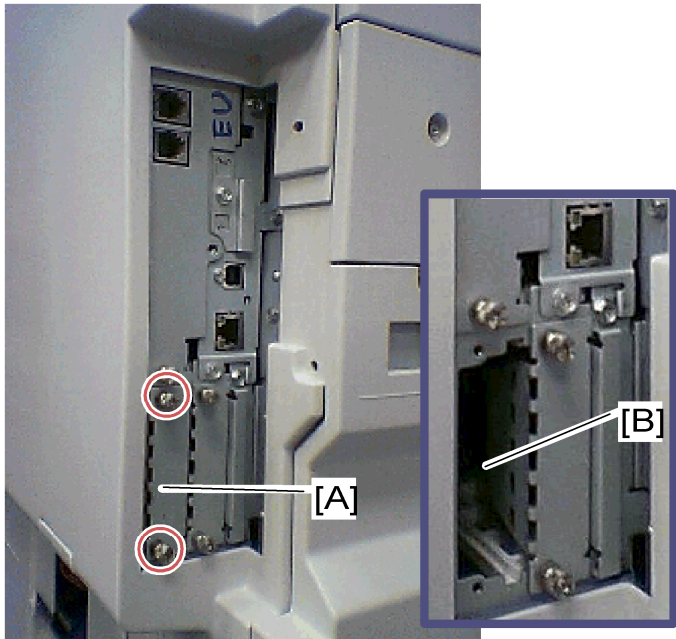
1. Remove the interface cover [A] (2 x 2).
2. Install the Wireless adaptor in interface slot A [B] (2 x 2).
3. Select an appropriate FCC label from the FCC sheet, and then attach the FCC label to the non-label side of the Bluetooth card.
4. Install the Bluetooth card in the wireless adaptor.
5. Attach the antenna cap to the Bluetooth card.
6. Turn on the main power switch.
7. Print out the configuration page (User Tools/ Counter > Printer Features > List/ Test Print), and then check that this device is detected.

1.2.7 USB HOST INSTALLATION

Component Check

No.	Description	Q'ty
1	USB Host Interface Ass'y	1
2	USB Cable	1
3	Ferrite Core	1
4	Clamp	1
5	UL Sheet	1

Installation Procedure



- 1. Remove the interface cover [A] (⌀ x 2).
- 2. Install the USB host board in the interface slot B [B] (⌀ x 2).
- 3. Turn on the main power switch.
- 4. Print out the configuration page (User Tools/ Counter > Printer Features > List/ Test Print), and then check that this device is detected.
- 5. Exit the User Tools mode.

1.2.8 REMOTE COMMUNICATION GATE INSTALLATION

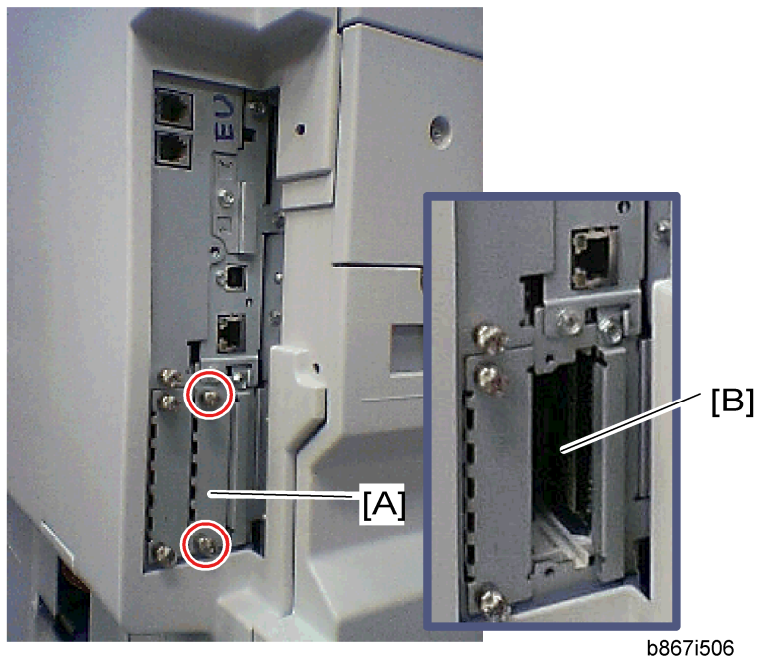
This option requires the printer/scanner application and DIMM 256 MB.

Component Check

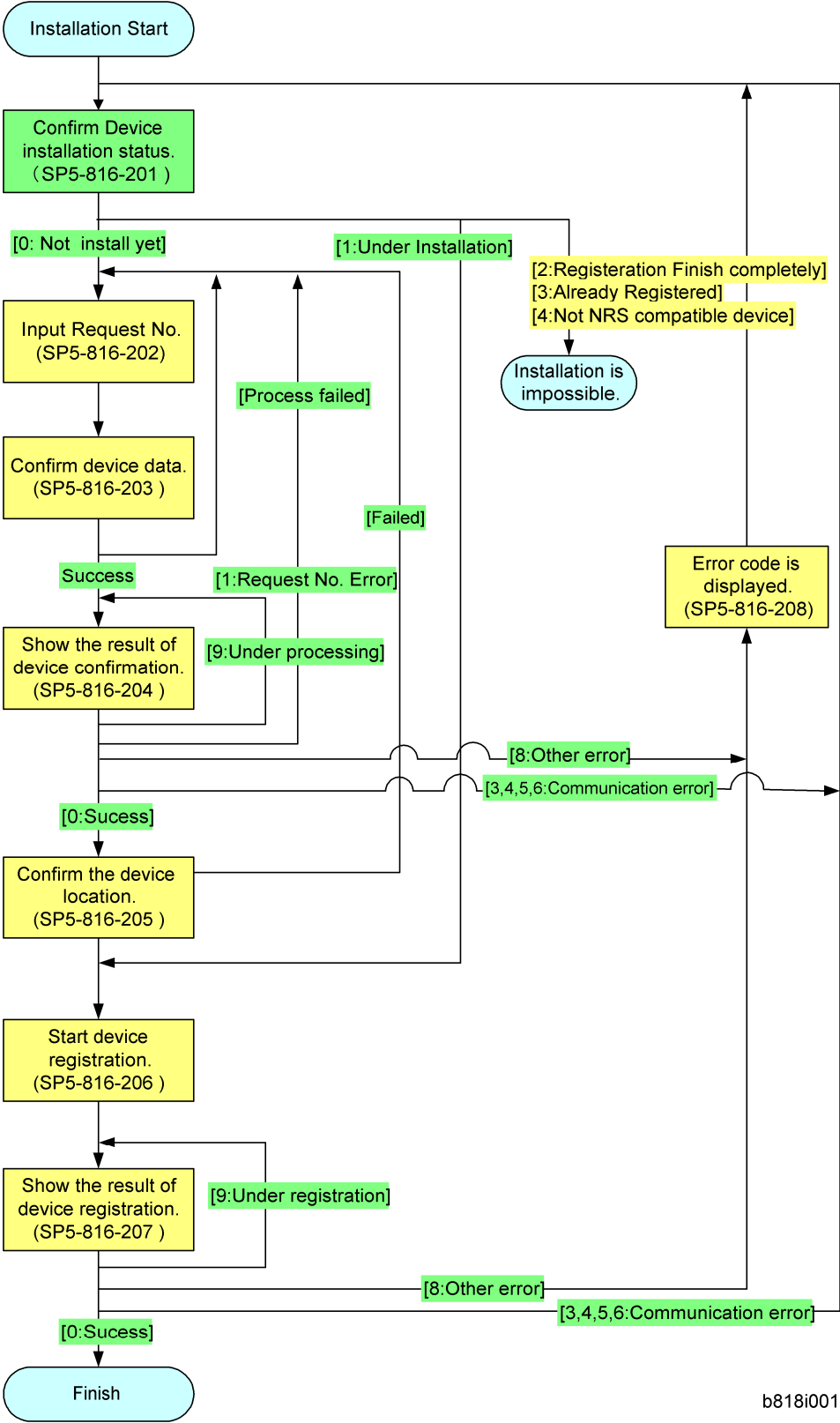
No.	Description	Q'ty
1	Remote Comm. Gate Interface Ass'y	1
2	Cover	1
3	Screw	3

B867
Printer/
Scanner Unit

Installation Procedure



1. Remove the interface cover [A] (⌀ x 2).
2. Install the modem board into interface slot A [B] (⌀ x 2).
3. Confirm the following SP settings before starting installation flow.
 - SP5-985-001 ("On Board NIC" is set to "0: OFF".)
 - SP5-816-150 (To Select the country)
 - SP5-816-154 (To set an outside connection telephone number)
 - SP5-816-161 (To set a telephone number)
4. Follow the Installation flow as shown below with SP mode.



B867
Printer/
Scanner Unit

b818i001

2. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

2.1 MAIN BOARD

2.1.1 PRECAUTIONS

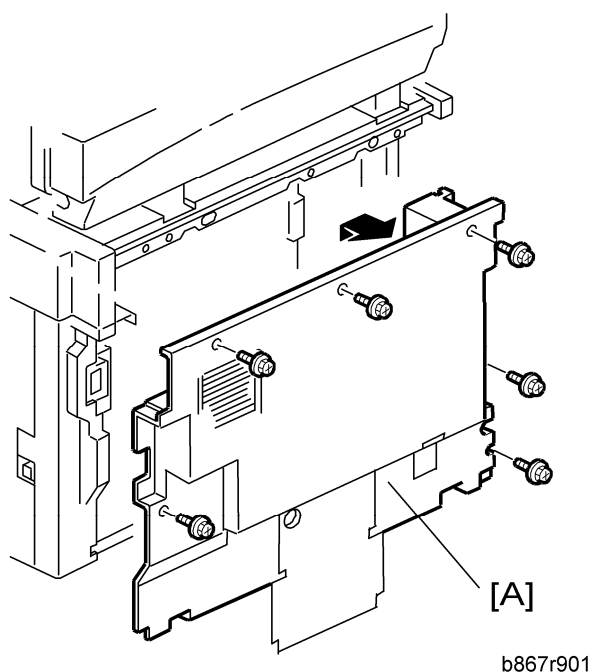
CAUTION

- Turn off the main power switch and unplug the machine before starting replacement.
- Before turning off the main power switch, check that no mechanical component is operating. Mechanical components may stop out of their home positions if you turn off the main power switch while they are operating. The component may be damaged if you try to remove it when it is not in the home position.

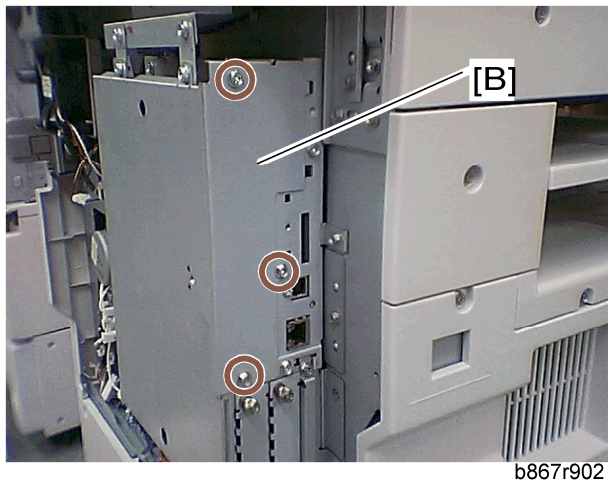
2.1.2 CONTROLLER BOARD

Preparation

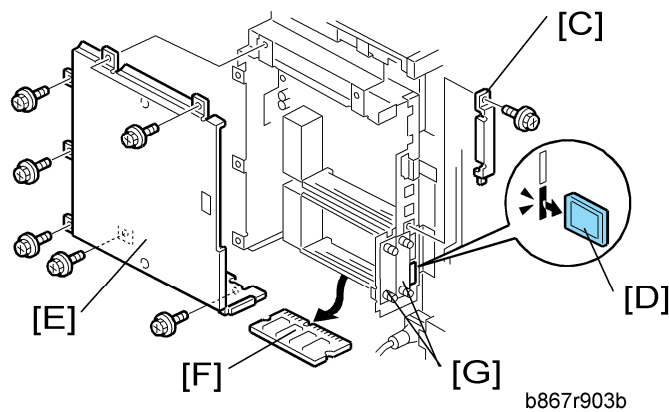
- Before replacing the controller board, be sure to print out SMC or save the NVRAM data.
- Saving from the Controller NVRAM to an SD card (➡ "NVRAM Data Upload/Download [SP5-824/825]" in the chapter "Service Tables" of the this manual)



1. Remove the rear cover [A] (⌀ x 6)

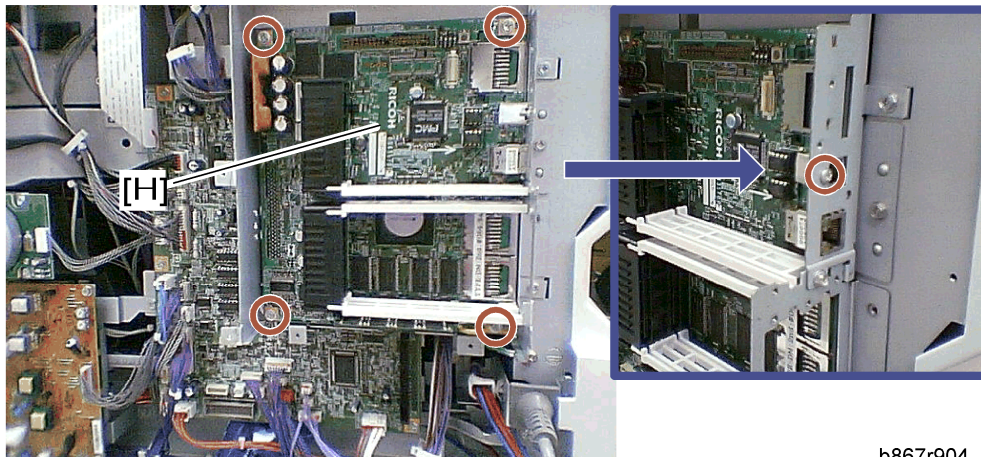


2. Remove the FCU cover [B] (⌀ x 3).



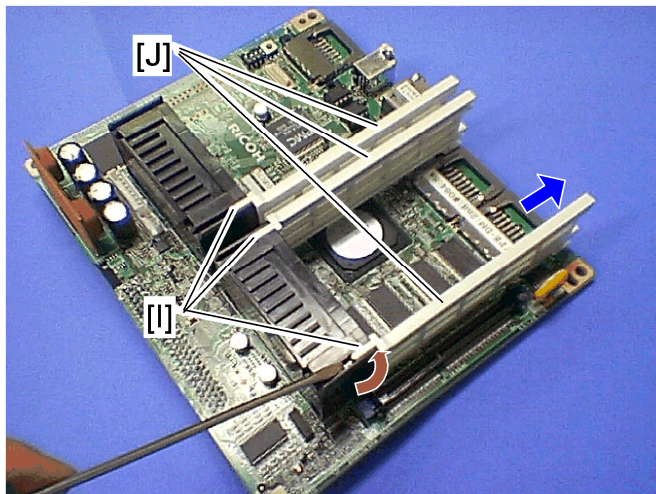
3. Remove the SD-card cover [C] (⌀ x 1), and then remove all SD cards in the SD slots.
4. Remove the controller-box cover [E] (⌀ x 7).
5. Remove the RAM DIMM [F] if it has been installed.
6. Remove the two I/F covers [G] (or I/F options if they have been installed).

Main Board



b867r904

7. Remove the controller board with the rails [H] (5 x).

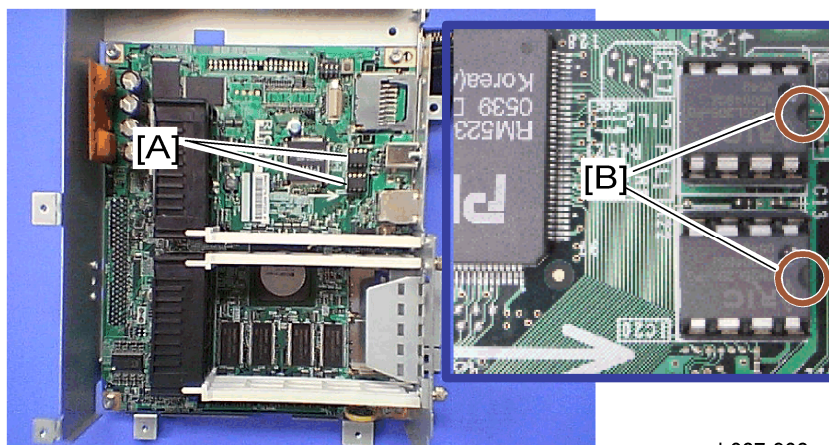


b867r905

8. Release the hooks [I], and then pull out the rails [J].
9. Controller board

↓ Note

- When replacing the controller board, remove the NVRAMs from the board. Install the NVRAMs to the new board.

When replacing the NVRAM on the controller board

b867r906

1. When you replace the NVRAMs [A], make sure that the NVRAMs are correctly installed.
2. The mark [B] on the NVRAM should be directed to the right side (seen from the back side of the machine).
3. Reassemble the machine.
4. Copy the old NVRAM data to the new NVRAM with SP5-825 or input the SMC data in the machine. (For details, refer to the "NVRAM Data Upload/Download [SP5-824/825]" in the chapter "Service Tables" of the this manual)

3. TROUBLESHOOTING

3.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

3.1.1 SERVICE CALL CONDITIONS

There are four levels of service call conditions.

Level	Definition	Reset Procedure
A	To prevent damage to the machine, the main machine cannot be operated until the SC has been reset by a service representative (see the note below).	Enter SP mode, and then turn the main power switch off and on.
B	If the SC was caused by incorrect sensor detection, the SC can be reset by turning the main power switch off and on.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
C	The main machine can be operated as usual, excluding the unit related to the service call.	Turn the main power switch off and on.
D	The SC history is updated. The machine can be operated as usual.	The SC will not be displayed. Only the SC history is updated.

↓ Note

- If the problem concerns electrical circuit boards, first disconnect then reconnect the connectors before replacing the PCBs.
- If the problem concerns a motor lock, first check the mechanical load before replacing motors or sensors.

★ Important

- Do not try to use the operation panel during an automatic reboot.
- If the Remote Service System is used, the SC code is sent immediately to the Service Center

3.1.2 GW SC CODE DESCRIPTIONS

SC6xx

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause/Countermeasure
630	D	CSS communication error	
		The machine tries to communicate with one of the terminals of a relevant service center. → An error signal returns.	Communication error on the public telephone network (logged only; the machine can still operate)
632	C	MF accounting device error 1	
		The machine sends a data frame. → No normal end signal returns. → This symptom happens three times.	Defective or broken line between machine and device
633	C	MF accounting device error 2	
		The machine is communicating with the accounting device. → The break signal returns.	Defective or broken line between machine and device
634	C	MF accounting device error 3	
		A backup RAM error is reported from the accounting device.	- Defective accounting device controller - Defective battery in the accounting device
635	C	MF accounting device error 4	
		A battery voltage error is reported from the accounting device.	- Defective accounting device controller - Defective battery in the accounting device

Service Call Conditions

No. Definition	Symptom	Possible Cause/Countermeasure
636	SD Card Error	
-001	B	Expanded authentication module error
		There is no expanded authentication module in the machine. The SD card or the file of the expanded authentication module is broken. There is no DESS module in the machine. 1. Install the correct SD card or the file of the expanded authentication module. 2. Install the DESS module.
-002	B	Version error
		The version of the expanded authentication module is not correct. 1. Install the correct file of the expanded authentication module.
650	Communication error of the remote service modem (Embedded RCG-M)	
-001	C	Authentication error
		The authentication for the Embedded RCG-M fails at a dial up connection. 1. Check and set the correct user name (SP5816-156) and password (SP5816-157).
-004	C	Incorrect modem setting
		Dial up fails due to the incorrect modem setting. 1. Check and set the correct AT command (SP5819-160).
-005	C	Communication line error
		The supplied voltage is not sufficient due to the defective communication line or defective connection. 1. Consult with the user's local telephone company.

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause/Countermeasure
-011	C	Incorrect network setting	
		Both the NIC and Embedded RCG-M are activated at the same time.	1. Disable the NIC with SP5985-1.
-012	C	Modem board error	
		The modem board does not work properly even though the setting of the modem board is installed with a dial up connection.	1. Install the modem board. 2. Check and reset the modem board setting with SP5816. 3. Replace the modem board.
651		Incorrect dial up connection	
-001	D	Program parameter error	
		The unexpected error occurs when the modem (Embedded RCG-M) tries to call the center with a dial up connection.	▪ Software bug.
-002	D	Program execution error	
		Same as SC651-001.	▪ Software bug.
670	B	Engine startup error	
		Just after the main power is turned on or the machine is recovering from auto off mode, the engine ready signal assertion fails. Just after the main power is turned on, the engine does not respond.	▪ Poor connection between the BICU and controller board ▪ Defective BICU ▪ Defective controller board
672	B	Controller-to-operation panel communication error at startup	
		After powering on the machine, communication between the	▪ Controller stalled ▪ Controller board installed

Service Call Conditions

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause/Countermeasure
		controller and operation panel does not begin, or the communication is interrupted after a normal startup.	incorrectly ▪ Defective controller board ▪ Operation panel connector loose or defective ▪ Poor connection of DIMM and optional boards on the controller board 1. Check the setting of SP5875-001. If the setting is set to "1 (OFF)", change it to "0 (ON)".

SC8xx

No. Definition		Symptom	Possible Cause/Countermeasure
818	B	Watchdog error	
		While the system program is running, no other programs can run (due to a bus hold or endless loop).	▪ Defective controller board 1. Reinstall the system program. 2. Replace the controller board.
819		Kernel stop	
[0696e]	B	Process error	
		System completely down	▪ Defective RAM DIMM ▪ Defective SD card in slot 1 (lowest slot) ▪ Defective controller ▪ Software error 1. Check and/or replace the RAM

			DIMM. 2. Check and/or replace the SD card in slot 1 (lowest slot). 3. Replace the controller. See NOTE at the end of the SC table.
[0766d]	B	VM full error	
		Unexpected system memory size	▪ Defective RAM DIMM ▪ Defective SD card in slot 1 (lowest slot) ▪ Defective controller ▪ Software error 1. Check and/or replace the RAM DIMM. 2. Check and/or replace the SD card in slot 1 (lowest slot). 3. Replace the controller. See NOTE at the end of the SC table.
[4361]	B	Cache error	
		Cache error in the CPU	▪ Defective CPU 1. Replace the controller board.
[----	B	The others	
		Error in OS	▪ Defective memory ▪ Defective flash memory ▪ Defective CPU 1. Replace the controller board.
820	Self-Diagnostic Error: CPU		
	B	[0001-0015] [000A-000D]: Detailed error code	

Service Call Conditions

		During the boot monitor program and self-diagnostic, any exception or cut-in are not supposed to happen. If these happen, it is defined as SC.	▪ Defective CPU device ▪ Defective boot monitor program or self-diagnostic program 1. Replace the controller board. 2. Reinstall the system firmware.
	B	[00FF]: Detailed error code	
		Cache access error in the CPU	▪ Defective CPU ▪ Defective local bus 1. Turn the main power switch off and on. 2. Reinstall the system program. 3. Replace the controller board.
	B	[0601, 0602, 0605, 0606, 0607, 0609]: Detailed error code	
		Exceptional command does not operate even though it is executed on purpose.	▪ Defective CPU devices 1. Replace the controller board.
	B	[060A-060E]: Detailed error code	
		Cut-in command does not operate when it is executed.	▪ Defective CPU devices ▪ Defective ASIC devices 1. Replace the controller board.
	B	[0610]: Detailed error code	
		Timer cut-in does not operate even though it is set.	▪ Defective CPU devices 1. Replace the controller board.
	B	[0612]: Detailed error code	
		Cut-in in ASIC occurs.	▪ Defective ASIC ▪ Defective devices in which ASIC detects cut-in. 1. Replace the controller board.
	B	[06FF]: Detailed error code	

		The pipeline clock frequency rate is different from the prescribed value.	- Defective CPU devices - Mode bit data error, which is used for initializing CPU. - Replace the controller board.
	B	[0702]: Detailed error code	
		The result when the program is executed in the command cache is different from desirable value.	- Insufficient CPU cache - Insufficient memory process speed - Replace the controller board. - Replace the RAM DIMM.
	B	[0709, 070A]: Detailed error code	
		Even you write the data in the only cache of memory, the data is actually written in another area (not cache) of memory.	- Defective CPU devices - Incorrect SPD - Boot mode setting error - Replace the controller board. - Replace the RAM DIMM.
	B	[0801, 0804, 0807, 0808, 0809, 80A]: Detailed error code	
		An error occurs when checking the TLB.	- Defective CPU devices - Replace the controller board.
	B	[4002-4005]: Detailed error code	
		The calculation error in the CPU occurs.	- Defective CPU - Replace the CPU.
821	Self-Diagnostic Error: ASIC		
[0B00]	B	ASIC error	
		The write-&-verify check error has occurred in the ASIC.	- Defective controller board - Replace the controller.
[0B06]	B	ASIC not detected	
		The ASIC of the I/O is not detected.	ASIC (controller board defective)

Service Call Conditions

			- Poor connection between North Bridge and PCI I/F. - Replace controller board.
[0B10]	C	SHM register check error	
		Failed to initialize or could not read connection bus. Data in SHM register incorrect.	- Defective bus connection - Defective SHM - Replace controller board.
[0D05]	B	Timer error between ASIC and CPU	
		The CPU checks if the ASIC timer works properly compared with the CPU timer. If the ASIC timer does not function in the specified range, this SC code is displayed.	- System firmware problem - Defective RAM-DIMM - Defective controller - Reinstall the controller system firmware. - Replace the RAM-DIMM. - Replace the controller board.
823	Self-diagnostic Error: NIB		
[6101]	C	MAC address check sum error	
		The result of the MAC address check sum does not match the check sum stored in ROM.	- Defective controller - Replace the controller.
[6104]	C	PHY IC error	
		The PHY IC on the controller cannot be correctly recognized.	Same as SC823-[6101]
[6105]	C	PHY IC loop-back error	
		An error occurred during the loop-back test for the PHY IC on the controller.	Same as SC823-[6101]
824	B	Self-diagnostic Error: NVRAM	
		The controller cannot recognize	NVRAM damaged or abnormal

		the standard NVRAM installed or detects that the NVRAM is defective.	- Backup battery has discharged - NVRAM socket damaged 1. Replace the NVRAM.
826	B	Self-diagnostic Error: RTC/Optional NVRAM	
		[1501]: Clock error	
		- An RTC device is recognized, and the difference between the RTC device and the CPU exceeds the defined limit. - No RTC device is recognized.	- RTC defective - NVRAM without RTC installed - Backup battery discharged 1. Replace the NVRAM with another NVRAM with an RTC device.
	B	[15FF]: RTC not detected	
		The RTC device is not detected.	- NVRAM without RTC installed - Backup battery discharged 1. Replace the NVRAM with another NVRAM with an RTC device.
827		Self-diagnostic Error: RAM	
[0201]	B	Verification error	
		Error is detected during a write/verify check for the standard RAM (SDRAM DIMM).	- Loose connection - Defective SDRAM DIMM - Defective controller 1. Replace the SDRAM DIMM. 2. Replace the controller.
[0202]	B	Resident memory error	
		The SPD values in all RAM DIMM are incorrect or unreadable.	- Defective RAM DIMM - Defective SPD ROM on RAM DIMM - Defective 12C bus

Service Call Conditions

			1. Replace the RAM DIMM.
828	Self-diagnostic Error: ROM		
[0101]	B	Boost lap code error	
		The boot monitor and OS program stored in the ROM DIMM is checked. If the check sum of the program is incorrect, this SC code is displayed.	- Defective ROM DIMM - Defective controller - Replace the ROM DIMM. - Replace the controller.
[0104]	B	ROMFS error	
		All areas of the ROM DIMM are checked. If the check sum of all programs stored in the ROM DIMM is incorrect, this SC code is displayed.	- Defective ROM DIMM - Replace the ROM DIMM.
829	Self-diagnostic Error: Optional RAM		
[0401]	C	Verification error (Slot 1)	
		The data stored in the RAM in Slot 1 does not match the data when reading.	- Not specified RAM DIMM installed - Defective RAM DIMM - Replace the RAM DIMM. - Replace the controller board.
[0402]	C	Composition error (Slot 1)	
		The result of checking the composition data of the RAM in Slot 1 on the controller is incorrect.	- Not specified RAM DIMM installed - Defective RAM DIMM - Replace the RAM DIMM. - Replace the controller board.
838	B	Self-diagnostic Error: Clock Generator	
		A verify error occurred when	Defective clock generator

		setting data was read from the clock generator via the I2C bus.	- Defective I2C bus - Defective I2C port on the CPU 1. Replace the controller board.
851	C	IEEE1394 I/F abnormal	
		The IEEE1394 interface cannot be used, due to a driver error.	- IEEE1394 interface board defective - Defective controller board
853	C	Wireless card startup error	
		The machine starts up. → The IEEE802 11b card connection board is recognized. → The wireless LAN card or bluetooth card is not recognized.	Loose connection between the wireless card and the connection board
854	C	Wireless card access error	
		The machine has been reading the data from the card. → The machine loses access to the card; the wireless LAN card or bluetooth card connection board is still recognized.	Loose connection between the wireless card and the connection board
855	C	Wireless card error	
		Some illegal data is found in the card.	Defective wireless card
856	C	Wireless card connection board error	
		An error is detected in the wireless LAN card or bluetooth card connection board.	Defective wireless card connection board
857	C	USB I/F Error	
		USB interface error is detected.	Defective controller

Service Call Conditions

			1. Check the USB connections, and make sure that they are securely connected. 2. Replace the controller board.
866	C	SD card authentication error	
		A digital license error of an SD card application is detected.	- SD card data has corrupted. 1. Store correct data in the SD card.
867	B	SD card error	
		An application SD card is removed from the boot slot while an application is activated.	An application SD card is ejected.
868	B	SD card access error (-13 to -3: File system error, other number: Device error)	
		An error report is sent from the SD card reader.	- SD card not inserted correctly - SD card defective - Controller board defective 1. For a file system error, format the SD card on PC. 2. For a device error, turn the main switch off and on. 3. Remove and re-install the SD card. 4. Replace the SD card. 5. Replace the controller.
875	B	Delete All error 2: Data area	
		An error is detected while the all data of the HDD or NVRAM are formatted logically by the Data Overwrite Security Unit (B735).	- The logical format for HDD fails. 1. Turn the main switch off/on and try the operation again.
880	B	File Format Converter (MLB) error	

		A request to get access to the MLB was not answered within the specified time.	MLB defective

SC9xx

900	B	Electronic total counter error	
		The value of the total counter is out of the normal range.	Defective NVRAM
920	C	Printer error	
		An application error that stops the machine operation is detected.	- Defective software - Unexpected hardware resource (e.g., memory shortage)
921	C	Printer font error	
		A necessary font is not found in the SD card when the printer application starts.	- A necessary font is not found in the SD card. - The SD card data is corrupted. - Check that the SD card stores correct data.
990	B	Software performance error	
		The software attempted to perform an unexpected operation. NOTE: When this error occurs, the file name, address, and data will be stored in NVRAM. This information can be checked by using SP7-403. See the data and the situation in which this SC occurs. Then report the data and conditions to your technical control center.	- Software defective - Internal parameter incorrect - Insufficient working memory
991	D	Software continuity error	

Service Call Conditions

		The software attempted to perform an unexpected operation. However, unlike SC990, the process can keep on running.	Logged only; the machine can continue to operate
992	B	Undefined error	
		An error not controlled by the system occurred (the error does not come under any other SC code).	Defective software program
997	C	Application function selection error	
		The application selected by a key press on the operation panel does not start or ends abnormally.	- Software for that application is defective - An option required by the application (RAM, DIMM, board) is not installed. - Too complicated nest of the fax group address - As for the fax operation problem, simplify the nest of the fax group address.
998	B	Application start error	
		After switching the machine on, the application does not start within 60 s. (No applications start or end normally.)	- Software for that application is defective - An option required by the application (RAM, DIMM, board) is not installed. - Check the setting of SP5875-001. If the setting is set to "1 (OFF)", change it to "0 (OFF)".

4. SERVICE TABLES

4.1 SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

CAUTION

- Before accessing the service menu, do the following:
- Confirm that there is no print data in the printer buffer (the 'Data In' LED must not be lit or blinking).
- If there is some data in the buffer, wait until all data has been printed.

Note

- The main power LED () lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open; while the main unit is communicating with a facsimile or the network server; or while the machine is accessing the memory for reading or writing data.

4.1.1 ENABLING AND DISABLING SERVICE PROGRAM MODE

Entering the SP Mode

	1.	Press the Clear Mode key.
	2.	Use the keypad to enter "107".
	3.	Hold down Clear/Stop for at least 3 seconds.
	4.	Enter the Service Mode.
Printer SP Scanner SP		Select "Printer SP" to enter printer SP mode. Select "Scanner SP" to enter scanner SP mode.

Exiting the Service Mode

Press the cancel key to exit from the service mode.

4.2 SP MODE TABLES

The tables in this section list the service programs (SPs).

The following codes are used:

- Asterisk (*): The settings are saved in the NVRAM. Most of them return to the default values when you execute SP 5801 2.
CTL indicates that the data is contained in the NVRAM on the controller board.
- The DFU menu is for design or factory use only. You must not change the settings.
- Brackets ([]): The brackets enclose the setting range, default value, and minimum step (with unit) as follows: [Minimum to Maximum / **Default** / Step].
- SSP: Consult your supervisor before you use this program.

4.2.1 SP4-XXX (MODE)

4921*	[Image Adj Selection]	
001	Copy	[0 to 10 / 0 / 1]
	Selects which mode the settings from SP4-922 to SP4-932 are used for. 0 = None, 1 = Text 1, 2 = Text 2, 3 = Photo 1, 4 = Photo 2, 5 = Photo 3, 6 = Special 1, 7 = Special 2, 8 = Special 3, 9 = Special 4, 10 = Special 5	
002	Fax	[0 to 5 / 0 / 1]
	Selects which mode the settings from SP4-922 to SP4-932 are used for. 0 = None, 1 = Text 1, 2 = Text 2, 3 = Photo 1, 4 = Photo 2, 5 = Special 1	
003	Scanner	[0 to 4 / 0 / 1]
	Selects which mode the settings from SP4-922 to SP4-932 are used for. 0 = None, 1 = Text 1, 2 = Text 2, 3 = Photo 1, 4 = Photo 2	

4922*	[Scanner Gamma]	
	Selects "text" or "photo" as the priority output mode. This setting is applied to all image processing modes of SP4-921.	

001	Copy	[0=System default/ 1=Text/ 2=Photo]
002	Fax	
003	Scanner	

4923*	[Notch Selection]	
	Selects the value of the center ID adjustment notch for the ID adjustment LEDs. - Normally the center notch is 3 (range 1-5). If -1 is selected, each notch shifts down (becomes lighter). If +1 is selected, each notch shifts up (becomes darker). - This setting is applied to all image processing modes of SP4-921.	
001	Copy	[-1 = Light / 0 = Normal / +1 = Dark]
002	Fax	
003	Scanner	

4926*	[Texture Removal]	
	Adjusts the texture removal level that is used with error diffusion. 0: The default value for each mode is used. Text 1, Photo 2, Special 2, and Special 5 have a default of 3 and Photo 1-3 have a default of 1. 1: No removal applied. 2 to 5: Removal applied at the level specified here. The higher the setting (level), the less clear the image will become (more texture removal). This setting is only applied to the originals in SP4-921.	
001	Copy	[0 to 6 / 0 / 1/step]
002	Fax	
003	Scanner	

4927*	[Line Width Correction]	

SP Mode Tables

	Adjusts the line width correction algorithm. Positive settings produce thicker lines; negative settings produce thinner lines. This setting is only applied to the originals in SP4-921.	
001	Copy	[-2 to 2 / 0 / 1/step]
002	Fax	
003	Scanner	

4928*	[Independent Dot Erase]	
	Selects the dot erase level. Higher settings provide greater erasure. This setting is only applied to the originals in SP4-921.	
001	Copy	[-2 to 2 / 0 / 1/step]
002	Fax	
003	Scanner	

4929*	[Positive/Negative]	[0 = No, 1 = Yes]
	Inverts white and black. This setting is only applied to the originals in SP4-921.	
001	Copy	
002	Fax	

4930*	[Sharpness-Edge]	[-2 to 2 / 0 / 1/step]
	Adjust the clarity. This setting is only applied to the originals in SP4-921.	
001	Copy	
002	Fax	
003	Scanner	

4931*	[Sharpness-Solid]	[-2 to 2 / 0 / 1/step]
	Adjust the clarity. This setting is only applied to the originals in SP4-921.	
001	Copy	
002	Fax	
003	Scanner	

4932*	[Sharpness-Low ID]	[-2 to 2 / 0 / 1/step]
	Adjust the clarity. This setting is only applied to the originals in SP4-921.	
001	Copy	
002	Fax	
003	Scanner	

4.2.2 SP5-XXX (MODE)

5001	[All Indicators On]
001	All LEDs turn on. The LCDs turn on or off with "ON" or "OFF" key.

5024*	[mm/inch Selection]
001	Selects whether mm or inches are used in the display.  Note After selecting the number, you must turn the main power switch off and on. Europe/Asia model: [0: mm / 1: inch] American model: [0: mm / 1: inch]

5045	[Display-Counter]

SP Mode Tables

001	Selects the counting display if the meter charge mode is enabled with SP5-930-001. ↓ Note You can change the setting only one time. [0 to 2/ 0 / 1 /step] 0: 1 counter (Total) 1: 2 counters (Total and Prints) 2: 2 counters GPC

5051	[Refill Toner Displ] Refill Toner Detection Display		
	Enables or disables the toner refill detection display.		
001	Refill Toner	CTL	[0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: ON, 1: OFF

5055	[Display IP address]		
001	Display IP address	CTL	Displays or does not display the IP address on the LCD. [0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: No, 1: Yess

5056	[Coverage Counter]		
001	Coverage Counter	CTL	Displays or does not display the coverage counter on the LCD. [0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: Not display, 1: Display

5104*	[A3 Double Count] SSP		
	A3 Double Count	CTL	[0 = No / 1 = Yes / 2 = No Unclear]
001	Selects whether the machine counts twice for each sheet of A3/11"x 17". If this is set to "Yes", the total (mechanical) counter and the current user counter will		

	both increment by two for each A3/11" x 17" sheet.

5112	[Non-Std. Paper Set] Non-Standard Paper Set
001	Determines whether a non-standard paper size can be input for the universal cassette trays (Tray 2, Tray 3) [0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: No 1: Yes. If "1" is selected, the customer will be able to input a non-standard paper size using the UP mode.

5113	[Optional Counter Type]		
001	Optional Counter Type 1	CTL	This program specifies the counter type. 0: None 1: Key card (RK 3, 4) 2: Key card (down) 3 to 10: Japan only 11: Exp. key card (Add) 12: Exp. key card (Deduct)
002	Optional Counter Type 2	CTL	This program specifies the external counter type. 0: None 1: Expansion device 1 2: Expansion device 2 3: Expansion device 3

5114	[MF Key Card Ext.]	CTL	[0: Not installed/ 1: Installed (scanning accounting)]
001	Japan use		

5118	[Disable Copying]	CTL	[0: Not disabled/ 1: Disabled]

SP Mode Tables

001	This program disables copying.

5120*	[Clr For Cnt Remove]	CTL	[0=Yes / 1=Standby only / 2=No]
001	Determines under which conditions the copy job settings are reset when the key counter is removed. With 0, the settings are cleared if the counter is removed at the end of a job or midway through a job. With 1, they are only cleared if the counter is removed at the end of a job. With 2, they are not cleared at all, under either condition. With duplex copies, the job settings are always preserved, regardless of the setting of this SP mode.		

5121*	[Counter Up Timing]	CTL	[0 = Feed In / 1 = Exit]
001	Selects whether the key counter increments at time of paper feed-in or at time of paper exit.		

5127	[APS Mode]	CTL	[0: Not disabled/ 1: Disabled]
001	This program disables the APS.		

5150	[By-pass Long Paper]	CTL	[0 = Feed In / 1 = Exit]
001	Determines whether the transfer sheet from the by-pass tray is used or not. Normally the paper length for sub scanning paper from the by-pass tray is limited to 600 mm, but this can be extended with this SP to 1260 mm.		

5167	[Fax Printing Cnt Off]		
	Enables or disables the automatic print out without an accounting device. This SP is used when the receiving fax is accounted by an external accounting device.		
001	Fax Printing Counter Off	CTL	[0 or 1 / 0 / –] 0: Automatic printing 1: No automatic printing

5169	[CE Login]		
	If you change the printer bit switches, you must 'log in' to service mode with this SP before you go into the printer SP mode.		
001	CE Login	CTL	[0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled

5188	[Copy NV Version]		
001	Copy NV Version	CTL	Displays the NVRAM version in the controller board.

5302	[Set Time]		
	Adjusts the RTC (real time clock) time setting for the local time zone. Examples: For Japan (+9 GMT), enter 540 (9 hours x 60 min.) DOM: +540 (Tokyo) NA :-300 (New York) EU :+ 60 (Paris) CH :+480 (Peking) TW :+480 (Taipei) AS :+480 (Hong Kong)		
002	Time Difference	CTL #	[-1440 to 1440 / Area / 1 min./step]

5307	[Summer Time]		
001	ON/OFF	-	[0 or 1 / NA, EU, ASIA / 1 /step] 0: Disabled 1: Enabled NA and EUR: 1, ASIA: 0
	Enables or disables the summer time mode. ↓ Note		

SP Mode Tables

	Make sure that both SP5-307-3 and -4 are correctly set. Otherwise, this SP is not activated even if this SP is set to "1".		
003	Start	-	-
	Specifies the start setting for the summer time mode. There are 8 digits in this SP. For months 1 to 9, the "0" cannot be input in the first digit, so the eight-digit setting for -2 or -3 becomes a seven-digit setting. 1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12] 3rd digit: The week of the month. [1 to 5] 4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 6 = Sunday to Saturday] 5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23] 7th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 9 / 1 hour /step] 8th digit: The length of the advanced time. [0 to 5 / 10 minutes /step] For example: 3500010 (EU default) The timer is advanced by 1 hour at am 0:00 on the 5th Sunday in March - The digits are counted from the left. - Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".		
004	End	-	-
	Specifies the end setting for the summer time mode. There are 8 digits in this SP. 1st and 2nd digits: The month. [1 to 12] 3rd digit: The week of the month. [0 to 5] 4th digit: The day of the week. [0 to 6 = Sunday to Saturday] 5th and 6th digits: The hour. [00 to 23] The 7th and 8th digits must be set to "00". - The digits are counted from the left. - Make sure that SP5-307-1 is set to "1".		

5401	[Access Control]		
	When installing the SDK application, SAS (VAS) adjusts the following settings. DFU		
006	C	CTL	SSP: These SPs are not disclosed due to the security

016	DS	CTL	protection.
026	F	CTL	
036	S	CTL	
046	P	CTL	
076	SDK 1	CTL	
086	SDK 2	CTL	
096	SDK 3	CTL	
200	SDK1 Unique ID	CTL	This ID is overwritten by SAS (VAS) when you install or uninstall the SDK application.
201	SDK1 Certification Method	CTL	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 /step] DFU
210	SDK2 Unique ID	CTL	DFU
211	SDK2 Certification Method	CTL	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 /step] DFU
220	SDK3 Unique ID	CTL	DFU
221	SDK3 Certification Method	CTL	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 /step] DFU

5404	[User Code Clear]
001	Clears the counts for the user codes assigned by the key operator to restrict the use of the machine. Press [Execute] to clear.

SP Mode Tables

5501	[PM Alarm Interval]	CTL	-
001	Printout	[0 to 9999 / 0 / 1 /step] 0: Alarm off 1 to 9999: Alarm goes off when the PM counter reaches the specified value (1 to 9999) x 1000.	
002	ADF	[0 or 1 / 1 / –] 0: No alarm sounds 1: Alarm sounds after the number of originals passing through the A(R)DF $\geq 10,000$	

5504	[Jam Alarm]	CTL	-
001	Sets the alarm to sound for the specified jam level (document misfeeds are not included). [0 to 3 / 3 / 1 /step] 0: Zero (Off), 1: Low (2.5K jams), 2: Medium (3K jams), 3: High (6K jams)		

5505*	[Error Alarm]
001	Sets the error alarm level. The error alarm counter counts "1" when any SC is detected. However, the error alarm counter decreases by "1" when any SC is not detected during specified sheets of copies (for example, default 1500 sheets). The error alarm occurs when the SC error alarm counter reaches "5". [0 to 255 / 15 / 100 copies per step]

5507	[Supply Alarm]	CTL	-
001	Paper Size	0 : Off, 1: On,	
003	Toner	0 : Off, 1: On,	
128	Interval :Others	[250 to 10000 / 1000 / 1 /step]	
132	Interval :A3		

133	Interval :A4	
134	Interval :A5	
141	Interval :B4	
142	Interval :B5	
160	Interval :DLT	
164	Interval :LG	
166	Interval :LT	
172	Interval :HLT	

5508*	[Auto Call Setting]	CTL	-
001*	Jam Remains	0: Disable, 1 : Enable	
	Enables/disables initiating a call for an unattended paper jam.		
002*	Frequent Jams	0: Disable, 1 : Enable	
	Enables/disables initiating a call for consecutive paper jams.		
003*	Door Open	0: Disable, 1 : Enable	
	Enables/disables initiating a call when the front door remains open.		
011*	Jam Remains: Time	[03 to 30 / 10 / 1 minute /step]	
	Sets the time a jam must remain before it becomes an “unattended paper jam”. This setting is enabled only when SP5508 004 is set to 1.		
012*	Freq Jam: # of Time	[02 to 10 / 5 / 1 /step]	
	Sets the number of consecutive paper jams required to initiate a call. This setting is enabled only when SP5508 004 is set to 1.		
013*	Door Open: Time	[03 to 30 / 10 / 1 minute/step]	
	Sets the length of time the door remains open before the machine initiates a call.		

SP Mode Tables

	This setting is enabled only when SP5508 004 is set to 1.	
021*	Jam Remains: Mode	0: Automatic Call 1: Audible Warning at Machine
	Determines what happens when a paper jam is left unattended.	
022*	Freq Jam: Mode	0: Automatic Call 1: Audible Warning at Machine
	Determines what happens when a paper jam happens continually.	
023*	Door Open: Mode	0: OFF, 1: ON
	Determines what happens if the door remains open (15 min.). Displays a warning if set to ON. Pressing the call button will contact the service center.	

	[SC/Alarm Setting]	CTL	-
5515	With @Remote in use, these SP codes can be set to issue an SC call when an SC error occurs. If this SP is switched off, the SC call is not issued when an SC error occurs.		
001	SC Call	[0 or 1 / 1 / -] 0: Off, 1: On	
002	Service Parts Near End		
003	Service Parts End		
004	User Call		
006	Communication Test		
007	Machine Information		
008	Alarm Notice		
010	Supply Automatic Order	[0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: Off, 1: On	
011	Supply Management Report		

012	Jam/Door Open Call	[0 or 1 / 1 / -] 0: Off, 1: On

5801	[Memory Clear] Before executing any of these SP codes, print an SMC Report.		
001	All Clear		
	Initializes items SP5801-002 to -014 below. Turn the main power switch off and on after executing this SP.		
003	SCS	-	-
	Clears the system settings.		
004	IMH	-	-
	Clears IMH data. DFU		
005	MCS	-	-
	Clears MCS data. DFU		
006	Copier	-	-
	Clears the copy application settings.		
007	Fax	-	-
	Clears the fax application settings.		
008	Printer	-	-
	Clears the printer application settings.		
009	Scanner	-	-
	Clears the scanner application settings.		
010	GWWS	-	-
	Delete the netfile application management files and thumbnails, and initializes the job login ID.		
011	NCS	-	-

SP Mode Tables

	Initializes the system default and interface settings (IP address also), SmartNetMonitor for Admin, WebStatusMonitor settings, and the TELNET settings. The name of Apple talk is not cleared only if this SP is executed. Turns off and on after executing this SP.		
012	R-FAX	-	-
	Initializes the job login ID, SmartNetMonitor for Admin, job history, and local storage file numbers.		
014	Clear DCS Setting	-	-
	Initializes the DCS (Delivery Control Service) settings.		
015	Clear UCS Setting	-	-
	Initializes the UCS (User Information Control Service) settings.		
016	MIRS Setting	-	-
	Initializes the MIRS (Machine Information Report Service) settings.		
017	CCS	-	-
	Initializes the CCS (Certification and Charge-control Service) settings.		
018	SRM Memory Clr	-	-
	Initializes the SRM (System Resource Manager) settings.		
019	LCS	-	-
	Initializes the LCS (Log Count Service) settings.		

5811*	[Machine Serial] Machine Serial Number		
001	Set	-	(☛ "Serial Number Input")

5812	[Service TEL]		
001	Telephone	CTL	-

	Sets the telephone number for a service representative. This number is printed on the Counter List, which can be printed with the user's "Counter" menu. This can be up to 20 characters (both numbers and alphabetic characters can be input).		
002	Facsimile	CTL	-
	Sets the fax or telephone number for a service representative. This number is printed on the Counter List. This can be up to 20 characters (both numbers and alphabetic characters can be input).		

5816	[NRS Function]	CTL	-
001	I/F Setting	Selects the remote service setting. [0 to 2 / 2 / 1 /step] 0: Remote service off 1: CSS remote service on 2: @Remote service on	
002	CE Call	Performs the CE Call at the start or end of the service. [0 or 1 / 0 / 1 /step] 0: Start of the service, 1: End of the service  Note ▪ This SP is activated only when SP 5816-001 is set to "2".	
003	Function Flag	Enables or disables the remote service function. [0 or 1 / 0 / 1 /step] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	
007	SSL Disable	Uses or does not use the RCG certification by SSL when calling the RCG. [0 or 1 / 0 / 1 /step] 0: Uses the RCG certification 1: Does no use the RCG certification	

SP Mode Tables

008	RCG Connect Timeout	Specifies the connect timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 90 / 10 / 1 second/step]
009	RCG Write Timeout	Specifies the write timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 100 / 60 / 1 second/step]
010	RCG Read Timeout	Specifies the read timeout interval when calling the RCG. [1 to 100 / 60 / 1 second/step]
011	Port 80	Enables/disables access via port 80 to the SOAP method. [0 or 1 / 0 / –] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled
021	Function Flag	
	This SP displays the embedded RCG installation end flag. 1: Installation completed 2: Installation not completed	
022	Install Status	
	This SP displays the RCG device installation status. 0: RCG device not registered 1: RCG device registered 2: Device registered	
023	Connect Mode (N/M)	
	This SP displays and selects the embedded RCG connection method. 0 : Internet connection 1: Dial-up connection	
061	NotiTime ExpTime DFU	
	Proximity of the expiration of the certification.	
062	HTTP Proxy Use	

	This SP setting determines if the proxy server is used when the machine communicates with the service center.
063	HTTP Proxy Host This SP sets the address of the proxy server used for communication between embedded RCG-N and the gateway. Use this SP to set up or display the customer proxy server address. The address is necessary to set up embedded RCG-N.  Note ▪ The address display is limited to 127 characters. Characters beyond the 127th character are ignored. ▪ This address is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.
064	HTTP Proxy Port Number This SP sets the port number of the proxy server used for communication between embedded RCG N and the gateway. This setting is necessary to set up embedded RCG-N.  Note ▪ This port number is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.
065	HTTP Proxy Aut Usr This SP sets the HTTP proxy authentication user name.  Note ▪ The length of the name is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored. ▪ This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.
066	HTTP Proxy Aut Pass This SP sets the HTTP proxy authentication password.  Note ▪ The length of the password is limited to 31 characters. Any character beyond the 31st character is ignored.

SP Mode Tables

		This name is customer information and is not printed in the SMC report.
067	Cer Updt Cond	
	Displays the status of the certification update.	
	0	The certification used by embedded RCG is set correctly.
	1	The certification request (setAuthKey) for update has been received from the GW URL and certification is presently being updated.
	2	The certification update is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the successful update.
	3	The certification update failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failed update.
	4	The period of the certification has expired and a new request for an update is being sent to the GW URL.
	11	A rescue update for certification has been issued and a rescue certification setting is in progress for the rescue GW connection.
	12	The rescue certification setting is completed and the GW URL is being notified of the certification update request.
	13	The notification of the request for certification update has been completed successfully, and the system is waiting for the certification update request from the rescue GW URL
	14	The notification of the certification request has been received from the rescue GW controller, and the certification is being stored.
	15	The certification has been stored, and the GW URL is being notified of the successful completion of this event.
	16	The storing of the certification has failed, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of this event.

	17	The certification update request has been received from the GW URL, the GW URL was notified of the results of the update after it was completed, but a certification error has been received, and the rescue certification is being recorded.
	18	The rescue certification of No. 17 has been recorded, and the GW URL is being notified of the failure of the certification update.
068	Cer Abnml Cause	
	Displays a number code that describes the reason for the request for update of the certification.	
	0	Normal. There is no request for certification update in progress.
	1	Request for certification update in progress. The current certification has expired.
	2	An SSL error notification has been issued (after the certification has expired).
	3	Notification of shift from a common authentication to an individual certification.
	4	Notification of a common certification without ID2.
	5	Notification that no certification was issued.
	6	Notification that GW URL does not exist.
069	Cert: Updtt ReqID	
	The ID of the request for certification.	
083	Firm Updating	
	Displays the status of the firmware update.	
085	Firm Up Usr Conf	
	This SP setting determines if the operator can confirm the previous version of the firmware before the firmware update execution. If the option to confirm the	

SP Mode Tables

	previous version is selected, a notification is sent to the system manager and the firmware update is done with the firmware files from the URL.
086	Firmware Size
	Allows the service technician to confirm the size of the firmware data files during the firmware update execution.
087	CERT: Macro Version
	Displays the macro version of the @Remote certification.
088	CERT: PAC Version
	Displays the PAC version of the @Remote certification.
089	CERT: ID2 Code
	Displays ID2 for the @Remote certification. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asterisks (*) indicate that no @Remote certification exists.
090	CERT: Subject
	Displays the common name of the @Remote certification subject. CN = the following 17 bytes. Spaces are displayed as underscores (_). Asterisks (*) indicate that no DESS exists.
091	CERT: Serial Number
	Displays serial number for the @Remote certification. Asterisks (*) indicate that no DESS exists.
092	CERT: Issuer
	Displays the common name of the issuer of the @Remote certification. CN = the following 30 bytes. Asterisks (*) indicate that no DESS exists.
093	CERT: St ExpTime
	Displays the start time of the period for which the current @Remote certification is enabled.
094	CERT: End ExpTime

	Displays the end time of the period for which the current @Remote certification is enabled.
150	Ins Country Select from the list the name of the country where embedded RCG-M is installed in the machine. After selecting the country, you must also set the following SP codes for embedded RCG-M: ▪ SP5816-153 ▪ SP5816-154 ▪ SP5816-161 0: Japan, 1: USA, 2: Canada, 3: UK, 4: Germany, 5: France 6: Italy, 7: Netherlands, 8: Belgium, 9: Luxembourg, 10: Spain
151	Aut Line Detect Press [Execute]. Setting this SP classifies the telephone line where embedded RCG-M is connected as either dial-up or push type, so embedded RCG-M can automatically distinguish the number that connects to the outside line. ▪ The current progress, success, or failure of this execution can be displayed with SP5816 152. ▪ If the execution succeeded, SP5816 153 will display the result for confirmation and SP5816 154 will display the telephone number for the connection to the outside line.
152	Line Detect Rst Displays a number to show the result of the execution of SP5816 151. Here is a list of what the numbers mean. 0: Success 1: In progress (no result yet). Please wait. 2: Line abnormal 3: Cannot detect dial tone automatically 4: Line is disconnected 5: Insufficient electrical power supply 6: Line classification not supported 7: Error because fax transmission in progress – ioctl() occurred.

SP Mode Tables

	8: Other error occurred 9: Line classification still in progress. Please wait.
153	Dial/Push Select This SP displays the classification (tone or pulse) of the telephone line to the access point for embedded RCG-M. The number displayed (0 or 1) is the result of the execution of SP5816 151. However, this setting can also be changed manually. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1 /step] 0: Tone Dialing Phone 1: Pulse Dialing Phone Inside Japan "2" may also be displayed: 0: Tone Dialing Phone 1: Pulse Dialing Phone 10PPS 2: Pulse Dialing Phone 20PPS
154	Outline Phone # The SP sets the number that switches to PSTN for the outside connection for embedded RCG-M in a system that employs a PBX (internal line). ▪ If the execution of SP5816-151 has succeeded and embedded RCG-M has connected to the external line, this SP display is completely blank. ▪ If embedded RCG-M has connected to an internal line, then the number of the connection to the external line is displayed. ▪ If embedded RCG-M has connected to an external line, a comma is displayed with the number. The comma is inserted for a 2 sec. pause. ▪ The number setting for the external line can be entered manually (including commas).
155	Remove Service: PPP Recognition Timeout SSP: Sets the length of the timeout for the embedded RCG-M connection to its access point. The timeout is the time from when the modem sends the ATD to when it receives the result code. [1 to 65536 / 60 / 1 /step]
156	Dial Up User

	Use this SP to set a user name for access to remote dial up. Follow these rules when setting a user name: ▪ Name length: Up to 32 characters ▪ Spaces and # allowed but the entire entry must be enclosed by double quotation marks (").
157	Dial Up Password Use this SP to set a password for access to remote dial up. Follow these rules when setting a user name: ▪ Name length: Up to 32 characters ▪ Spaces and # allowed but the entire entry must be enclosed by double quotation marks (").
161	Phone Number Use this SP to set the telephone number of the line where embedded RCG-M is connected. This number is transmitted to and used by the Call Center to return calls. Limit: 24 numbers (numbers only)
162	Ans Timing Adj When the Call Center calls out to a embedded RCG-M modem, it sends a repeating ID tone (*#1#). This SP sets the time the line remains open to send these ID tones after the number of the embedded RCG-M modem is dialed up and connected. [0 to 24/ 1 /1 /step] The actual amount of time is this setting + 2 sec. For example, if you set "2" the line will remain open for 4 sec.
163	Access Point This is the number of the dial-up access point for embedded RCG-M. If no setting is done for this SP code, then a preset value (determined by the country selected) is used. Default: 0 Allowed: Up to 16 alphanumeric characters
164	Comm Line

SP Mode Tables

	This SP sets the connection conditions for the customer. This setting dedicates the line to embedded RCG-M only, or sets the line for sharing between embedded RCG-M and a fax unit. [0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: Line shared by embedded RCG-M/Fax 1: Line dedicated to embedded RCG-M only  Note ▪ If this setting is changed, the copier must be cycled off and on. ▪ SP5816 187 determines whether the off-hook button can be used to interrupt an embedded RCG-M transmission in progress to open the line for fax transaction.
173	Modem Serial Number This SP displays the serial number registered for the embedded RCG-M.
174	Lmt Resend Cncl Normally, it is best to allow unlimited time for certification and ID2 update requests, and for the notification that the certification has been completed. However, embedded RCG-M generates charges based on transmission time for the customer, so a limit is placed upon the time allowed for these transactions. If these transactions cannot be completed within the allowed time, do this SP to cancel the time restriction.
187	FAX TX Priority This SP determines whether pushing the off-hook button will interrupt an embedded RCG-M transmission in progress to open the line for fax transaction. This SP can be used only if SP5816-164 is set to "0". [0 or 1/ 0 / -] 0: Disable. Setting the fax unit off-hook does not interrupt a fax transaction in progress. If the off-hook button is pushed during a embedded RCG-M transmission, the button must be pushed again to set the fax unit on-hook after the embedded RCG-M transmission has completed. 1: Enable. When embedded RCG-M shares a line with a fax unit, setting the fax unit off-hook will interrupt a embedded RCG-M transmission in progress

	and open the line for a fax transaction.
200	Polling Man Exc
	Executes the polling test.
201	Instl: Condition
	Displays a number that indicates the status of the @Remote service device. 0: Neither the registered device by the external RCG nor embedded RCG device is set. 1: The embedded RCG device is being set. Only Box registration is completed. In this status the this unit cannot answer a polling request from the external RCG. 2: The embedded RCG device is set. In this status the external RCG unit cannot answer a polling request. 3: The registered device by the external RCG is being set. In this status the embedded RCG device cannot be set. 4: The registered module by the external RCG has not started.
202	Instl: ID#
	Allows entry of the number of the request needed for the embedded RCG.
203	Instl: Reference
	Executes the inquiry request to the @Remote GateWay URL.
204	Instl: Ref Rslt
	Displays a number that indicates the result of the inquiry executed with SP5816-203. 0: Succeeded 1: Inquiry number error 2: Registration in progress 3: Proxy error (proxy enabled) 4: Proxy error (proxy disabled) 5: Proxy error (Illegal user name or password) 6: Communication error 7: Certification update error

SP Mode Tables

	8: Other error 9: Inquiry executing		
205	Instl: Ref Section		
	Displays the result of the notification sent to the device from the GW URL in answer to the inquiry request. Displayed only when the result is registered at the GW URL.		
206	Instl: Rgstltn		
	Executes Embedded RCG Registration.		
207	Instl: Rgstltn Rst		
	Displays a number that indicates the registration result. 0: Succeeded 2: Registration in progress 3: Proxy error (proxy enabled) 4: Proxy error (proxy disabled) 5: Proxy error (Illegal user name or password) 6: Communication error 7: Certification update error 8: Other error 9: Registration executing		
208	Instl Error Code		
	Displays a number that describes the error code that was issued when either SP5816 204 or SP5816 207 was executed.		
	Cause	Code	Meaning
	Illegal Modem Parameter	-11001	Chat parameter error
		-11002	Chat execution error
		-11003	Unexpected error
	Operation Error, Incorrect Setting	-12002	Inquiry, registration attempted without acquiring device status.

		-12003	Attempted registration without execution of an inquiry and no previous registration.
		-12004	Attempted setting with illegal entries for certification and ID2.
	Error Caused by Response from GW URL	-2385	Attempted dial up overseas without the correct international prefix for the telephone number.
		-2387	Not supported at the Service Center
		-2389	Database out of service
		-2390	Program out of service
		-2391	Two registrations for same device
		-2392	Parameter error
		-2393	External RCG not managed
		-2394	Device not managed
		-2395	Box ID for external RCG is illegal
		-2396	Device ID for external RCG is illegal
		-2397	Incorrect ID2 format
		-2398	Incorrect request number format
209	Instl Clear		
	Releases a machine from its embedded RCG setup.		
250	Print Com Log		
	Prints the communication log.		

5821	[NRS Address]		
001	CSS-PI Device	Sets the PI device code. After you change this setting, you must turn the machine off and on.	

SP Mode Tables

002	RCG IP Address	Sets the IP address of the RCG (Remote Communication Gate) destination for call processing at the remote service center. [00000000h to FFFFFFFFh/1]

5824	NVRAM Upload	
001	(☛ "NVRAM Upload")	

5825	NVRAM Download	
001	(☛ "NVRAM Download")	

5828	[Network Setting]	CTL	
050	1284 Compatibility (Centro)	Enables or disables 1284 Compatibility. [0 or 1 / 1 / 1 / step] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	
052	ECP (Centro)	Enables or disables ECP Compatibility. [0 or 1 / 1 / 1 / step] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled NOTE: This SP is activated only when SP5-828-50 is set to "1".	
065	Job Spooling	Enables/disables Job Spooling. [0 or 1 / 0 / 1 / step] 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	
066	Job Spooling Clear: Start Time	Treatment of the job when a spooled job exists at power on. 0: ON (Data is cleared) 1: OFF (Automatically printed)	
069	Job Spooling (Protocol)	Validates or invalidates the job spooling function for each protocol. 0: Validates	

		1: Invalidates bit0: LPR bit1: FTP bit2: IPP bit3: SMB bit4: BMLinkS bit5: DIPRINT bit6: (Reserved) bit7: (Reserved)
090	TELNET (0: OFF 1: ON)	Enables or disables the Telnet protocol. [0 or 1 / 1 / –] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
091	Web (0: OFF 1: ON)	Enables or disables the Web operation. [0 or 1 / 1 / –] 0: Disable, 1: Enable
145	Active IPv6 Link	
	This is the IPv6 local address link referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format: "Link Local Address" + "Prefix Length" The IPv6 address consists of a total of 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.	
147	Active IPv6 Status Address 1	These SPs are the IPv6 status addresses (1 to 5) referenced on the Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format: "Status Address" + "Prefix Length" The IPv6 address consists of a total of 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
149	Active IPv6 Status Address 2	
151	Active IPv6 Status Address 3	
153	Active IPv6 Status Address 4	
155	Active IPv6 Status Address 5	

SP Mode Tables

156	IPv6 Manual Setting Address
	This SP is the IPv6 manually set address referenced on Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b) in the format: "Manual Set Address" + "Prefix Length" The IPv6 address consists of a total of 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.
158	IPv6 Gateway Address
	This SP is the IPv6 gateway address referenced on Ethernet or wireless LAN (802.11b). The IPv6 address consists of a total of 128 bits configured in 8 blocks of 16 bits each.

5840	[IEEE 802.11b]		
006	Channel MAX	CTL	[1 to 11 or 13 / 11 or 13 / 1 /step] Europe: 1 to 13, default: 13 NA/ Asia: 1 to 11, default: 11
	Sets the maximum number of channels available for data transmission via wireless LAN. The number of channels available varies according to location. The default settings are set for the maximum end of the range for each area. Adjust the upper 4 bits to set the maximum number of channels. DFU  Note Do not change the setting.		
007	Channel MIN	CTL	[1 to 11 or 13 / 1 / 1 /step] Europe: 1 to 13 NA/ Asia: 1 to 11
	Sets the minimum number of channels available for data transmission via the wireless LAN. The number of channels available varies according to location. The default settings are set for the minimum end of the range for each area. Adjust the lower 4 bits to set the minimum number of channels. DFU  Note Do not change the setting.		
011	WEP Key Select	CTL	[00 to 11 / 00 / 1 binary]

			00: Key #1 01: Key #2 (Reserved) 10: Key #3 (Reserved) 11: Key #4 (Reserved)
	Selects the WEP key.		

5842	[GWWS Analysis] DFU		
001	Setting 1	CTL	
	This is a debugging tool. It sets the debugging output mode of each Net File process. Default: Bit SW 1000 0000	Bit	Groups
		0	System & other groups (LSB)
		1	Capture related
		2	Certification related
		3	Address book related
		4	Machine management related
		5	Output related (printing, delivery)
		6	Repository related
		7	Debug log output
002	Setting 2	CTL	
	Default: Bit SW 0000 0000	Bit	Groups
		0-6	Not used
		7	Log time stamp setting 0: Date/Hour/Minute/Second 1: Minute/Second/Msecond

5844	[USB]		
001	Transfer Rate	CTL	

SP Mode Tables

	Sets the speed for USB data transmission. [Full Speed] [Auto Change]		
002	Vendor ID	CTL	
	Sets the vendor ID: Initial Setting: 0x05A Ricoh Company [0x0000 to 0xFFFF/1] DFU		
003	Product ID	CTL	
	Sets the product ID. [0x0000 to 0xFFFF/1] DFU		
004	Device Release No.	CTL	
	Sets the device release number of the BCD (binary coded decimal) display. [0000 to 9999/1] DFU Enter as a decimal number. NCS converts the number to hexadecimal number recognized as the BCD.		

5845	[Delivery Server Setting]	CTL	-
	Provides items for delivery server settings.		
001	FTP Port Num	[0 to 65535 / 3670 / 1 /step]	
	Sets the FTP port number used when image files to the Scan Router Server.		
002	Srv IP (Primary)	Range: 000.000.000.000 to 255.255.255.255	
	Use this SP to set the Scan Router Server address. The IP address under the transfer tab can be referenced by the initial system setting.		
003	Retry Interval	[60 to 999 / 300 / 1 second /step]	
	Specifies the interval time for sending the scanned image data to the deliver server or SMTP/FTP/NCP/SMB server after sending error.		
004	Number of Retries	[0 to 99 / 3 / 1 time/step]	

	Specifies the retry times for sending the scanned image data to the deliver server or SMTP/FTP/NCP/SMB server after sending error.	
006	Delivery Error Display Time	[0 to 999 / 300 / 1 second /step]
	Use this setting to determine the length of time the prompt message is displayed when a test error occurs during document transfer with the NetFile application and an external device.	
008	Srv IP (Secondary)	Range: 000.000.000.000 to 255.255.255.255
	Specifies the IP address assigned to the computer designated to function as the secondary delivery server of Scan Router. This SP allows only the setting of the IP address without reference to the DNS setting.	
009	Delivery Server Model	[0 to 4 / 0 / 1 /step]
	Allows changing the model of the delivery server registered by the I/O device. 0: Unknown, 1: SG1 Provided, 2: SG1 Package, 3: SG2 Provided, 4: SG2 Package	
010	Delivery Svr Capability	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 /step]
	Bit7 = 1 Comment information exists	Changes the capability of the server that is registered as an I/O device.
	Bit6 = 1 Direct specification of mail address possible	
	Bit5 = 1 Mail RX confirmation setting possible	
	Bit4 = 1 Address book automatic update function exists	
	Bit3 = 1 Fax RX delivery function exists	
	Bit2 = 1 Sender password function exists	
	Bit1 = 1 Function to link MK-1 user and Sender exists	
	Bit0 = 1 Sender specification required (if set to 1, Bit6 is set to "0")	

SP Mode Tables

011	Delivery Svr Capability (Ext)	[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 /step]
	Changes the capability of the server that is registered as an I/O device.	
013	Bit7 = 1 Address book usage limitation (Limitation for each authorized user) Bit6 = 1 RDH authorization link Bit5 to 0: Not used	
014	Svr Schm (Primary)	-
	Specifies the scheme of the primary delivery server.	
015	Srv URL Path (Pri)	-
	Specifies the URL path of the primary delivery server.	
016	Srv URL Path (Sec)	-
	Specifies the URL path of the secondary delivery server.	
017	Srv URL Path (Sec)	-
	Specifies the URL path of the secondary delivery server.	
018	Srv URL Path (Sec)	-
	Specifies the URL path of the secondary delivery server.	
019	CapSvr Schm	-
	Specifies the scheme of the capture server.	
020	CapSvr Port Num	-
	Specifies the port number of the capture server.	
021	CapSrv URL Path	-
	Specifies the URL path of the s capture server.	
022	Rapid-fire Send	[0 or 1 / 1 / -]

		0: Disable, 1: Enable
	Enables or disables the prevention function for the continuous data sending.	

5846	[UCS Settings]	CTL	-
001	Machine ID (Delivery Server)		Displays ID
	Displays the unique device ID in use by the delivery server directory. The value is only displayed and cannot be changed. This ID is created from the NIC MAC or IEEE 1394 EUI. The ID is displayed as either 6-byte or 8-byte binary.		
002	Machine ID Clear (Delivery Server)		Clears ID
	Clears the unique ID of the device used as the name in the file transfer directory. Execute this SP if the connection of the device to the delivery server is unstable. After clearing the ID, the ID will be established again automatically by cycling the machine off and on.		
003	Maximum Entries		[150 to 999 / 150 / 1 /step]
	Changes the maximum number of entries that UCS can handle. If a value smaller than the present value is set, the UCS managed data is cleared, and the data (excluding user code information) is displayed.		
006	Delivery Server Retry Timer		[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 /step]
	Sets the interval for retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book.		
007	Delivery Server Retry Times		[0 to 255 / 0 / 1 /step]
	Sets the number of retry attempts when the delivery server fails to acquire the delivery server address book.		
008	Delivery Server Maximum Entries		[200 to 999 / 200 / 1/step]
	Sets the maximum number account entries of the delivery server user information managed by UCS.		

SP Mode Tables

010	LDAP Search Timeout	[1 to 255 / 60 / 1 /step]
	Sets the length of the timeout for the search of the LDAP server.	
042	Addr B Mig (SD → SD)	[0 to 10 / 0 / 1 /step] 0: Not decided yet 1: Slot 1 to 10: Slot 10
	This SP copies an address book data in a SD card to another SD card. Select the destination slot where you want to move an address book data, and then press "Execute" key. You can check where an address book data is in with SP5-846-043.	
043	Addr B Media	-
	Displays the slot number where an address book data is in.	
047	Initialize Local Addr Book	Clears the local address book information, including the user code.
048	Initialize Delivery Addr Book	Clears the distribution address book information, except the user code.
049	Initialize LDAP Addr Book	Clears the LDAP address book information, except the user code.
050	Initialize All Addr Book	Clears all directory information managed by UCS, including all user codes. Turn the main power switch off and on after executing this SP.
051	Backup All Addr Book	Uploads all directory information to the SD card.
052	Restore All Addr Book	Downloads all directory information from the SD card.
053	Clear Backup Info	
	Deletes the address book data from the SD card in the service slot. Deletes only the files that were uploaded from this machine. This feature does not work if the card is write-protected.	

	 Note After you do this SP, go out of the SP mode, and then turn the power off. Do not remove the SD card until the Power LED stops flashing.
060	Search Option This SP uses bit switches to set up the fuzzy search options for the UCS local address book. Bit0: Checks both upper/lower case characters Bit1: Japan only Bit2 to 7: Not used
062	Compl Opt1 Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to upper case and sets the length of the password. [0 to 32 / 0 / 1 /step]  Note - This SP does not normally require adjustment. - This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.
063	Compl Opt2 Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to lower case and defines the length of the password. [0 to 32 / 0 / 1 /step]  Note - This SP does not normally require adjustment. - This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.
064	Compl Opt3 Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to numbers and defines the length of the password.

SP Mode Tables

	[0 to 32 / 0 / 1 /step]  Note - This SP does not normally require adjustment. - This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.	
065	Compl Opt4	
	Use this SP to set the conditions for password entry to access the local address book. Specifically, this SP limits the password entry to symbols and defines the length of the password. [0 to 32 / 0 / 1 /step]  Note - This SP does not normally require adjustment. - This SP is enabled only after the system administrator has set up a group password policy to control access to the address book.	
091	FTP Auth Port Setting	Specifies the FTP port for getting a distribution server address book that is used in the identification mode. [0 to 65535 / 3671 / 1 /step]
094	Encryption Stat	Shows the status of the encryption function for the address book data.

5848	[Web Service]	CTL	-
	SP5848-1 sets the 4-bit switch assignment for the access control setting. Setting of 0001 has no effect on access and delivery from Scan Router. ac: Access Control		
	004	ac: UD (only Lower 4 bits)	Switches access control on and off. 0000 : No access control 0001: Denies access to DeskTop Binder.
	007	ac: Log Fax (Lower 4 bits)	
	009	ac: Job Ctrl (Lower 4 bits)	
	011	ac: Device Management (Lower 4 bits)	

022	ac: Uadmin (Lower 4bits)	
210	Log Type: Job1	Displays the log server settings. These can be adjusted with the Web Image Monitor.
211	Log Type: Job2	
212	Log Type: Access	
213	Primary Srv	
214	Secondary Srv	
215	Start Time	
216	Interval Time	Specifies the transmit interval. [1 to 1000 / 1 / 1 hour/step] This SP is activated only when SP5848-217 is set to "2 (Transmit periodically)".
217	Timing	Selects the transmit timing. [0 to 2 / 0 / 1/step] 0: No Transmit, 1: Transmit one by one 2: Transmit periodically

5849	[Installation Date]		CTL	
	Displays or prints the installation date of the machine.			
001	Display	The "Counter Clear Day" has been changed to "Installation Date" or "Inst. Date".		
002	Print	Determines whether the installation date is printed on the printout for the total counter. [0 or 1/ 1 / 1/step] 0: No Print, 1: Print		
003	Total Counter	Displays the total counter when the installation date is registered to the machine.		

5851	[Bluetooth]		CTL	

SP Mode Tables

001	Mode	Sets the operation mode for the Bluetooth Unit. Press either key. 0 :Public, 1: Private

5856	[Remote ROM Update]		
	Allows the technician to upgrade the firmware using a parallel cable when updating the remote ROM.		
002	Local Port	CTL	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1/step] 0 : Disallow 1: Allow

5857	[Debug Log Save]	CTL	-
001	On/Off	0: OFF, 1: ON	
	Switches the debug log feature on and off. The debug log cannot be captured until this feature is switched on.		
006	Save to SD Card		
	Specifies the debug log number for saving to an SD card.		
012	Erase SD Debug		
	Erases SD debug logs in the SD card. Turn off and on after executing this SP.		
013	Dsply-SD Space		
	Displays the remaining space in the SD card.		
014	SD to SD Latest (Latest 4 MB)		
	Saves the debug log (latest 4 MB) in memory to the SD card. A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD card. Up to 4MB can be copied to the SD card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to the SD card.		

015	SD to SD Any (Latest 4 MB Any Key)
	Saves the specified debug log (with SP5-857-006) in memory to the SD card. A unique file name is generated to avoid overwriting existing file names on the SD card. Up to 4MB can be copied to the SD card. 4 MB segments can be copied one by one to the SD card.
017	Make SD Debug
	Executes the making of a file (4MB) for saving debug logs.

5858	[Debug Log Save: SC]	CTL	-
	These SPs select the content of the debugging information to be saved to the destination selected by SP5857-2. SP5858-3 stores one SC specified by number. Refer to the chapter "Trouble Shooting" for a list of SC error codes.		
001	Engine SC	Turns the save function on/off for SC codes generated by copier engine errors. [0 or 1 / 0 / 1/ step] 0: OFF, 1: ON	
002	Controller SC	Turns the save function on/off for SC codes generated by GW controller errors. [0 or 1 / 0 / 1/ step] 0: OFF, 1: ON	
003	Any SC	[0 to 65535 / 0 / 1 /step]	
004	Jam	Turns the save function on/off for jam errors. [0 or 1 / 0 / 1/ step] 0: OFF, 1: ON	

5859	[Debug Log Save Key]	CTL	-
001	Key 1	These SPs allow you to set up to 10 keys for log files for functions that use common memory on	
002	Key 2		

SP Mode Tables

003	Key 3	the controller board. [–9999999 to 9999999 / 0 / –]
004	Key 4	
005	Key 5	
006	Key 6	
007	Key 7	
008	Key 8	
009	Key 9	
010	Key 10	

5860	[SMTP/POP3/IMAP4]	CTL	-
020	Partial Mail Receive Timeout	[1 to 168 / 72 / 1 hour/step]	
	Sets the amount of time to wait before saving mail that breaks up during reception. The received mail is discarded if the remaining portion of the mail is not received during this prescribed time.		
021	MDN Response RFC2298 Compliance	[0 to 1 / 1 / –]	
	Determines whether RFC2298 compliance is switched on for MDN reply mail. 0: No, 1: Yes		
022	SMTP Auth. From Field Replacement	[0 to 1 / 0 / –]	
	Determines whether the FROM item of the mail header is switched to the validated account after the SMTP server is validated. 0: No. "From" item not switched. 1: Yes. "From" item switched.		
025	SMTP Auth. Direct Setting	[0 or 1 / 0 / –]	
	Selects the authentication method for SMPT. Bit switch: ▪ Bit 0: LOGIN ▪ Bit 1: PLAIN ▪ Bit 2: CRAM MD5		

	- Bit 3: DIGEST MD5 - Bit 4 to 7: Not used  Note - This SP is activated only when SMTP authorization is enabled by UP mode.		

5866	[E-mail Report]		
001	Report Validity	-	[0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled
	Enables or disables the E-mail alert function.		
005	Add Date Field	CTL	[0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: Not add, 1: Add
	Adds or does not add the date field to the header of the alert mail.		

5869	[RAM Disk Setting]		
001	Mail Function	GWINIT	[0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: ON, 1: OFF
	Turns on or off the e-mail function.		
002	PDL Storage	GWINIT	[0 to 255 / 4 / 1 /step]
	Specifies the RAM storage size for PDL.		

5870	[Common Key Info Writing]		
001	Writing	CTL	Writes to flash ROM the common proof for validating the device for @Remote specifications.
003	Initialize	CTL	Formats the common proof area of the flash ROM. FA

5873	[SD Card Appli Move]		

SP Mode Tables

001	Move Exec	This SP copies the application programs from the original SD card in SD card slot 3 to an SD card in SD card slot 2.
002	Undo Exec	This SP copies back the application programs from an SD card in the SD Card Slot 3 to the original SD card in the SD card slot 2. Use this menu when you have mistakenly copied some programs by using "Move Exec" (SP5873-1).

5875	[SC Auto Reboot]		
001	Reboot Mode	CTL	Enables or disables the automatic reboot function when an SC error occurs. [0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: The machine reboots automatically when the machine issues an SC error and logs the SC error code. If the same SC occurs again, the machine does not reboot. 1: The machine does not reboot when an SC error occurs. The reboot is not executed for Type A, B or C SC codes.
002	Reboot Method	CTL	Selects the reboot method for SC. [0 or 1 / 0 / -] 0: Manual reboot, 1: Automatic reboot

5878	[Option Setup]		
001	Option Setup	-	Enables the Data Overwrite Security unit. Press "EXECUTE" on the operation panel. Then turn the machine off and on.

5881	[Delete Fixed Sent]		

001	Delete Fixed Sent	-	Deletes the fixed form sentence.

5886	[Permit ROM Update] DFU		
001	This SP determines whether the ROM can be updated. [0 or 1 / 0 / 1/step] 0: Yes, 1: No		

5887	[SD GetCounter] SSP		
001	This SP saves the counter list of the machine to an SD card in the slot 3. The folder of "SD_COUNTER" must be made in an SD card for this SP.		

5913	[Switch Permission]		
002	Print Application Timer		
	Sets the length of time to elapse before allowing another application to take control of the display when the application currently controlling the display is not operating because a key has not been pressed. [3 to 30 / 3 / 1 second/step]		

5974	[Cherry Server]		
001	Selects which version of the Scan Router application program, "Light" or "Full (Professional)", is installed. [0 to 1 / 0 / 1 /step] 0: Light version (supplied with this machine) 1: Full version (optional)		

5985	[Device Setting]		
	The NIC and USB support features are built into the GW controller. Use this SP to enable and disable these features. In order to use the NIC and USB functions built into the controller board, these SP codes must be set to "1".		

SP Mode Tables

001	On Board NIC	[0 to 2 / 0 / 1 /step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable, 2: Function limitation When the "Function limitation" is set, "On board NIC" is limited only for the @Remote or LDAP/NT authentication.  Note Other network applications than @Remote or LDAP/NT authentication are not available when this SP is set to "2". Even if you can change the initial settings of those network applications, settings may not actually work.
002	On Board USB	[0 or 1 / 0 / 1/step] 0: Disable, 1: Enable

	[SP Print Mode]	SMC Print
5990	In the SP mode, press Copy Window to move to the copy screen, select the paper size, then press Start. Select A4/LT (Sideways) or larger to ensure that all the information prints. Press SP Window to return to the SP mode, select the desired print, and press "EXECUTE".	
001	All (Data List)	
002	SP (Mode Data List)	
003	User Program Data	
004	Logging Data	
005	Diagnostic Report	
006	Non-Default (Prints only SPs set to values other than defaults.)	
007	NIB Summary	
021	Copier User Program	
022	Scanner SP	
023	Scanner User Program	

5998	Memory Clear
001	See the section "Memory Clear" in this chapter.

4.2.3 SP7-XXX (DATA LOG)

7401*	[Counter–SC Total]	CTL	[0 to 9999 / 0 / 1/step]
001	Displays how many times SC codes are generated.		

7403	[SC History]		
001	Latest	CTL	Logs the SC codes detected. The 10 most recently detected SC Codes are displayed on the screen. L: Asset line V: Assert location F: Assert file
002	Latest 1		
003	Latest 2		
004	Latest 3		
005	Latest 4		
006	Latest 5		
007	Latest 6		
008	Latest 7		
009	Latest 8		
010	Latest 9		

7502*	[Counter–Paper Jam]	[0 to 9999 / 0 / 1/step]
7502 1	Displays the total number of paper jams.	

7503*	[Counter–Orgn Jam]	[0 to 9999 / 0 / 1/step]
7503 1	Displays the total number of original jams,	

SP Mode Tables

7504*	[Paper Jam/Loc]	[0 to 9999 / 0 / 1/step]
	Displays the total number of the paper jams classified by timing and location. ➡ "Counter-Each Paper Jam (SP7-504)", in this chapter.	

7505*	[Original Jam/Loc]	[0 to 9999 / 0 / 1/step]
	Displays the total number of the original jams on the ADF/ARDF that have occurred at a certain timing or at a certain location. ➡ "Original Jam History Display (SP7-508)", in this chapter.	

7506	[Paper Jam/ Size] Jam Counter: Paper Size		
7506 5	A4 LEF	CTL	Displays the number of jams according to the paper size. [0 to 9999 / 0 / 1 sheet/step]
7506 6	A5 LEF		
7506 14	B5 LEF		
7506 38	LT LEF		
7506 44	HLT LEF		
7506 132	A3 SEF		
7506 133	A4 SEF		
7506 134	A5 SEF		
7506 141	B4 SEF		
7506 142	B5 SEF		
7506 160	DLT SEF		
7506 164	LG SEF		
7506 166	LT SEF		
7506 172	HLT SEF		

7506 255	Others		

7507*	[Disply-P Jam Hist] Display: Paper Jam History				
7507 1	Last	Displays the copy jam history (the most recent 10 jams) Sample Display: CODE:007 SIZE:05h TOTAL:0000334 DATE:DEC 1 09:44/06 2005 where: CODE is the SP7504-*** number (see above.) SIZE is the ASAP paper size code in hex. TOTAL is the total jam error count (SP7003) DATE is the date the jams occurred.			
7507 2	Latest 1				
7507 3	Latest 2				
7507 4	Latest 3				
7507 5	Latest 4				
7507 6	Latest 5				
7507 7	Latest 6				
7507 8	Latest 7				
7507 9	Latest 8				
7507 10	Latest 9				
Size		Code		Size	
A4 (S)		05		A3 (L)	
A5 (S)		06		A4 (L)	
B5 (S)		0E		A5 (L)	
LT (S)		26		B4 (L)	
HLT (S)		2C		B5 (L)	
				84	
				85	
				86	
				8D	
				8E	
				DLT (L)	
				LG (L)	
				LT (L)	
				HLT (L)	
				Others	
				A0	
				A4	
				A6	
				AC	
				FF	

7508*	[Disply-O Jam Hist] Display: Original Jam History
	Displays the original jam history of the transfer unit in groups of 10, starting with the most recent 10 jams. Display contents are as follows: CODE is the SP7-505-*** number. SIZE is the paper size code in hex. (See "Paper Size Hex Codes" below.)

SP Mode Tables

	TOTAL is the total jam error count (SP7-003) DATE is the date the previous jam occurred	
1*	Latest	Sample Display: CODE: 007 SIZE: 05h TOTAL: 0000334 DATE: Mon Mar 15 11:44:50 2000
2*	Latest 1	
3*	Latest 2	
4*	Latest 3	
5*	Latest 4	
6*	Latest 5	
7*	Latest 6	
8*	Latest 7	
9*	Latest 8	
10*	Latest 9	

7801	[Memory/ Version/ PN]		
	Displays the part number and version of all ROMs in the machine.		
7801 255	Memory/ Version/ PN		

7803	[PM Counter]		
	Displays the PM counter for each PM part.		
7803 1	Paper	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1/step]

7804	[PM Count. Reset]		
	Clears the PM counter for each PM part.		
7804 1	Paper	CTL	This clears the counter of SP7803-1.

7807	[Reset-SC/Jam Counters]	
7807 1	Resets the SC, paper, original, and total jam counters. When the program ends normally, the message "Completed" is displayed. SP 7807 1 does not reset the following logs: SP 7507 (Display-Paper Jam History) and SP 7508 (Display-Original Jam History).	

7826	[MF Error Counter] Japan Only	
	Displays the number of counts requested of the card/key counter.	
001	Error Total	A request for the count total failed at power on. This error will occur if the device is installed but disconnected.
002	Error Staple	The request for a staple count failed at power on. This error will occur if the device is installed but disconnected.

7827	[MF Error Counter Clear]	
	Press Execute to reset to 0 the values of SP7826. Japan Only	

7832*	[Display-Self-Diag]	
7832 1	Displays the SC codes and the number of their occurrences. Each number is in the range of 0 to 9999.	

7836	[Resident Memory]	
	Displays the contents of the memory on the controller board.	

7901	[Assert Info]	
	Records the location where a problem is detected in the program. The data	

SP Mode Tables

	stored in this SP is used for problem analysis. DFU		
7901 1	File Name	-	-
7901 2	Number of Lines	-	-
7901 3	Location	-	-

7992*	Reset-Info Count		
7992 5	Reset-ID Er Count		
	Clears the ID sensor error counter (SP7-991-005).		

4.2.4 SP8-XXX (HISTORY)

Most of the SPs in this group are prefixed with a letter that indicates the mode of operation (the mode of operation is referred to as an “application”). Before reading the Group 8 Service Table, make sure that you understand what these prefixes mean.

Prefixes	What it means	
T:	Total: (Grand Total).	Grand total of the items counted for all applications (C, F, P, etc.)..
C:	Copy application.	Totals (pages, jobs, etc.) executed for each application when the job was not stored on the document server.
F:	Fax application.	
P:	Print application.	
S:	Scan application.	
O:	Other applications (external network applications, for example)	Refers to network applications such as Web Image Monitor. Utilities developed with the SDK (Software Development Kit) will also be counted with this group in the future.

The Group 8 SP codes are limited to 17 characters, forced by the necessity of displaying them on the small LCDs of printers and faxes that also use these SPs. Read over the list of

abbreviations below and refer to it again if you see the name of an SP that you do not understand.

Key for Abbreviations

Abbreviation	What it means
/	“By”, e.g. “T:Jobs/Apl” = Total Jobs “by” Application
>	More (2> “2 or more”, 4> “4 or more”)
AddBook	Address Book
Apl	Application
B/W	Black & White
Bk	Black
C	Cyan
ColCr	Color Create
ColMode	Color Mode
Comb	Combine
Comp	Compression
Deliv	Delivery
DesApl	Designated Application. The application (Copy, Fax, Scan, Print) used to store the job on the document server, for example.
Dev Counter	Development Count, no. of pages developed.
Dup, Duplex	Duplex, printing on both sides
Emul	Emulation
FC	Full Color
FIN	Post-print processing, i.e. finishing (punching, stapling, etc.)
Full Bleed	No Margins

SP Mode Tables

Abbreviation	What it means
GenCopy	Generation Copy Mode
GPC	Get Print Counter. For jobs 10 pages or less, this counter does not count up. For jobs larger than 10 pages, this counter counts up by the number that is in excess of 10 (e.g., for an 11-page job, the counter counts up 11-10 =1)
IFax	Internet Fax
ImgEdt	Image Edit performed on the original with the copier GUI, e.g. border removal, adding stamps, page numbers, etc.
K	Black (YMCK)
LS	Local Storage. Refers to the document server.
LSize	Large (paper) Size
Mag	Magnification
MC	One color (monochrome)
NRS	NRS (@Remote), which allows a service center to monitor machines remotely. "@Remote" is used overseas; "CSS" is used in Japan.
Org	Original for scanning
OrgJam	Original Jam
Palm 2	Print Job Manager/Desk Top Editor: A pair of utilities that allows print jobs to be distributed evenly among the printers on the network, and allows files to moved around, combined, and converted to different formats.
PC	Personal Computer
PGS	Pages. A page is the total scanned surface of the original. Duplex pages count as two pages, and A3 simplex count as two pages if the A3/DLT counter SP is switched ON.

Abbreviation	What it means
PJob	Print Jobs
Ppr	Paper
PrtJam	Printer (plotter) Jam
PrtPGS	Print Pages
R	Red (Toner Remaining). Applies to the wide format model A2 only. This machine is under development and currently not available.
RCG	Remote Communication Gate
Rez	Resolution
SC	Service Code (Error SC code displayed)
Scn	Scan
Sim, Simplex	Simplex, printing on 1 side.
S-to-Email	Scan-to-E-mail
SMC	SMC report printed with SP5990. All of the Group 8 counters are recorded in the SMC report.
Svr	Server
TonEnd	Toner End
TonSave	Toner Save
TXJob	Send, Transmission
YMC	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan
YMCK	Yellow, Magenta, Cyan, Black

↓ Note

- All of the Group 8 SPs are reset with SP5 801 1 Memory All Clear.

SP Mode Tables

8 191	T:Total Scan PGS	CTL	These SPs count the pages scanned by each application that uses the scanner to scan images. [0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
8 192	C:Total Scan PGS	CTL	
8 193	F:Total Scan PGS	CTL	
8 195	S:Total Scan PGS	CTL	

- SP 8 191 to 8 196 count the number of scanned sides of pages, not the number of physical pages.
- These counters do not count reading user stamp data, or reading color charts to adjust color.
- Previews done with a scanner driver are not counted.
- A count is done only after all images of a job have been scanned.
- Scans made in SP mode are not counted.

Examples

- If 3 B5 pages and 1 A3 page are scanned with the scanner application but not stored, the S: count is 4.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied and stored to the document server using the Store File button in the Copy mode window, the C: count is 6 and the L: count is 6.
- If both sides of 3 A4 sheets are copied but not stored, the C: count is 6.
- If you enter document server mode then scan 6 pages, the L: count is 6.

8 201	T:LSize Scan PGS	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan and copy jobs. Large size paper (A3/DLT) scanned for fax transmission is not counted.  Note ▪ These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.		
8 203	F:LSize Scan PGS	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the number of large pages scanned by original type for Fax jobs.		
8 205	S:LSize Scan PGS	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]

	These SPs count the total number of large pages input with the scanner for scan jobs only. Large size paper (A3/DLT) scanned for fax transmission are not counted.  Note These counters are displayed in the SMC Report, and in the User Tools display.

8 221	ADF Org Feeds		CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages fed through the ADF for front and back side scanning.			
001	Front	Number of front sides fed for scanning: With an ADF/ARDF that can scan both sides simultaneously, the Front side count is the same as the number of pages fed for either simplex or duplex scanning. With an ADF/ARDF that cannot scan both sides simultaneously, the Front side count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex front side scanning. (The front side is determined by which side the user loads face up.)		
002	Back	Number of rear sides fed for scanning: With an ADF/ARDF that can scan both sides simultaneously, the Back count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex scanning. With an ADF/ARDF that cannot scan both sides simultaneously, the Back count is the same as the number of pages fed for duplex rear-side scanning.		

- When 1 sheet is fed for duplex scanning the Front count is 1 and the Back count is 1.
- If a jam occurs during the job, recovery processing is not counted to avoid double counting. Also, the pages are not counted if the jam occurs before the first sheet is output.

8 281	T:Scan PGS/TWAIN	CTL	These SPs count the number of pages

SP Mode Tables

8 285	S:Scan PGS/TWAIN	CTL	scanned using a TWAIN driver. These counters reveal how the TWAIN driver is used for delivery functions. [0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]  Note At the present time, these counters perform identical counts.

8 291	T:Scan PGS/Stamp	CTL	These SPs count the number of pages stamped with the stamp in the ADF unit. [0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
8 293	F:Scan PGS/Stamp	CTL	
8 295	S:Scan PGS/Stamp	CTL	

8 301	T:Scan PGS/Size	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by all applications. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-441].		
8 302	C:Scan PGS/Size	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Copy application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output (printing) page size [SP 8-442].		
8 303	F:Scan PGS/Size	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Fax application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-443].		
8 305	S:Scan PGS/Size	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by size the total number of pages scanned by the Scan application. Use these totals to compare original page size (scanning) and output page size [SP 8-445].		
-001	A3	-	

002	A4	
003	A5	
004	B4	
005	B5	
006	DLT	
007	LG	
008	LT	
009	HLT	
010	Full Bleed	
-254	Other (Standard)	
-255	Other (Custom)	

8 381	T:Total PrtPGS	CTL	These SPs count the number of pages printed by the customer. The counter for the application used for storing the pages increments. [0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
8 382	C:Total PrtPGS	CTL	
8 383	F:Total PrtPGS	CTL	
8 384	P:Total PrtPGS	CTL	
8 385	S:Total PrtPGS	CTL	
8 387	O:Total PrtPGS	CTL	

- When the A3/DLT double count function is switched on with SP5104, 1 A3/DLT page is counted as 2.
- When several documents are merged for a print job, the number of pages stored is counted for the application that stored them.
- These counters are used primarily to calculate charges on use of the machine, so the following pages are not counted as printed pages:
 - Blank pages in a duplex printing job.
 - Blank pages inserted as document covers, chapter title sheets, and slip sheets.

SP Mode Tables

- Reports printed to confirm counts.
- All reports done in the service mode (service summaries, engine maintenance reports, etc.)
- Test prints for machine image adjustment.
- Error notification reports.
- Partially printed pages as the result of a copier jam.

8 391	LSize PrtPGS	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count pages printed on paper sizes A3/DLT and larger.  Note ▪ In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.		

8 411	Prints/Duplex	CTL	This SP counts the amount of paper (front/back counted as 1 page) used for duplex printing. Last pages printed only on one side are not counted. [0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]

8 421	T:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combine, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing. This is the total for all applications.		
8 422	C:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combining, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the copier application.		
8 423	F:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combining, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the fax application.		
8 424	P:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combining, and n-Up settings the number		

	of pages processed for printing by the printer application.		
8 425	S:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combining, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by the scanner application.		
8 427	O:PrtPGS/Dup Comb	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by binding and combining, and n-Up settings the number of pages processed for printing by Other applications		
001	Simplex> Duplex	-	
002	Duplex> Duplex	-	
003	Book> Duplex	-	
004	Simplex Combine	-	
005	Duplex Combine	-	
006	2>	2 pages on 1 side (2-Up)	
007	4>	4 pages on 1 side (4-Up)	
008	6>	6 pages on 1 side (6-Up)	
009	8>	8 pages on 1 side (8-Up)	
010	9>	9 pages on 1 side (9-Up)	
011	16>	16 pages on 1 side (16-Up)	
012	Booklet	-	
013	Magazine	-	

- These counts (SP8-421 to SP8-427) are especially useful for customers who need to improve their compliance with ISO standards for the reduction of paper consumption.
- Pages that are only partially printed with the n-Up functions are counted as 1 page.
- Here is a summary of how the counters work for Booklet and Magazine modes:

SP Mode Tables

Booklet		Magazine	
Original Pages	Count	Original Pages	Count
1	1	1	1
2	2	2	2
3	2	3	2
4	2	4	2
5	3	5	4
6	4	6	4
7	4	7	4
8	4	8	4

8 441	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by all applications.		
8 442	C:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the copy application.		
8 443	F:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the fax application.		
8 444	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the printer application.		
8 445	S:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]

	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by the scanner application.		
8 447	O:PrtPGS/Ppr Size	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by print paper size the number of pages printed by Other applications.		
001	A3	-	
002	A4		
003	A5		
004	B4		
005	B5		
006	DLT		
007	LG		
008	LT		
009	HLT		
010	Full Bleed		
254	Other (Standard)	-	
255	Other (Custom)		

- These counters do not distinguish between LEF and SEF.

8 451	PrtPGS/Ppr Tray	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the number of sheets fed from each paper feed station.		
001	Bypass	Bypass Tray	
002	Tray 1	Copier	
003	Tray 2	Copier	

SP Mode Tables

004	Tray 3	Paper Tray Unit (Option)
005	Tray 4	Paper Tray Unit (Option)
006	Tray 5	Currently not used.
007	Tray 6	Currently not used.
008	Tray 7	Currently not used.
009	Tray 8	Currently not used.
010	Tray 9	Currently not used.

8 461	T:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by all applications. - These counters are not the same as the PM counter. The PM counter is based on feed timing to accurately measure the service life of the feed rollers. However, these counts are based on output timing. - Blank sheets (covers, chapter covers, slip sheets) are also counted. - During duplex printing, pages printed on both sides count as 1, and a page printed on one side counts as 1.		
8 462	C:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the copy application.		
8 463	F:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the fax application.		
8 464	P:PrtPGS/Ppr Type	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by paper type the number pages printed by the printer application.		
001	Normal		

002	Recycled
003	Special
004	Thick
005	Normal (Back)
006	Thick (Back)
007	OHP
008	Other

8 521	T:PrtPGS/FIN	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by all applications.		
8 522	C:PrtPGS/FIN	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Copy application.		
8 523	F:PrtPGS/FIN	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Fax application.  Note Print finishing options for received faxes are currently not available.		
8 524	P:PrtPGS/FIN	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Print application.		
8 525	S:PrtPGS/FIN	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by finishing mode the total number of pages printed by the Scanner application.		

SP Mode Tables

001	Sort
002	Stack
003	Staple
004	Booklet
005	Z-Fold
006	Punch
007	Other

Note

- If stapling is selected for finishing and the stack is too large for stapling, the unstapled pages are still counted.
- The counts for staple finishing are based on output to the staple tray, so jam recoveries are counted.

8 581	T:Counter	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP counts the total output broken down by color output, regardless of the application used. In addition to being displayed in the SMC Report, these counters are also displayed in the User Tools display on the copy machine.		
001	Total		

8 591	O:Counter	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
8 591 1	A3/DLT	These SPs count the totals for A3/DLT paper use, number of duplex pages printed, and the number of staples used. These totals are for Other (O:) applications only.	
8 591 2	Duplex		

8 601	Cvg Counter	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
8 601 1	Cvg: BW %	Displays the total coverage of each mode.	

8 601 11	Cvg: BW Pages	Displays the number of the printouts in each mode.

8 631	T:FAX TX PGS	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP counts by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to a telephone number.		
8 633	F:FAX TX PGS	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP counts by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to a telephone number.		
001	B/W		

- If a document has color and black-and-white pages mixed, the pages are counted separately as B/W or Color.
- At the present time, this feature is provided for the Fax application only so SP8631 and SP8633 are the same.
- The counts include error pages.
- If a document is sent to more than one destination with a Group transmission, the count is done for each destination.
- Polling transmissions are counted but polling RX are not.
- Relay, memory, and confidential mailbox transmissions and are counted for each destination.

8 641	T:IFAX TX PGS	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP counts by color mode the number of pages sent by fax to as fax images using I-Fax.		
8 643	F:IFAX TX PGS	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP counts by color mode the number of pages sent by Fax as fax images using I-Fax.		
001	B/W		

- If a document has color and black-and-white pages mixed, the pages are counted

SP Mode Tables

separately as B/W or Color.

- At the present time, this feature is provided for the Fax application only so SP8641 and SP8643 are the same.
- The counts include error pages.
- If a document is sent to more than one destination with a Group transmission, the count is done for each destination.
- Polling transmissions are counted but polling RX are not.
- Relay, memory, and confidential mailbox transmissions and are counted for each destination.

8 651	T:S-to-Email PGS	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP counts by color mode the total number of pages attached to an e-mail for both the Scan and document server applications.		
8 655	S:S-to-Email PGS	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP counts by color mode the total number of pages attached to an e-mail for the Scan application only.		
001	B/W		

Note

- If Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to 5 addresses, the count is 10 (the pages are sent to the same SMTP server together).
- If Scan-to-PC is used to send a 10-page document to 5 folders, the count is 50 (the document is sent to each destination of the SMB/FTP server).
- Due to restrictions on some devices, if Scan-to-Email is used to send a 10-page document to a large number of destinations, the count may be divided and counted separately. For example, if a 10-page document is sent to 200 addresses, the count is 10 for the first 100 destinations and the count is also 10 for the second 100 destinations, for a total of 20.).

8 661	T:Deliv PGS/Svr	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a Scan Router server by both Scan and LS applications.		

8 665	S:Deliv PGS/Svr	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a Scan Router server by the Scan application.		
001	B/W		

↓ Note

- The B/W and Color counts are done after the document is stored on the Scan Router server.
- If the job is canceled before storage on the Scan Router server finishes, the count is not done.
- The count is executed even if there is confirmation of the arrival at the Scan Router server.

8 671	T:Deliv PGS/PC	CTL	[0 to 99999999/ 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent to a folder on a PC (Scan-to-PC) with the Scan and LS applications.		
8 675	S:Deliv PGS/PC	CTL	[0 to 99999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count by color mode the total number of pages sent with Scan-to-PC with the Scan application.		
001	B/W		

↓ Note

- Print jobs done with Web Image Monitor and Desk Top Binder are added to the count.
- If several documents are merged for sending, the number of pages stored are counted for the application that stored them.
- When several documents are sent by a Fax broadcast, the F: count is done for the number of pages sent to each destination.

8 681	T:PCFAX TXPGS	CTL	These SPs count the number of pages sent by PC Fax. These SPs are provided for the Fax
8 683	F:PCFAX TXPGS	CTL	

SP Mode Tables

			application only, so the counts for SP8-681 and SP8-683 are the same. [0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]

- This counts pages sent from a PC using a PC fax application, from the PC through the copier to the destination.
- When sending the same message to more than one place using broadcasting, the pages are only counted once. (For example, a 10-page fax is sent to location A and location B. The counter goes up by 10, not 20.)

8 701	TX PGS/Port	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages sent by the physical port used to send them. For example, if a 3-page original is sent to 4 destinations via ISDN G4, the count for ISDN (G3, G4) is 12.		
8 701 1	PSTN-1	-	
8 701 2	PSTN-2	-	
8 701 3	PSTN-3	-	
8 701 4	ISDN (G3,G4)	-	
8 701 5	Network	-	

8 711	T:Scan PGS/Comp	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
8 715	S:Scan PGS/Comp	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the number of pages sent by each compression mode.		
-001	JPEG/JPEG2000	-	
-002	TIFF M/S (Multi/Single)	-	
003	PDF	-	
-004	Other	-	

8 771	Dev Counter	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP counts the total number of developed images.		
8 771 1	Total	-	

8 781	Toner BotoI Info.	*BCU	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP displays the number of already replaced toner cartridges.		
8 781 1	BK	The number of black toner cartridges	

8 801	Toner Remain	CTL	[0 to 100 / 0 / 1]
	This SP displays the percent of toner remaining for each color. This SP allows the user to check the toner supply at any time.  Note This precise method of measuring remaining toner supply (1% steps) is better than other machines on the market that can only measure in increments of 10 (10% steps).		
8 801 1	K		

8 851	Cvr Cnt:0-10%	*BCU	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs display the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 0% to 10%.		
8 851 11	0-2%:Bk		
8 851 21	3-4%: Bk		
8 851 31	5-7%: Bk		
8 851 41	8-10%: Bk		

8 861	Cvr Cnt: 11-20%	*BCU	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]

SP Mode Tables

	This SP displays the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 11% to 20%.
8 851 1	BK

8 871	Cvr Cnt: 21-30%	*BCU	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP displays the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is from 21% to 30%.		
8 871 1	BK		

8 881	Cvr Cnt: 31%-	*BCU	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP displays the number of scanned sheets on which the coverage of each color is 31% or higher.		
8 881 1	BK		

8 891	Page/Toner Bottle	*BCU	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP displays the number of sheets output by the scan application.		
8 891 1	BK		

8 901	Page/Toner k Prev1	*BCU	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP displays the number of sheets output by the scan application with the previously replaced units.		
8 901 1	BK		

8 911	Page/Toner Prev2	*BCU	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	This SP displays the number of sheets output by the scan application with the unit replaced before the previously replaced unit (two steps back from the current unit).		

8 911 1	BK

8 921	Cvr Cnt/Total	*BCU	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
8 921 1	Coverage(%): BK	These SPs display the total coverage percentage of sheets output by the machine.	
8 921 11	Covwerage/P: Bk	These SPs display the total coverage pages output by the machine.	

8 941	Machine Status	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	These SPs count the amount of time the machine spends in each operation mode. These SPs are useful for customers who need to investigate machine operation for improvement of their compliance with ISO Standards.		
8 941 1	Operation Time	Engine operation time.	
8 941 2	Standby Time	Engine not operating. Does not include time spent in Energy Save, Low Power, or Off modes.	
8 941 3	Energy Save Time	Includes time while the machine is performing background printing.	
8 941 4	Low Power Time	Includes time in Energy Save mode with Engine on. Includes time while machine is performing background printing.	
8 941 5	Off Mode Time	Includes time while machine is performing background printing. Does not include time machine remains powered off with the power switches.	
8 941 6	SC	Total down time due to SC errors.	
8 941 7	PrtJam	Total down time due to paper jams during printing.	
8 941 8	OrgJam	Total down time due to original jams during scanning.	

SP Mode Tables

8 941 9	Spl PM Unit End	Total down time due to toner end.

8 999	AdominCounter	CTL	[0 to 9999999 / 0 / 1]
	Displays the user setting counter for administrator.		
8 999 1	Total	-	
8 999 3	Copy: BW	-	
8 999 7	Printer: BW	-	
8 999 10	FaxP: BW	-	
8 999 12	A3/DLT	-	
8 999 13	Duplex	-	
8 999 15	Cvr: BW %	-	
8 999 17	Cvr: BW Pages	-	
8 999 102	SendTtl: BW	-	
8 999 103	FaxSend	-	
8 999 105	FaxSend: BW	-	

4.3 PRINTER SERVICE MODE

4.3.1 SERVICE MODE TABLE

SP No.	Description	Function and Setting
1001	BitSw#1 Set	Adjusts bit switch settings. Note: Currently the bit switches are not being used.
1003	Clear Setting	Not used
1004	Print Summary	Prints the service summary sheet (An error log is printed in addition to the configuration page).
1005	Display Version	Displays the version of the controller firmware.

4.3.2 SP MODES RELATED TO PRINTER CONTROLLER

The following SP modes are located in the copier SP mode. Refer to section 5.1 of the main unit service manual.

SP No.	Description	Function and Setting
5104	A3/DLT Double Count	Specifies whether the counter is doubled for A3/DLT. 0: No, 1: Yes If ① is selected, the total counter and the current user code counter count up twice when A3 or DLT paper is used.
5801	Memory All Clear	Resets data for process control and all software counters, and returns all modes and adjustments to their defaults values. ➡ section "Memory Clear" in this chapter for details.
5907	Plug & Play	Selects the brand name and the production name for Windows Plug & Play. This information is stored in

Printer Service Mode

		NVRAM.
7832	Detailed Display of Self-Diagnostics	Displays the controller self-diagnostic result.

4.4 SCANNER SERVICE MODE

4.4.1 SCANNER PROGRAM MODE TABLE

Service Table Key

Notation	What it means
[range / default / step]	Example: [-9 to +9 / +3.0 / 0.1 mm step]. The setting can be adjusted in the range ± 9 , value reset to +3.0 after an NVRAM reset, and the value can be changed in 0.1 mm steps with each key press.
<i>italics</i>	Comments added for your reference.
*	This value is stored in NVRAM. After a RAM reset, the default value (factory setting) is restored.
DFU	Denotes "Design or Factory Use". Do not change this value.

SP1	Mode Number		Function and [Setting]
1004*	1	Compression Type	Selects the compression type for binary picture processing. [1: MH, 2: MR, 3: MMR]
1005*	1	Erase Margin	Creates an erase margin for all edges of the scanned image. If the machine has scanned the edge of the original, create a margin. [0 to 5 / 0mm / 1mm step]

For the settings of the image quality, see the copier SP-mode table.

4.5 USING SP MODE

4.5.1 MEMORY CLEAR

Network Enabled Machine

A machine with the optional controller box stores the engine data in the NVRAM on the BICU, and stores the other data in the NVRAM on the optional controller. To distinguish between the engine data and the other data, see SP5-801-003 through 019. This service program (SP5-801) handles the controller data. Any data that is not handled by SP5-801 is the engine data. The data in the BICU NVRAM (engine data) is cleared by SP5-998-001 while the data in the controller NVRAM (controller data) is cleared by SP5-801-xxx (for exceptions, see "").

Machine	Data	NVRAM	Cleared by	Remarks
GW	Engine data	BICU	SP5-998-001	Any data other than controller data
	Controller data	Controller	SP5-801-xxx	SCS, IMH, MCS, Copier application, Fax application, Printer application, Scanner application, Web service/network application, NCS, R-Fax, DCS, UCS

Exceptions

SP5-998-001 clears most of the settings and counters stored in the NVRAM on the BICU (the values return to their default values). However, the following settings are not cleared:

SP5-807 (Area Selection)

SP5-811-001 (Serial Num Input [Code Set])

SP5-811-003 (Serial Num Input [ID2 Code Display])

SP5-812-001 (Service TEL [Telephone])

SP5-812-002 (Service TEL [Facsimile])

SP5-907 (Plug & Play)

SP7 (Data Log)

SP8 (History)

Use SP5-998-001 after you have replaced the BICU NVRAM or when the BICU NVRAM data is corrupted. When the program ends normally, the message "Completed" is displayed. When you have replaced the controller NVRAM or when the controller NVRAM data is corrupted, use SP5-801-001. The message is the same as the basic machine.

Memory Clear Procedure

1. Print out all SMC data lists (➡ "SMC Print").
2. Do SP5-998-001.
3. Press the OK key.
4. Select "Execute." The messages "Execute?" followed by "Cancel" and "Execute" are displayed.
5. Select "Execute."
6. When the program has ended normally, the message "Completed" is displayed. If the program has ended abnormally, an error message is displayed.
7. Turn the main switch off and on.
8. Adjust the printer and scanner registration and magnification (➡ "Copy Adjustment" in the chapter "Replacement and Adjustment").
9. Refer to the SMC lists, and enter any values that differ from the factory settings. Double-check the values for SP4-901.
10. Adjust the standard white level (SP4-428).
11. Initialize the TD sensor (SP 2-214).
12. Check the copy quality and the paper path.

4.5.2 SERIAL NUMBER INPUT (SP5-811)

Specifying Characters

SP5-811-001 specifies the serial number. For the machine with the optional controller, you use the numeric keypad and the optional operation panel.

Network Enabled Machine

You can use the numeric keypad to type numbers. In addition, you can use the operation panel to type other characters. When you press the "ABC" key, the letter changes as follows: A → B → C. To input the same letter two times, for example "AA," you press the "ABC" key, the "Space" key, and the "ABC" key. To switch between uppercase letters and lowercase letters, press the "Shift" key.

Serial Number and NVRAM

Serial numbers are stored in the NVRAM before shipment and are not cleared. You must specify a serial number after you replace the NVRAM.

Using SP Mode

4.5.3 SMC PRINT (SP5-990)

SP5-990 outputs machine status lists.

1. Select SP5-990.
2. Select a menu:
 - GW machine: 001 All (Data List), 002 SP (Mode Data List), 003 User Program, 004 Logging Data, 005 Diagnostic Report, 006 Non-Default, 007 NIB Summary, 008 Net File Log, 021 Copier User Program, 022 Scanner SP, 023 Scanner User Program, 040 Parts Alarm Counter Print, 064 Normal Count Print, 065 User Code Counter, 066 Key Operator Counter, 067 Contact List Print, 069 Heading1 print, 071 Heading3 print, 072 Group List Print, 128 ACC Pattern, 129 User Color Pattern, or 160:ACC Pattern Scan



- The output given by the menu "Big Font" is suitable for faxing.
3. Press the "Execute" key.
 - Machine: The machine status list is output.
 4. To return to the SP mode, press the  key.

4.5.4 COUNTER-EACH PAPER JAM (SP7-504)

The table lists the menu numbers (the last three digits of SP7-504-XXX) and the paper jam timings and locations.

Code	
001	Paper jam occurs at power on.
010	Paper does not reach the registration sensor (from a paper tray).
011	Paper does not reach the relay sensor.
012	Paper is caught at the relay sensor.
021	Paper does not reach the vertical transport sensor.
022	Paper is caught at the vertical transport sensor.
031	Paper does not reach the vertical transport sensor in the optional paper feed unit.
032	Paper is caught at the vertical transport sensor in the optional paper feed

	unit.
050	Paper does not reach the registration sensor (from the by-pass tray).
060	Paper does not reach the registration sensor during reverse-side printing (for duplex printing).
070	Paper is caught at the registration sensor.
120	Paper is caught at the exit sensor (previous page).
121	Paper does not reach the exit sensor.
122	Paper is caught at the exit sensor.
123	Paper does not reach the duplex inverter sensor (from the registration roller).
125	Paper is caught at the duplex inverter sensor.
126	Paper does not reach the duplex entrance sensor.
127	Paper is caught at the duplex entrance sensor.
128	Paper does not reach the duplex exit sensor.
129	Paper is caught at the duplex exit sensor.
130	Paper does not reach the one-bin tray.
131	Paper is caught at the one-bin tray.

4.5.5 ORIGINAL JAM HISTORY DISPLAY (SP7-508)

Viewing the Copy Jam History

You can view the information for the most recent 10 events. The information on older events is deleted automatically.



- The information on jam history is saved in the NVRAM.

1. Select SP7-508.
2. Select one of the menu items ("Latest 1" through Latest 10").
3. Press the OK key. The summary of the jam history is displayed.

Using SP Mode

4. To view more information, select "Detail."

Jam History Code

Code	Meaning
210	Original does not reach the registration sensor.
211	Original caught at the registration sensor.
212	Original does not reach the original exit sensor.
213	Original caught at the original exit sensor.
214	Original does not reach the original reverse sensor.
215	Original caught at the original reverse sensor.

4.5.6 FIRMWARE UPDATE PROCEDURE

This section illustrates how to update the firmware of the machine (the machine with the optional controller box).

To update the firmware for the machine, you must have the new version of the firmware downloaded onto an SD (Secure Digital) Card. The SD Card is inserted into the uppermost slot on the right side of the controller box, viewed from the back of the machine.

Before You Begin...

An SD card is a precision device, so always observe the following precautions when handling SD cards:

- Always switch the machine off before inserting an SD card. Never insert the SD card into the slot with the power on.
- When the power is switched on, never remove the SD card from the service slot.
- Never switch the machine off while the firmware is downloading from the SD card.
- Store SD cards in a safe location where they are not exposed high temperature, high humidity, or exposure to direct sunlight.
- Always handle SD cards with care to avoid bending or scratching them. Never drop an SD card or expose it to other shock or vibration.

Keep the following points in mind while you are using the firmware update software:

- "Upload" means to send data from the machine to the SD card, and "download" means to send data from the SD card to the machine.

- To select an item on the LCD screen, press the appropriate key on the operation panel, or press the appropriate number key on the 10-key pad of the operation panel.
- Before starting the firmware update procedure, always make sure that the machine is disconnected from the network to prevent a print job for arriving while the firmware update is in progress.

Firmware Update Procedure



- Before beginning the following, first confirm which firmware version(s) are currently installed in the machine with SP7-801-255.

SD Card Preparation

1. Format an SD card with, for example, SD Formatter v1.1.
1. Create a “romdata” folder on the card.
2. Create the following folders within the “romdata” folder: B245, B268, B276, B277, etc.
3. Download the firmware from the server and store the files in the folder with the corresponding model code on the SD card.

Example:

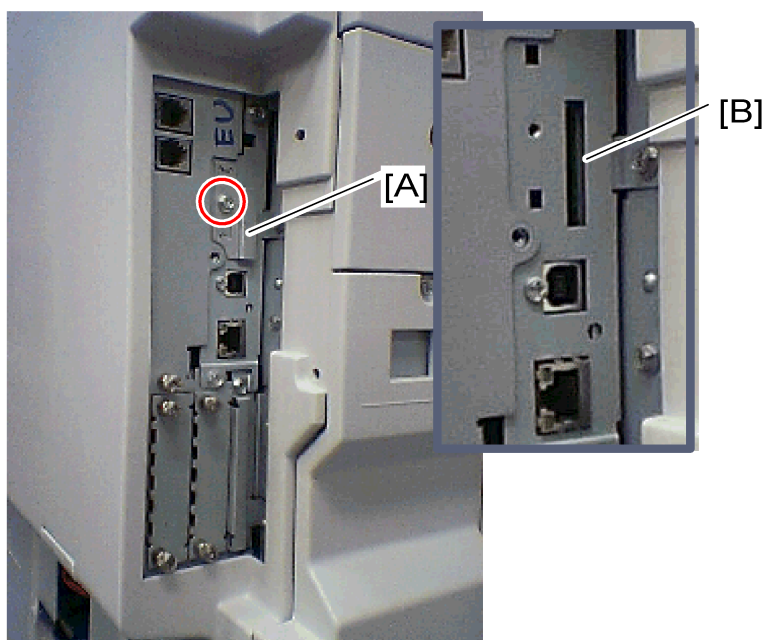
File B2455540B should be stored in the “B245” folder, whereas files B6585902B, B6585903B, and B6585905B should be stored in the “B658” folder.

Firmware Update



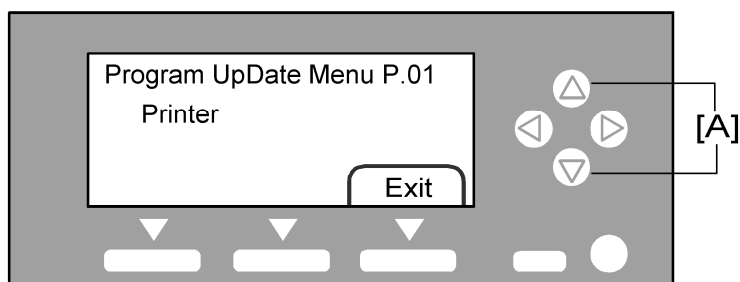
- It is strongly recommended to store only B245/B276/B277 files on SD cards used for downloading to B245/B276/B277. With the controller used on this model, a firmware update may sometimes be interrupted if there is software for multiple models stored on the same SD card.

Using SP Mode



b867s501

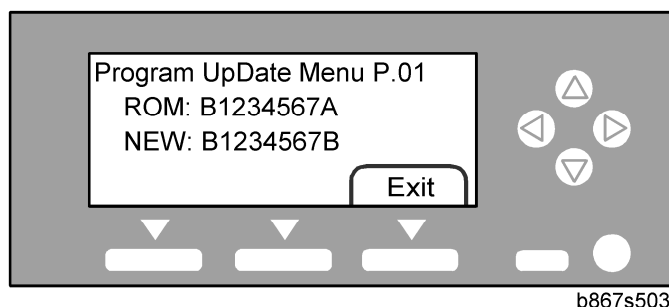
1. Turn off the main power switch.
1. If the machine is connected to a network, disconnect the network cable from the copier.
2. Remove the slot cover [A] (⌀ x 1)
3. With the label on the SD card facing the rear side of the machine, insert the SD card into the upper slot [B] on the controller box. Slowly push the SD card into the slot so it locks in place.
4. Make sure the SD card is locked in place.
(To remove the SD card, push it in to unlock the spring lock and then release it so it pops out of the slot.)
5. Switch the main power switch on. After about 5 seconds, the LCD will display "Please wait..." Then, about 60 seconds later, the LCD will display "Program UpDate Menu P.01" on the first line and the name of the firmware on the second line (e.g. System/Copy).



b867s502

6. Press the "OK" key to select a module.

- To scroll through the menus, press the Δ or ∇ keys [A].

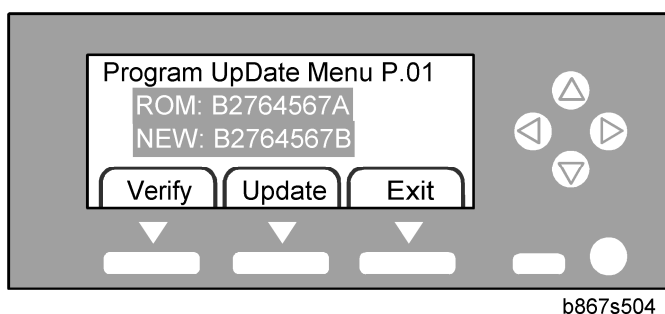


- To view the firmware version, press the right key. "ROM" is the information on the current firmware. "NEW" is the information on the firmware in the SD card.
- To return to the menu, press the $\triangleleft$ key.
- To select the module, press the OK key.
- To scroll through the module name, the serial number, and the version, press the $\triangleleft$ key or $\triangleright$ key.
- If you wish to install the following firmware simultaneously, press the START key. The scroll keys can be used to confirm that this firmware has been selected (highlighted with a dark background).

[Engine, FCU, Scanner, Printer, Printer Font, Security Module]

★ Important

- Please note that the following firmware **cannot** be updated simultaneously. The update procedure must be repeated for each individually.
- System/Copy, ServiceCardNetFile, ServiceCardNIB, ServiceCardFAX, ServiceCardWebSystem.



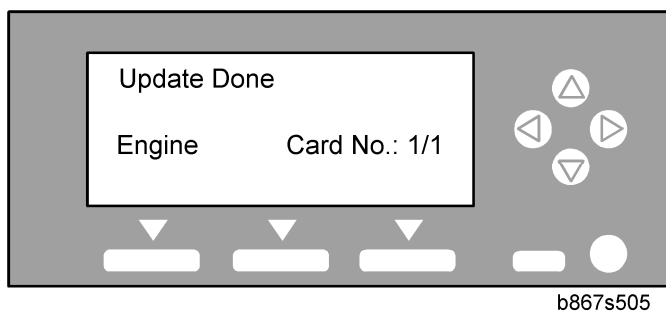
- When you have selected a module, the text lines are highlighted, and the "Verify" key and the "Update" key are displayed.
7. Select a module and press the "Update" key.

★ Important

- Do **NOT** press the "Verify" key.

Using SP Mode

8. The firmware update program starts and the message "Loading" is displayed.
 - The update will begin, and then will take a few minutes to complete. The LCD will initially display, "Updating... ***-----".
 - When the update is completed, the LCD display will change to "Update done" or "Updated / Power Off On".

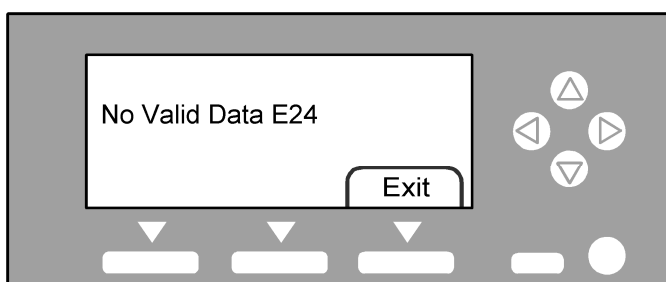


b867s505

9. Check that the message "Update Done" is displayed.

Confirmation

1. Turn the main power switch off and on.
 - The LCD will display "Please wait..." for about 60 seconds, after which it will return to the "Program UpDate Menu" screen.
2. Repeat Steps 1-8 above until all firmware updates are complete.
3. Turn the main power switch off.
4. Remove the SD card from the lower slot on the controller by pushing on the card to release the spring lock.



b867s506

If an error occurs, the error code is displayed. For a list of information on error codes, see the following table.

Code	Cause	Necessary Action
E20	Physical address mapping error	▪ Insert the SD card correctly. ▪ Use another SD card

Code	Cause	Necessary Action
E22	Decompression error	Store correct data in the SD card.
E23	Update program error	- Update controller program. - Replace the controller.
E24	SD card access error	- Insert the SD card correctly. - Use another SD card.
E31	Download data inconsistency*	Insert the SD card that was used when the previous update procedure is interrupted.
E32	Download data inconsistency*	Insert the SD card that stores the correct data.
E33	Version data error	Store the correct data in the SD card.
E34	Locale data error	Store the correct data in the SD card.
E35	Machine model data error	Store the correct data in the SD card.
E36	Module data error	Store the correct data in the SD card.
E40	Engine program error**	- Store the correct data in the SD card. - Replace BICU.
E42	Operation panel program error*	- Store the correct data in the SD card. - Replace the operation panel board.
E44	Controller program error*	- Store the correct data in the SD card. - Replace the controller board.
E50	Authentication error	Store the correct data in the SD card.

*You need to reinstall the program.

If the firmware update program is interrupted (for example, by a power failure), keep the SD card inserted and turn the mains switch off and on. The firmware update program restarts.

If you do not do so, the message "Reboot after Card insert" is displayed when you turn the main switch on.

4.5.7 NVRAM DATA UPLOAD/DOWNLOAD

Uploading Content of NVRAM to an SD card

Follow this procedure to upload SP code settings from NVRAM to an SD card.



- This data should always be uploaded to an SD card before the NVRAM is replaced.
1. Before switching the machine off, execute SP 5990-1 (SMC Print). You will need a record of the NVRAM settings if the upload fails.
 2. Turn off the main power of the copier.
 3. Remove the slot cover 3 (uppermost one) (🔧 x 1).
 4. Insert the SD card into the service slot 3 (uppermost one), then turn on the main power of the copier.
 5. Execute SP 5824-1 (NVRAM Data Upload) then press the “Execute” key.
 - When uploading is finished, a file is copied to an NVRAM folder on the SD card. The file is saved to the path and filename:
NVRAM¥<serial number>.NV
Here is an example with Serial Number “B0700017”:
NVRAM¥B0700017.NV
 6. In order to prevent an error during the download, be sure to mark the SD card that holds the uploaded (saved) data with the number of the machine from which the data was uploaded (saved).



- NVRAM data from more than one machine can be uploaded (saved) to the same SD card.
1. Turn off the main power, and then remove the SD card from the slot 3 (the uppermost one).
 2. Reassemble the machine.

Downloading an SD Card to NVRAM

Follow this procedure to download (save) SP data from an SD card to the NVRAM in the machine.

- If the SD card with the NVRAM data is damaged, or if the connection between the controller and BICU is defective, the NVRAM data download may fail.
- If the download fails, repeat the download procedure.
- If the second attempt fails, enter the NVRAM data manually using the SMC print you created before uploading the NVRAM data. (➡ above procedure)

1. Turn off the main power of the copier.
2. Remove the slot cover 3 (the uppermost one) (🔧 x 1).
1. Insert the SD card with the NVRAM data into the service slot 3 (the uppermost one).
2. Turn on the main power of the copier.
3. Execute SP 5825-1 (NVRAM Data Download) and press the “Execute” key.
4. Turn off the main power of the copier, and then remove the SD card from the slot 3 (the uppermost one).
5. Reassemble the machine.

↓ Note

- In order for the NVRAM data to download successfully, the serial number of the file on the SD card must match the serial number of the machine. If the serial numbers do not match, the download will fail.

This procedure downloads (saves) the following data to the NVRAM:

- Total Count
- C/O, P/O Count

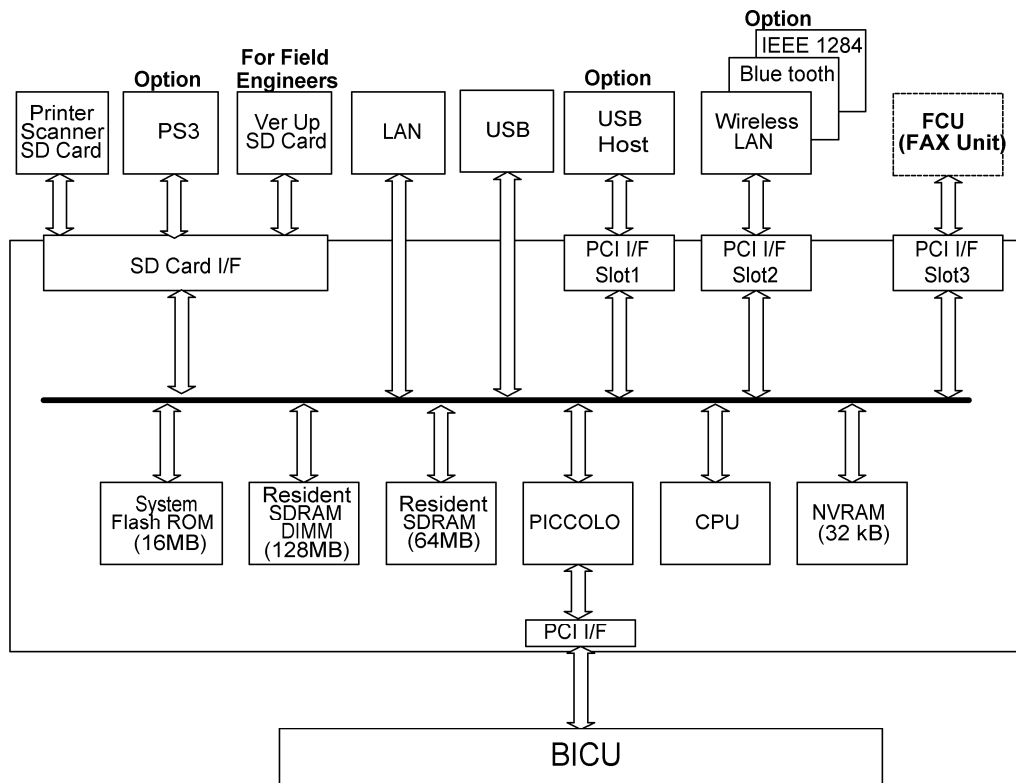
4.5.8 POWER-ON SELF TEST

The controller tests the following devices at power-on. If an error is detected, an error code is stored in the controller board.

- CPU, ASIC and clock
- Flash ROM
- Resident and optional SDRAM
- NVRAM
- PS fonts (if installed)

5. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

5.1 OVERVIEW



b867d501

This machine uses the RA2K architecture. To enable printer features, install the printer option SD Card in the controller.

Main components:

- CPU: TOSHIBA TMPR4955BFG-300
- PICCOLO: GW architecture ASIC. It controls all the functions of the controller board.
- Flash ROM: 16 MB Flash ROM for the system program
- SDRAM: On board 64 MB, DIMM 128 MB (resident)
- NVRAM: Stores the controller settings
- LAN interface
- USB 2.0 interface
- SD Card: Printer/Scanner program

Optional components:

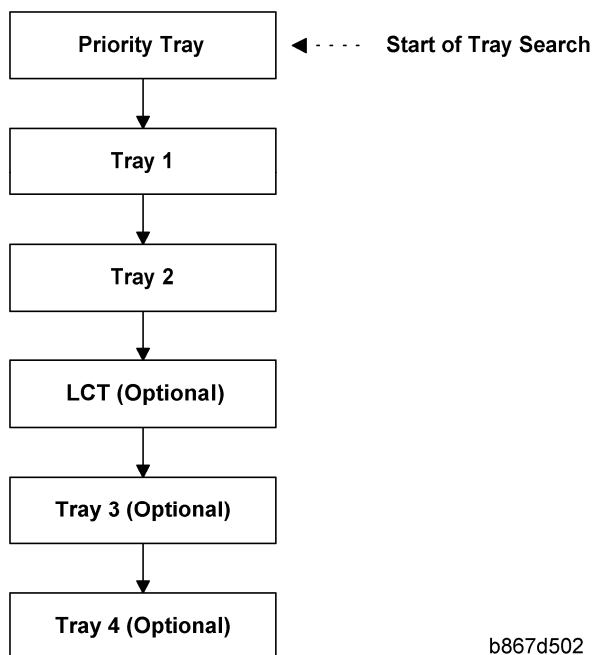
- PostScript3

- Bluetooth interface
- Wireless LAN interface
- IEEE1284 interface
- USB Host

5.2 CONTROLLER FUNCTIONS

5.2.1 PAPER SOURCE SELECTION

Tray Priority (Auto Tray Select)



b867d502

The Tray Priority setting determines the start of the tray search when the user selects “Auto Tray Select” with the driver.

The machine searches for a paper tray with the specified paper size and type.

When no tray contains paper that matches the paper size and type specified by the driver, the controller stops printing until the user loads the correct paper.

The Tray Priority setting can be specified using the Paper Size Setting in the user tools. (User Tools/ System Settings/ Paper Size Settings)

↓ Note

- The by-pass tray is not part of the tray search.

Tray Lock

If Tray Lock is enabled for a tray, the controller skips the “locked” tray in the tray search process.

The Tray Lock setting can be specified by selecting “No” for the “Apply Auto Paper Select” setting in the Paper Size Setting screen in the user tools.

(User Tools/ System Settings/ Paper Size Settings)

↓ Note

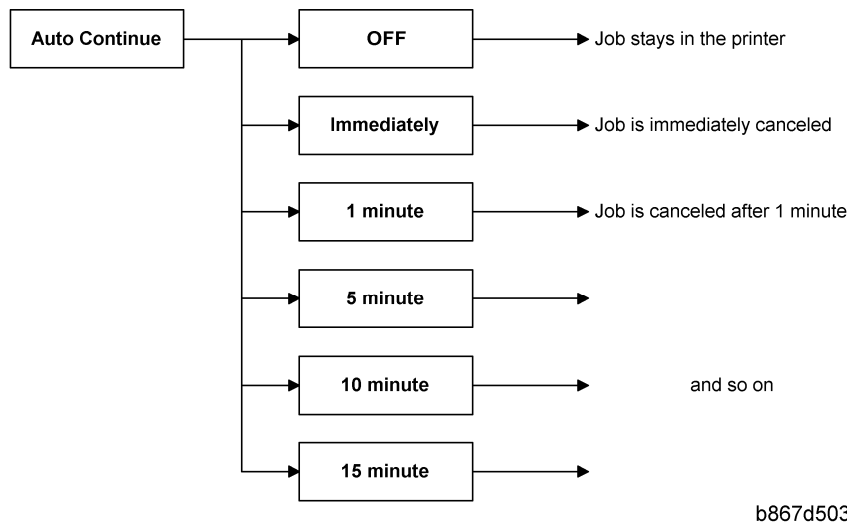
- The by-pass feeder cannot be locked.

Manual Tray Select

If the selected tray does not have the paper size and type specified by the driver, the controller stops printing until the user loads the correct paper.

5.2.2 AUTO CONTINUE

If no paper tray matches the paper size and paper type specified by the driver:



When this function is enabled, the machine stops printing and cancels the print job if there is no paper tray which matches the paper size and paper type specified by the driver.

If Auto Continue is enabled, the machine waits for a specified period (0, 1, 5, 10, 15 minutes) for the correct size paper to be set in the tray, then cancels the print job if the interval expires.

- The interval can be set via Printer Settings in the user tools.
(User Tools/ Printer Settings/ System/ Auto Continue)

If Auto Continue is disabled, the machine will not print the job, but will not cancel it, so the job stays in the print queue.



- The default setting for Auto Continue is “Off.”

5.2.3 PAPER OUTPUT TRAY

The default paper output tray for each application (copy/fax/printer) can be selected using the System Settings menu within User Tools.

(User Tools/ System Settings/ General Features)

If a print job does not specify an output tray or if the driver specifies the default tray, the default paper output tray is used.

Output Tray Selected

- If an output tray is specified by the driver, it overrides the default tray setting in User Tools.
- If the machine cannot print to the selected output tray, it prints to the default paper output tray.
- If the mailbox unit is installed, paper larger than B4 cannot be output to the standard (internal) tray.
- If paper overflow is detected at the selected output tray, the controller stops printing until the overflow detector indicates that the tray is no longer full.

Sequential Stacking

When the nine-tray mailbox is selected as the output tray and “Printer Default” is specified as the output tray in the driver, the machine automatically sends the output to the top tray (1st tray). When that tray fills up, the machine sends the output to the next tray.

This feature is called “Sequential Stacking.”

- If a tray becomes full and the next tray is also full, the machine displays an error and stops printing.

When the paper in the next tray is removed, the machine automatically resumes printing to the next tray.

- If all trays become full (overflow detected in all trays), the machine displays an error and stops printing. This time, all paper in all trays must be removed.

5.2.4 DUPLEX PRINTING

Duplex printing is available with all output bin options but not all paper sizes. If a job specifies duplex printing but the paper size to be used cannot be used by the duplex unit, the job will be printed single-sided.

- When the by-pass feeder is selected as the paper source, duplex printing is automatically disabled.

5.3 SCANNER FUNCTIONS

5.3.1 IMAGE PROCESSING FOR SCANNER MODE

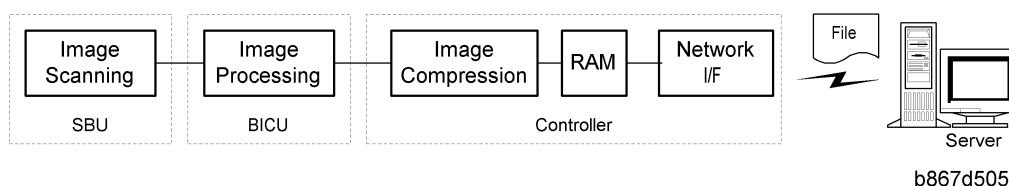
The image processing for scanner mode is done in the IPU chip on the BICU board. The IPU chip chooses the most suitable image processing methods (gamma tables, dither patterns, etc) depending on the settings made in the driver.

The image compression method can be selected with SP mode (MR/MH/MMR for binary picture processing).

Whether the user selects the image mode using the driver (TWAIN mode) or from the operation panel (Delivery mode), the IPU chip does the image processing using the appropriate image processing methods mentioned above.

Image Data Path

1. Image Store/Image Delivery Mode



The user can select the following modes from the LCD.

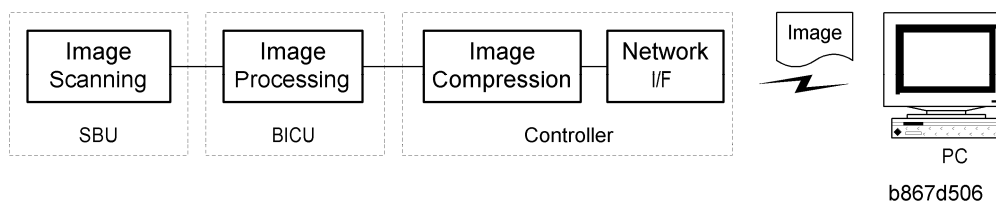
- Delivery only

After image processing and image compression, all image data for the job are stored in the printer controller RAM using TIFF file or PDF file format (binary picture processing).

The type of file format used depends on the user's scanner settings.

When the delivery mode is selected, the controller creates a file which contains the destination and page information, and then the controller sends the file to a server.

2. Twain Mode

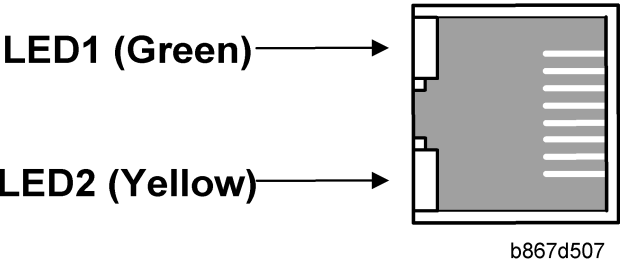


After image processing and image compression, the data (TIFF or PDF) is sent to the scanner Twain driver directory on the computer.

5.4 NETWORK INTERFACE

5.4.1 LED INDICATORS

The LEDs are on the optional controller box.



Description	On	Off
LED1 (Green): Link status	Link success	Link failure
LED2 (Yellow): Data rate	100 Mbps	10 Mbps

5.5 IEEE 802.11B (WIRELESS LAN)

5.5.1 SPECIFICATIONS

The IEEE 802.11b wireless LAN interface card is available as an option for this machine. A wireless LAN is a flexible data communication system used to extend or replace a wired LAN. Wireless LAN employs radio frequency technology to transmit and receive data over the air and minimize the need for wired connections.

- With wireless LANs, users can access information on a network without looking for a place to plug into the network.
- Network managers can set up or expand networks without installing or moving wires.
- Most wireless LANs can be integrated into existing wired networks. Once installed, the network treats wireless nodes like any other physically wired network component.
- Flexibility and mobility make wireless LANs both effective extensions of and attractive alternatives to wired networks.

Standard applied:	IEEE802.11b	
Data transmission rates:	Speed	Distance
	11 Mbps	140 m (153 yd.)
	5.5 Mbps	200 m (219 yd.)
	2 Mbps	270 m (295 yd.)
	1 Mbps	400 m (437 yd.)
Network protocols:	TCP/IP, Apple Talk, NetBEUI, IPX/SPX	
Bandwidth:	2.4GHz (divided over 14 channels, 2400 to 2497 MHz for each channel)	

Note

- The wireless LAN cannot be active at the same time as the Ethernet LAN. The following user tool setting determines which LAN is active: System Settings - Interface Settings - Network - LAN Type.

LED Indicators

LED	Description	ON	OFF
LED 1 (Green)	Link Status	Linked	No Link
LED 2 (Orange)	Power Distribution	Power On	Power Off

5.5.2 TRANSMISSION MODES

Wireless communication has two modes: 1) ad hoc mode, and 2) infrastructure mode.

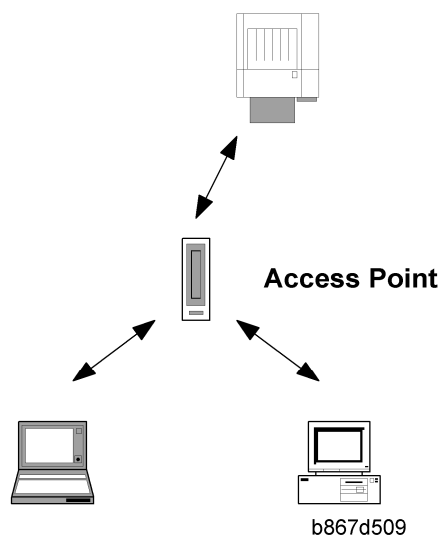
Ad Hoc Mode

The ad hoc mode allows communication between each device (station) in a simple peer-to-peer network. In this mode, all devices must use the same channel to communicate.

In this machine, the default transmission mode is ad hoc mode and the default channel is 11. First, set up the machine in ad hoc mode and program the necessary settings, even if the machine will be used in the infrastructure mode.

To switch between ad hoc and infrastructure modes, use the following user tool: Host Interface Menu - IEEE802.11b - Comm Mode

Infrastructure Mode



The infrastructure mode allows communication between each computer and the printer via an access point equipped with an antenna and wired into the network. This arrangement is used in more complex topologies. The wireless LAN client must use the same SSID (Service Set ID) as the access point in order to communicate.

5.5.3 SECURITY FEATURES

SSID (Service Set ID)

The SSID is used by the access point to recognize the client and allow access to the network. Only clients that share the same SSID with the access point can access the network.



- If the SSID is not set, clients connect to the nearest access point.
- The SSID can be set using the web status monitor or telnet.

Using the SSID in Ad hoc mode

When the SSID is used in ad hoc mode and nothing is set, the machine automatically uses “ASSID” as the SSID. In such a case, “ASSID” must also be set at the client.



- SSID in ad hoc mode is sometimes called “Network Name.”

Some devices automatically change from ad hoc mode to infrastructure mode when the same SSID is used in ad hoc mode and infrastructure mode. In such a case, to use the device in ad hoc mode, use a specified SSID in infrastructure mode and use “ASSID” in the ad hoc mode.

WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy):

WEP is a coding system designed to protect wireless data transmission. In order to unlock encoded data, the same WEP key is required on the receiving side. There are 64 bit and 128 bit WEP keys. However, this machine supports only 64 bit WEP.



- The WEP key can be set using the Web Status Monitor or Telnet.

MAC Address:

When the infrastructure mode is used, access to the network can also be limited at the access points using the MAC address. This setting may not be available with some types of access points.

5.5.4 WIRELESS LAN TROUBLESHOOTING NOTES

Communication Status

Wireless LAN communication status can be checked with the UP mode “W.LAN Signal” in the Maintenance menu. This can also be checked using the Web Status Monitor or Telnet. The status is described on a simple number scale.

IEEE 802.11b (Wireless LAN)

Status Display	Communication Status
Good	76 ~ 100
Fair	41 ~ 75
Poor	21 ~ 40
Unavailable	0 ~ 20

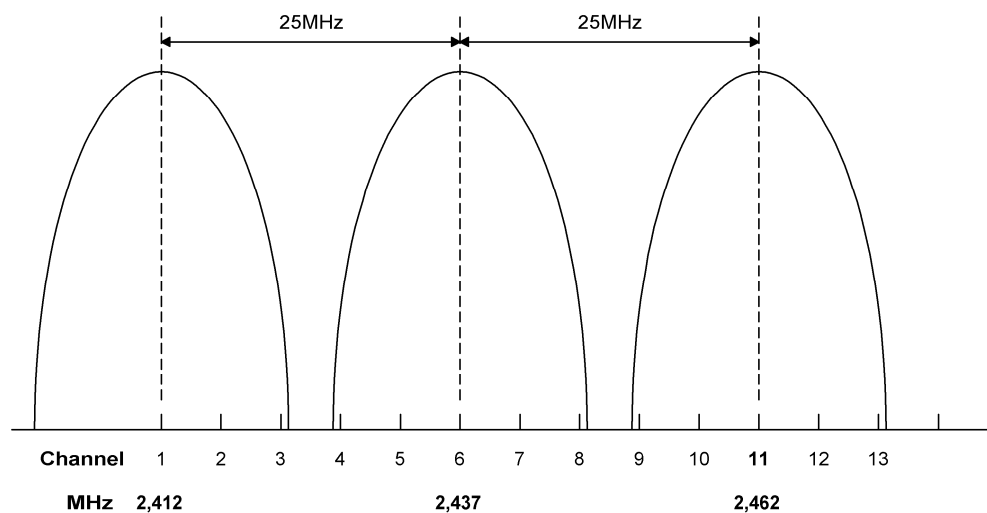
↓ Note

- Communication status can be measured only when the infrastructure mode is being used.

Channel Settings

If a communication error occurs because of electrical noise, interference with other electrical devices, etc., you may have to change the channel settings.

To avoid interference with neighboring channels, it is recommended that you use a channel separated from another in use by 3 channels. For example, if there are problems using channel 11 (default), try using channel 8.



b867d510

Troubleshooting Procedure

If there are problems using the wireless LAN, check the following.

1. Check the LED indicator on the wireless LAN card.
2. Check if “IEEE802.11b” is selected in the following user tool: Host Interface menu - Network Setup - LAN Type.
3. Check if the channel settings are correct.

4. Check if the SSID and WEP are correctly set.

If infrastructure mode is being used,

1. Check if the MAC address is properly set.
2. Check the communication status.
3. If the communication status is poor, bring the machine closer to the access point, or check for any obstructions between the machine and the access point. If the problem cannot be solved, try changing the channel setting.

5.6 BLUETOOTH

5.6.1 SPECIFICATIONS

Bluetooth wireless provides radio links between mobile computers, mobile phones and other portable handheld devices.

Bluetooth contains the following features.

- Cheaper compared to the IEEE802.11b wireless LAN.
- Many protocols for infrared transmission (IrDA) can be used with Bluetooth.
- A Bluetooth device can connect to other Bluetooth devices without any settings.

Standard applied:	Bluetooth 1.1 (Bluetooth Special Interest Group)
Data transfer rates:	1 Mbps
Bandwidth:	2.4GHz Frequency Hopping Spread Spectrum (FHSS)

Piconet:

Bluetooth devices communicate with other Bluetooth devices in the ad hoc mode. This network is called a "Piconet". A Piconet may contain a maximum of 8 Bluetooth devices. There is one master device and seven slave devices in a Piconet. The master device controls the hopping frequency and timing, as well as storing the ID codes of the slave devices. The master and slave devices can be swapped. Once the master device leaves the Piconet, a slave device becomes the new master.

Machines with the Bluetooth option become potential slave devices to connect to a PC.

FHSS (Frequency Hopping Spread Spectrum):

The Bluetooth device divides 2402 to 2480 MHz into 79 channels of 1 MHz width, and changes the channel 1600 times per second. If other devices in the LAN are using the same radio band, Bluetooth can avoid interference from the other devices.

5.6.2 BLUETOOTH PROFILES

A Bluetooth device will not operate if it is located overly close to another Bluetooth device. However, the Bluetooth device should support the protocols to communicate with each other. There are many types of Bluetooth and service protocols. These are listed below. Here are 14 profiles for Bluetooth, as follows.

- **Generic Access Profile**

- **Service Discovery Profile**
- **Cordless Telephony Profile**
- **Intercom Profile**
- **Serial Port Profile**
- **Headset Profile**
- **Dial-up Networking Profile**
- **Fax Profile**
- **LAN Access Profile**
- **Generic Object Exchange Profile**
- **Object Push Profile**
- **File Transfer Profile**
- **Synchronization Profile**
- **Hardcopy Cable Replacement Profile**

Serial Port Profile (SPP) and Hardcopy Cable Replacement Profile (HCRP) are used for the printer products.

SPP is used in place of the serial port, while HCRP is used in place of the parallel port.

5.6.3 BLUETOOTH SECURITY FEATURES

Public and Private Mode.

A computer can browse Bluetooth devices. The machine's default is public mode. A computer cannot browse the machine if it has been changed to private mode.

PIN Code (Personal Identification Number).

When the PIN code is used, a computer connects to the device that sent the PIN code. The PIN code is a 4 digit number. This machine uses the last four digits of the machine's serial number. It cannot be changed.

USB

5.7 USB

5.7.1 SPECIFICATIONS

USB connectivity is provided as an option for this machine.

Interface:	USB 1.1, USB 2.0
Data rates:	480 Mbps (high speed), 12 Mbps (full speed), 1.5 Mbps (low speed) High speed mode is only supported by USB 2.0.

5.7.2 USB 1.1/2.0

USB (Universal Serial Bus) offers simple connectivity for computers, printers, keyboards, and other peripherals. In a USB environment, terminators, device IDs (like SCSI), and DIP switch settings are not necessary.

USB 1.1 provides the following features:

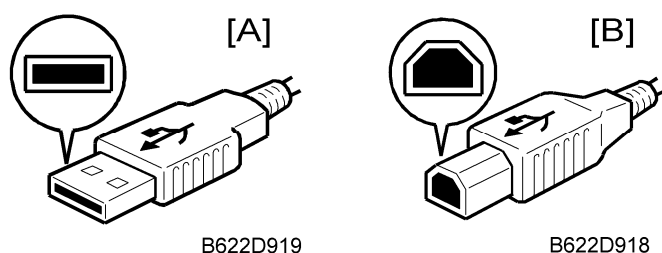
- Plug & Play. As soon as a new device is connected via USB, the operating system recognizes it, and the appropriate driver is installed for it automatically if the driver is available. If the driver is not available, a message prompts the user for the driver for immediate installation.
- Hot swapping (cables can be connected and disconnected while the computer and other devices are switched on)
- No terminator or device ID required
- Data rates of 12 Mbps (full speed), and 1.5 Mbps (low speed)
- Common connectors for different devices
- Bi-directional data communication between device and host computer via a 4-byte header and DEVICE ID.

USB 2.0 is an evolution of the USB 1.1 specification. It uses the same cables, connectors, and software interfaces so the user will see no change. It provides an easy-to-use connection to a wide range of products with a maximum data rate of 480 Mbps (high speed).

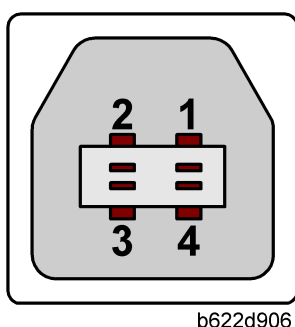
Up to 127 devices can be connected and 6 cascade connections are allowed. Power is supplied from the computer and the maximum cable length is 5 m.

5.7.3 USB CONNECTORS

USB is a serial protocol and a physical link, which transmits all data on a single pair of wires. Another pair provides power to downstream peripherals. The USB standard specifies two types of connectors, type “A” connectors for upstream connection to the host system, and type “B” connectors for downstream connection to the USB device.



5.7.4 PIN ASSIGNMENT



The controller has a type “B” receptacle.

Pin No.	Signal Description	Wiring Assignment
1	Power	Red
2	Data –	White
3	Data +	Green
4	Power GND	White

Remarks about USB

- The machine does not print reports specifically for USB.
- Only one host computer is allowed for the USB connection.
- After starting a job using USB, do not switch the printer off until the job has been completed. When a user cancels a print job, if data transmitted to the printer has not

USB

been printed at the time of cancellation, the job will continue to print up to the page where the print job was cancelled

- When the controller board is replaced, the host computer will recognize the machine as a different device.

Related SP Mode

“USB Settings” in the printer engine service mode. Data rates can be adjusted to full speed fixed (12 Mbps). This switch may be used for troubleshooting if there is a data transfer error using the high speed mode (480 Mbps).

Data rates can also be adjusted using the UP mode “USB Setting” in the Host Interface in the System menu. This mode can be accessed only when the “Enter”, “Escape”, then “Menu” keys are pressed to enter the UP mode.

6. SPECIFICATIONS

6.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

6.1.1 PRINTER

Printing Speed:	Maximum 20 ppm (A4/LT LEF): B277 model Maximum 16 ppm (A4/LT LEF): B276 model
Printer Languages:	PCL6/PCL5e PostScript 3 (option) RPCS (Refined Printing Command Stream) - an original Ricoh PDL)
Resolution:	600 dpi (PCL 6/PCL5e/PS3/RPCS) 300 dpi (PCL6 PCL5e/PS3) 200 dpi (RPCS)
Resident Fonts:	PCL: 35 Intellifonts 10 True Type fonts PS3: 136 fonts (24 Type 2 fonts, 112 Type 14 fonts)
Host Interfaces:	USB 2.0 interface Ethernet (100 Base-TX/10 Base-T) (standard) Bi-directional IEEE1284 parallel x 1 (option) IEEE802.11 (Wireless LAN) (option) Bluetooth (option) USB Host (option)
Network Protocols:	TCP/IP
Memory:	128 MB
Supported Paper Size	See the copier service manual.

6.1.2 SCANNER

Standard Scanner Resolution:	Main scan/Sub scan 600 dpi
Available scanning Resolution Range:	Twain Mode: 100 to 600 dpi E-mail/Network Delivery Scanner: 100 dpi, 200 dpi, 300 dpi, 400 dpi, 600 dpi
Scanning Throughput:	25 spm for TWAIN 43 spm for Delivery mode (A4L, ADF mode)
Interface:	Ethernet (100 Base-TX/10 Base-T for TCP/IP), IEEE 802.11b (Wireless LAN), Bluetooth
Compression Method:	Binary: TIFF (MH, MR, MMR)

6.2 SOFTWARE ACCESSORIES

6.2.1 PRINTER

The printer drivers and utility software are provided on one CD-ROM. An auto-run installer allows you to select which components to install.

Printer Drivers

Printer Language	Windows 95/98/ME	Windows NT4.0	Windows 2000/XP/2003	Macintosh
PCL 6	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
PCL 5e	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
PS3	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
RPCS	Yes	Yes	Yes	No

Note

- The printer drivers for Windows NT 4.0 are only for the Intel x86 platform. There is no Windows NT 4.0 printer driver for the PowerPC, Alpha, or MIPS platforms.
- The PS3 drivers are all genuine AdobePS drivers, except for Windows 2000, which uses Microsoft PS. A PPD file for each operating system is provided with the driver.

Utility Software

Software	Description
Agfa Font Manager (Win 95/98/ME, NT4, 2000, XP)	A font management utility with screen fonts for the printer.
SmartNetMonitor for Admin (Win 95/98/ME, NT4, 2000, XP)	A printer management utility for network administrators. NIB setup utilities are also available.

Software Accessories

SmartNetMonitor for Client (Win 95/98/ME, NT4, 2000, XP)	A printer management utility for client users. Peer-to-peer printing utility and parallel/recovery printing functions are included.
LAN-Fax (Win 95/98/ME, NT4, 2000, XP)	PC LAN FAX driver
Bitmap Installer (Win 95/98/ME, NT4, 2000, XP)	-
Install Manager (Win 95/98/ME, NT4, 2000, XP)	-
Install Manager Configuration (Win 95/98/ME, NT4, 2000, XP)	-
Printer Utility for Mac	This software provides several convenient functions for printing from Macintosh clients.

6.2.2 SCANNER

The scanner driver and utility software are provided on one CD-ROM.

Scanner Driver

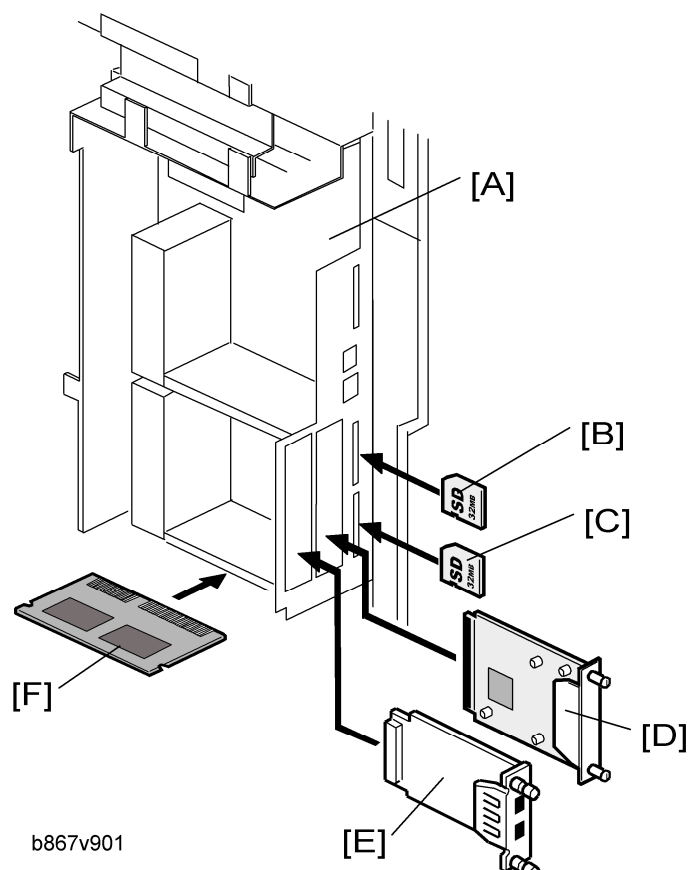
- Network Twain Driver for Win95/98/ME/NT3.51/NT4.0/2000

Scanner Utilities

- Scan Router V2 Lite (Cherry-Lite) for Win95/98/ME/NT4.0/2000/XP
- Desk Top Binder V2 Lite (Plumeria-Lite) for Win95/98/ME/NT4.0/2000/XP

6.3 MACHINE CONFIGURATION

6.3.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS



B867
Printer/
Scanner Unit

Item	Machine Code		Remarks
GW Board	B843	[A]	Required to install the printer/scanner unit
/Printer/Scanner unit	B867	[C]	
RAM DIMM	—	[F]	Distributed with the printer/scanner unit
PostScript 3	B896	[B]	-
IEEE 1284	B679	[D]	One from the four
Wireless LAN	G813	[D]	

Machine Configuration

Bluetooth	B826	[D]	
Embedded RCG-M	B818	[D]	
USB Host	B825	[E]	-

FAX OPTION TYPE C2000

B868

FAX UNIT TYPE C2000 B868

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. INSTALLATION	1
1.1 FAX UNIT (B868)	1
1.1.1 ACCESSORY CHECK	1
1.1.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	2
1.1.3 INSTALLING PANELS AND KEYS	6
1.1.4 SETTINGS	6
1.2 FAX UNIT OPTION	8
1.2.1 HANDSET (B433)	8
2. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT	9
2.1 FCU	9
3. TROUBLESHOOTING	11
3.1 ERROR CODES	11
3.2 IFAX TROUBLESHOOTING	31
3.3 IP-FAX TROUBLESHOOTING	34
3.3.1 IP-FAX TRANSMISSION	34
3.3.2 IP-FAX RECEPTION	37
4. SERVICE TABLES	41
4.1 BEFOREHAND	41
4.2 SERVICE TABLES	42
4.2.1 SP1-XXX (BIT SWITCHES)	42
4.2.2 SP2-XXX (RAM DATA)	43
4.2.3 SP3-XXX (TEL LINE SETTINGS)	43
4.2.4 SP4-XXX (ROM VERSIONS)	44
4.2.5 SP5-XXX (INITIALIZING)	44
4.2.6 SP6-XXX (REPORTS)	45
4.2.7 SP7-XXX (TEST MODES)	47
4.3 BIT SWITCHES	48
4.3.1 SYSTEM SWITCHES	48
4.3.2 I-FAX SWITCHES	60

4.3.3 PRINTER SWITCHES	67
4.3.4 COMMUNICATION SWITCHES	73
4.3.5 G3-1 SWITCHES	80
4.3.6 IP FAX SWITCHES	89
4.4 NCU PARAMETERS	97
4.5 DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS	112
4.5.1 PROGRAMMING PROCEDURE	112
4.5.2 PARAMETERS	112
4.6 SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES	120
5. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS	129
5.1 OVERVIEW	129
5.2 BOARDS	129
5.2.1 FCU	129
5.2.2 MBU	130
5.3 FAX COMMUNICATION FEATURES	132
5.3.1 INTERNET MAIL COMMUNICATION	132
5.4 IP-FAX	141
5.4.1 WHAT IS IP-FAX?	141
6. SPECIFICATIONS	142
6.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS	142
6.2 IFAX SPECIFICATIONS	144
6.3 IP-FAX SPECIFICATIONS	146
6.4 FAX UNIT CONFIGURATION	147

Read This First

Important Safety Notices

WARNING

- Never install telephone wiring during a lightning storm.
- Never install telephone jacks in wet locations unless the jack is specifically designed for wet locations.
- Never touch uninsulated telephone wires or terminals unless the telephone line has been disconnected at the network interface.
- Use caution when installing or modifying telephone lines.
- Avoid using a telephone (other than a cordless type) during an electrical storm. There may be remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do not use a telephone or cellular phone to report a gas leak in the vicinity of the leak.

CAUTION

- Before installing the fax unit, switch off the main switch, and disconnect the power cord.
- The fax unit contains a lithium battery. The danger of explosion exists if a battery of this type is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or an equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer. Discard batteries in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and local regulations.

Note

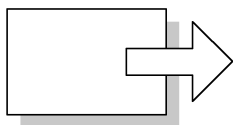
- **Note for Australia:**
- Unit must be connected to Telecommunication Network through a line cord which meets the requirements of ACA Technical Standard TS008.

Symbols and Abbreviations

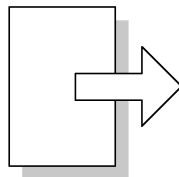
Conventions Used in this Manual

This manual uses several symbols.

Symbol	What it means
	Refer to section number
	Screw
	Connector
	E-ring
	Clip ring
	Clamp



Short Edge Feed (SEF)



Long Edge Feed (LEF)

Cautions, Notes, etc.

The following headings provide special information:

WARNING

- Failure to obey warning information could result in serious injury or death.

CAUTION

- Obey these guidelines to ensure safe operation and prevent minor injuries.

Important

- Obey these guidelines to avoid problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine.
- Always obey these guidelines to avoid serious problems such as misfeeds, damage to originals, loss of valuable data and to prevent damage to the machine.
bold is added for emphasis.

Note

- This information provides tips and advice about how to best service the machine.

1. INSTALLATION

1.1 FAX UNIT (B868)

1.1.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

Fax	1	Installation procedure	1
	2	Fax application panel	1
	3	Key top-fax	2
	4	Copy key panel	2
	5	FCU	1
	6	SG3 label	1
	7	Handset bracket (-17)	1
	8	Modular code (-17)	1
	9	User function key decal (-17, -29)	1
	10	Operating Instructions (-17, -29)	1
	11	Ferrite core	1
	12	Connector cover-Network cable	1
	13	Connector cover-Tel line (-17)	1
	14	Serial number decal	1
	15	SD card	1
	16	FCC label (-17)	1

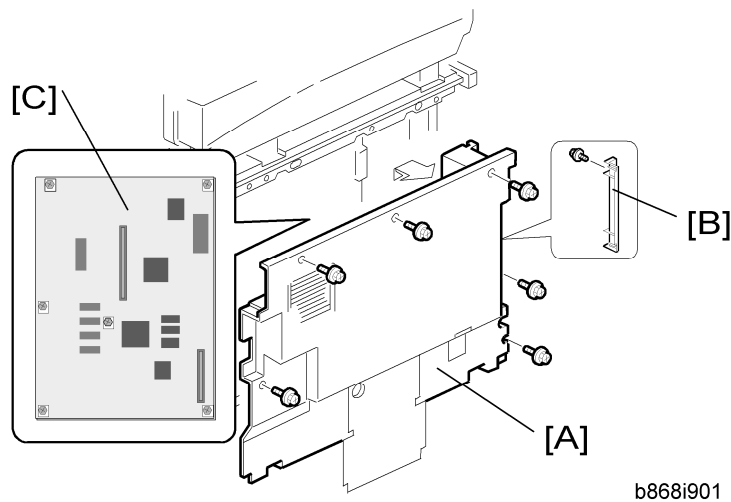
1.1.2 INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

CAUTION

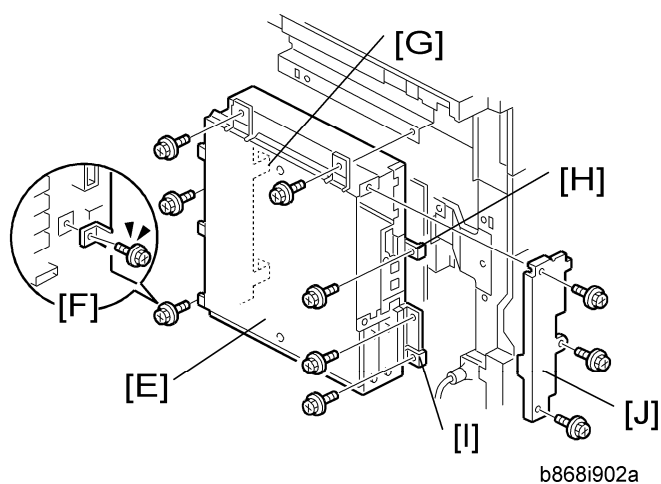
- Before installing the fax option:
 1. Print out all data in the printer buffer (if the printer option is installed).
 2. Turn the main switch off and disconnect the power cord and the network cable.

If printer/scanner is not installed, install printer/scanner first. Skip to Step 2 – Fax.

Step 1–Controller Box

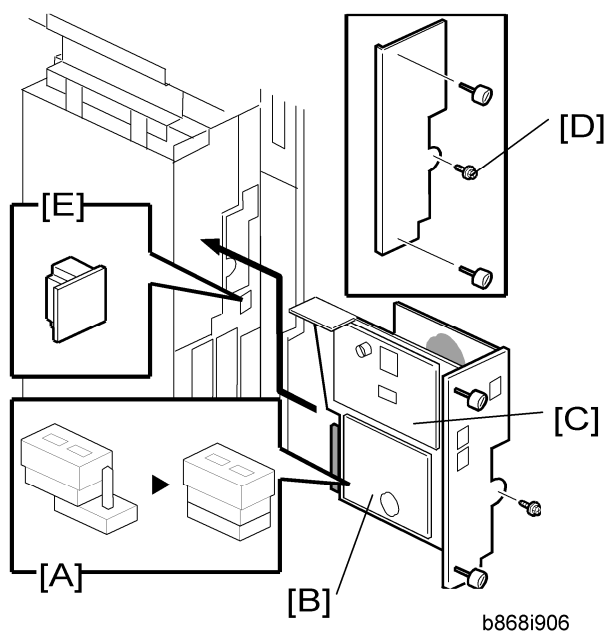


1. Remove the rear cover [A] ( x 6).
2. Remove the slot cover [B] ( x 1).
3. Remove one screw [C] from the BICU.



4. Connect the controller box [E] to the BICU. Make sure that the BICU is not damaged [F] and that the three openings [G][H][I] hold the controller box.
5. Fasten the screws (⌀ x 7 [including the screw [C]]).
6. Remove the FCU cover [J] (⌀ x 3).

Step 2–Fax



1. Short the jumper [A] on the MBU [B].

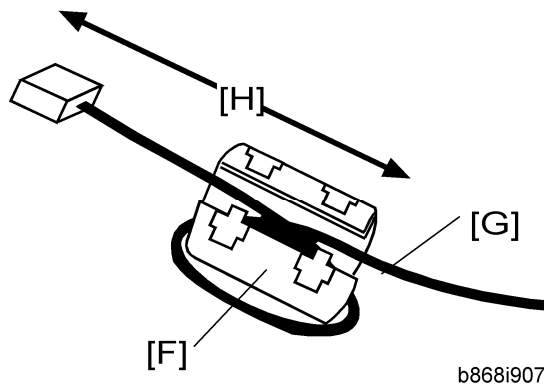


- The jumper works as the battery switch.

2. Before installing the Fax unit, push the MBU [B] and confirm that the MBU is properly connected to the FCU [C].
3. Install the FCU [C] into the slot (⌀ x 3 [including the screw [D] removed in Step 1]).

Fax Unit (B868)

4. Attach the connector cover [E] to the network cable slot if you do not connect a network cable.
5. **For NA model only**, attach the connector cover to the "TEL" slot if a handset or an external telephone is not installed.

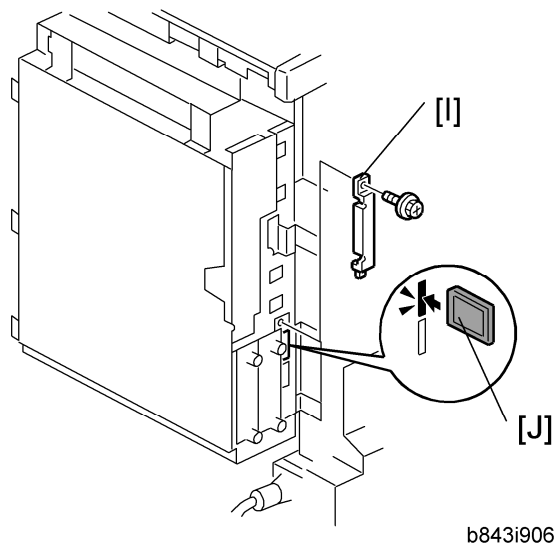


6. Attach the ferrite core [F] to the telephone cable [G]. The end of the ferrite core must be about 7 cm (2.8") from the end of the cable [H].
7. Connect the telephone cable to the "LINE" jack.

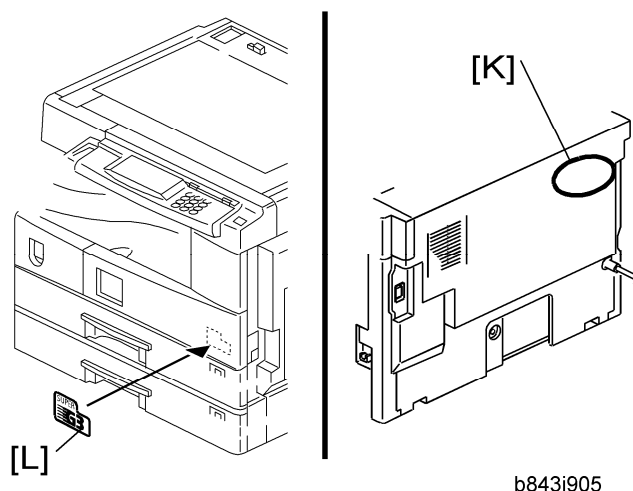
↓ Note

- Connect the handset cable to the "TEL" jack if the handset is installed.

If the printer/scanner option has already been installed, skip steps 8 and 9.



8. Remove the SD-card cover [I] (⚙ x 1).
9. Insert the SD card [J] in the SD card slot 2 (second from the bottom).



10. Attach the serial number decal of the fax unit to the rear left [K] on the rear cover of the mainframe.
11. Attach the SG3 decal [L] to the right side corner of the front cover.
12. **For NA model only**, attach the FCC decal below the serial number decal of the fax unit.

If you install the printer /scanner option after installing the FCU, do the following procedure.

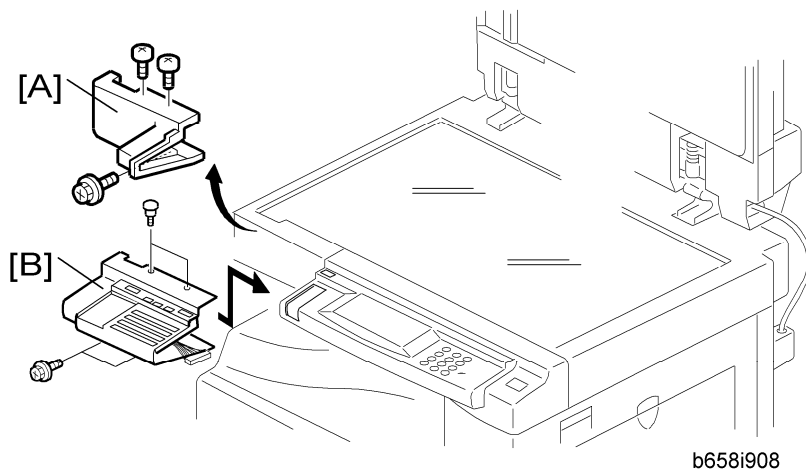
1. Do "Step 2-Printer/Scanner" in the "MFP EXPANSION INSTALLATION PROCEDURE".
2. Turn on the main power switch, and then enter the SP mode.
3. Confirm that the address book data is in the SD card, which is installed in the SD card slot 2 (second from the bottom) with SP5-846-043.
4. Copy the address book data in the SD card (slot 2) to the SD card of the printer/scanner (slot 1) with SP5-846-042.
5. Turn off the main power switch after completing copying.
6. Remove the SD card in the SD card slot 2.
7. Reassemble the machine.
8. Keep it in the safe place.

Step 3–Reassembling

1. Reassemble the controller box.
2. Install the rear cover.

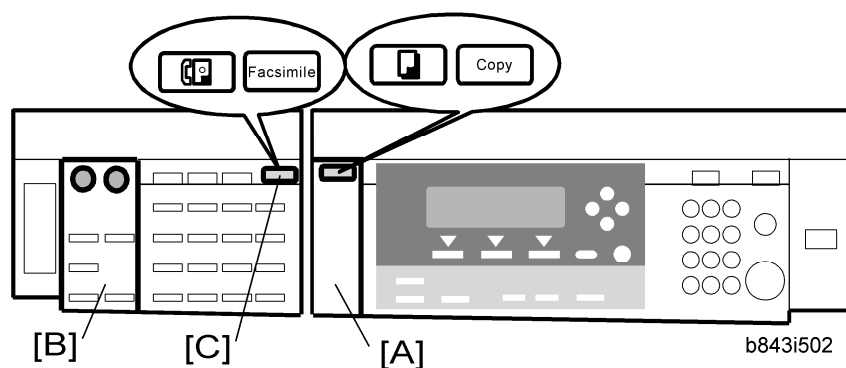
1.1.3 INSTALLING PANELS AND KEYS

Step 4–Panel



1. Remove the front upper left cover [A] (⌘ x 3).
2. Install the optional operational panel [B] (⌘ x 1, ⌘ x 4 [including three screws removed in step 1]).

Step 5–Fax Keys



1. Remove the dummy cover (from the basic operation panel) and install the copy key panel [A].
2. Install the fax panel [B].
3. Remove the dummy key (from the optional operation panel) and install the fax key [C] to the optional operation panel.

1.1.4 SETTINGS

Step 6–Fax Settings

Initializing the Fax unit

When you press the Fax key for the first time after installation, the error "SRAM problem occurred / SRAM was formatted" will show on the LCD for initializing

the program of the fax unit. Turn the main power switch off/on to clear the error display.



- If another error occurs after initialization, this can be a functional problem.

1. Select fax SP1-101-016 and specify the country code.
2. Select fax SP3-101-001 and specify the service station.

For Fax option only (without printer/scanner option)

1. Turn the main switch on.
2. Start the SP mode.
3. Select SP5-985-001 (NIC setting) and change the setting value to "0" (OFF).
4. Select SP5-985-002 (USB setting) and change the setting value to "0" (OFF).
5. Turn the main switch off and on.

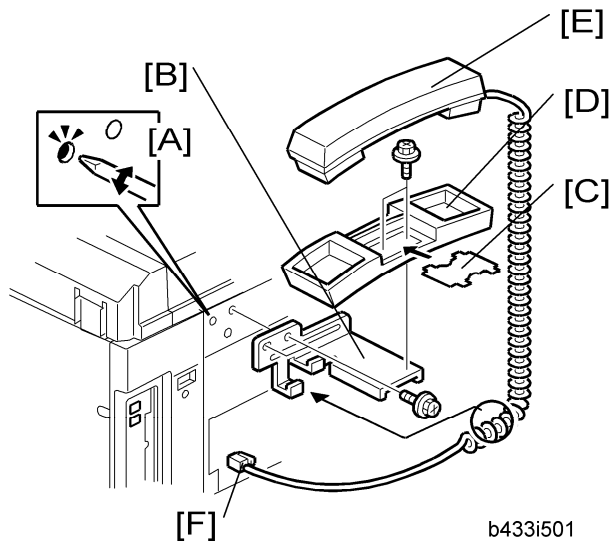
If Printer/Scanner option installing return to Step 6 – Printer/Scanner Keys.

1.2 FAX UNIT OPTION

1.2.1 HANDSET (B433)



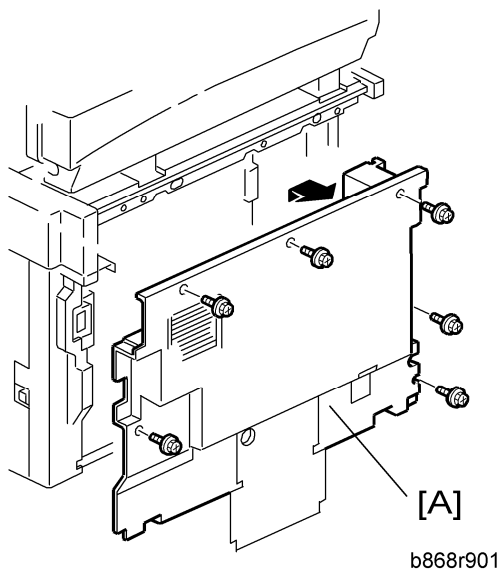
- The optional handset is available for the U.S. version only.



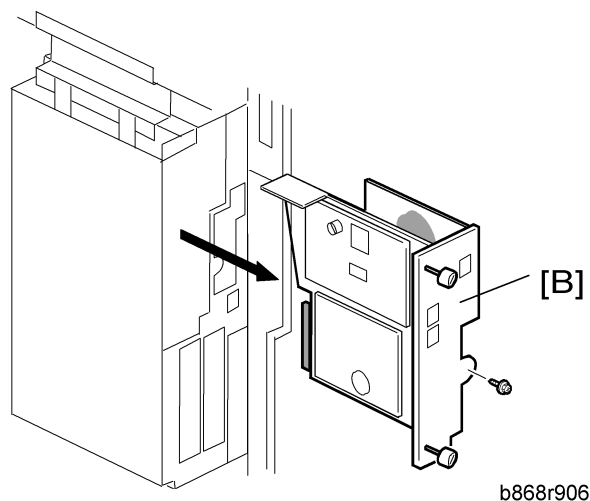
1. Make two holes [A] in the scanner left cover.
2. Attach the bracket [B] enclosed with the fax unit (2 x 2) as shown.
3. Remove the label [C] from the handset cradle [D]. Attach the cradle [D] to the bracket [B] (2 x 2), and then replace the label [C].
4. Install the handset [E] on the cradle [D].
5. Attach the ferrite core to the cable. (see step 6 in the "Step2-Fax" of the fax unit installation procedure)
6. Connect the cable [F] to the "TEL" jack at the rear of the machine.

2. REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

2.1 FCU



1. Remove the rear cover [A] (⌀ x 6).



2. FCU [B] (⌀ x 3)

When installing the new FCU

1. When you replace the FCU board, remove the MBU board from the old FCU board and install it on the new FCU board.
2. Set the correct date and time with the User Tools: User Tools> System Settings> Timer Setting> Set Date/Time

↓ Note

FCU

- Do not turn off the battery switch (SW1).
- Do SP6-101 in the "Fax SP" to print the system parameters, and check the settings.

3. TROUBLESHOOTING

3.1 ERROR CODES

If an error code occurs, retry the communication. If the same problem occurs, try to fix the problem as suggested below. Note that some error codes appear only in the error code display and on the service report.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
0-00	DIS/NSF not detected within 40 s of Start being pressed	- Check the line connection. - The machine at the other end may be incompatible. - Replace the NCU or FCU. - Check for DIS/NSF with an oscilloscope. - If the rx signal is weak, there may be a bad line.
0-01	DCN received unexpectedly	- The other party is out of paper or has a jammed printer. - The other party pressed Stop during communication.
0-03	Incompatible modem at the other end	The other terminal is incompatible.
0-04	CFR or FTT not received after modem training	- Check the line connection. - Try changing the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. - Replace the FCU. - The other terminal may be faulty; try sending to another machine. - If the rx signal is weak or defective, there may be a bad line. Cross reference Tx level - NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN)

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		Cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) Dedicated Tx parameters in Service Program Mode
0-05	Modem training fails even G3 shifts down to 2400 bps.	- Check the line connection. - Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer. - Replace the FCU. - Check for line problems. Cross reference See error code 0-04.
0-06	The other terminal did not reply to DCS	- Check the line connection. - Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. - Replace the NCU or FCU. - The other end may be defective or incompatible; try sending to another machine. - Check for line problems. Cross reference See error code 0-04.
0-07	No post-message response from the other end after a page was sent	- Check the line connection. - Replace the NCU or FCU. - The other end may have jammed or run out of paper. - The other end user may have disconnected the call. - Check for a bad line. - The other end may be defective; try sending to another machine.
0-08	The other end sent RTN or PIN after receiving a page, because there were too many errors	- Check the line connection. - Replace the NCU or FCU. - The other end may have jammed, or run out of paper or memory space.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		- Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. - The other end may have a defective modem/NCU/FCU; try sending to another machine. - Check for line problems and noise. Cross reference - Tx level - NCU Parameter 01 (PSTN) - Cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) - Dedicated Tx parameters in Service Program Mode
0-14	Non-standard post message response code received	- Incompatible or defective remote terminal; try sending to another machine. - Noisy line: resend. - Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. - Replace the NCU or FCU. Cross reference See error code 0-08.
0-15	The other terminal is not capable of specific functions.	The other terminal is not capable of accepting the following functions, or the other terminal's memory is full. - Confidential rx - Transfer function - SEP/SUB/PWD/SID
0-16	CFR or FTT not detected after modem training in confidential or transfer mode	- Check the line connection. - Replace the NCU or FCU. - Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. - The other end may have disconnected, or it may be defective; try calling another machine. - If the rx signal level is too low, there may be a

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		line problem. Cross reference See error code 0-08.
0-20	Facsimile data not received within 6 s of retraining	- Check the line connection. - Replace the NCU or FCU. - Check for line problems. - Try calling another fax machine. - Try adjusting the reconstruction time for the first line and/or rx cable equalizer setting. Cross reference Reconstruction time - G3 Switch 0A, bit 6 Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)
0-21	EOL signal (end-of-line) from the other end not received within 5 s of the previous EOL signal	- Check the connections between the FCU, NCU, & line. - Check for line noise or other line problems. - Replace the NCU or FCU. - The remote machine may be defective or may have disconnected. Cross reference Maximum interval between EOLs and between ECM frames - G3 Bit Switch 0A, bit 4
0-22	The signal from the other end was interrupted for more than the acceptable modem carrier drop time (default: 200 ms)	- Check the line connection. - Replace the NCU or FCU. - Defective remote terminal. - Check for line noise or other line problems. - Try adjusting the acceptable modem carrier drop time. Cross reference Acceptable modem carrier drop time - G3 Switch 0A, bits 0 and 1
0-23	Too many errors during reception	- Check the line connection. - Replace the NCU or FCU.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		- Defective remote terminal. - Check for line noise or other line problems. - Try asking the other end to adjust their tx level. - Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer setting and/or rx error criteria. Cross reference Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN) Rx error criteria - Communication Switch 02, bits 0 and 1
0-30	The other terminal did not reply to NSS(A) in AI short protocol mode	- Check the line connection. - Try adjusting the tx level and/or cable equalizer settings. - The other terminal may not be compatible. Cross reference Dedicated tx parameters - Section 4
0-32	The other terminal sent a DCS, which contained functions that the receiving machine cannot handle.	- Check the protocol dump list. - Ask the other party to contact the manufacturer.
0-33	The data reception (not ECM) is not completed within 10 minutes.	- Check the line connection. - The other terminal may have a defective modem/NCU/FCU.
0-52	Polarity changed during communication	Check the line connection. Retry communication.
0-55	FCU does not detect the SG3.	- FCU firmware or board defective. - SG3 firmware or board defective.
0-56	The stored message data exceeds the capacity of the mailbox in the SG3.	SG3 firmware or board defective.
0-70	The communication mode	The other terminal did not have a compatible

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
	specified in CM/JM was not available (V.8 calling and called terminal)	communication mode (e.g., the other terminal was a V.34 data modem and not a fax modem.) A polling tx file was not ready at the other terminal when polling rx was initiated from the calling terminal.
0-74	The calling terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect ANSam after sending CI.	- The calling terminal could not detect ANSam due to noise, etc. - ANSam was too short to detect. - Check the line connection and condition. - Try making a call to another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-75	The called terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a CM in response to ANSam (ANSam timeout).	- The terminal could not detect ANSam. - Check the line connection and condition. - Try receiving a call from another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-76	The calling terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a JM in response to CM (CM timeout).	- The called terminal could not detect a CM due to noise, etc. - Check the line connection and condition. - Try making a call to another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-77	The called terminal fell back to T.30 mode, because it could not detect a CJ in response to JM (JM timeout).	- The calling terminal could not detect a JM due to noise, etc. - A network that has narrow bandwidth cannot pass JM to the other end. - Check the line connection and condition. - Try receiving a call from another V.8/V.34 fax.
0-79	The called terminal detected CI while waiting for a V.21 signal.	- Check for line noise or other line problems. - If this error occurs, the called terminal falls back to T.30 mode.
0-80	The line was disconnected	The guard timer expired while starting

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
	due to a timeout in V.34 phase 2 – line probing.	these phases. Serious noise, narrow bandwidth, or low signal level can cause these errors. If these errors happen at the transmitting terminal: - Try making a call at a later time. - Try using V.17 or a slower modem using dedicated tx parameters. - Try increasing the tx level. - Try adjusting the tx cable equalizer setting. If these errors happen at the receiving terminal: - Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer setting. - Try increasing the tx level. - Try using V.17 or a slower modem if the same error is frequent when receiving from multiple senders.
0-81	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in V.34 phase 3 – equalizer training.	
0-82	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in the V.34 phase 4 – control channel start-up.	
0-83	The line was disconnected due to a timeout in the V.34 control channel restart sequence.	
0-84	The line was disconnected due to abnormal signaling in V.34 phase 4 – control channel start-up.	- The signal did not stop within 10 s. - Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. - If the same error is frequent, replace the FCU.
0-85	The line was disconnected due to abnormal signaling in V.34 control channel restart.	- The signal did not stop within 10 s. - Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. - If the same error is frequent, replace the FCU.
0-86	The line was disconnected because the other terminal requested a data rate using MPh that was not available in the currently selected symbol rate.	- The other terminal was incompatible. - Ask the other party to contact the manufacturer.
0-87	The control channel started	The receiving terminal restarted the control

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
	after an unsuccessful primary channel.	channel because data reception in the primary channel was not successful. ▪ This does not result in an error communication.
0-88	The line was disconnected because PPR was transmitted/received 9 (default) times within the same ECM frame.	▪ Try using a lower data rate at the start. ▪ Try adjusting the cable equalizer setting.
2-11	Only one V.21 connection flag was received	▪ Replace the FCU.
2-12	Modem clock irregularity	▪ Replace the FCU.
2-13	Modem initialization error	▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on. ▪ Update the modem ROM. ▪ Replace the FCU.
2-23	JBIG compression or reconstruction error	▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on.
2-24	JBIG ASIC error	▪ Turn off the machine, then turn it back on.
2-25	JBIG data reconstruction error (BIH error)	▪ JBIG data error ▪ Check the sender's JBIG function. ▪ Update the MBU ROM.
2-26	JBIG data reconstruction error (Float marker error)	
2-27	JBIG data reconstruction error (End marker error)	
2-28	JBIG data reconstruction error (Timeout)	
2-29	JBIG trailing edge maker error	▪ FCU defective ▪ Check the destination device.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
2-50	The machine resets itself for a fatal FCU system error	If this is frequent, update the ROM, or replace the FCU.
2-51	The machine resets itself because of a fatal communication error	If this is frequent, update the ROM, or replace the FCU.
2-53	Snd msg() in the manual task is an error because the mailbox for the operation task is full.	The user did the same operation many times, and this gave too much load to the machine.
4-01	Line current was cut	- Check the line connector. - Check for line problems. - Replace the FCU or the NCU.
4-10	Communication failed because of an ID Code mismatch (Closed Network) or Tel. No./CSI mismatch (Protection against Wrong Connections)	- Get the ID Codes the same and/or the CSIs programmed correctly, then resend. - The machine at the other end may be defective.
5-10	DCR timer expired	Replace the FCU.
5-20	Storage impossible because of a lack of memory	- Temporary memory shortage. - Test the SAF memory.
5-21	Memory overflow	
5-23	Print data error when printing a substitute rx or confidential rx message	- Test the SAF memory. - Ask the other end to resend the message.
5-25	SAF file access error	Replace an SD card.

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		Replace the FCU.
6-00	G3 ECM - T1 time out during reception of facsimile data	- Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer. - Replace the FCU.
6-01	G3 ECM - no V.21 signal was received	
6-02	G3 ECM - EOR was received	
6-04	G3 ECM - RTC not detected	- Check the line connection. - Check for a bad line or defective remote terminal. - Replace the FCU.
6-05	G3 ECM - facsimile data frame not received within 18 s of CFR, but there was no line fail	- Check the line connection. - Check for a bad line or defective remote terminal. - Replace the FCU. - Try adjusting the rx cable equalizer Cross reference - Rx cable equalizer - G3 Switch 07 (PSTN)
6-06	G3 ECM - coding/decoding error	- Defective FCU. - The other terminal may be defective.
6-08	G3 ECM - PIP/PIN received in reply to PPS.NULL	- The other end pressed Stop during communication. - The other terminal may be defective.
6-09	G3 ECM - ERR received	- Check for a noisy line. - Adjust the tx levels of the communicating machines. - See code 6-05.
6-10	G3 ECM - error frames still	Check for line noise.

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
	received at the other end after all communication attempts at 2400 bps	- Adjust the tx level (use NCU parameter 01 or the dedicated tx parameter for that address). - Check the line connection. - Defective remote terminal.
6-21	V.21 flag detected during high speed modem communication	The other terminal may be defective or incompatible.
6-22	The machine resets the sequence because of an abnormal handshake in the V.34 control channel	- Check for line noise. - If the same error occurs frequently, replace the FCU. - Defective remote terminal.
6-99	V.21 signal not stopped within 6 s	Replace the FCU.
13-17	SIP user name registration error	- Double registration of the SIP user name. - Capacity for user-name registration in the SIP server is not sufficient.
13-18	SIP server access error	- Incorrect initial setting for the SIP server. - Defective SIP server.
13-24	SIP authentication password error	The input password for the authentication does not match the password registered in the SIP server.
14-00	SMTP Send Error	Error occurred during sending to the SMTP server. Occurs for any error other than 14-01 to 16. For example, the mail address of the system administrator is not registered.
14-01	SMTP Connection Failed	- Failed to connect to the SMTP server (timeout) because the server could not be found. - The PC is not ready to transfer files. - SMTP server not functioning correctly. - The DNS IP address is not registered.

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		▪ Network not operating correctly. ▪ Destination folder selection not correct.
14-02	No Service by SMTP Service (421)	▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly, or the destination for direct SMTP sending is not correct. ▪ Contact the system administrator and check that the SMTP server has the correct settings and operates correctly. ▪ Contact the system administrator for direct SMTP sending and check the sending destination.
14-03	Access to SMTP Server Denied (450)	▪ Failed to access the SMTP server because the access is denied. ▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly. Contact the system administrator to determine if there is a problem with the SMTP server and to check that the SMTP server settings are correct. ▪ Folder send destination is incorrect. Contact the system administrator to determine that the SMTP server settings and path to the server are correct. ▪ Device settings incorrect. Confirm that the user name and password settings are correct. ▪ Direct SMTP destination incorrect. Contact the system administrator to determine if there is a problem at the destination at that the settings at the destination are correct.
14-04	Access to SMTP Server Denied (550)	▪ SMTP server operating incorrectly ▪ Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly
14-06	User Not Found on SMTP Server (551)	▪ The designated user does not exist. ▪ The designated user does not exist on the

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		SMTP server. The designated address is not for use with direct SMTP sending.
14-07	Data Send to SMTP Server Failed (4XX)	- Failed to access the SMTP server because the transmission failed. - PC not operating correctly. - SMTP server operating incorrectly - Network not operating correctly. - Destination folder setting incorrect. - Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly.
14-08	Data Send to SMTP Server Failed (5XX)	- Failed to access the SMTP server because the transmission failed. - SMTP server operating incorrectly - Destination folder setting incorrect. - Direct SMTP sending not operating correctly. - Software application error.
14-09	Authorization Failed for Sending to SMTP Server	- POP-Before-SMTP or SMTP authorization failed. - Incorrect setting for file transfer
14-10	Addresses Exceeded	Number of broadcast addresses exceeded the limit for the SMTP server.
14-11	Buffer Full	The send buffer is full so the transmission could not be completed. Buffer is full due to using Scan-to-Email while the buffer is being used send mail at the same time.
14-12	Data Size Too Large	Transmission was cancelled because the detected size of the file was too large.
14-13	Send Cancelled	Processing is interrupted because the user pressed Stop.
14-14	Security Locked File Error	Update the software because of the defective

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		software.
14-15	Mail Data Error	▪ The transmitting a mail is interrupted via DCS due to the incorrect data. ▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-16	Maximum Division Number Error	▪ When a mail is divided for the mail transmission and the division number of a mail are more than the specified number, the mail transmission is interrupted. ▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-17	Incorrect Ticket	▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-18	Access to MCS File Error	▪ The access to MCS file is denied due to the no permission of access. ▪ Update the software because of the defective software.
14-30	MCS File Creation Failed	Failed to create the MCS file because: ▪ The number of files created with other applications on the Document Server has exceeded the limit. ▪ Software error.
14-31	UFS File Creation Failed	UFS file could not be created: ▪ Not enough space in UFS area to handle both Scan-to-Email and IFAX transmission. ▪ Software error.
14-32	Cancelled the Mail Due to Error Detected by NFAX	▪ Error detected with NFAX and send was cancelled due to a software error.
14-33	No Mail Address For the Machine	▪ Neither the mail address of the machine nor the mail address of the network administrator

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		is registered.
14-34	Address designated in the domain for SMTP sending does not exist	- Operational error in normal mail sending or direct SMTP sending. - Check the address selected in the address book for SMTP sending. - Check the domain selection.
14-50	Mail Job Task Error	Due to an FCU mail job task error, the send was cancelled: - Address book was being edited during creation of the notification mail. - Software error.
14-51	UCS Destination Download Error	Not even one return notification can be downloaded: - The address book was being edited. - The number for the specified destination does not exist (it was deleted or edited after the job was created).
14-60	Send Cancel Failed	The cancel operation by the user failed to cancel the send operation.
14-61	Notification Mail Send Failed for All Destinations	All addresses for return notification mail failed.
14-62	Transmission Error due to the existence of zero line page	When the 0 line page exists in received pages with G3 communication, the transmission is interrupted.
15-01	POP3/IMAP4 Server Not Registered	At startup, the system detected that the IP address of the POP3/IMAP4 server has not been registered in the machine.
15-02	POP3/IMAP4 Mail Account Information Not Registered	The POP3/IMAP4 mail account has not been registered.

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
15-03	Mail Address Not Registered	The mail address has not been registered.
15-10	DCS Mail Receive Error	Error other than 15-11 to 15-18.
15-11	Connection Error	The DNS or POP3/IMAP4 server could not be found: - The IP address for DNS or POP3/IMAP4 server is not stored in the machine. - The DNS IP address is not registered. - Network not operating correctly.
15-12	Authorization Error	POP3/IMAP4 send authorization failed: - Incorrect IFAX user name or password. - Access was attempted by another device, such as the PC. - POP3/IMAP4 settings incorrect.
15-13	Receive Buffer Full	Occurs only during manual reception. Transmission cannot be received due to insufficient buffer space. The buffer is being used for mail send or Scan-to-Email.
15-14	Mail Header Format Error	The mail header is not standard format. For example, the Date line description is incorrect.
15-15	Mail Divide Error	The e-mail is not in standard format. There is no boundary between parts of the e-mail, including the header.
15-16	Mail Size Receive Error	The mail cannot be received because it is too large.
15-17	Receive Timeout	May occur during manual receiving only because the network is not operating correctly.
15-18	Incomplete Mail Received	Only one portion of the mail was received.
15-31	Final Destination for	The format of the final destination for the

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
	Transfer Request Reception Format Error	transfer request was incorrect.
15-39	Send/Delivery Destination Error	The transmission cannot be delivered to the final destination: - Destination file format is incorrect. - Could not create the destination for the file transmission.
15-41	SMTP Receive Error	Reception rejected because the transaction exceeded the limit for the "Auth. E-mail RX" setting.
15-42	Off Ramp Gateway Error	The delivery destination address was specified with Off Ramp Gateway OFF.
15-43	Address Format Error	Format error in the address of the Off Ramp Gateway.
15-44	Addresses Over	The number of addresses for the Off Ramp Gateway exceeded the limit of 30.
15-61	Attachment File Format Error	The attached file is not TIFF format.
15-62	TIFF File Compatibility Error	Could not receive transmission due to: - Resolution error - Image of resolution greater than 200 dpi without extended memory. - Resolution is not supported. - Page size error - The page size was larger than A3. - Compression error - File was compressed with other than MH, MR, or MMR.
15-63	TIFF Parameter Error	The TIFF file sent as the attachment could not be received because the TIFF header is incorrect:

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		▪ The TIFF file attachment is a type not supported. ▪ The TIFF file attachment is corrupted. ▪ Software error.
15-64	TIFF Decompression Error	The file received as an attachment caused the TIFF decompression error: ▪ The TIFF format of the attachment is corrupted. ▪ Software error.
15-71	Not Binary Image Data	▪ The file could not be received because the attachment was not binary image data.
15-73	MDN Status Error	▪ Could not find the Disposition line in the header of the Return Receipt, or there is a problem with the firmware.
15-74	MDN Message ID Error	▪ Could not find the Original Message ID line in the header of the Return Receipt, or there is a problem with the firmware.
15-80	Mail Job Task Read Error	▪ Could not receive the transmission because the destination buffer is full and the destination could not be created (this error may occur when receiving a transfer request or a request for notification of reception).
15-81	Repeated Destination Registration Error	▪ Could not repeat receive the transmission because the destination buffer is full and the destination could not be created (this error may occur when receiving a transfer request or a request for notification of reception).
15-91	Send Registration Error	Could not receive the file for transfer to the final destination: ▪ The format of the final destination or the

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
		transfer destination is incorrect. Destinations are full so the final and transfer destinations could not be created.
15-92	Memory Overflow	Transmission could not be received because memory overflowed during the transaction.
15-93	Memory Access Error	Transaction could not complete due to a malfunction of SAF memory.
15-94	Incorrect ID Code	The machine rejected an incoming e-mail for transfer request, because the ID code in the incoming e-mail did not match the ID code registered in the machine.
15-95	Transfer Station Function	The machine rejected an incoming e-mail for transfer because the transfer function was unavailable.
22-00	Original length exceeded the maximum scan length	- Divide the original into more than one page. - Check the resolution used for scanning. Lower the scan resolution if possible. - Add optional page memory.
22-01	Memory overflow while receiving	- Wait for the files in the queue to be sent. - Delete unnecessary files from memory. - Transfer the substitute reception files to an another fax machine, if the machine's printer is busy or out of order. - Add an optional SAF memory card.
22-02	Tx or rx job stalled due to line disconnection at the other end	- The job started normally but did not finish normally; data may or may not have been received fully. - Restart the machine.
22-04	The machine cannot store received data in the SAF	- Update the ROM - Replace the FCU.

Error Codes

Code	Meaning	Suggested Cause/Action
22-05	No G3 parameter confirmation answer	▪ Defective FCU board or firmware.
23-00	Data read timeout during construction	▪ Restart the machine. ▪ Replace the FCU.
25-00	The machine software resets itself after a fatal transmission error occurred	▪ Update the ROM ▪ Replace the FCU.
F0-xx	V.34 modem error	▪ Replace the FCU.
F6-xx	SG3 modem error	▪ Update the SG3 modem ROM. ▪ Replace the SG3 board. ▪ Check for line noise or other line problems. ▪ Try communicating another V.8/V.34 fax.

3.2 IFAX TROUBLESHOOTING

Use the following procedures to determine whether the machine or another part of the network is causing the problem.

Communication Route	Item	Action [Remarks]
General LAN	1. Connection with the LAN	Check that the LAN cable is connected to the machine. Check that the LEDs on the hub are lit.
	2. LAN activity	Check that other devices connected to the LAN can communicate through the LAN.
Between IFAX and PC	1. Network settings on the PC	Check the network settings on the PC. [Is the IP address registered in the TCP/IP properties in the network setup correct? Check the IP address with the administrator of the network.]
	2. Check that PC can connect with the machine	Use the “ping” command on the PC to contact the machine. [At the MS-DOS prompt, type ping then the IP address of the machine, then press Enter.]
	3. LAN settings in the machine	- Check the LAN parameters - Check if there is an IP address conflict with other PCs. [Use the “Network” function in the User Tools. If there is an IP address conflict, inform the administrator.]
Between machine and e-mail server	LAN settings in the machine	- Check the LAN parameters - Check if there is an IP address conflict with other PCs. [Use the “Network” function in the User Tools. If there is an IP address conflict, inform the administrator.]

IFAX Troubleshooting

Communication Route	Item	Action [Remarks]
		administrator.]
Between machine and e-mail server	1. E-mail account on the server	- Make sure that the machine can log into the e-mail server. - Check that the account and password stored in the server are the same as in the machine. [Ask the administrator to check.]
	2. E-mail server	Make sure that the client devices which have an account in the server can send/receive e-mail. [Ask the administrator to check. Send a test e-mail with the machine's own number as the destination. The machine receives the returned e-mail if the communication is performed successfully.]
Between e-mail server and internet	1. E-mail account on the Server	- Make sure that the PC can log into the e-mail server. - Check that the account and password stored in the server are the same as in the machine. [Ask the administrator to check.]
	2. E-mail server	Make sure that the client devices which have an account in the server can send/receive e-mail. [Ask the administrator to check. Send a test e-mail with the machine's own number as the destination. The machine receives the returned e-mail if the communication is performed successfully.]
	3. Destination	Make sure that the e-mail address is

Communication Route	Item	Action [Remarks]
	e-mail address	actually used. Check that the e-mail address contains no incorrect characters such as spaces.
Between e-mail server and internet	Router settings	- Use the “ping” command to contact the router. - Check that other devices connected to the router can send data over the router. [Ask the administrator of the server to check.]
Between e-mail server and internet	Error message by e-mail from the network of the destination.	- Check whether e-mail can be sent to another address on the same network, using the application e-mail software. - Check the error e-mail message. [Inform the administrator of the LAN.]

3.3 IP-FAX TROUBLESHOOTING

3.3.1 IP-FAX TRANSMISSION

Cannot send by IP Address/Host Name

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Specified IP address/host name correct?	Check the IP address/host name.
3	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
4	Transmission sent manually?	Manual sending not supported.
5	IP address of local machine registered?	Register the IP address.
6	Remote terminal port number setting other than 1720?	Send by specifying the port number.
7	Specified port number correct?	Confirm the port number of the remote fax.
8	DNS server registered when host name specified?	Contact the network administrator.
9	Remote fax a T.38 terminal?	Check whether the remote fax is a T38 terminal.
10	Remote fax switched off or busy?	Check that the remote fax is switched on.
11	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Raise the delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3

		IP-Fax bandwidth is the same as the DCS speed. Set IP-Fax SW00 Bit 6 to 1.
12	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.

Cannot send via VoIP Gateway

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	VoIP Gateway T.38 standard?	Contact the network administrator.
3	VoIP Gateway installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator.
4	VoIP Gateway power switched on?	Contact the network administrator.
5	Is the IP address/host name of the specified Gateway correct?	Check the IP address/host name.
6	Number of the specified fax correct?	Check the remote fax number.
7	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
8	Transmission sent manually?	Manual sending not supported.
9	IP address of local fax registered?	Register the IP address.
10	DNS registered when host name specified?	Contact the network administrator.
11	Remote fax a G3 fax?	Check that the remote fax is a G3 fax.
12	G3 fax is connected to VoIP gateway?	Check that G3 fax is connected.
13	Remote G3 fax turned on?	Check that G3 fax is switched on.
14	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the network administrator to

IP-Fax Troubleshooting

		increase the bandwidth.
		Raise the network delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3
		IP-Fax bandwidth is the same as the DCS speed. Set IP-Fax SW00 Bit 6 to 1.

Cannot send by Alias Fax number.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Number of specified Alias fax correct?	Confirm the Alias of the remote fax. Error Code: 13-14
3	Firewall/NAT installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
4	Transmission sent manually?	Manual sending not supported.
5	Gatekeeper installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator.
6	Gatekeeper power switched on?	Contact the network administrator.
7	IP address/host name of Gatekeeper correct?	Check the IP address/host name.
8	DNS server registered when Gatekeeper host name specified?	Contact the network administrator.
9	Enable H.323 SW is set to on?	Check the settings. See User Parameter SW 34 Bit 0
10	IP address of local fax registered?	Register the IP address of the local fax.
11	Alias number of local fax registered?	Register the Alias number of the local fax.

12	Remote fax registered in Gatekeeper?	Contact the network administrator.
13	Remote fax a T.38 terminal?	Check whether the remote fax is a T38 terminal.
14	Remote fax switched off or busy?	Contact the network administrator.
15	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Raise the delay level. IPFAX SW 01 Bit 0 to 3
		Lower the modem transmission baud rate. IPFAX SW 05
16	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.

3.3.2 IP-FAX RECEPTION

Cannot receive by IP Address/Host name.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
3	IP address of local fax registered?	Register the IP address.
4	Port number specified at remote sender fax (if required)?	Request the sender to specify the port number.
5	Specified port number correct (if required)?	Request the sender to check the port number.
6	DNS server registered when host name specified on sender side?	Contact the network administrator.  Note

IP-Fax Troubleshooting

		The sender machine displays this error code if the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
7	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth. Lower the start modem reception baud rate on the receiving side. IPFAX SW06
8	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.

Cannot receive by VoIP Gateway.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot breach the firewall. Request the remote fax to send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
3	VoIP Gateway installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator.
4	VoIP Gateway power switched on?	Contact the network administrator.
5	IP address/host name of specified VoIP Gateway correct on sender's side?	Request the remote fax to check the IP address/host name.
6	DNS server registered when host name specified on sender side?	Contact the network administrator.
7	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the network administrator to increase the bandwidth.
8	G3 fax connected?	Check that G3 fax is connected.
9	G3 fax power switched on?	Check that G3 fax is switched on.

Cannot receive by Alias Fax number.

Check Point		Action
1	LAN cable connected?	Check the LAN cable connection.
2	Firewall/NAT is installed?	Cannot the breach firewall. Request the remote fax to send by using another method (Fax, Internet Fax)
3	Gatekeeper installed correctly?	Contact the network administrator. ↓ Note The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
4	Power to Gatekeeper switched on?	Contact the network administrator. ↓ Note The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
5	IP address/host name of Gatekeeper correct on the sender's side?	Request the sender to check the IP address/host name. ↓ Note The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
6	DNS server registered when Gatekeeper host name specified on sender's side?	Contact the network administrator. ↓ Note The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.
7	Enable H.323 SW is set to on?	Request the sender to check the settings. User Parameter SW 34 Bit 0

IP-Fax Troubleshooting

		↓ Note Only if the remote sender fax is a Ricoh fax.
8	Local fax IP address registered?	Register the IP address.
9	Local fax Alias number registered?	Register the Alias number.
10	Network bandwidth too narrow?	Request the system administrator to increase the bandwidth.
		Lower the start modem reception baud rate on the receiving side. IPFAX SW06
11	Remote fax cancelled transmission?	Check whether the remote fax cancelled the transmission.
12	Local fax registered in Gatekeeper?	Contact the network administrator. ↓ Note The sender machine displays this error code when the sender fax is a Ricoh model.

4. SERVICE TABLES

4.1 BEFOREHAND



- The main power LED () lights or flashes while the platen cover or ARDF is open, while the main machine is communicating with a facsimile or the network server, or while the machine is accessing the hard disk or memory for reading or writing data.

4.2 SERVICE TABLES

4.2.1 SP1-XXX (BIT SWITCHES)

☛ "Bit Switches"

1	Mode No.	Function
101	System Switch	
	001 – 032	00 – 1F Change the bit switches for system settings for the fax option (☛ "Bit Switches")
102	Ifax Switch	
	001 – 016	00 – 0F Change the bit switches for internet fax settings for the fax option (☛ "Bit Switches")
103	Printer Switch	
	001 – 016	00 – 0F Change the bit switches for printer settings for the fax option (☛ "Bit Switches")
104	Communication Switch	
	001 – 032	00 – 1F Change the bit switches for communication settings for the fax option (☛ "Bit Switches")
105	G3-1 Switch	
	001 – 016	00 – 0F Change the bit switches for the protocol settings of the standard G3 board (☛ "Bit Switches")
111	IP fax Switch	
	001 – 016	00 – 0F Change the bit switches for optional IP fax parameters (☛ "Bit Switches")

4.2.2 SP2-XXX (RAM DATA)

2	Mode No.		Function
101	RAM Read/Write		
	001		Change RAM data for the fax board directly. (☛ "Service RAM Addresses")
102	Memory Dump		
	001	G3-1 Memory Dump	Print out RAM data for the fax board. (☛ "Service RAM Addresses")
103	G3-1 NCU Parameters		
	001 – 023	CC, 01 – 22	NCU parameter settings for the standard G3 board. (☛ "NCU Parameters")

4.2.3 SP3-XXX (TEL LINE SETTINGS)

3	Mode No.		Function
101	Service Station		
	001	Fax Number	Enter the fax number of the service station.
102	Serial Number		
	000		Enter the fax unit's serial number.
103	PSTN-1 Port Settings		
	001	Select Line	Select the line type setting for the G3-1 line. If the machine is installed on a PABX line, select "PABX", "PABX(GND)" or "PABX(FLASH)".
	002	PSTN Access Number	Enter the PSTN access number for the G3-1 line.

Service Tables

	003	Memory Lock Disabled	If the customer does not want to receive transmissions using Memory Lock on this line, turn this SP on.
107	IPFAX Port Settings		
	001	H323 Port	-
	002	SIP Port	-
	003	RAS Port	-
	004	Gatekeeper port	-
	005	T.38 Port	-
	006	SIP Server Port	-
	007	IPFAX Protocol Priority	Select "H323" or "SIP".
201	FAX SW		
	001 – 032	00 – 1F	-

4.2.4 SP4-XXX (ROM VERSIONS)

4	Mode No.		Function
101	002 – 007	FCU ROM Version	Displays the FCU ROM version.
102	002 – 065	Error Codes	Displays the latest 64 fax error codes.
103	002 – 004	G3-1 ROM Version	Displays the G3-1 modem version.

4.2.5 SP5-XXX (INITIALIZING)

5	Mode No.	Function

101	Initialize SRAM	
	001	Initializes the bit switches and user parameters, user data in the SRAM, files in the SAF memory, and clock.
102	Erase All Files	
	001	Erases all files stored in the SAF memory.
103	Reset Bit Switches	
	001	Resets the bit switches and user parameters.
104	Factory setting	
	001	Resets the bit switches and user parameters, user data in the SRAM and files in the SAF memory.
105	Reset All Bit Switches	
	001	Initializes all the current bit switch settings.
106	Reset Security Bit Switches	
	001	Initializes only the security bit switches. If you select automatic output/display for the user parameter switches, the security settings are initialized.

4.2.6 SP6-XXX (REPORTS)

6	Mode No.		Function
101	System Parameter List		
	001	-	Touch the "ON" button to print the system parameter list.
102	Service Monitor		
	001	-	Touch the "ON" button to print the service monitor report.

Service Tables

103	G3 Protocol Dump List		
	001	G3-1 (All Communications)	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the G3-1 line.
	002	G3-1 (1 Communication)	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the G3-1 line.
105	All Files print out		
	001	-	Prints out all the user files in the SAF memory, including confidential messages. ↓ Note Do not use this function, unless the customer is having trouble printing confidential messages or recovering files stored using the memory lock feature.
106	Journal Print out		
	001	All Journals	The machine prints all the communication records on the report.
	002	Specified Date	The machine prints all communication records after the specified date.
107	Log List Print out		
	001	All log files	These log print out functions are for designer use only.
	002	Printer	
	003	SC/TRAP Stored	
	004	Decompression	
	005	Scanner	
	006	JOB/SAF	
	007	Reconstruction	

	008	JBIG	
	009	G3CCU	
	010	Fax Job	
	011	CCU	
	012	Scanner Condition	
108	IP Protocol Dump List		
	001	All Communications	Prints the protocol dump list of all communications for the IP fax line.
	002	1 Communication	Prints the protocol dump list of the last communication for the IP fax line.

4.2.7 SP7-XXX (TEST MODES)

These are the test modes for PTT approval.

7	Function
101	G3-1 Modem Tests
102	G3-1 DTMF Tests
103	Ringer Test
104	G3-1 V34 (S2400baud)
105	G3-1 V34 (S2800baud)
106	G3-1 V34 (S3000baud)
107	G3-1 V34 (S3200baud)
108	G3-1 V34 (S3429baud)
109	Message Test

4.3 BIT SWITCHES

WARNING

- Do not adjust a bit switch or use a setting that is described as “Not used”, as this may cause the machine to malfunction or to operate in a manner that is not accepted by local regulations. Such bits are for use only in other areas, such as Japan.

Note

- Default settings for bit switches are not listed in this manual. Refer to the System Parameter List printed by the machine.

4.3.1 SYSTEM SWITCHES

System Switch 00 [SP No. 1-101-001]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Dedicated transmission parameter programming 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled	Set this bit to 1 before changing any dedicated transmission parameters. Reset this bit to 0 after programming dedicated transmission parameters.
1	Not used	Do not change
2	Technical data printout on the Journal 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: Instead of the personal name, the following data are listed on the Journal for each G3 communication.
	e.g. 0000 (1) // 32 (2) V34 (3) // 288 (4) // 264 (5) // L0100 (6) 03 (7) 04 (8) (1): EQM value (Line quality data). A larger number means more errors. (2): Symbol rate (V.34 only) (3): Final modem type used (4): Starting data rate (for example, 288 means 28.8 kbps) (5): Final data rate (6): Rx revel (refer to the note after this table for how to read the rx level) (7): Total number of error lines that occurred during non-ECM reception.	

	(8): Total number of burst error lines that occurred during non-ECM reception.  Note - EQM and rx level are fixed at “FFFF” in tx mode. - The seventh and eighth numbers are fixed at “00” for transmission records and ECM reception records.	
	Rx level calculation Example: 0000 // 32 V34 // 288/264 // L 01 00 03 04 The four-digit hexadecimal value (N) after “L” indicates the rx level. The high byte is given first, followed by the low byte. Divide the decimal value of N by -16 to get the rx level. In the above example, the decimal value of N (= 0100 [H]) is 256. So, the actual rx level is $256/-16 = -16$ dB	
3	Not used	Do not change this setting.
4	Line error mark print 0: OFF, 1: ON (print)	When “1” is selected, a line error mark is printed on the printout if a line error occurs during reception.
5	G3/G4 communication parameter display 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This is a fault-finding aid. The LCD shows the key parameters (see below). This is normally disabled because it cancels the CSI display for the user. Be sure to reset this bit to 0 after testing.
6	Protocol dump list output after each communication 0: Off 1: On	This is only used for communication troubleshooting. It shows the content of the transmitted facsimile protocol signals. Always reset this bit to 0 after finishing testing. If system switch 09 bit 6 is at “1”, the list is only printed if there was an error during the communication.
7	Not used	Do not change the setting.

System Switch 01 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

Bit Switches

System Switch 02 [SP No. 1-101-003]		
No	Function	Comments
0-1	Not used	Do not change these settings.
2	Force after transmission stall 0: Off 1: On	With this setting on, the machine resets itself automatically if a transmission stalls and fails to complete the job.
3-5	Not used	Do not change these settings.
6-7	Memory read/write by RDS Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0 Always disabled Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1 User selectable Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0 User selectable Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1 Always enabled	(0,0): All RDS systems are always locked out. (0,1), (1,0): Normally, RDS systems are locked out, but the user can temporarily switch RDS on to allow RDS operations to take place. RDS will automatically be locked out again after a certain time, which is stored in System Switch 03. Note that if an RDS operation takes place, RDS will not switch off until this time limit has expired. (1,1): At any time, an RDS system can access the machine.

System Switch 03 [SP No. 1-101-004]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	Length of time that RDS is temporarily switched on when bits 6 and 7 of System Switch 02 are set to "User selectable"	00 - 99 hours (BCD). This setting is only valid if bits 6 and 7 of System Switch 02 are set to "User selectable". The default setting is 24 hours.

System Switch 04 [SP No. 1-101-005]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-2	Not used	Do not change these settings.
3	Printing dedicated tx	1: Each Quick/Speed dial number on the list is

	parameters on Quick/Speed Dial Lists 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	printed with the dedicated tx parameters (10 bytes each). The first 10 bytes of data are the programmed dedicated tx parameters; 34 bytes of data are printed (the other 24 bytes have no use for service technicians).
4-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 05 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 06 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 07 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 08 - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 09 [SP No. 1-101-010]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Not used	Do not change these settings.
1	Inclusion of communications on the Journal when no image data was exchanged. 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Communications that reached phase C (message tx/rx) of the T.30 protocol are listed on the Journal. 1: Communications that reached phase A (call setup) of T.30 protocol are listed on the Journal. This will include telephone calls.
2	Automatic error report printout 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Error reports will not be printed. 1: Error reports will be printed automatically after failed communications.
3	Printing of the error code on the error report 0: No 1: Yes	1: Error codes are printed on the error reports.
4	Not used	Do not change this setting.

Bit Switches

5	Power failure report 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: A power failure report will be automatically printed after the power is switched on if a fax message disappeared from the memory when the power was turned off last.
6	Conditions for printing the protocol dump list 0: Print for all communications 1: Print only when there is a communication error	This switch becomes effective only when system switch 00 bit 6 is set to 1. 1: Set this bit to 1 when you wish to print a protocol dump list only for communications with errors.
7	Priority given to various types of remote terminal ID when printing reports 0: RTI > CSI > Dial label > Tel. Number 1: Dial label > Tel. number > RTI > CSI	This bit determines which set of priorities the machine uses when listing remote terminal names on reports. Dial Label: The name stored, by the user, for the Quick/Speed Dial number.

System Switch 0A [SP NO. 1-101-011]		
No	Function	Comments
0-3	Not used	Do not change these settings.
4	Dialing on the ten-key pad when the external telephone is off-hook 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Prevents dialing from the ten-key pad while the external telephone is off-hook. Use this setting when the external telephone is not by the machine, or if a wireless telephone is connected as an external telephone. 1: The user can dial on the machine's ten-key pad when the handset is off-hook.
5	On hook dial 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: On hook dial is disabled.
6-7	Not used	Do not change the factory settings

System Switch 0B - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 0C - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)
System Switch 0D - Not used (Do not change the factory settings.)

System Switch 0E [SP No. 1-101-015]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-1	Not used	Do not change the settings.
2	Not used	This machine does not have the capture function.
3	Action when the external handset goes off-hook 0: Manual tx and rx operation 1: Memory tx and rx operation (the display remains the same)	0: Manual tx and rx are possible while the external handset is off-hook. However, memory tx is not possible. 1: The display stays in standby mode even when the external handset is used, so that other people can use the machine for memory tx operation. Note that manual tx and rx are not possible with this setting.
4-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 0F [SP No. 1-101-016]		
No	Function	Comments
0-7	Country/area code for functional settings (Hex)	This country/area code determines the factory settings of bit switches and RAM addresses. However, it has no effect on the NCU parameter settings and communication parameter RAM addresses. Cross reference NCU country code: SP No. 2-103-001 for G3-1
	00: France	11: USA
	01: Germany	12: Asia
	02: UK	13: Japan
	03: Italy	14: Hong Kong
	04: Austria	15: South Africa

Bit Switches

	05: Belgium	16: Australia	
	06: Denmark	17: New Zealand	
	07: Finland	18: Singapore	
	08: Ireland	19: Malaysia	
	09: Norway	1A: China	
	0A: Sweden	1B: Taiwan	
	0B: Switz.	1C: Korea	
	0C: Portugal	20: Turkey	
	0D: Holland	21: Greece	
	0E: Spain	22: Hungary	
	0F: Israel	23: Czech	
	10: ---	24: Poland	

System Switch 10 [SP No. 1-101-017]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	Threshold memory level for parallel memory transmission	Threshold = $N \times 128 \text{ KB} + 256 \text{ KB}$ N can be between 00 - FF(H) Default setting: 02(H) = 512 KB

System Switch 11 [SP No. 1-101-018]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	TTI printing position 0: Superimposed on the page data 1: Printed before the data leading edge	Change this bit to 1 if the TTI overprints information that the customer considers to be important (G3 transmissions).

1	Not used	Japan Only
2-7	Not used	Do not change the factory settings.

System Switch 12 [SP No. 1-101-019]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	TTI printing position in the main scan direction	TTI: 08 to 92 (BCD) mm Input even numbers only. This setting determines the print start position for the TTI from the left edge of the paper. If the TTI is moved too far to the right, it may overwrite the file number which is on the top right of the page. On an A4 page, if the TTI is moved over by more than 50 mm, it may overwrite the page number.

System Switch 13 - Not used (do not change these settings)
System Switch 14 - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 15 [SP No. 1-101-022]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Not used	Do not change the settings.
1	Going into the Energy Saver mode automatically 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1: The machine will restart from the Energy Saver mode quickly, because the +5V power supply is active even in the Energy Saver mode.
2-3	Not used	Do not change these settings.
4-5	Interval for preventing the machine from entering Energy Saver mode if there is a pending transmission file.	If there is a file waiting for transmission, the machine does not go to Energy Saver mode during the selected period. After transmitting the file, if there is no file waiting

Bit Switches

	Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 1 min Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 30 min Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 1 hour Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 24 hours	for transmission, the machine goes to the Energy Saver mode.
6-7	Not used	Do not change

System Switch 16 [SP No. 1-101-023]		
No	Function	Comments
0	Parallel Broadcasting 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The machine sends messages simultaneously using all available ports during broadcasting.
1-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 17 - Not used (do not change these settings)
System Switch 18 - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 19 [SP No. 1-101-026]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-6	Not used	Do not change the settings.
7	Special Original mode 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: If the customer frequently wishes to transmit a form or letterhead which has a colored or printed background, change this bit to "1". "Original 1" and "Original 2" can be selected in addition to the "Text", "Text/Photo" and "Photo" modes.

System Switch 1A - Not used (do not change these settings)**System Switch 1B [SP No. 1-101-028]**

In this switch setting, there is a limitation. Do not select the same image quality in two modes.

e.g) these setting combination is not allowed:

[Bit1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = **Text**] [Bit3: 0, Bit 2:0 = Text/ Photo] [Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 = **Text**]

No.	FUNCTION				COMMENTS	
0-1	Image Quality in Text mode Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = Text/ Picture Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Text				This setting determines the desirable scanning image quality when the text mode is selected with the operation panel.	
2-3	Image Quality in Photo mode Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = Photo/ Diffusion Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = Photo/ Dithering				This setting determines the desirable scanning image quality when the photo mode is selected with the operation panel.	
4-6	Image Quality in Special Original mode				This setting determines the desirable scanning image quality when the special original mode is selected with the operation panel.	
	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Mode		
	0	0	0	Text		
	0	0	1	Text/ Sharp		
	0	1	0	Text/ Diffusion		
	0	1	1	Photo/ Dithering		
	1	0	0	Dropout color		
	1	0	1	-		
7	Not used				Do not change these settings.	

Bit Switches

System Switch 1C - Not used (do not change these settings)

System Switch 1D [SP No. 1-101-030]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	RTI/CSI/CPS code display 0: Enable 1: Disable	0: RTI, CSI, CPS codes are displayed on the top line of the LCD panel during communication. 1: Codes are switched off (no display)
1	Not used	Do not change this setting.
2	Destination telephone number display limitation 0: OFF, 1: ON	When "1" is selected, the destination telephone number display is limited and redial is disabled.
3	Operation selection without PIN code registered 0: Transmission interrupted 1: No interrupted transmission	0: When "0" is selected without PIN code registration, transmission is interrupted and an alert message shows on the LCD.
4-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

System Switch 1E [SP No. 1-101-031]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Communication after the Journal data storage area has become full 0: Impossible 1: Possible	0: When this switch is on and the journal history becomes full, the next report prints. If the journal history is not deleted, the next transmission cannot be received. This prevents overwriting communication records before the machine can print them. 1: If the buffer memory of the communication records for the Journal is full, fax communications are still possible. But the machine will overwrite the oldest communication records.

		Note: This setting is effective only when Automatic Journal printout is enabled but the machine cannot print the report (e.g., no paper).
1	Action when the SAF memory has become full during scanning 0: The current page is erased. 1: The entire file is erased.	0: If the SAF memory becomes full during scanning, the successfully scanned pages are transmitted. 1: If the SAF memory becomes full during scanning, the file is erased and no pages are transmitted. This bit switch is ignored for parallel memory transmission.
2	RTI/CSI display priority 0: RTI 1: CSI	This bit determines which identifier, RTI or CSI, is displayed on the LCD while the machine is communicating in G3 non-standard mode.
3	File No. printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1: File numbers are not printed on any reports.
4	Action when authorized reception is enabled but authorized RTIs/CSIs are not yet programmed 0: All fax reception is disabled 1: Faxes can be received if the sender has an RTI or CSI	If authorized reception is enabled but the user has stored no acceptable sender RTIs or CSIs, the machine will not be able to receive any fax messages. If the customer wishes to receive messages from any sender that includes an RTI or CSI, and to block messages from senders that do not include an RTI or CSI, change this bit to "1", then enable Authorized Reception. Otherwise, keep this bit at "0 (default setting)".
5-7	Not used	Do not change the settings

System Switch 1F [SP No. 1-101-032]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS

Bit Switches

0	Not used	Do not change the settings.
1	Report printout after an original jam during SAF storage or if the SAF memory fills up 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	0: When an original jams, or the SAF memory overflows during scanning, a report will be printed. Change this bit to "1" if the customer does not want to have a report in these cases. Memory tx – Memory storage report Parallel memory tx – Transmission result report
2	Not used	Do not change the settings.
3	Received fax print start timing (G3 reception) 0: After receiving each page 1: After receiving all pages	0: The machine prints each page immediately after the machine receives it. 1: The machine prints the complete message after the machine receives all the pages in the memory.
4-6	Not used	Do not change the factory settings.
7	Action when a fax SC has occurred 0: Automatic reset 1: Fax unit stops	0: When the fax unit detects a fax SC code other than SC1201 and SC1207, the fax unit automatically resets itself. 1: When the fax unit detects any fax SC code, the fax unit stops. Cross Reference Fax SC codes - See "Troubleshooting"

4.3.2 I-FAX SWITCHES

I-fax Switch 00 [SP No. 1-102-001]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
	Original Width of TX Attachment File	This setting sets the maximum size of the original that the destination can receive. (Bits 3~7 are reserved for future use or not used.)
0	A4	0: Off (not selected), 1: On (selected)

1	B4	If more than one of these three bits is set to "1", the larger size has priority. For example, if both Bit 2 and Bit 1 are set to "1" then the maximum size is "A3" (Bit 2).
2	A3	
3-6	Reserved	
7	Not used	When mail is sent, there is no negotiation with the receiving machine at the destination, so the sending machine cannot make a selection for the receiving capabilities (original width setting) of the receiving machine. The original width selected with this switch is used as the RX machine's original width setting, and the original is reduced to this size before sending. The default is A4. If the width selected with this switch is higher than the receiving machine can accept, the machine detects this and this causes an error.

I-fax Switch 01 [SP No. 1-102-002]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
	Original Line Resolution of TX Attachment File	These settings set the maximum resolution of the original that the destination can receive.
0	200x100 Standard	0: Not selected 1: Selected If more than one of these three bits is set to "1", the higher resolution has priority. For example, if both Bit 0 and Bit 2 are set to "1" then the resolution is set for "Bit 2 200 x 400.
1	200x200 Detail	
2	200x400 Fine	
3	300 x 300 Reserve	
4	400 x 400 Super Fine	
5	600 x 600 Reserve	
6	Reserve	
7	mm/inch	
	This setting selects mm/inch conversion for mail transmission. 0: Off (No conversion), 1: On (Conversion)	

Bit Switches

	When on (set to "1"), the machine converts millimeters to inches for sending mail. There is no switch for converting inches to millimeters. Unlike G3 fax transmissions which can negotiate between sender and receiver to determine the setting, mail cannot negotiate between terminals; the mm/inch selection is determined by the sender fax. When this switch is Off (0): Images scanned in inches are sent in inches. Images scanned in mm are sent in mm. Images received in inches are transmitted in inches. Images received in mm are transmitted in mm. When this switch is On (1): Images scanned in inches are sent in inches. Images scanned in mm are converted to inches. Images received in inches are transmitted in inches. Images received in mm are converted to inches.

I-fax Switch 02 [SP No. 1-102-003]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	RX Text Mail Header Processing	
	This setting determines whether the header information is printed with text e-mails when they are received. 0: Prints only text mail. 1: Prints mail header information attached to text mail. When a text mail is received with this switch On (1), the "From" address and "Subject" address are printed as header information. When a mail with only binary data is received (a TIFF-F file, for example), this setting is ignored and no header is printed.	
1	Output from Attached Document at E-mail TX Error	
	This setting determines whether only the first page or all pages of an e-mail attachment are printed at the sending station when a transmission error occurs. This allows the customer to see which documents have not reached their intended destinations if sent to the wrong e-mail addresses, for example.	

	0: Prints 1st page only. 1: Prints all pages.
2-3	Text String for Return Receipt This setting determines the text string output for the Return Receipt that confirms the transmission was received normally at the destination. 00: "Dispatched" Sends from PC mail a request for a Return Receipt. Receives the Return Receipt with "dispatched" in the 2nd part: Disposition: Automatic-action/MDN-send automatically; dispatched The "dispatched" string is included in the Subject string. 01: "Displayed" Sends from PC mail a request for a Return Receipt. Receives the Return Receipt with "displayed" in the 2nd part: Disposition: Automatic-action/MDN-send automatically; displayed The "displayed" string is included in the Subject string. 10: Reserved 11: Reserved A mail requesting a Return Receipt sent from an IFAX with this switch set to "00" (for "dispatched") received by Microsoft Outlook 2000 may cause an error. If any setting other than "displayed" (01) causes a problem, change the setting to "01" to enable normal sending of the Return Receipt.
4	Media accept feature This setting adds or does not add the media accept feature to the answer mail to confirm a reception. 0: Does not add the media accept feature to the answer mail 1: Adds the media accept feature to the answer mail. Use this bit switch if a problem occurs when the machine receives an answer mail, which contains the media accept feature field.
5-6	Not Used
7	Image Resolution of RX Text Mail This setting determines the image resolution of the received mail.

Bit Switches

	0: 200 x 200 1: 400 x 400 The "1" setting requires installation of the Function Upgrade Card in order to have enough SAF (Store and Forward) memory to receive images at 400 x 400 resolution.

I-fax Switch 03 - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-004]

I-fax Switch 04 [SP No. 1-102-005]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
	Subject for Delivery TX/Memory Transfer	
0	This setting determines whether the RTI/CSI registered on this machine or the RTI/CSI of the originator is used in the subject lines of transferred documents. 0: Puts the RTI/CSI of the originator in the Subject line. If this is used, either the RTI or CSI is used. Only one of these can be received for use in the subject line. 1: Puts the RTI/CSI registered on this machine in the Subject line. When this switch is used to transfer and deliver mail to a PC, the information in the Subject line that indicates where the transmission originated can be used to determine automatically the destination folder for each e-mail.	
1	Subject corresponding to mail post database 0: Standard subject 1: Mail post database subject The standard subject is replaced by the mail post database subject in the following three cases: 1) When the service technician sets the service (software) switch. 2) When memory sending, delivery specified by F code or SMTP reception is done. 3) With relay broadcasting (1st stage without the Schmidt 4 function).  Note ▪ This switch does not apply for condition 3) when the RX system is set up for memory sending, delivery by F-code, sending with SMTP RX and when operators are using FOL (to prevent problems when receiving transmissions).	

2-7	Not Used

I-fax Switch 05 [SP No. 1-102-006]		
No	Function	Comment
0	Mail Addresses of SMTP Broadcast Recipients Determines whether the e-mail addresses of the destinations that receive transmissions broadcasted using SMTP protocol are recorded in the Journal. For example: "1st destination + Total number of destinations: 9" in the Journal indicates a broadcast to 9 destinations. 0: Not recorded 1: Recorded	
1	I-Fax Automatic Re-dial Setting 0: OFF 1: ON	Determines whether the I-fax automatically redials when an error occurs.
2-7	Not used	

I-fax Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-007]
I-fax Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-008]

I-fax Switch 08 [SP No. 1-102-009]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	Memory Threshold for POP Mail Reception This setting determines the amount of SAF (Store and Forward) memory. (SAF stores fax messages to send later for transmission to more than one location, and also holds incoming messages if they cannot be printed.) When the amount of SAF memory available falls below this setting, mail can no longer be received; received mail is then stored on the mail server. 00-FF (0 to 1024 KB: HEX)	

Bit Switches

	 Note The hexadecimal number you enter is multiplied by 4 KB to determine the amount of memory.

I-fax Switch 09 [SP No. 1-102-010]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-3	Not used	Do not change the settings
4-7	Restrict TX Retries	This setting determines the number of retries when connection and transmission fails due to errors. 01-F (1-15 Hex)

I-fax Switch 0A - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-011]		
I-fax Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-012]		
I-fax Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-013]		
I-fax Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-014]		
I-fax Switch 0E - Not used (do not change the settings) [SP No. 1-102-015]		

I-fax Switch 0F [SP No. 1-102-016]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Delivery Method for SMTP RX Files	
	This setting determines whether files received with SMTP protocol are delivered or output immediately. 0: Off. Files received via SMTP are output immediately without delivery. 1: On. Files received via SMTP are delivered immediately to their destinations.	
1-7	Not used	

4.3.3 PRINTER SWITCHES

Printer Switch 00 [SP No. 1-103-001]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Select page separation marks 0: Off 1: On	0: If a 2 page RX transmission is split, [*] is printed in the bottom right corner of the 1st page and only a [2] is printed in the upper right corner of the 2nd page. 1: If a 2 page RX transmission is split into two pages, for example, [*] [2] is printed in the bottom right corner of the 1st page and only a [2] is printed in the upper right corner of the 2nd page.  Note This helps the user to identify pages that have been split because the size of the paper is smaller than the size of the document received. (When A5 is used to print an A4 size document, for example.)
1	Repetition of data when the received page is longer than the printer paper 0: Off 1: On	1: Default. 10 mm of the trailing edge of the previous page are repeated at the top of the next page. 0: The next page continues from where the previous page stopped without any repeated text.
2	Prints the date and time on received fax messages 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	This switch is only effective when user parameter 02 - bit 2 (printing the received date and time on received fax messages) is enabled. 1: The machine prints the received and printed date and time at the bottom of each received page.
3-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 01 [SP No. 1-103-002]

Bit Switches

Printer Switch 01 [SP No. 1-103-002]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-2	Not used	Do not change the settings.
3-4	Maximum print width used in the setup protocol Bit 4: 0, Bit 3: 0 = Not used Bit 4: 0, Bit 3: 1 = A3 Bit 4: 1, Bit 3: 0 = B4 Bit 4: 1, Bit 3: 1 = A4	These bits are only effective when bit 7 of printer switch 01 is "1".
5-6	Not used	Do not change the settings.
7	Received message width restriction in the protocol signal to the sender 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: The machine informs the transmitting machine of the print width depending on the paper size available from the paper feed stations. Refer to the table on the next page for how the machine chooses the paper width used in the setup protocol (NSF/DIS). 1: The machine informs the transmitting machine of the fixed paper width which is specified by bits 3 and 4 above.

Printer Switch 02 [SP No. 1-103-003]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	1st paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	0: The paper feed station can be used to print fax messages and reports. 1: The specified paper feed station will not be used for printing fax messages and reports.
1	2nd paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	 Note Do not disable usage for a paper feed station which has been specified by User Parameter Switch 0F (15), or which is used for the Specified Cassette Selection

2	3rd paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	feature.
3	4th paper feed station usage for fax printing 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	
4-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 03 [SP No. 1-103-004]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Length reduction of received data 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: Incoming pages are printed without length reduction. (Page separation threshold: Printer Switch 03, bits 4 to 7) 1: Incoming page length is reduced when printing. (Maximum reducible length: Printer Switches 04, bits 0 to 4)
1-3	Not used	Do not change the settings
4-7	Page separation setting when sub scan compression is forbidden 00-0F (0-15 mm: Hex) Default: 6 mm	Page separation threshold (with reduction disabled with switch 03-0 above). For example, if this setting is set to "10", and A4 is the selected paper size: If the received document is 10 mm or less longer than A4, then the 10 mm are cut and only 1 page prints. If the received document is 10 mm longer than A4, then the document is split into 2 pages.

Printer Switch 04 [SP No. 1-103-005]

Bit Switches

No	FUNCTION			COMMENTS		
0-4	Maximum reducible length when length reduction is enabled with switch 03-0 above. <Maximum reducible length> = <Paper length> + (N x 5mm) “N” is the decimal value of the binary setting of bits 0 to 4.					
	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Setting
	0	0	0	0	0	0 mm
	0	0	0	0	1	5 mm
	0	0	1	0	0	20 mm
	1	1	1	1	1	155 mm
	For A5 sideways and B5 sideways paper <Maximum reducible length> = <Paper length> + 0.75 x (N x 5mm)					
5-6	Length of the duplicated image on the next page, when page separation has taken place. Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = 4 mm Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = 10 mm Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 1 = 15 mm Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 1 = Not used					
	7			Not used.		
	Do not change the setting.					

Printer Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 06 [SP No. 1-103-007]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Printing while a paper cassette is pulled out, when the Just Size Printing feature is enabled.	Cross reference Just size printing on/off – User switch 05, bit 5

	0: Printing will not start 1: Printing will start if another cassette has a suitable size of paper, based on the paper size selection priority tables.	
1-7	Not used.	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 07 [SP No. 1-103-008]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-3	Not used.	Do not change the settings.
4	List of destinations in the Communication Failure Report for broadcasting 0: All destinations 1: Only destinations where communication failure occurred	1: Only destinations where communication failure occurred are printed on the Communication Failure Report.
5-7	Not used.	Do not change the settings.

Printer Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Printer Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Printer Switch 0A - Not used (do not change the settings)
Printer Switch 0B - Not used (do not change the settings)
Printer Switch 0C - Not used (do not change the settings)
Printer Switch 0D - Not used (do not change the settings)

Printer Switch 0E [SP No. 1-103-015]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS

Bit Switches

0	Paper size selection priority 0: Width 1: Length	0: A paper size that has the same width as the received data is selected first. 1: A paper size which has enough length to print all the received lines without reduction is selected first.
1	Paper size selected for printing A4 width fax data 0: 8.5" x 11" size 1: A4 size	This switch determines which paper size is selected for printing A4 width fax data, when the machine has both A4 and 8.5" x 11" size paper.
2	Page separation 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	1: If all paper sizes in the machine require page separation to print a received fax message, the machine does not print the message (Substitute Reception is used). After a larger size of paper is set in a cassette, the machine automatically prints the fax message.
3-4	Printing the sample image on reports Bit 4: 0, Bit 3: 0 = The upper half only Bit 4: 0, Bit 3: 1 = 50% reduction in sub-scan only Bit 4: 1, Bit 3: 0 = Same size Bit 4: 1, Bit 3: 1 = Not used	"Same size" means the sample image is printed at 100%, even if page separation occurs. User Parameter Switch 19 (13H) bit 4 must be set to "0" to enable this switch. Refer to Detailed Section Descriptions for more on this feature.
5-6	Not used	Do not change the settings.
7	Equalizing the reduction ratio among separated pages (Page Separation) 0: Enabled 1: Disabled	0: When page separation has taken place, all the pages are reduced with the same reduction ratio. 1: Only the last page is reduced to fit the selected paper size when page separation has taken place. Other pages are printed without reduction.

Printer Switch 0F [SP No. 1-103-016]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-1	Smoothing feature Bit 1: 0 Bit 0: 0 = Disabled Bit 1: 0 Bit 0: 1 = Disabled Bit 1: 1 Bit 0: 0 = Enabled Bit 1: 1 Bit 0: 1 = Not used	(0, 0) (0, 1): Disable smoothing if the machine receives halftone images from other manufacturers fax machines frequently.
2-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

4.3.4 COMMUNICATION SWITCHES

Communication Switch 00 [SP No. 1-104-001]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-1	Compression modes available in receive mode Bit 1: 0 Bit 0: 0 = MH only Bit 1: 0 Bit 0: 1 = MH/MR Bit 1: 1 Bit 0: 0 = MH/MR/MMR Bit 1: 1 Bit 0: 1 = MH/MR/MMR/JBIG	These bits determine the compression capabilities to be declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol.
2-3	Compression modes available in transmit mode Bit 3: 0 Bit 2: 0 = MH only Bit 3: 0 Bit 2: 1 = MH/MR Bit 3: 1 Bit 2: 0 = MH/MR/MMR Bit 3: 1 Bit 2: 1 = MH/MR/MMR/JBIG	These bits determine the compression capabilities to be used in the transmission and to be declared in phase B (handshaking) of the T.30 protocol.
4	Not used	Do not change the settings.
5	JBIG compression method: Reception	Change the setting when communication problems occur using JBIG compression.

Bit Switches

	0: Only basic supported 1: Basic and optional both supported	
6	JBIG compression method: Transmission 0: Basic mode priority 1: Optional mode priority	Change the setting when communication problems occur using JBIG compression.
7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 01 [SP No. 1-104-002]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	ECM 0: Off 1: On	If this bit is set to 0, ECM is switched off for all communications. In addition, V.8 protocol and JBIG compression are switched off automatically.
1-5	Not used	Do not change the setting.
6-7	Maximum printable page length available Bit 7: 0 Bit 6: 0 = No limit Bit 7: 0 Bit 6: 1 = B4 (364 mm) Bit 7: 1 Bit 6: 0 = A4 (297 mm) Bit 7: 1 Bit 6: 1 = Not used	The setting determined by these bits is informed to the transmitting terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in the DIS/NSF frames).

Communication Switch 02 [SP No. 1-104-003]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	G3 Burst error threshold 0: Low 1: High	If there are more consecutive error lines in the received page than the threshold, the machine will send a negative response. The Low and High threshold values depend on the sub-scan resolution, and are as follows.

		100 dpi	6(L) → 12(H)
		200 dpi	12(L) → 24(H)
		300 dpi	18(L) → 36(H)
		400 dpi	24(L) → 48(H)
1	Acceptable total error line ratio 0: 5% 1: 10%	If the error line ratio for a page exceeds the acceptable ratio, RTN will be sent to the other end.	
2	Treatment of pages received with errors during G3 reception 0: Deleted from memory without printing 1: Printed	0: Pages received with errors are not printed.	
3	Hang-up decision when a negative code (RTN or PIN) is received during G3 immediate transmission 0: No hang-up, 1: Hang-up	0: The next page will be sent even if RTN or PIN is received. 1: The machine will send DCN and hang up if it receives RTN or PIN. This bit is ignored for memory transmissions or if ECM is being used.	
4-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.	

Communication Switch 03 [SP No. 1-104-004]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	Maximum number of page retransmissions in a G3 memory transmission	00 - FF (Hex) times. This setting is not used if ECM is switched on. Default setting - 03(H)

Communication Switch 04 - Not used (do not change the settings)**Communication Switch 05 - Not used** (do not change the settings)

Bit Switches

Communication Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Communication Switch 09 [SP No. 1-104-010]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	I-Fax dial interval setting	Adjusts the interval of the I-fax dialing. The interval of I-fax dialing is calculated by following formula. [Interval time = specified value with this switch x 2 sec]

Communication Switch 0A [SP No. 1-104-011]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Point of resumption of memory transmission upon redialing 0: From the error page 1: From page 1	0: The transmission begins from the page where transmission failed the previous time. 1: Transmission begins from the first page, using normal memory transmission.
1-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 0B – Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 0C – Not used (do not change the settings)

Communication Switch 0D [SP No. 1-104-014]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	The available memory threshold, below which ringing detection (and therefore	00 to FF (Hex), unit = 4 kbytes (e.g., 06(H) = 24 kbytes) One page is about 24 kbytes.

	reception into memory) is disabled	The machine refers to this setting before each fax reception. If the amount of remaining memory is below this threshold, the machine cannot receive any fax messages. If this setting is kept at 0, the machine will detect ringing signals and go into receive mode even if there is no memory available. This will result in communication failure.

Communication Switch 0E [SP No. 1-104-015]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	Minimum interval between automatic dialing attempts	06 to FF (Hex), unit = 2 s (e.g., 06(H) = 12 s) This value is the minimum time that the machine waits before it dials the next destination.

Communication Switch 0F – Not used (do not change the settings.)**Communication Switch 10 [SP No. 1-104-017]**

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	Memory transmission: Maximum number of dialing attempts to the same destination	01 – FE (Hex) times

Communication Switch 11 – Not used (do not change the settings.)**Communication Switch 12 [SP No. 1-104-019]**

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS

Bit Switches

0-7	Memory transmission: Interval between dialing attempts to the same destination	01 – FF (Hex) minutes

Communication Switch 13 – Not used (do not change the settings.)

Communication Switch 14 [SP No. 1-104-021]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Inch-to-mm conversion during transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: In immediate transmission, data scanned in inch format are transmitted without conversion. In memory transmission, data stored in the SAF memory in mm format are transmitted without conversion. Note: When storing the scanned data into SAF memory, the fax unit always converts the data into mm format. 1: The machine converts the scanned data or stored data in the SAF memory to the format which was specified in the set-up protocol (DIS/NSF) before transmission.
1-5	Not used	Do not change the factory settings.
6-7	Available unit of resolution in which fax messages are received Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0 = mm Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1 = inch Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0 = mm and inch (default) Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1 = Not used	For the best performance, do not change the factory settings. The setting determined by these bits is informed to the transmitting terminal in the pre-message protocol exchange (in the DIS/NSF frames).

Communication Switch 15 – Not used (do not change the settings)

Communication Switch 16 – Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 17 – Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 18 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 19 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1A - Not used (do not change the settings)

Communication Switch 1B [SP No. 1-104-028]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-7	Extension access code (0 to 7) to turn V.8 protocol On/Off 0: On 1: Off	If the PABX does not support V.8/V.34 protocol procedure, set this bit to “1” to disable V.8. Example: If “0” is the PSTN access code, set bit 0 to 1. When the machine detects “0” as the first dialed number, it automatically disables V.8 protocol. (Alternatively, if “3” is the PSTN access code, set bit 3 to 1.)

Communication Switch 1C [SP No. 1-104-029]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-1	Extension access code (8 and 9) to turn V.8 protocol On/Off 0: On 1: Off	Refer to communication switch 1B. Example: If “8” is the PSTN access code, set bit 0 to 1. When the machine detects “8” as the first dialed number, it automatically disables V.8 protocol. (If “9” is the PSTN access code, use bit 1.)
2-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

Communication Switch 1D - Not used (do not change the settings)
Communication Switch 1E - Not used (do not change the settings)

Bit Switches

Communication Switch 1F - Not used (do not change the settings)

4.3.5 G3-1 SWITCHES

G3 Switch 00 [SP No. 1-105-001]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-1	Monitor speaker during communication (tx and rx) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = Disabled Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Up to Phase B Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = All the time Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = Reserved	(0, 0): The monitor speaker is disabled all through the communication. (0, 1): The monitor speaker is on up to phase B in the T.30 protocol. (1, 0): Used for testing. The monitor speaker is on all through the communication. Make sure that you reset these bits after testing.
2	Monitor speaker during memory transmission 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1: The monitor speaker is enabled during memory transmission.
3-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 01 [SP No. 1-105-002]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-1	Not used	Do not change the settings.
2-3	Not used	Do not change the settings.
4	DIS frame length 0: 10 bytes 1: 4 bytes	1: The bytes in the DIS frame after the 4th byte will not be transmitted (set to 1 if there are communication problems with PC-based faxes which cannot receive the extended DIS frames).
5	Not used	Do not change the setting.
6	Forbid CED/AMsam output	Do not change this setting (Default: 0: Off), unless

	0: Off 1: On (Forbid output)	communication problem is caused by a CED or ANSam transmission.
7	Not used	Do not change the setting.

G3 Switch 02 [SP No. 1-105-003]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	G3 protocol mode used 0: Standard and non-standard 1: Standard only	Change this bit to 1 only when the other end can only communicate with machines that send T.30-standard frames only. 1: Disables NSF/NSS signals (these are used in non-standard mode communication)
1-6	Not used	Do not change the settings.
7	Short preamble 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Refer to Appendix B in the Group 3 Facsimile Manual for details about Short Preamble.

G3 Switch 03 [SP No. 1-105-004]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	DIS detection number (Echo countermeasure) 0: 1 1: 2	0: The machine will hang up if it receives the same DIS frame twice. 1: Before sending DCS, the machine will wait for the second DIS which is caused by echo on the line.
1	Not Used	Do not change the settings.
2	V.8 protocol 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0: V.8/V.34 communications will not be possible. Note: Do not set to 0 unless the line condition is always bad enough to slow down the data rate to 14.4 kbps or lower.
3	ECM frame size	Keep this bit at "0" in most cases.

Bit Switches

	0: 256 bytes 1: 64 bytes	
4	CTC transmission conditions 0: After one PPR signal received 1: After four PPR signals received (ITU-T standard)	0: When using ECM in non-standard (NSF/NSS) mode, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving a PPR, if the following condition is met in communications at 14.4, 12.0, 9.6, and 7.2 kbps. $\sqrt{N_{\text{Transmit}} \leq N_{\text{Resend}}}$ NTransmit- Number of transmitted frames NResend- Number of frames to be retransmitted 1: When using ECM, the machine sends a CTC to drop back the modem rate after receiving four PPRs. PPR, CTC: These are ECM protocol signals. This bit is not effective in V.34 communications.
5	Modem rate used for the next page after receiving a negative code (RTN or PIN) 0: No change 1: Fallback	1: The machine's tx modem rate will fall back before sending the next page if a negative code is received. This bit is ignored if ECM is being used.
6	Not Used	Do not change the settings
7	Select detection of reverse polarity in ringing 0: Off 1: On	This switch is used to prevent reverse polarity in ringing on the phone line (applied to PSTN-G3 ringing). Do not change this setting 0: No detection → Outside Japan 1: Detection → Inside Japan only

G3 Switch 04 [SP No. 1-105-005]		
No	Function	Comments
0-3	Training error detection threshold	0 - F (Hex); 0 - 15 bits If the number of error bits in the received TCF is below this threshold, the machine informs the

		sender that training has succeeded.
4-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 05 [SP No. 1-105-006]						
No	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Initial Tx modem rate					These bits set the initial starting modem rate for transmission. Use the dedicated transmission parameters if you need to change this for specific receivers. If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. Cross reference V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	bps	
	0	0	0	1	2.4k	
	0	0	1	0	4.8k	
	0	0	1	1	7.2k	
	0	1	0	0	9.6k	
	0	1	0	1	12.0k	
	0	1	1	0	14.4k	
	0	1	1	1	16.8k	
	1	0	0	0	19.2k	
	1	0	0	1	21.6k	
	1	0	1	0	24.0k	
	1	0	1	1	26.4k	
	1	1	0	0	28.8k	
	1	1	0	1	31.2k	
	1	1	1	0	33.6k	
	Other settings - Not used					
4-5	Initial modem type for 9.6 k or 7.2 kbps.					These bits set the initial modem type for 9.6 and 7.2 kbps, if the initial modem rate is set at these

Bit Switches

	Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 = V.29 Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 = V.17 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 = V.34 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 = Reserved	speeds.
6-7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 06 [SP No. 1-105-007]						
No	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Initial Rx modem rate					- These bits set the initial starting modem rate for reception. - Use a lower setting if high speeds pose problems during reception. - If a modem rate 14.4 kbps or slower is selected, V.8 protocol should be disabled manually. Cross reference: V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	bps	
	0	0	0	1	2.4k	
	0	0	1	0	4.8k	
	0	0	1	1	7.2k	
	0	1	0	0	9.6k	
	0	1	0	1	12.0k	
	0	1	1	0	14.4k	
	0	1	1	1	16.8k	
	1	0	0	0	19.2k	
	1	0	0	1	21.6k	
	1	0	1	0	24.0k	
	1	0	1	1	26.4k	
	1	1	0	0	28.8k	
	1	1	0	1	31.2k	
	1	1	1	0	33.6k	
	Other settings - Not used					

4-7	Modem types available for reception					- The setting of these bits is used to inform the transmitting terminal of the available modem type for the machine in receive mode. - If V.34 is not selected, V.8 protocol must be disabled manually. Cross reference: V.8 protocol on/off - G3 switch 03, bit2
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Setting	
	0	0	0	1	V.27ter	
	0	0	1	0	V.27ter, V.29	
	0	0	1	1	V.27ter, V.29, V.33	
	0	1	0	0	V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V.33	
	0	1	0	1	V.27ter, V.29, V.17/V.33, V.34	
Other settings - Not used						

G3 Switch 07 [SP No. 1-105-008]		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-1	PSTN cable equalizer (tx mode: Internal) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = None Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Low Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = Medium Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Use the dedicated transmission parameters for specific receivers. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.  Note This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.

Bit Switches

2-3	PSTN cable equalizer (rx mode: Internal) Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = None Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = Low Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = Medium Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = High	Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following symptoms occurs. Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.  Note This setting is not effective in V.34 communications.
4	PSTN cable equalizer (V.8/V.17 rx mode: External) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	Keep this bit at "1".
5	Not used	Do not change the settings.
6	Parameter selection for dial tone detection 0: Normal parameter 1: Specific parameter	0: This uses the fixed table in the ROM for dial tone detection. 1: This uses the specific parameter adjusted with SRAM (69ECBEH - 69ECDEH). Select this if the dial tone cannot be detected when the "Normal parameter: 0" is selected.
7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3 Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

G3 Switch 0A [SP No. 1-105-011]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-1	Maximum allowable carrier drop during image data	These bits set the acceptable modem carrier drop time.

	reception Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 200 Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = 400 Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = 800 Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = Reserved	Try using a longer setting if error code 0-22 is frequent.
2	Select cancellation of high-speed RX if carrier signal lost while receiving 0: Off 1: On	This switch setting determines if high-speed receiving ends if the carrier signal is lost when receiving during non-ECM mode
3	Not used	Do not change the settings
4	Maximum allowable frame interval during image data reception. 0: 5 s 1: 13 s	This bit set the maximum interval between EOL (end-of-line) signals and the maximum interval between ECM frames from the other end. Try using a longer setting if error code 0-21 is frequent.
5	Not used	Do not change the settings.
6	Reconstruction time for the first line in receive mode 0: 6 s 1: 12 s	When the sending terminal is controlled by a computer, there may be a delay in receiving page data after the local machine accepts set-up data and sends CFR. This is outside the T.30 recommendation. But, if this delay occurs, set this bit to 1 to give the sending machine more time to send data. Refer to error code 0-20. ITU-T T.30 recommendation: The first line should come within 5 s of CFR.
7	Not used	Do not change the settings.

G3 Switch 0B Not used (do not change the settings).

G3 Switch 0C Not used (do not change the settings).

Bit Switches

G3 Switch 0D Not used (do not change the settings).

G3 Switch 0E [SP No 1-105-015]

0-7	Set CNG send time interval Some machines on the receiving side may not be able to automatically switch the 3-second CNG interval.	
	High order bit	3000-2250ms: 3000-50xNms $3000 - 50 \times Nms \text{ OF } (3000 \text{ ms}) \leq N \leq FF \text{ (2250 ms)}$
	Low order bit	00-0E(3000-3700ms: 3000+50xNms $3000 - 50 \times Nms \text{ OF } (3000 \text{ ms}) \leq N \leq 0F \text{ (3700 ms)}$

G3 Switch 0F [SP No. 1-105-016]

No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Alarm when an error occurred in Phase C or later 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If the customer wants to hear an alarm after each error communication, change this bit to "1".
1	Alarm when the handset is off-hook at the end of communication 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	If the customer wants to hear an alarm if the handset is off-hook at the end of fax communication, change this bit to "1".
2-3	Not used	Do not change the settings.
4	Sidaa manual calibration setting 0: Off 1: On	1: manually calibrates for communication with a line, whose current change occurs such as an optical fiber line.
5-6	Not used	Do not change the settings.

4.3.6 IP FAX SWITCHES

IP Fax Switch 00 [SP No. 1-111-001]		
No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Not used	Do not change this setting.
1	IP Fax Transport 0: TCP, 1: UDP	Selects TCP or UDP protocol for IP-Fax
2	IP Fax single port selection 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Selects single data port.
3	IP Fax double ports (single data port) selection 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Selects whether IP-Fax uses a double port.
4	IP Fax Gatekeeper 0: OFF, 1: ON (enable)	Enables/disables the communication via the gatekeeper for IP-Fax.
5	IP Fax T30 bit signal reverse 0: LSB first, 1: MSB first	Reverses the T30 bit signal.
6	IP Fax max bit rate setting 0: Not affected, 1: Affected	When "0" is selected, the max bit rate does not affect the value of the DIS/DCS. When "1" is selected, the max bit rate affects the value of the DIS/DCS.
7	IP Fax received telephone number confirmation 0: No confirmation, 1: Confirmation	When "0" is selected, fax data is received without checking the telephone number. When "1" is selected, fax data is received only when confirming that the telephone number from the sender matches the registered telephone number in this machine. If this confirmation fails, the line is disconnected.

IP-Fax Switch 01 [SP No. 1-111-002]

Bit Switches

No.	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Select IP FAX Delay Level					Raise the level by selecting a higher setting if too many transmission errors are occurring on the network. If TCP/UDP is enabled on the network, raise this setting on the T.30 machine. Increasing the delay time allows the recovery of more lost packets. If only UDP is enabled, increase the number of redundant packets. Level 1 to 2: 3 Redundant packets Level 3: 4 Redundant packets
	Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0	Setting	
	0	0	0	0	Level 0	
	0	0	0	1	Level 1	
	0	0	1	0	Level 2	
	0	0	1	1	Level 3	
4-7	IP Fax preamble wait time setting					Selects the preamble wait time. [00 to 0f] There are 16 values in this 4-bit binary switch combination. Waiting time: set value level x 100 ms Max: 0f (1500 ms) Min: 00 (No wait time) The default is "0000" (00H).

IP Fax Switch 02 [SP No. 1-111-003]

No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	IP Fax bit signal reverse setting 0: Maker code setting 1: Internal bit switch setting	When "0" is selected, the bit signal reverse method is decided by the maker code. When "1" is selected, the bit signal reverse method is decided by the internal bit switch. (When communicating between IP Fax devices, LSB first is selected.)
1	IP Fax transmission speed setting 0: Modem speed 1: No limitation	Selects the transmit speed for IP Fax communication.
2	SIP transport setting	This bit switch sets the transport that has

	0: TCP 1: UDP	priority for receiving IP Fax data. This function is activated only when the sender has both TCP and UDP.
3	CCM connection 0: No CCM connection 1: CCM connection	When "1" is selected, only the connection call message with H.323 or no tunneled H.245 is transmitted via CCM.
4	Message reception selection from non-registered SIP server 0: Answer 1: Not answer	0: This answers the INVITE message from the SIP server not registered for the machine. 1: This does not receive the INVITE message from the SIP server not registered for the machine and send a refusal message.
5	ECM communication setting 0: No limit for image compression 1: Limit for image compression	0: This does not limit the type of the image compression with ECM communication. 1: When the other end machine is Cisco, this permits the image compression other than JBIG or MMR with ECM communication.
6-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

IP Fax Switch 03 [SP No. 1-111-004]

No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Effective field limitation for G3 standard function information 0: OFF, 1: 4byte (DIS)	Limits the effective field for standard G3 function information.
1	Switching between G3 standard and G3 non standard 0: Enable switching 1: G3 standard only	Enables/disables switching between G3 standard and G3 non-standard.
2	Not used.	Do not change this setting.

Bit Switches

3	ECM frame size selection at transmitting 0: 256byte, 1: 64byte	Selects the ECM frame size for sending.
4	DIS detection times for echo prevention 0: 1 time, 1: 2 times	Sets the number of times for DIS to detect echoes.
5	CTC transmission selection 0: PPRx1 1: PPRx4	When "0" is selected, the transmission condition is decided by error frame numbers. When "1" is selected, the transmission condition is based on the ITU-T method.
6	Shift down setting at receiving negative code 0: OFF, 1: ON	Selects whether to shift down when negative codes are received.
7	Not used	Do not change this setting.

IP Fax Switch 04 [SP No. 1-111-005]

No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	TCF error threshold	Sets the TCF error threshold level. [00 to 0f] The default is "1111" (0fH).
1		
2		
3		
4-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

IP Fax Switch 05 [SP No. 1-111-006]

No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-3	Modem bit rate setting for transmission Sets the modem bit rate for transmission. The default is "0110" (14.4K bps).	

	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	
	0	0	0	1	2400 bps
	0	0	1	1	4800 bps
	0	0	1	1	7200 bps
	0	1	0	0	9600 bps
	0	1	0	1	12.0 Kbps
	0	1	1	0	14.4 Kbps
	0	1	1	1	16.8 Kbps
	1	0	0	0	19.2 Kbps
	1	0	0	1	21.6 Kbps
	1	0	1	0	24.0 Kbps
	1	0	1	1	26.4 Kbps
	1	1	0	0	28.8 Kbps
	1	1	0	1	31.2 Kbps
	1	1	1	0	33.6 Kbps
4-5	Modem setting for transmission Sets the modem for transmission. The default is "00" (V29). Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 = V29 Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 = V17 Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 = V34* Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 = Not used *V34 is not supported for IP-Fax communication.				
6-7	Not used		Do not change these settings.		

IP Fax Switch 06 [SP No. 1-111-007]

Bit Switches

No.	FUNCTION				COMMENTS
0-3	Modem bit rate setting for reception Sets the modem bit rate for reception. The default is "0110" (14.4K bps).				
	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
	0	0	0	1	2400 bps
	0	0	1	0	4800 bps
	0	0	1	1	7200 bps
	0	1	0	0	9600 bps
	0	1	0	1	12.0 Kbps
	0	1	1	0	14.4 Kbps
	0	1	1	1	16.8 Kbps
	1	0	0	0	19.2 Kbps
	1	0	0	1	21.6 Kbps
	1	0	1	0	24.0 Kbps
	1	0	1	1	26.4 Kbps
	1	1	0	0	28.8 Kbps
	1	1	0	1	31.2 Kbps
	1	1	1	0	33.6 Kbps
4-7	Modem setting for reception Sets the modem type for reception. The default is "0100" (V27ter, V29, V17).				
	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	
	0	0	0	1	V27ter
	0	0	1	0	V27ter, V29

	0	0	1	1	V27ter, V29, V33 (invalid)
	0	1	0	0	V27ter, V29, V17
	0	1	0	1	V27ter, V29, V17, V34*
*V34 is not supported for IP-Fax communication.					

IP Fax Switch 07 [SP No. 1-111-008]		
No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	TSI information 0: Not added, 1: Added	Adds or does not add TSI information to NSS(S).
1	DCN transmission setting at T1 timeout 0: Not transmitted, 1: Transmitted	Transmits or does not transmit DCN at T1 timeout.
2	Not used	Do not change this setting.
3	Hang up setting at DIS reception disabled 0: No hang up 1: Hang up after transmitting DCN	Sets whether the machine disconnects after DIS reception.
4	Number of times for training 0: 1 time, 1: 2 times	Selects the number of times training is done at the same bit rate.
5	Space CSI transmission setting at no CSI registration 0: Not transmitted, 1: Transmitted	When "0" is selected, frame data is enabled. When "1" is selected, the transmitted data is all spaces.
6-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

Bit Switches

IP Fax Switch 08 [SP No. 1-111-009]		
No.	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-1	T1 timer adjustment Adjusts the T1 timer. The default is "00" (35 seconds). Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 35 sec Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = 40 sec Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = 50 sec Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = 60 sec	-
2-3	T4 timer adjustment Adjust the T4 timer. The default is "00" (3 seconds). Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = 3 sec Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = 3.5 sec Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = 4 sec Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = 5 sec	-
4-5	T0 timer adjustment Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 0 = 75 sec Bit 5: 0, Bit 4: 1 = 120 sec Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 0 = 180 sec Bit 5: 1, Bit 4: 1 = 240 sec	Adjusts the fail safe timer. This timer sets the interval between "setup" data transmission and T.38 phase decision. If your destination return is late on the network or G3 fax return is late, adjust the longer interval timer. The default is "00" (75 seconds).
6-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

4.4 NCU PARAMETERS

The following tables give the RAM addresses and the parameter calculation units that the machine uses for ringing signal detection and automatic dialing. The factory settings for each country are also given. Most of these must be changed by RAM read/write (SP2-102), but some can be changed using NCU Parameter programming (SP2-103); if SP2-103 can be used, this will be indicated in the Remarks column. The RAM is programmed in hex code unless (BCD) is included in the Unit column.

Address	Function					
680500	Country/Area code for NCU parameters					
	Use the Hex value to program the country/area code directly into this address, or use the decimal value to program it using SP2-103-001					
	Country /Area	Decimal	Hex	Country /Area	Decimal	Hex
	France	00	00	USA	17	11
	Germany	01	01	Asia	18	12
	UK	02	02	Hong Kong	20	14
	Italy	03	03	South Africa	21	15
	Austria	04	04	Australia	22	16
	Belgium	05	05	New Zealand	26	17
	Denmark	06	06	Singapore	24	18
	Finland	07	07	Malaysia	25	19
	Ireland	08	08	China	26	1A
	Norway	09	09	Taiwan	27	1B
	Sweden	10	0A	Korea	28	1C

NCU Parameters

Address	Function					
	Switzerland	11	0B	Turkey	32	20
	Portugal	12	0C	Greece	33	21
	Holland	13	0D	Hungary	34	22
	Spain	14	0E	Czech	35	23
	Israel	15	0F	Poland	36	24

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680501	Line current detection time	20 ms	Line current detection is disabled. Line current is not detected if 680501 contains FF.
680502	Line current wait time		
680503	Line current drop detect time		
680504	PSTN dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680505	PSTN dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680506	PSTN dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680507	PSTN dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
680508	PSTN dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 680508 contains FF(H), the machine pauses for the pause time (address 68050D / 68050E). Italy: See Note 2.
680509	PSTN dial tone reset time (LOW)		
68050A	PSTN dial tone reset time (HIGH)		
68050B	PSTN dial tone continuous tone time		
68050C	PSTN dial tone permissible drop		

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
	time		
68050D	PSTN wait interval (LOW)		
68050E	PSTN wait interval (HIGH)		-
68050F	PSTN ring-back tone detection time	20 ms	Detection is disabled if this contains FF.
680510	PSTN ring-back tone off detection time	20 ms	-
680511	PSTN detection time for silent period after ring-back tone detected (LOW)	20 ms	-
680512	PSTN detection time for silent period after ring-back tone detected (HIGH)	20 ms	-
680513	PSTN busy tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680514	PSTN busy tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680515	PSTN busy tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680516	PSTN busy tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		
680517	PABX dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680518	PABX dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680519	PABX dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
68051A	PABX dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		detection is disabled.
68051B	PABX dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 68051B contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (680520 / 680521).
68051C	PABX dial tone reset time (LOW)		
68051D	PABX dial tone reset time (HIGH)		
68051E	PABX dial tone continuous tone time		
68051F	PABX dial tone permissible drop time		
680520	PABX wait interval (LOW)		
680521	PABX wait interval (HIGH)		-
680522	PABX ringback tone detection time	20 ms	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680523	PABX ringback tone off detection time	20 ms	
680524	PABX detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (LOW)	20 ms	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680525	PABX detection time for silent period after ringback tone detected (HIGH)	20 ms	
680526	PABX busy tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680527	PABX busy tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680528	PABX busy tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680529	PABX busy tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		detection is disabled.
68052A	Busy tone ON time: range 1	20 ms	-
68052B	Busy tone OFF time: range 1		
68052C	Busy tone ON time: range 2		
68052D	Busy tone OFF time: range 2		
68052E	Busy tone ON time: range 3		
68052F	Busy tone OFF time: range 3	20 ms	
680530	Busy tone ON time: range 4		
680531	Busy tone OFF time: range 4		
680532	Busy tone continuous tone detection time		
680533	Busy tone signal state time tolerance for all ranges, and number of cycles required for detection (a setting of 4 cycles means that ON-OFF-ON or OFF-ON-OFF must be detected twice). Tolerance (±) Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 75% Bits 2 and 3 must always be kept at 0. Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 50% Bits 2 and 3 must always be kept at 0. Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 25% Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 12.5% Bits 7, 6, 5, 4 - number of cycles required for cadence detection		
680534	International dial tone frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680535	International dial tone frequency upper limit (low byte)		
680536	International dial tone frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680537	International dial tone frequency lower limit (low byte)		detection is disabled.
680538	International dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 680538 contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (68053D / 68053E). Belgium: See Note 2.
680539	International dial tone reset time (LOW)		
68053A	International dial tone reset time (HIGH)		
68053B	International dial tone continuous tone time		
68053C	International dial tone permissible drop time		
68053D	International dial wait interval (LOW)		-
68053E	International dial wait interval (HIGH)		
68053F	Country dial tone upper frequency limit (HIGH)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680540	Country dial tone upper frequency limit (LOW)		
680541	Country dial tone lower frequency limit (HIGH)		If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
680542	Country dial tone lower frequency limit (LOW)		
680543	Country dial tone detection time	20 ms	If 680543 contains FF, the machine pauses for the pause time (680548 /
680544	Country dial tone reset time (LOW)		

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680545	Country dial tone reset time (HIGH)		680549).
680546	Country dial tone continuous tone time	-	-
680547	Country dial tone permissible drop time	20 ms	-
680548	Country dial wait interval (LOW)		
680549	Country dial wait interval (HIGH)		
68054A	Time between opening or closing the DO relay and opening the OHDI relay	1 ms	See Notes 3, 6 and 8. SP2-103-012 (parameter 11).
68054B	Break time for pulse dialing	1 ms	See Note 3. SP2-103-013 (parameter 12).
68054C	Make time for pulse dialing	1 ms	See Note 3. SP2-103-014 (parameter 13).
68054D	Time between final OHDI relay closure and DO relay opening or closing	1 ms	See Notes 3, 6 and 8. SP2-103-015 (parameter 14). This parameter is only valid in Europe.
68054E	Minimum pause between dialed digits (pulse dial mode)	20 ms	See Note 3 and 8. SP2-103-016 (parameter 15).
68054F	Time waited when a pause is entered at the operation panel		SP2-103-017 (parameter 16). See Note 3.

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680550	DTMF tone on time	1 ms	SP2-103-018 (parameter 17).
680551	DTMF tone off time		SP2-103-019 (parameter 18).
680552	Tone attenuation level of DTMF signals while dialing	-N x 0.5 -3.5 dBm	SP2-103-020 (parameter 19). See Note 5.
680553	Tone attenuation value difference between high frequency tone and low frequency tone in DTMF signals	-dBm x 0.5	SP2-103-021 (parameter 20). The setting must be less than -5dBm, and should not exceed the setting at 680552h above. See Note 5.
680554	PSTN: DTMF tone attenuation level after dialling	-N x 0.5 -3.5 dBm	SP2-103-022 (parameter 21). See Note 5.
680555	ISDN: DTMF tone attenuation level after dialling	-dBm x 0.5	See Note 5
680556	Not used	-	Do not change the settings.
680557	Time between 68054Dh (NCU parameter 14) and 68054Eh (NCU parameter 15)	1 ms	This parameter takes effect when the country code is set to France.
680558	Not used	-	Do not change the setting.
680559	Grounding time (ground start mode)	20 ms	The Gs relay is closed for this interval.
68055A	Break time (flash start mode)	1 ms	The OHDI relay is open

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
			for this interval.
68055B	International dial access code (High)	BCD	For a code of 100: 68055B - F1 68055C - 00
68055C	International dial access code (Low)		
68055D	PSTN access pause time	20 ms	This time is waited for each pause input after the PSTN access code. If this address contains FF[H], the pause time stored in address 68054F is used. Do not set a number more than 7 in the UK.
68055E	Progress tone detection level, and cadence detection enable flags	Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = -25.0 dBm Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 1 = -35.0 dBm Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = -30.0 dBm Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = -40.0 dBm Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = -49.0 dBm Bits 2, 0 - See Note 2.	
68055F To 680564	Not used	-	Do not change the settings.
680565	Long distance call prefix (HIGH)	BCD	For a code of 0: 680565 – FF 680566 - FF
680566	Long distance call prefix (LOW)	BCD	
680567 to 680571	Not used	-	Do not change the settings.
680572	Acceptable ringing signal	1000/ N	SP2-103-003

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
	frequency: range 1, upper limit	(Hz).	(parameter 02).
680573	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 1, lower limit		SP2-103-004 (parameter 03).
680574	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 2, upper limit		SP2-103-005 (parameter 04).
680575	Acceptable ringing signal frequency: range 2, lower limit		SP2-103-006 (parameter 05).
680576	Number of rings until a call is detected	1	SP2-103-007 (parameter 06). The setting must not be zero.
680577	Minimum required length of the first ring	20 ms	See Note 4. SP2-103-008 (parameter 07).
680578	Minimum required length of the second and subsequent rings	20 ms	SP2-103-009 (parameter 08).
680579	Ringing signal detection reset time (LOW)	20 ms	SP2-103-010 (parameter 09).
68057A	Ringing signal detection reset time (HIGH)		SP2-103-011 (parameter 10).
68057B to 680580	Not used	-	Do not change the settings.
680581	Interval between dialing the last digit and switching the Oh relay over to the external telephone when dialing from the operation panel in handset mode.	20 ms	Factory setting: 500 ms

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
680582	Bits 0 and 1 - Handset off-hook detection time Bit 1:0, Bit 0: 0 = 200 ms Bit 1:0, Bit 0: 1 = 800 ms Other Not used Bits 2 and 3 - Handset on-hook detection time Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = 200 ms Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = 800 ms Other Not used Bits 4 to 7 - Not used	-	-
680583 To 6805A0	Not used	-	Do not change the settings.
6805A1	Acceptable CED detection frequency upper limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A2	Acceptable CED detection frequency upper limit (low byte)		
6805A3	Acceptable CED detection frequency lower limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A4	Acceptable CED detection frequency lower limit (low byte)		
6805A5	CED detection time	20 ms $\pm$ 20 ms	Factory setting: 200 ms
6805A6	Acceptable CNG detection frequency upper limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A7	Acceptable CNG detection frequency upper limit (low byte)		
6805A8	Acceptable CNG detection frequency lower limit (high byte)	BCD (Hz)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805A9	Acceptable CNG detection		

NCU Parameters

Address	Function	Unit	Remarks
	frequency lower limit (low byte)		
6805AA	Not used	-	Do not change the setting.
6805AB	CNG on time	20 ms	Factory setting: 500 ms
6805AC	CNG off time	20 ms	Factory setting: 3000 ms
6805AD	Number of CNG cycles required for detection	-	The data is coded in the same way as address 680533.
6805AE	Not used	-	Do not change the settings.
6805AF	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency upper limit (high byte)	Hz (BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805B0	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency upper limit (low byte)		
6805B1	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency lower limit (high byte)	Hz(BCD)	If both addresses contain FF(H), tone detection is disabled.
6805B2	Acceptable AI short protocol tone (800Hz) detection frequency lower limit (low byte)		
6805B3	Detection time for 800 Hz AI short protocol tone	20 ms	Factory setting: 360 ms
6805B4	PSTN: Tx level from the modem	-N – 3 dBm	SP2-103-002 (parameter 01).
6805B5	PSTN: 1100 Hz tone transmission level	- N 6805B4 - 0.5N 6805B5 –3.5 (dB) See Note 7.	

Address	Function			Unit	Remarks
6805B6	PSTN: 2100 Hz tone transmission level			- N6805B4 - 0.5N 6805B6 –3 (dB) See Note 7.	
6805B7	PABX: Tx level from the modem			- dBm	
6805B8	PABX: 1100 Hz tone transmission level			- N 6805B7 - 0.5N 6805B8 (dB)	
6805B9	PABX: 2100 Hz tone transmission level			- N 6805B7 - 0.5N 6805B9 (dB)	
6805BD	Modem turn-on level (incoming signal detection level)			-37-0.5N (dBm)	
6805BE to 6805C6	Not used			-	Do not change the settings.
6805C7	Bits 0 to 3 – Not used Bit 4 = V.34 protocol dump 0: Simple, 1: Detailed (default) Bits 5 to 7 – Not used.				
6805C8 to 6805D9	Not used			-	Do not change the settings.
6805DA	T.30 T1 timer			1 s	
6805E0 bit 3	Maximum wait time for post message			0: 12 s 1: 30 s	1: Maximum wait time for post message (EOP/EOM/MPS) can be changed to 30 s. Change this bit to “1” if communication errors occur frequently during V.17 reception.
6805E4	Bit 1 sets the level of the call signal, Bit 3 sets the call signal impedance	Bit 1	0	RT=0 (Low)	-
			1	RT=1 (High)	
		Bit 3	0	RZ=0 (High)	

NCU Parameters

Address	Function			Unit	Remarks
			1	RZ=1 (Composite)	
6805E5	Bit 0 sets the ring detection method, Bit 1 sets the ring detection method when fixed.	Bit 0	0	Auto	If any setting is changed, select a setting that is higher than the default setting.
			1	Fixed	
		Bit 1	0	Use RDTP	
			1	Use RDTN	
	Bits 2 to 7: Not used				

NOTES

1. If a setting is not required, store FF in the address.

2. Italy and Belgium only

RAM address 68055E: the lower four bits have the following meaning.

Bit 2 - 1: International dial tone cadence detection enabled (Belgium)

Bit 1 - Not used

Bit 0 - 1: PSTN dial tone cadence detection enabled (Italy)

If bit 0 or bit 2 is set to 1, the functions of the following RAM addresses are changed.

680508 (if bit 0 = 1) or 680538 (if bit 2 = 1): tolerance for on or off state duration (%), and number of cycles required for detection, coded as in address 680533.

68050B (if bit 0 = 1) or 68053B (if bit 2 = 1): on time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)

68050C (if bit 0 = 1) or 68053C (if bit 2 = 1): off time, hex code (unit = 20 ms)

3. Pulse dial parameters (addresses 68054A to 68054F) are the values for 10 pps. If 20 pps is used, the machine automatically compensates.

4. The first ring may not be detected until 1 to 2.5 wavelengths after the time specified by this parameter.

5. The calculated level must be between 0 and 10.

The attenuation levels calculated from RAM data are:

High frequency tone:

- $-0.5 \times N_{680552/680554} - 3.5 \text{ dBm}$
- $-0.5 \times N_{680555} \text{ dBm}$

Low frequency tone:

- $-0.5 \times (N_{680552/680554} + N_{680553}) - 3.5 \text{ dBm}$
- $-0.5 \times (N_{680555} + N_{680553}) \text{ dBm}$

↓ Note

- N_{680552} , for example, means the value stored in address 680552(H)
6. 68054A: Europe - Between Ds opening and Di opening, France - Between Ds closing and Di opening
68054D: Europe - Between Ds closing and Di closing, France - Between Ds opening and Di closing
 7. Tone signals which frequency is lower than 1500Hz (e.g., 800Hz tone for AI short protocol) refer to the setting at 6805B5h. Tones which frequency is higher than 1500Hz refer to the setting at 6805B6h.
 8. 68054A, 68054D, 68054E: The actual inter-digit pause (pulse dial mode) is the sum of the period specified by the RAM addresses 68054A, 68054D, and 68054E.

4.5 DEDICATED TRANSMISSION PARAMETERS

There are two sets of transmission parameters: Fax and E-mail

Each Quick Dial Key and Speed Dial Code has eight bytes of programmable parameters allocated to it. If transmissions to a particular machine often experience problems, store that terminal's fax number as a Quick Dial or Speed Dial, and adjust the parameters allocated to that number.

The programming procedure will be explained first. Then, the eight bytes will be described.

4.5.1 PROGRAMMING PROCEDURE

1. Set the bit 0 of System Bit Switch 00 to 1.
2. Enter Address Book Management mode ([User Tools]> System Settings> Administrator Tools > Address Book Management).
3. Select the address book that you want to program.
4. Press the "Dest." Key to enter the fax and e-mail parameter settings.
5. For the fax parameter, select "Fax Settings", for the E-mail parameter, select "E-mail Settings".
6. Press the "OK" key, and then press "Start" key. Make sure that the LED of the Start button lights green.
7. The settings for the switch 00 are now displayed. Press the bit number that you wish to change.
8. To scroll through the parameter switches, either:
9. Select the next switch: press "Next" or Select the previous switch: "Prev." until the correct switch is displayed. Then go back to step 6.
10. After the setting is changed, press "OK" key.
11. After finishing, reset bit 0 of System Bit Switch 00 to 0.

4.5.2 PARAMETERS

Fax Parameters

The initial settings of the following fax parameters are all FF(H) - all the parameters are disabled.

Switch 00
FUNCTION AND COMMENTS

ITU-T T1 time (for PSTN G3 mode)

If the connection time to a particular terminal is longer than the NCU parameter setting, adjust this byte. The T1 time is the value stored in this byte (in hex code), multiplied by 1 second.

Range:

0 to 120 s (00h to 78h)

FFh - The local NCU parameter factory setting is used.

Do not program a value between 79h and FEh.

Switch 01

No	FUNCTION						COMMENTS
0-4	Tx level						If communication with a particular remote terminal often contains errors, the signal level may be inappropriate. Adjust the Tx level for communications with that terminal until the results are better. If the setting is "Disabled", the NCU parameter 01 setting is used. ↓ Note Do not use settings other than listed on the left.
	Bit4	Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0		
	0	0	0	0	0	0	
	0	0	0	0	1	-1	
	0	0	0	1	0	-2	
	0	0	0	1	1	-3	
	0	0	1	0	0	-4	
	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	
	0	1	1	1	1	-15	
	1	1	1	1	1	Disabled	
5-7	Cable equalizer Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 0 = None Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0, Bit 5: 1 = Low Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 0 = Medium Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 1 = High Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1, Bit 5: 1 = Disabled						Use a higher setting if there is signal loss at higher frequencies because of the length of wire between the modem and the telephone exchange when calling the number stored in this Quick/Speed Dial. Also, try using the cable equalizer if one or more of the following

Dedicated Transmission Parameters

		symptoms occurs. Communication error with error codes such as 0-20, 0-23, etc. Modem rate fallback occurs frequently.  Note Do not use settings other than listed on the left. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.

Switch 02						
No	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Initial Tx modem rate					If training with a particular remote terminal always takes too long, the initial modem rate may be too high. Reduce the initial Tx modem rate using these bits. For the settings 14.4 or kbps slower, Switch 04 bit 4 must be changed to 0.  Note Do not use settings other than listed on the left. If the setting is “Disabled”, the bit switch setting is used.
	Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0	bps	
	0	0	0	0	Not used	
	0	0	0	1	2400	
	0	0	1	0	4800	
	0	0	1	1	7200	
	0	1	0	0	9600	
	0	1	0	1	12000	
	0	1	1	0	14400	
	0	1	1	1	16800	
	1	0	0	0	19200	
	1	0	0	1	21600	
	1	0	1	0	24000	
	1	0	1	1	26400	

	1	1	0	0	28800	
	1	1	0	1	31200	
	1	1	1	0	33600	
	1	1	1	1	Disabled	
	Other settings: Not used					
4-7	Not used					Do not change the settings.

Switch 03		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0-1	Inch-mm conversion before tx Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = Inch-mm conversion available Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = Inch only Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = Not used Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = Disabled	The machine uses inch-based resolutions for scanning. If "inch only" is selected, the printed copy may be slightly distorted at the other end if that machine uses mm-based resolutions. If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.
2-3	DIS/NSF detection method Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 0 = First DIS or NSF Bit 3: 0, Bit 2: 1 = Second DIS or NSF Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 0 = Not used Bit 3: 1, Bit 2: 1 = Disabled	(0, 1): Use this setting if echoes on the line are interfering with the set-up protocol at the start of transmission. The machine will then wait for the second DIS or NSF before sending DCS or NSS. If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.
4	V.8 protocol 0: Off 1: Disabled	If transmissions to a specific destination always end at a lower modem rate (14,400 bps or lower), disable V.8 protocol so as not to use V.34 protocol. 0: V.34 communication will not be possible. If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.
5	Compression modes available in transmit mode	This bit determines the capabilities that are informed to the other terminal during transmission.

Dedicated Transmission Parameters

	0: MH only 1: Disabled	If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.
6-7	ECM during transmission Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 0 = Off Bit 7: 0, Bit 6: 1 = On Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 0 = Not used Bit 7: 1, Bit 6: 1 = Disabled	For example, if ECM is switched on but is not wanted when sending to a particular terminal, use the (0, 0) setting.  Note - V.8/V.34 protocol and JBIG compression are automatically disabled if ECM is disabled. - If the setting is "Disabled", the bit switch setting is used.

Switch 04 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 05 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)
Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

E-mail Parameters

The initial settings of the following e-mail parameters are all "0" (all parameters disabled).

Switch 00		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	MH Compression mode for e-mail attachments 0: Off 1: On	Switches MH compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending.
1	MR Compression mode	Switches MR compression on and off for files

	for e-mail attachments 0: Off 1: On	attached to e-mails for sending.
2	MMR Compression mode for e-mail attachments 0: Off 1: On	Switches MMR compression on and off for files attached to e-mails for sending.
3-6	Not used	Do not change these settings.
7	Designates the bits to reference for compression method of e-mail attachments 0: Registered (Bit 0 to 6) 1: No registration.	The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02.

Switch 01		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Original width of e-mail attachment: A4 0: Off 1: On	Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as A4.
1	Original width of e-mail attachment: B4 0: Off 1: On	Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as B4.
2	Original width of e-mail attachment: A3 0: Off 1: On	Sets the original width of the e-mail attachment as A3.
3-6	Not used	Do not change these settings.

Dedicated Transmission Parameters

7	Designates the bits to reference for original size of e-mail attachments 0 : Registered (Bit 0 to 6) 1: No registration.	The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02.

Switch 02		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 100 0 : Off 1: On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x100.
1	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 200 0 : Off 1: On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x 200.
2	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 200 x 400 0 : Off 1: On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 200 x 400.
3	Not used	Do not change these settings.
4	Line resolution of e-mail attachment: 400 x 400 0 : Off 1: On	Sets the line resolution of the e-mail attachment as 400 x 400.
5-6	Not used	Do not change these settings.
7	Designates the bits to reference for original size of e-mail attachments 0 : Registered (Bit 0 to 6) 1: No registration.	The "0" selection (default) references the settings for Bits 00, 01, 02, 04 above. The "1" selection ignores the selections of Bits 00, 01, 02, 04.

Switch 03 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Switch 04		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Full mode address selection 0: Full mode address 1: No full mode (simple mode)	If the other ends have the addresses, which have the full mode function flag ("0"), this machine determines them as full mode standard machines. - This machine attaches the "demand of reception confirmation" to a message when transmitting. - This machine updates the reception capability to the address book when receiving.
1-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

Switch 05		
No	FUNCTION	COMMENTS
0	Direct transmission selection to SMTP server 0: ON 1: OFF	Allows or does not allow the direct transmission to SMTP server.
1-7	Not used	Do not change these settings.

Switch 06 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Switch 07 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Switch 08 - Not used (do not change the settings)

Switch 09 - Not used (do not change the settings)

4.6 SERVICE RAM ADDRESSES

CAUTION

- Do not change the settings which are marked as “Not used” or “Read only.”

680000(H) - Machine code

680001 to 680004(H) - ROM version (Read only)

680001(H) - Revision number (BCD)

680002(H) - Year (BCD)

680003(H) - Month (BCD)

680004(H) - Day (BCD)

680005(H) - Machine code 2 (check ram2)

680006 to 680015(H) - Machine's serial number (16 digits - ASCII)

680016(H) - Language code

Bit0: Japanese, Bit1: English (UK), Bit2: English (USA), Bit3: French,

Bit4: German, Bit5: Spanish, Bit6: Italian, Bit7: Dutch, Bit8: Swedish,

Bit9: Norwegian, Bit10: Danish, Bit11: Finnish, Bit12: Czech,

Bit13: Hungarian, Bit14: Polish, Bit15: Portuguese, Bit16: Russian,

Bit17: Traditional Chinese, Bit18: Simplified Chinese, Bit19: Hangul

680018(H) - Total program checksum (low)

680019(H) - Total program checksum (high)

680020 to 68003F(H) - System bit switches

680050 to 68005F(H) - Printer bit switches

680060 to 68007F(H) - Communication bit switches

680080 to 68008F(H) - G3 bit switches

680090 to 68009F(H) - G3-2 bit switches: Not used

6800A0 to 6800AF(H) - G3-3 bit switches: Not used

6800D0(H) - User parameter switch 00 (SWUER_00) : Not used

6800D1(H) - User parameter switch 01 (SWUSR_01) : Not used

6800D2(H) - User parameter switch 02 (SWUSR_02)

Bit 0: Forwarding mark printing on forwarded messages

0: OFF, 1: ON (Print)

Bit 1: Center mark printing on received copies

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: OFF, 1: ON (Print)

Bit 2: Reception time printing

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: OFF, 1: ON (Print)

Bit 3: TSI print on received messages 0: OFF, 1: ON (Print)

Bit 4: Checkered mark printing

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

0: OFF, 1: ON (Print)

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Not used

6800D3(H) - User parameter switch 03 (SWUSR_03: Automatic report printout)

Bit 0: Transmission result report (memory transmissions) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: Not used

Bit 2: Memory storage report 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 3: Polling reserve report (polling reception) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 4: Polling result report (polling reception) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 5: Transmission result report (immediate transmissions) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Journal 0: Off, 1: On

6800D4(H) - User parameter switch 04 (SWUSR_04: Automatic report printout)

Bit 0: Not used

Bit 1: Automatic communication failure report and transfer result report output 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 2 to 3: Not used

Bit 4: Indicates the parties 0: Not indicated, 1: Indicated

Bit 5: Include sender's name on reports 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Inclusion of a sample image on reports 0: Off, 1: On

6800D5(H) - User parameter switch 05 (SWUSR_05)

Bit 0: Substitute reception when the base copier is in an SC condition

0: Enabled, 1: Disabled

Bits 1 and 2: Condition for substitute rx when the machine cannot print messages (Paper end, toner end, jam, and during night mode)

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 0 = The machine receives all the fax messages.

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 1 = The machine receives the fax messages with RTI or CSI.

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 0 = The machine receives the fax messages with the same ID code.

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 1 = The machine does not receive anything.

Bits 3 and 4: Not used

Bit 5: Just size printing 0: Off, 1: On

Service RAM Addresses

Bit 6: Not used

Bit 7: Add paper display when a cassette is empty 0: Off, 1: On

6800D6(H) - User parameter switch 06 (SWUSR_06): Not used

6800D7(H) - User parameter switch 07 (SWUSR_07)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: Parallel memory transmission 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 3 to 7: Not used

6800D8(H) - User parameter switch 08 (SWUSR_08)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used.

Bit 2: Authorized reception

0: Only faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are specified for this feature are accepted.

1: Only faxes from senders whose RTIs/CSIs are not specified for this feature are accepted.

Bits 3 to 7: Not used.

6800D9(H) - User parameter switch 09 (SWUSR_09): Not used

6800DA(H) - User parameter switch 10 (SWUSR_0A)

Bits 0 to 2: Not used

Bit 3: Page reduction 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 4 and 5: Not used

Bit 6: Use both e-mail notification and printed reports to confirm the transmission results 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 7: Not used

6800DB(H) - User parameter switch 11 (SWUSR_0B)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: White original detection 0: Off, 1: On (alarm and alert message on the LCD)

Bits 3 and 4: Not used

Bit 6: Printout of messages received while acting as a forwarding station 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 7: Not used

6800DC(H) - User parameter switch 12 (SWUSR_0C): Not used

6800DD(H) - User parameter switch 13 (SWUSR_0D): Not used

6800DE(H) - User parameter switch 14 (SWUSR_0E)

Bit 0: Message printout while the machine is in Night Printing mode 0: On, 1: Off

Bit 1: Maximum document length detection 0: Double letter, 1: Longer than double-letter (well log) – up to 1,200 mm

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: Fax mode settings, such as resolution, before a mode key

(Copy/Fax/Printer/Scanner) is pressed 0: Not cleared, 1: Cleared

Bits 4 to 7: Not used

6800DF(H) - User parameter switch 15 (SWUSR_0F)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bits 0, 1 and 2: Cassette for fax printout

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = 1st paper feed station

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 0 = 2nd paper feed station

Bit 2: 0, Bit 1: 1, Bit 0: 1 = 3rd paper feed station

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 0 = 4th paper feed station

Bit 2: 1, Bit 1: 0, Bit 0: 1 = LCT

Other settings Not used

Bits 3 and 4: Not used

Bit 5: Using the cassette specified by bits 0, 1 and 2 above only 0: On, 1: Off

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

6800E0(H) – User parameter switch 16 (SWUSR_10)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: Paper size selection priority for an A4 size fax message when A4/LT size paper is not available. 0: A3 has priority, 1: B4 has priority

Bits 3 to 7: Not used

6800E1(H) – User parameter switch 17 (SWUSR_11)

Bits 0 and 1: Not used

Bit 2: Inclusion of the “Add” button when a sequence of Quick/Speed dials is selected for broadcasting 0: Not needed, 1: Needed

Bits 3 to 6: Not used

Bit 7: Press “Start” key without an original when using the on hook dial or the external telephone,

0: displays “Cannot detect original size”. 1: Receives fax messages.

6800E2(H) - User parameter switch 18 (SWUSR_12)

Bit 0: TTI date 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: TTI sender 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 2: TTI file number 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 3: TTI page number 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 4 to 7: Not used

6800E3(H) - User parameter switch 19 (SWUSR_13)

Bit 0: Not used

Service RAM Addresses

Bit 1: Journal format

0: The Journal is separated into transmissions and receptions

1: The Journal is separated into G3-1, G3-2, and G3-3 communications

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: 90° image rotation during B5 portrait Tx (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.) 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 4: Reduction of sample images on reports to 50% in the main scan and sub-scan directions. (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.) 0: Technician adjustment (printer switch 0E bits 3 and 4), 1: 50% reduction

Bit 5: Use of A5 size paper for reports (This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.) 0: Off, 1: On

Bits 6 and 7: Not used

6800E4(H) - User parameter switch 20 (SWUSR_14)

Bit 0: Automatic printing of the LAN fax result report 0: Off, 1: On

Bit 1: Not used.

Bits 2 to 5: Store documents in memory which could not be printed from PC fax (LAN fax) driver

Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Setting
0	0	0	0	0 min.
0	0	0	1	1 min.
↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
1	1	1	0	14 min.
1	1	1	1	15 min.

Bits 6 and 7: Not used.

6800E5(H) - User parameter switch 21 (SWUSR_15)

Bit 0: Print results of sending reception notice request message 0: Disabled (print only when error occurs), 1: Enabled

Bit 1: Respond to e-mail reception acknowledgment request 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 2: Not used

Bit 3: File format for forwarded folders 0: TIFF, 1:PDF

Bit 4: Transmit Journal by E-mail 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 5: Not used

Bit 6: Network error display 0: Displayed, 1: Not displayed

Bit 7: Transmit error mail notification 0: Enabled, 1: Disabled

6800E6(H) - User parameter switch 22 (SWUSR_16)

(This switch is not printed on the user parameter list.)

Bit 0: Dial tone detection (PSTN 1) 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 1 to 7: Not used

6800E7(H) - User parameter switch 23 (SWUSR_17): Not used

6800E8(H) - User parameter switch 24 (SWUSR_18): Not used

6800E9(H) - User parameter switch 25 (SWUSR_19)

Bits 0 to 3: Not used

Bit 4: RDS operation 0: Not acceptable, 1: Acceptable for the limit specified by system switch 03



- This bit is only effective when RDS operation can be selected by the user (see system switch 02).

Bits 5 to 7: Not used

6800EA(H) and 6800EB(H) - User parameter switches 26 and 27 (SWUSR_1A and 1B):
Not used

6800EC(H) - User parameter switch 28 (SWUSR_1C)

- Ringing times setting in the TEL line priority mode: 00 to 99 (BCD)

6800ED(H) - User parameter switch 29 (SWUSR_1D): Not used

6800EE(H) and 6800EF(H) - User parameter switches 30 and 31 (SWUSR_1E and 1F):
Not used

6800F0(H) - User parameter switch 32 (SWUSR_20)

Bit 0: Quotation priority for a destination when there is no destination of the specified type

0: Paper output priority = Priority order: 1. IP-fax destination, 2. Fax Number, 3. E-mail address, 4. Folder

1: Electric putout order = Priority order: 1. E-mail address, 2. Folder, 3. IP-fax destination, 4. Fax number

Bits 1 to 7: Not used

6800F1(H) - User parameter switch 33 (SWUSR_21): Not used

6800F2(H) - User parameter switch 34 (SWUSR_22)

Bit 0: Gatekeeper server used with IP-Fax 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bit 1: SIP server used with IP-Fax 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

Bits 2 to 7: Not used

Service RAM Addresses

680100 to 68010F(H) - G4 Parameter Switches – Not used
680110 to 68012F(H) - G4 Internal Switches – Not used
680130 to 68016F(H) - Service Switches (SCU) – Not used
680170 to 68017F(H) - IFAX Switches
680180 to 68018F(H) - IP-FAX Switches
680190 to 6801AF(H) - Service station's fax number (SP3-101)
6801B0 to 6801B9(H) - Own fax PABX extension number
6801BA to 6801C3(H) - Own fax number (PSTN) – Not used
6801C4 to 6801D7(H) - Own fax number (ISDN G4) – Not used
6801D8 to 6801E3(H) - The first subscriber number (ISDN G3) – Not used
6801E4 to 6801EF(H) - The second subscriber number (ISDN G3) – Not used
6801F0 to 6801FB(H) - The first subscriber number (ISDN G4) – Not used
6801FC to 680207(H) - The second subscriber number (ISDN G4) – Not used
680208 to 68021B(H) - PSTN-1 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.
68021C to 68022F(H) - PSTN-2 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - Not used
680230 to 680246(H) - PSTN-3 RTI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII) - Not used
680247 to 680286(H) - TTI 1 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - See the following note.
680287 to 6802C6(H) - TTI 2 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - Not used
6802C7 to 680306(H) - TTI 3 (Max. 64 characters - ASCII) - Not used
680307 to 68031A(H) - PSTN-1 CSI (Max. 20 characters - ASCII)
68031B to 68032E(H) - PSTN-2 CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII) - Not used
68032F to 680342(H) - PSTN-3 CSI (Max.20 characters - ASCII) - Not used
680343(H) - Number of PSTN-1 CSI characters (Hex)
680344(H) - Number of PSTN-2 CSI characters (Hex) - Not used
680345(H) - Number of PSTN-3 CSI characters (Hex) - Not used



- If the number of characters is less than the maximum (20 for RTI, 64 for TTI), add a stop code (00[H]) after the last character.

680370(H) ID for transmission and reception (Read only – Do not change the settings)
680374 to 680375(H) - Memory Lock ID for the memory reception (BCD)
680380 to 680387(H) - Last power off time (Read only)
680380(H) - 01(H) - 24-hour clock, 00(H) - 12-hour clock (AM), 02(H) - 12-hour clock (PM)
680381(H) - Year (BCD)
680382(H) - Month (BCD)
680383(H) - Day (BCD)
680384(H) – Hour

680385(H) – Minute
 680386(H) – Second
 680387(H) - 00: Monday, 01: Tuesday, 02: Wednesday, /// , 06: Sunday
680394(H) - Optional equipment – Not used
680395(H) - Optional equipment (Read only – Do not change the settings)
 Bits 0 to 3: Not used
 Bit 4: G3-2 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
 Bit 5: G3-3 0: Not installed, 1: Installed
 Bit 6 and 7: Not used
680401 to 68040D – Not used
680410(H) - G3-1 Modem ROM version (Read only)
680412(H) - G3-2 Modem ROM version – Not used
680414(H) - G3-3 Modem ROM version – Not used
680420(H) - Number of multiple sets print (Read only)
680476(H) - Time for economy transmission – Not used
68048C(H) - Dial in (BCD)
680492(H) - Transmission monitor volume 00 - 07(H)
680493(H) - Reception monitor volume 00 - 07(H)
680494(H) - On-hook monitor volume 00 - 07(H)
680495(H) - Dialing monitor volume 00 - 07(H)
680496(H) - Buzzer volume 00 - 07(H)
680497(H) - Beeper volume 00 - 07(H)
6804A8(H) - Machine code (Check ram 4)
6804D2(H) - Serial number (Max. 8 characters ASCII)
685E6C to 685E6F(H) - Transmission counter (HEX)
685E70 to 685E73(H) - Reception counter (HEX)
685EDC to 685EDF(H) - E-mail transmission counter (HEX)
685EE0 to 685EE3(H) - E-mail reception counter (HEX)
688E8E to 68918D(H) - SIP server address (Read only)
 688E8E(H) - Proxy server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
 688F0E(H) - Proxy server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
 688F8E(H) - Redirect server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
 68900E(H) - Redirect server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
 68908E(H) - Registrar server - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
 68910E(H) - Registrar server - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)
68918E(H) - Gatekeeper server address - Main (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

Service RAM Addresses

68920E(H) - Gatekeeper server address - Sub (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68928E(H) - Arias Number (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68930E(H) - SIP user name (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68938E(H) - SIP authentication password (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68938E(H) - **SIP digest authentication password** (Max. 128 characters - ASCII)

68940E(H) - Gateway address information (Max. 7100 characters - ASCII)

68AFCA(H) - Stand-by port number for H.232 connection

68AFCCH) - Stand-by port number for SIP connection

68AFCE(H) - RAS port number

68AFD0(H) - Gatekeeper port number

68AFD2(H) - Port number of data waiting for T.38

68AFD4(H) - Port number of SIP server

68AFD6(H) - Priority for SIP and H.323 0: H.323, 1: SIP

68AFD7(H) - SIP function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

68AFD8(H) - H.323 function 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

68AFD9(H) - **SIP digest authentication function** 0: Disabled, 1: Enabled

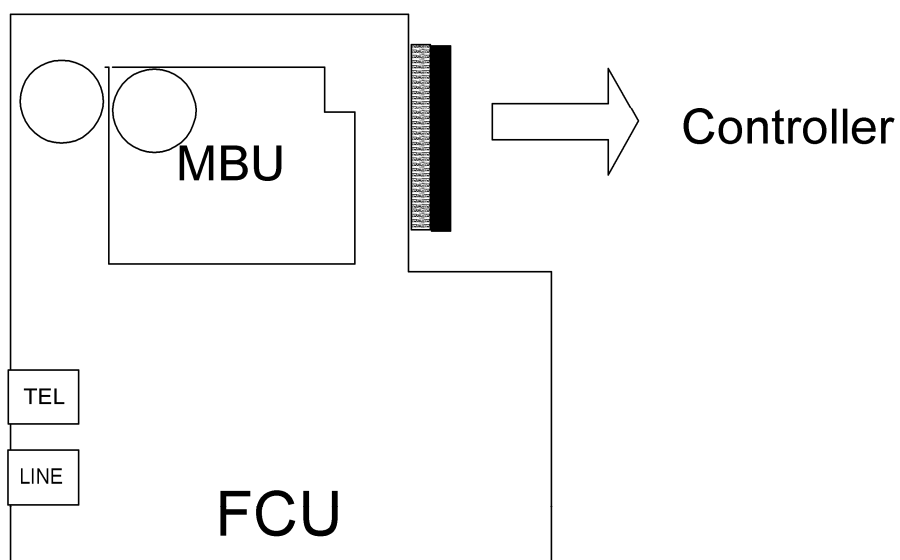
68AFDA(H) - **IP-Fax backup data** 00 - 600 (H)

69ECBE(H) - **69ECDE(H)** - **Dial tone detection parameter** (Max. 11 x 3 lines)

This initializes following order. [0x04, 0x40, 0x03, 0x60, 0x64, 0xf4, 0x01, 0x64, 0x04, 0xc8, 0x00]

5. DETAILED SECTION DESCRIPTIONS

5.1 OVERVIEW



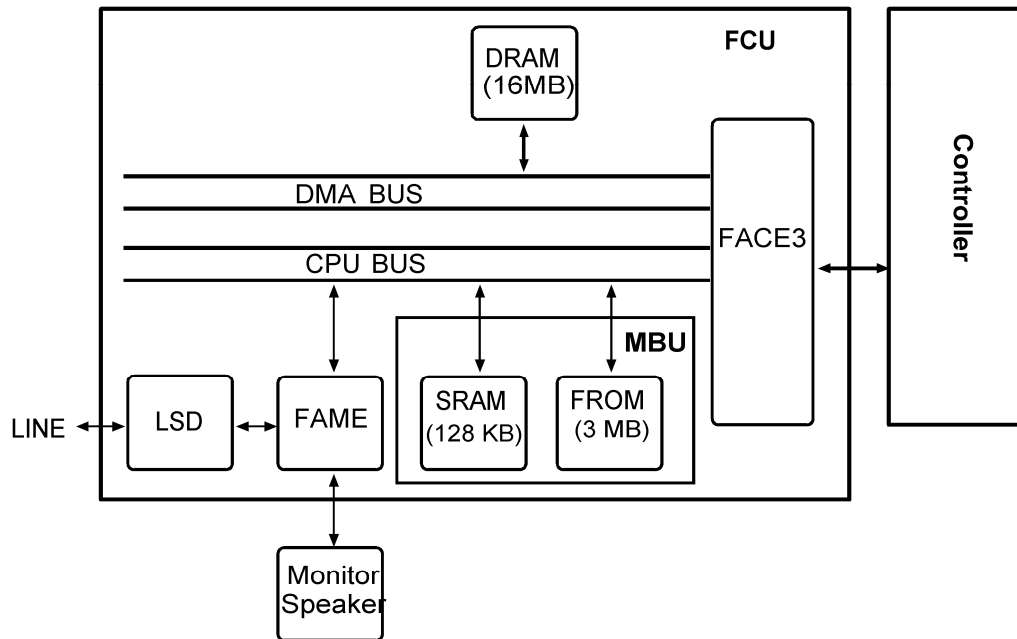
b868d501

The basic fax unit consists of two PCBs: an FCU and an MBU.

The FCU controls all the fax communications and fax features, in cooperation with the controller board. The MBU contains the ROM and SRAM. Also, the FCU has an NCU circuit.

5.2 BOARDS

5.2.1 FCU



b868d502

The FCU (Facsimile Control Unit) controls fax communications, the video interface to the base copier's engine, and all the fax options.

FACE3 (Fax Application Control Engine)

- CPU
- Data compression and reconstruction (DCR)
- DMA control
- Clock generation
- DRAM backup control

Modem (FAME)

- V.34, V33, V17, V.29, V.27ter, V.21, and V.8

DRAM

- The 16 MB of DRAM is shared as follows.
 - SAF memory: 4MB
 - Working memory: 8MB
 - Page memory: 4MB
- The SAF memory is backed up by a rechargeable battery.

Memory Back-up

- A Rechargeable battery backs up the SAF memory (DRAM) for 12 hour.

5.2.2 MBU

On this board, the flash ROM contains the FCU firmware, and the SRAM contains the system data and user parameters. Even if the FCU is changed, the system data and user parameters are kept on the MBU board.

ROM

- 3MB flash ROMs for system software storage
2MB (16bit x 1MB) + 1MB (16bit x 512K)

SRAM

- The 128 KB SRAM for system and user parameter storage is backed up by a lithium battery.

Memory Back-up

- A lithium battery backs up the system parameters and programmed items in the SRAM, in case the base copier's main switch is turned off.

Switches

Item	Description
SW1	Switches the SRAM backup battery on/off.

5.3 FAX COMMUNICATION FEATURES

5.3.1 INTERNET MAIL COMMUNICATION

Mail Transmission

This machine supports T.37 full mode. (ITU-, RFC232). The difference between T.37 simple mode and full mode is as follows.

Function	T.37 Simple Mode	T.37 Full Mode
Resolution	200 x 100 200 x 200	200 x100 200 x 200 200 x 400 400 x 400 (if available)
RX Paper Width	A4	A4, B4, A3
RX Data Compression Method	MH	MH (default), MR, MMR,
Signals	Image data transmission only	Image data transmission, exchange of capability information between the two terminals, and acknowledgement of receipt of fax messages

Data Formats

The scanned data is converted into a TIFF-F formatted file.

The fields of the e-mail and their contents are as follows:

Field	Content
From	Mail address of the sender
Reply To	Destination requested for reply
To	Mail address of the destination

Bcc	Backup mail address
Subject	From CSI or RTI (Fax Message No. xxxx)
Content Type	Multipart/mixed Attached files: image/tiff
Content Transfer Encoding	Base 64, 7-bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable
Message Body	MIME-converted TIFF-F (MIME standards specify how files are attached to e-mail messages)

Direct SMTP Transmission

Internet Fax documents can be sent directly to their destinations without going through the SMTP server. (Internet Faxes normally transmit via the SMTP server.)

For example:

e-mail address:	gts@ricoh.co.jp
SMTP server address:	gts.abcd.com

In this case this feature destination e-mail address (gts@ricoh.co.jp) is read as the SMTP server address "gts.abcd.com" and the transmissions bypass the SMTP server.

Selectable Options

These options are available for selection:

- With the default settings, the scan resolution can be either standard or detail. Inch-mm conversion before TX depends on IFAX SW01 Bit 7. Detail resolution will be used if Super Fine resolution is selected, unless Fine resolution is enabled with IFAX SW01.
- The requirements for originals (document size, scan width, and memory capacity) are the same as for G3 fax memory TX.
- The default compression is TIFF-F format.
- IFAX SW00: Acceptable paper widths for sending
- IFAX SW09: Maximum number of attempts to the same destination

Secure Internet Transmission

- SMTP Authentication: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> SMTP Authentication

Fax Communication Features

- POP Before SMTP: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> POP Before SMTP

Mail Reception

This machine supports three types of e-mail reception:

- POP3 (Post Office Protocol Ver. 3.)
- IMAP4 (Internet Messaging Access Protocol)
- SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol)

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – Mail Reception

POP3/IMAP4 Mail Reception Procedure

The machine automatically picks up e-mail from the server at an interval which is adjustable in the range 2 to 1440 min. in 1-minute steps: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> E-mail Reception Interval

SMTP Reception

- The IFAX must be registered as an SMTP server in the MX record of the DNS server, and the address of the received mail must specify the IFAX.
- Enable SMTP reception: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> Reception Protocol

Even if the MX record on the DNS server includes the IFAX, mail cannot be received with SMTP until SMTP reception is enabled:

However, if SMTP reception is selected and the machine is not registered in the MX record of the DNS server, then either IMAP4 or POP3 is used, depending on the setting: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> Reception Protocol

Mail Delivery Conditions: Transferring Mail Received With SMTP

1. The machine must be set up for SMTP mail delivery: User Tools> Facsimile Features> E-mail Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings
2. If the user wishes to limit this feature so that the machine will only deliver mail from designated senders, the machine's "Auth. E-mail RX" feature must be set (User Tools> Facsimile Features> E-mail Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings).
3. If the "SMTP RX File Delivery Setting" is set to 0 to prohibit SMTP receiving, and if there is mail designated for delivery, then the machine responds with an error. (User Tools> Facsimile Features> E-mail Settings> SMTP RX File Delivery Settings)
4. If the quick dial, speed dial, or group dial entry is incorrect, the mail transmission is lost, and the IFAX issues an error to the SMTP server and outputs an error report.

Auth. E-mail RX

In order to limit access to mail delivery with IFAX, the addresses of senders must be limited

using the Access Limit Entry. Only one entry can be registered.

1. Access Limit Entry

For example, to limit access to @IFAX.ricoh.co.jp:

gts@IFAX.ricoh.co.jp	Matches and is delivered.
gts@IFAX.abcde.co.jp	Does not match and is not delivered.
IFAX@ricoh.co.jp	Does not match and is not delivered.

2. Conditions

- The length of the Access Limit Entry is limited to 127 characters.
- If the Access Limit Entry address and the mail address of the incoming mail do not match, the incoming mail is discarded and not delivered, and the SMTP server responds with an error. However, in this case an error report is not output.
- If the Access Limit Entry address is not registered, and if the incoming mail specifies a delivery destination, then the mail is delivered unconditionally.

Handling Mail Reception Errors

Abnormal files

When an error of this type occurs, the machine stops receiving and commands the server to erase the message. Then the machine prints an error report and sends information about the error by e-mail to the sender address (specified in the "From" or "Reply-to" field of the message). If there is an incomplete received message in the machine memory, it will be erased.

The machine prints an error message when it fails to send the receive error notification after a certain number of attempts.

The following types of files are judged to be abnormal if one or more of the following are detected:

1. Unsupported MIME headers.

Supported types of MIME header

Header	Supported Types
Content-Type	Multipart/mixed, text/plain, message/rfc822 Image/tiff
Charset	US-ASCII, ISO 8859 X. Other types cannot be

Fax Communication Features

	handled, and some garbage may appear in the data.
Content-Transfer-Encoding	Base 64, 7-bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable

2. MIME decoding errors
3. File format not recognized as TIFF-F format
4. Resolution, document size, or compression type cannot be accepted

Remaining SAF capacity error

The machine calls the server but does not receive e-mail if the remaining SAF capacity is less than a certain value (the value depends on IFAX Switch 08. The e-mail will be received when the SAF capacity increases (for example, after substitute reception files have been printed). The error handling method for this type of error is the same as for "Abnormal files". If the capacity of the SAF memory drops to zero during reception, the machine operates in the same way as when receiving an abnormal file (refer to "Abnormal files" above).

Secure Internet Reception

To enable password encryption and higher level security: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> POP3/IMAP4 Settings> Encryption (set to "On")

Transfer Request: Request By Mail

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – Transfer Request

The fields of the e-mail and their contents are as follows:

Field	Content
From	E-mail address of the requesting terminal
To	Destination address (Transfer Station address)
Bcc	Blind carbon copy
Subject	From TSI (Fax Message No. xxxx)
Content-Type	Multipart/mixed Text/Plain (for a text part), image/tiff (for attached files)
Content-Transfer-Encoding	Base 64, 7-Bit, 8-bit, Quoted Printable
Mail body (text part)	RELAY-ID-: xxxx (xxxx: 4 digits for an ID code) RELAY:

	#01#*X#**01....
Message body	MIME-converted TIFF-F.

E-Mail Options (Sub TX Mode)

The following features are available as options for mail sending: entering a subject, designating the level of importance, confirming reception of the mail.

Subject and Level of Importance

You can enter a subject message with: Sub TX Mode> E-mail Options

The Subject entry for the mail being sent is limited to 64 characters. The subject can also be prefixed with an “Urgent” or “High” notation.

How the Subject Differs According to Mail Type

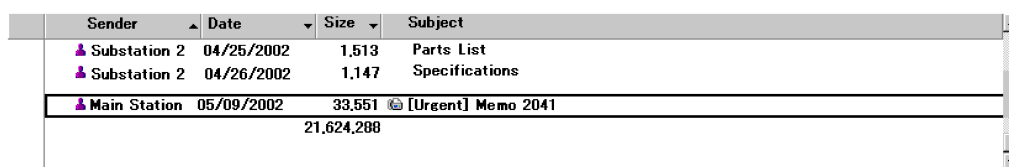
Mail Type	①	②	③
Subject Entry	---	Entry Condition	Fax Message No. + File No.
No Subject Entry	-	1. “CSI” (“RTI”)	
		2. “RTI” CSI not registered	
		3. “CSI” RTI not registered	
		4. None CSI, RTI not registered	
Confirmation of Reception	From	1. “CSI” (“RTI”)	Normal: Return Receipt (dispatched). You can select “displayed” with IFAX SW02 Bits 2 and 3.
		2. “RTI” CSI not registered	Error: Return Receipt (processed/error)
		3. “CSI” RTI not registered	
		4. None CSI, RTI not registered	

Fax Communication Features

Mail delivery, memory transfer, SMTP receiving and delivery	From	RTI or CSI of the station designated for delivery	Mail delivery	Fax Message No. + File Number
		RTI or CSI of sender	Mail sending from G3 memory	
		Mail address of sender	Memory sending	
		Mail address of sender	SMTP receiving and delivery (Off Ramp Gateway)	
Mail error notification	---	Error Message No. xxxx From CSI (RTI)		

Items ① ② ③ of the table above are in the Subject.

Subjects Displayed on the PC



Sender	Date	Size	Subject
Substation 2	04/25/2002	1,513	Parts List
Substation 2	04/26/2002	1,147	Specifications
Main Station	05/09/2002	33,551	[Urgent] Memo 2041
		21,624,288	

b868d505

E-mail Messages

After entering the subject, you can enter a message with:

Sub TX Mode> E-mail Options

An e-mail message (up to 5 lines) can be pre-registered with: User Tools> System Settings> File Transfer> Program/Change/Delete E-mail Message

Limitations on Entries

Item	Maximum
Number of Lines	5 lines
Line Length	80 characters

Name Length	20 characters

Message Disposition Notification (MDN)

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – E-mail Options

The network system administrator can confirm whether a sent mail has been received correctly or not. This function is enabled only when "I-FAX switch 02 Bit 4" is set to "1". This confirmation is done in four steps.

1. Send request for confirmation of mail reception. To enable or disable this request (known as MDN):
2. Sub TX Mode> E-mail Options
3. Mail reception (receive confirmation request)
4. Send confirmation of mail reception
5. Receive confirmation of mail reception

The other party's machine will not respond to the request unless the two conditions below are met:

- The other party's machine must be set up to respond to the confirmation request.
- The other party's machine must support MDN (Message Disposition Notification).

- Setting up the Receiving Party -

The receiving party will respond to the confirmation request if:

1. The "Disposition Notification To" field is in the received mail header (automatically inserted in the 4th line in the upper table on the previous page, if MDN is enabled), and
2. Sending the disposition notification must be enabled (User Parameter Setting SW21 (15 [H]) Bit 1 for this model). The content of the response is as follows:

Normal reception:	"Return Receipt (dispatched)" in the Subject line
IFAX SW02 (Bit 2, 3)	"Return Receipt (displayed)" in the Subject line
Error:	"Return Receipt (processed/error)" in the Subject line

Handling Reports

1. Sending a Request for a Return Receipt by Mail

After the mail sender transmits a request for a return receipt, the mail sender's journal is annotated with two hyphens (--) in the Result column and a "Q" in the Mode column.

Fax Communication Features

2. Mail Receipt (Request for Receipt Confirmation) and Sending Mail Receipt Response

After the mail receiver sends a response to the request for a return receipt, the mail receiver's journal is annotated with two hyphens (--) in the Result column and an "A" in the Mode column.

3. Receiving the Return Receipt Mail

- After the mail sender receives a return receipt, the information in the mail sender's journal about the receipt request is replaced, i.e. the journal is annotated with "OK" in the Result column.
- When the return receipt reports an error, the journal is annotated with an "E" in the Result column.
- The arrival of the return receipt is not recorded in the journal as a separate communication. Its arrival is only reported by the presence of "OK" or "E" in the Result column.
- If the mail address used by the sender specifies a mailing list (i.e., a Group destination; the machine sends the mail to more than one location. See "How to set up Mail Delivery"), the Result column of the Journal is updated every time a return receipt is received. For example, if the mailing list was to 5 destinations, the Result column indicates the result of the communication with the 5th destination only. The results of the communications to the first 4 destinations are not shown. Exceptions: If one of the communications had an error, the Result column will indicate E, even if subsequent communications were OK.

If two of the communications had an error, the Journal will indicate the destination for the first error only.

Report Sample

DATE	TIME	ADDRESS	RESULT	MODE	TIME	PAGE
MAY. 5	10:15	fuser_01@domlg. ricoh. co.		Mail SM	0'09"	2
	10:16	fuser_01@domlg. ricoh. co.		Mail SMQ	0'05"	1
	10:17	s_tadashi@domlg. ricoh. co.		Mail SMQ	0'09"	2
	10:19	m_masataka@domlg. ricoh. co.	OK	Mail SMA	0'05"	1
			--			

b868d506

5.4 IP-FAX

5.4.1 WHAT IS IP-FAX?

For details: Core Technology Manual – Facsimile Processes – Faxing from a PC – Internet/LAN Fax Boards – IP-FAX

T.38 Packet Format

TCP is selected by default for this machine, but you can change this to UDP with IPFAX SW 00 Bit 1.

UDP Related Switches

IP-Fax Switch 01						
No.	FUNCTION					COMMENTS
0-3	Select IP FAX Delay Level					Raise the level by selecting a higher setting if too many transmission errors are occurring on the network.
	Bit3	Bit2	Bit1	Bit0	Setting	
	0	0	0	0	Level 0	If TCP/UDP is enabled on the network, raise this setting on the T.30 machine. Increasing the delay time allows the recovery of more lost packets.
	0	0	0	1	Level 1	
	0	0	1	0	Level 2	
	0	0	1	1	Level 3	If only UDP is enabled, increase the number of redundant packets.
					Level 1~2: 3 Redundant packets Level 3: 4 Redundant packets	

Settings

User parameter switch 34 (22[H]), bit 0

IP-Fax Gate Keeper usage 0: No, 1: Yes

IP Fax Switches: Various IP-FAX settings (see the bit switch table)

6. SPECIFICATIONS

6.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

Type:	Desktop type transceiver
Circuit:	PSTN PABX
Connection:	Direct couple
Original Size:	Book (Face down) Maximum Length: 432 mm [17 ins] Maximum Width: 297 mm [11.7 ins] ARDF (Face up) (Single-sided document) Length: 128 - 1200 mm [5.0 - 47.2 ins] Width: 105 - 297 mm [4.1 - 11.7 inch] (Double-sided document) Length: 128 - 432 mm [5.0 - 17 inch] Width: 105 - 297 mm [4.1 - 11.7 inch]
Scanning Method:	Flat bed, with CCD
Resolution:	G3 8 x 3.85 lines/mm (Standard) 8 x 7.7 lines/mm (Detail) 8 x 15.4 line/mm (Fine) 200 x 100 dpi (Standard) 200 x 200 dpi (Detail)
Transmission Time:	G3: 3 s at 28800 bps; Measured with G3 ECM using memory for an ITU-T #1 test document (Slerexe letter) at standard resolution
Data Compression:	MH, MR, MMR, JBIG

General Specifications

Protocol:	Group 3 with ECM
Modulation:	V.34, V.33, V.17 (TCM), V.29 (QAM), V.27ter (PHM), V.8, V.21 (FM)
Data Rate:	G3: 33600/31200/28800/26400/24000/21600/ 19200/16800/14400/12000/9600/7200/4800/2400 bps Automatic fallback
I/O Rate:	With ECM: 0 ms/line Without ECM: 2.5, 5, 10, 20, or 40 ms/line
Memory Capacity:	ECM: 128 KB SAF Standard: 4 MB Page Memory: Standard: 4 MB (Print: 2 MB + Scanner: 2 MB)

6.2 IFAX SPECIFICATIONS

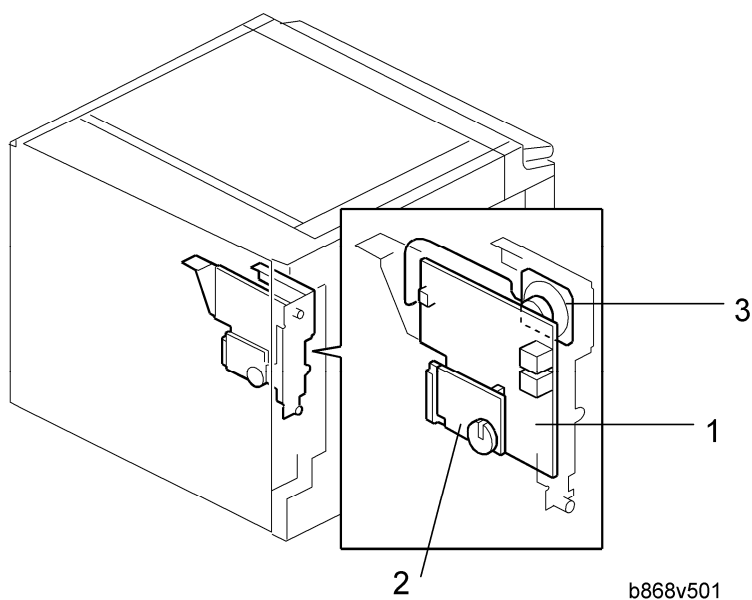
Connectivity:	Local area network Ethernet 100base-Tx/10base-T IEEE1394 (IP over 1394) IEEE802.11b (wireless LAN)
Resolution:	Main scan: 400 dpi, 200 dpi Sub scan: 400 dpi, 200 dpi, 100 dpi To use 400 dpi, IFAX SW01 Bit 4 must be set to "1".
Transmission Time:	1 s (through a LAN to the server) Condition: ITU-T #1 test document (Selerexe Letter) MTF correction: OFF TTI: None Resolution: 200 x 100 dpi Communication speed: 10 Mbps Correspondent device: E-mail server Line conditions: No terminal access
Document Size:	Maximum message width is A4/LT.  Note To use B4 and A3 width, IFAX SW00 Bit 1 (B4) and/or Bit 2 (A3) must be set to "1".
E-mail File Format:	Single/multi-part MIME conversion Image: TIFF-F (MH, MR, MMR)
Protocol:	Transmission: SMTP, TCP/IP Reception: POP3, SMTP, IMAP4, TCP/IP
Data Rate:	100 Mbps(100base-Tx) 10 Mbps (10base-T)

Authentication Method:	SMTP-AUTH POP before SMTP A-POP
Remark:	The machine must be set up as an e-mail client before installation. Any client PCs connected to the machine through a LAN must also be e-mail clients, or some features will not work (e.g. Autorouting).

6.3 IP-FAX SPECIFICATIONS

Network:	Local Area Network Ethernet/10base-T, 100base-TX IEEE1394 (IP over 1394) IEEE802.11b (wireless LAN)
Scan line density:	8 x 3.85 lines/mm, 200 x 100dpi (standard characters) 8 x 7.7lines/mm, 200 x 200dpi (detailed characters)
Original size:	Maximum A3 or 11"x 17" (DLT)
Maximum scanning size:	Standard: A3, 297mm x 432mm Irregular: 297mm x 1200mm
Transmission protocol:	Recommended: T.38 Annex protocol, TCP, UDP/IP communication
Compatible machines:	IP-Fax compatible machines
IP-Fax transmission function:	Specify IP address and send fax to an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network. Also capable of sending fax from a G3 fax connected to the public telephone lines via a VoIP gateway.
IP-Fax reception function:	Receive a fax sent from an IP-Fax compatible fax through a network. Also capable of receiving fax from a G3 fax connected the public telephone lines via a VoIP gateway.

6.4 FAX UNIT CONFIGURATION



Component	Code	No.	Remarks
FCU	B868	1	Included with fax unit
MBU		2	
Speaker		3	
Handset Type 1018	B433	-	NA only. Common with PG-C1